



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Sir Ferumbas.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxxiv.

1879.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE
39183-
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART I.



Sir Gerumbaz.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE PAPER MS. ABOUT 1380 A.D., IN THE
BODLEIAN LIBRARY (ASHMOLE MS. 33)

BY

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF THE "GESTA ROMANORUM," "STARKEY'S LIFE AND LETTERS," ETC.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXIX.

820.6
E13e
no. 34-35

Extra Series.

XXXIV.

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS.

INTRODUCTION.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>§ 1. <i>Popularity of the romance, as shown by numerous editions</i>, p. v.</p> <p>§ 2. <i>Caxton's "Lyf of Charles the grete,"</i> p. viii.</p> <p>§ 3. <i>Ferumbras an enlarged portion of a previous romance</i>, p. xi.</p> <p>§ 4. <i>English MSS. of the Charlemagne Romances</i>, p. xii.</p> | <p>§ 5. <i>Description of the Ashmole MS. 33</i>, p. xiv.</p> <p>§ 6. <i>Characters of the romance</i>, p. xvii.</p> <p>§ 7. <i>Its versification</i>, p. xviii.</p> <p>§ 8. <i>Its Dialectal and Grammatical peculiarities</i>, p. xviii.</p> <p>§ 9. <i>Conclusion</i>, p. xxvii.</p> |
|---|---|

§ 1. In the present Introduction I do not propose to enter into the general question of the Origin and History of the Charlemagne Romances, but to confine myself to the one with which we are immediately concerned.

Of all these romances none attained to so high a pitch of popularity as that, the present version of which is now for the first time published. MM. Krœber and G. Servois, the editors of the old French version (from which the present is a translation), in their introduction say: "Des le xii^{me} siècle probablement, et pour sûr au siècle suivant, la chanson de Fierabras était chantée en provençal et en français, au midi et au nord de la France. Elle a été de bonne heure traduite ou imitée dans presque toutes les langues de l'Europe, et n'a cessé chez nous d'être rajeunie et reproduite dans les versions en prose qui en ont été publiées depuis le xv^e siècle jusqu'à nos jours."¹

Of the Romance of Fierabras two versions exist, the one Provençal,² the other French, the former of which, in the opinion of MM. Krœber and Servois, was a translation from a French original now lost. Of the French

¹ "Fierabras, *Chanson de Geste*," Paris, 1860, 8°. p. ii.

² Published by Herr Bekker, with the title, "Der Roman von Ferabras provenzalisch, herausgeg. von Herr Bekker," Berlin, 1829, 4°. It consists of 5084 lines.

version five MSS. are known to exist, two belonging to the XIV, and two to the XV century.¹

Previous to 1860, the poetical version of Fierabras had never been printed, but there had been numerous editions of the prose romance. A full account of these will be found in Brunet's *Manuel du Libraire*, s.v.v. *Conqueste* and *Fierabras*, and I shall therefore confine myself to a notice of the most remarkable of these editions.

The first prose version was published in 1478, at Geneva, with the title, "Le Roman de Fier a bras, le geant," and the colophon, "Imprime a Geneve l'an de grace mil cccc.lxxviij. le xxviij^e iour de Novembre." It is in folio, Gothic letters, and consists of 115 leaves, with no pagination.

In the Grenville Library in the British Museum, Nos. 10,531, and 10,532 are two copies.

The first, entitled, "Fierabras, Roman par Henry Bolomier," which is the copy mentioned by Brunet, N. R. II. p. 231, as incorrectly described in the Catalogue of Vander Velde, commences with the prologue *Saint Pol docteur de Verite*, which, with Table of Chapters, occupies five leaves. The text begins on leaf 6, and finishes on 110 back, with the colophon—"Explicit Fierabras, par Symon du Jardin à Geneve." It is in folio and undated.

The work is divided into three Books, the second of which contains

¹ The editors of Fierabras only mention *four*, but one has since been discovered in the Municipal Library of Hanover. (See p. xiv. below.) Of these only one is in the British Museum, viz. MS. Reg. 15. E. vi. This magnificent MS., which is in a state of perfect preservation, forms an enormous folio volume, on vellum, written in double columns in the 15th century. It contains 487 folios, besides 5 folios at the beginning, of which one is blank. The first has, on the back, a table of the contents of the volume. The second contains, on the back, a superb miniature, representing John Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury, who died in 1453, on his knees, presenting this volume to Margaret of Anjou, queen of Henry VI, who is seated beside her husband on a kind of bed, in a chamber of which the tapestry bears everywhere the arms of England and France quartered. Behind the queen are two ladies, and behind the king a great number of men. Above is a dedication in verse.

The third leaf contains a pedigree of Henry VI. This leaf, as well as the preceding, is ornamented with the armorial bearings of John Talbot, and of Henry VI. and his queen quartered. The back of the fifth folio is entirely occupied by a large miniature, representing *le Chastel du Chaire, la Cité de Babiloine, Nectanebs seigneur d'Egipte, père Alirandre, le jardin du Baulme, and les moulins de Babiloine.*

The volume contains a large number of Romances in prose and verse. Fierabras begins on ff. 66, and ends on ff. 81, with the colophon, *Cy fine le iiij^eme livre Charlemaine*, and is followed by *Le livre de Oger Le Dannemarche*, which begins on leaf 82, under a miniature representing Ogier breaking Charlot's head with a chess-board. The last piece but one is *Le liere des fais d'armes et de chevalerie*, translated and printed by Caxton in 1490.

the whole of the romance of Sir Ferumbras. This is subdivided into 3 parts, the first containing 16 chapters, and extending from the appearance of Ferumbras before Charles' camp to the capture of Oliver: the second extends to immediately before the starting of Richard of Normandy on his message to Charles from the besieged knights; and the third ends with the wedding of Guy and Floripas. The fight between Roland and Ferragus occurs in Book III. part i. chapt. 12. It agrees throughout with the French version as printed by MM. Kroeber and Servois.

The heading to Book II. runs as follows:—"La premiere partie du second liure contient XVI chapitres, et parle de la bataille faicte par olinier & fierabras ung merueilleux geant," and it is taken, we are told, from a "rommant fait a lancienne façon sans grand ordonnance dont iay este insite a le reduire en prose par chapitres ordonnez," and has been turned from "la rime ancienne en prose."

The first and third parts are taken from Vincent de Beauvais, *Speculum Historiale*. (See quotation from Caxton's translation below.)

The second copy in the Grenville Library, 10532, has the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil quatre cens quatre vingtz et seize, Le xx jour de novembre." It consists of 65 leaves, in folio.

In the Royal Library, British Museum (press-mark c 6 b. 12), is a copy without title-page, with the colophon, "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc.lxxxiiij. et Le. xiiij. iour de moys de Mars. Deo gracias. Amen." Folio, 115 leaves. On the back of A i is a large woodcut representing Fierabras, and another large one on O 5, representing Charlemagne. Smaller cuts are interspersed in the text. The preface is on A ij, the Index begins on A ij back, and the text on A vj. It corresponds throughout with the Grenville copy, No. 10,532.

A prose edition in German is also in the British Museum (Press-mark 837, l. 21), printed by Iheronimus Rodler, at Siemern, 2 May, 1533. Folio: 53 leaves without pagination. It is interspersed with large woodcuts. This edition was reprinted in 1809.

In the same Library are also three editions of a work entitled—"Historia del Emperador Carlo Magno, en la qual se trata de las grandes proezas y Nazañas de los doce Pares de Francia, y de como Fueron vendidos por el traydor Ganalón: y de la cruda batalla, que hubo Oliveros Con Fierabras, Rey de Alexandria. Traducido del Frances al Castellano." Por Nicolas de

Piamonte. First edition, 1528. Reprinted, Cordova, 1649, 4°; 1700, 8°; 1777, 8°. This work is in reality a literal translation of the second part of the French prose romance, and corresponds exactly with our version.

Italy early adopted the Romance, and towards the close of the XV century was published a poetical version in that language, entitled, "*El cantare di Fierabraccia et Olivieri*."

§ 2. In 1485 Caxton printed his "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete," which is simply a translation of the French Prose Romance of Fierabras already referred to. The following is his rendering of the Prologue of the French versions:—

¹ "S Aynt Poul doctour of veryte sayth to vs that al thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng / ben wryton to our doctryne / And Boece maketh mencion that the helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuerceley / Thenne sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche / Neuertheles the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce / engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the werkes of the auncient and olde people ben for to gyue to vs ensauple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions digne & worthy of helth in folowyng the good / and eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hie hystories / the comune vnderstandyng is better content to the ymaginacion local than to symple auctoryte / to which it is submysed / I saye this gladly / For oftymes I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry bolomyer chanoine of lausanne for to reduce for his playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn & in romaunce as in other facion wryton / that is to say of the ryght puyssaunt / vertuous / and noble charles the grete / kyng of fraunce and emperour of Rome / Sone of the grete Pepyn / And of his prynces & barons / As Rolland Olyuer / and other / touchyng² somme werkes haultayne doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght ardaunt courage / to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and myscreaunts whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf to to lyue wel / And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen of thys mater / and the hystories dysioyned wythoute ordre / therfore at his request after the capacitye of my lytel entendement / And after thy stories and mater that I haue founden I haue ordeyned this book folowyng / And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more largely enformed and al playn I had letter made it / For I haue not sayd ony matere / but I haue therof ben enformed / Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour hystorial / as by the canones and somme other bookes whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng / And by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable foundement I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce. For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of the frenssh men / and for prouffyte of euery man / and after the desyre of the redar and herer / there shalle be founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche the persone

¹ sign. A ij.

² col. 2.

shal haue desyre to here or rede / wythoute grete ate[n]dacyon / by¹ the playsyr of god to whome I submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought to be blamed / ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion of euery persone /"

This is followed immediately by Caxton's own prologue, as follows:—

"**T**Henne for as moche I late had fynysshed in enprynte the book of the noble & vycetoryous kyng² Arthur fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten kynges / and also tofore had reduced into englysshe the noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng³ of Iherusalem / last of the said iij worthy Somme persones of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce thystorye and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce Charles the grete kyng of fraunce⁴ & emperour of Rome / the second of the thre worthy / to thende that thystories / actes / & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue lyke as they be in latyn or in frensshe / For the moost quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe here in this noble royaume of englond / And for to satisfye the desyre & requeste of my good synguler lordes & specyal maysters and frendes I haue enprynted and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd book in to our englysshe / as all alonge and playnely ye may rede / here / and see in this book⁵ here folowyng / besechyng al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and amende it / And also to pardone me of the rude & symple reducyng / and though so be there be no gaye termes / ne subtyl ne newe eloquence / yet I hope that it shal be vnderstonde and to that entente I haue specyally reduced it / after the symple connyng that god hath lente to me / wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke hym / & also am bounden to praye for my fader and moders soules / that in my youthe sette me to scole / by whyche by the suffraunce of god I gete my lyuyng I hope truly And that I may so do & contynue I byseche hym to graunte me of his grace / and so to laboure and occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette & dedely synne / that after this lyf I may come to hys blyss in heuen. AMEN."

The text concludes with the following epilogue⁶:—

"¶ And by cause I Wylliam Caxton was desyred & requyred by a good and synguler frend of myn / Maister wylliam dau⁷beney one of the tresorers of the Jewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng⁸ / our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy To reduce al these sayd hystories in to our Englysshe tongue I haue put me in deuoyr to translate this sayd book as ye heretofore may se al a longe and pl[a]yn / prayyng alle them that shal rede / see or here it / to pardon me of this symple & rude trans[l]acyon and reducyng / bysechyng theym that shal fynde faute to correcte it / & in so doying they shal deserue thankynges / & I shal praye god for them / who brynge them and me after this short and transytorye lyf to euerlastyng blysse. Amen / the whyche werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xviij day of Iuyn the

¹ sign. A ij, back.

² Ed. fraunce.

³ col. 2.

⁴ sign. M vij, back, col. 1.

⁵ col. 2.

second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd / And the yere of our lord
MCCCClxxxv / And enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our
lord & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth /

¶ Explicit per William Caxton."

On Sign. M. vij we read—"it is so that at the requeste of the sayd venerable man tofore named Maister henry bolonnyer chanoune of lausanne I haue been Incyted to translate & reduce into Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd¹ book / I haue taken & drawn oute of a book named myrrour hystorial for the moost parte / & the second book I haue onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe"—In the "Table" we are told that "The fyrst book spekyth of the begynnyng of fraunce / and of the fyrst crysten kyng of fraunce / whyche was named Cloys." . . . "The second book spekith of the batayle that Olyner dyd ayenst Fyerabras the meruayllous geaunte." . . . "The iij book speketh how by reuelacyon of saynt Iames Charles went and conquerd Spayne and Galyce . . . and fynally of the trayson of Ganellon by the whyche the deth of Rolland was pyetous / the deth of Oliuer dolorouse. . . . and fynably the deth of Charles themperour."

The only existing copy at present known is in the King's Library, British Museum (Press-mark C. 10 b. 9). It is perfect, and consists of 96 folio leaves in double columns, 39 lines to a column. There is no title-page.

The present romance was particularly popular in Spain. The *Historia del Emperador Carlomagno* contains, in addition to the events related in 'Fierabras,' also the combat between Ferragus and Roland, and an account of the fatal day of Roncesvalles.² Piamonte's work has been several times reprinted, and two editions in Portuguese were published in the last and present centuries.³ To it doubtless Cervantes was indebted for many of his allusions, and it was it which he represents as having been in the library of Don Quixote, and burnt by order of the priest and the barber.⁴ In 1635 Calderon wrote his drama 'La Puente de Mantible,'⁵ which is founded on a portion of our romance.

The Welsh version of the 'Gests of Charlemagne,'⁶ lately published, does not contain our romance, but is a translation of Turpin's life of Charlemagne, as is also the Irish version in the "Book of Lismore," the property of the Duke of Devonshire.⁷

¹ sign. M. vij, back.

² See Ticknor, *History of Spanish Literature*, 1849, I. 222.

³ 'Fierabras,' ed. MM. Kræber and G. Servois, introd. p. xvi.

⁴ See Skelton's ed. of 'Don Quixote,' 1652, Bk. I. Pt. 4, chapt. xxii. p. 130.

⁵ In this spelling he follows the practice of Piamonte in his *Historia*.

⁶ 'Campeu Charlymaen,' being the Gests of Charlemagne, &c., ed. from the Hengwrt MSS. by the Rev. R. Williams, 1878 (privately printed).

⁷ See the *Academy*, May 22nd, 1875.

The earliest known mention of any romance on the subject is in a deed of the xiv century, by which Guy de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, bequeathed his library to the Abbey of Bordesley, in the county of Warwick, in the catalogue of which we find a *Volum del romance des mareschaus et de Fierabras de Alisaundre*, and probably is the same which is referred to in the catalogue of the library of the Castle of Montauban, in France, taken in 1507 :—

“ Item, vng libre en romans dit Mellusina.

Item, ung autre libre en romans dit *Fierbras*. ”¹

§ 3. M. Gaston Paris in 1865 pointed out that ‘Fierabras’ was in reality but a portion of an earlier Romance, considerably amplified and re-handled. Of this earlier poem, only known from the short analysis of it by Philippe Mousket (v. 4666 *et seq.*), the following summary is given by M. Paris :²—
 “ Puis Rome fut prise par force, et toute la population mise à mort, le pape tué, Château-Miroir pris, et toute la ville brûlée. Le duc Garin et les siens entrèrent en Château-Croissant ; car les Sarrasins, Turcs et Persans, avaient amené trop de monde et de Syrie et d’Espagne. Les chrétiens désespérés envoyèrent demander secours au bon roi Charlemagne, qui tenait sa cour en France. Le roi leur envoya Gui de Bourgogne . . . , et Richard de Normandie. Ils reprirent le *Miroir* ; le duc Garin, qui tenait Pavie et avait conservé Château-Croissant, prit aussi part à la bataille. Charles arriva lui-même, amenant ses troupes rassemblées de maint pays il se dirigea vers Rome et fit grand mal aux païens. C’est alors qu’Olivier combattit l’orgueilleux Fierabras ; il le vainquit et reconquit les deux barils que celui-ci avait pris à Rome ; il les jeta dans le Tibre, afin que personne ne pût plus boire du baume qu’ils contenaient ; c’était celui-là même dont Jésus-Christ fut embaumé. Enfin tous les païens furent tués et les chrétiens reprirent Rome ; on fit un autre pape, et Charles revint en France, louant Dieu et saint Pierre.”

There are numerous passages in ‘Fierabras’ pointing to a preceding romance : thus at the very start we are introduced at once *in medias res* in a manner which seems to show that the author takes it as granted that his readers are well acquainted with the events which he so rapidly describes³—the opening lines being in point of fact a brief *resumé* of the poem summarized as above by M. Gaston Paris under the name of ‘Balan.’ Again, ll. 2241—2246⁴ are also palpable references to events previously described.

¹ ‘Fierabras,’ ed. MM. Kræber and Servois, introd. p. xxii.

² *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, pp. 251-2.

³ *Histoire Poétique*, p. 251.

⁴ Corresponding with ll. 1412—1420, and 2076—2084 of ‘Sir Ferumbras.’

The author of 'Fierabras' has, however, considerably modified his original to suit the altered taste of the time, has transported the scene of action to Spain,¹ and has substituted for the simple and matter-of-fact ending of the earlier poem one much more romantic. From these facts, and the absence of any reference to it by any author earlier than the xiv century, as well as from the frequent allusions to other works found in it, M. Gaston Paris has come to the conclusion that 'Fierabras' is a comparatively modern production, and he thinks it probable that it was composed in the interest of the monks, in order to draw attention to the relics preserved at the Abbey of Saint Denis.

These allusions to a pre-existing Romance are not, of course, so evident in 'Sir Ferumbras.' The first leaf of the Ashmole MS. being lost, we cannot say how the English translator rendered the introductory lines, and his words at l. 65 in reference to the sacred relics "of wham y tolde 3ow of .eer," may only refer to his mention of them in his (now lost) introduction. Lines 1412—1420, and 2076—2084, however, as already stated, clearly refer to a story already told, as do also ll. 3193-4.

But since the publication of M. Paris' exhaustive work, there has been found in the Municipal Library of Hanover a unique copy of a Romance with the title of 'La Destruction de Rome,' which represents the first part of the Romance of 'Balan' alluded to above. This poem, which consists of 1507 lines, contains the account of the capture of Rome by Balan, the slaughter of the Christians, and the seizure by Ferumbras of the holy relics.²

§ 4. I now come to the consideration of the English MSS. of the Romances.

It is not a little remarkable, considering the great popularity of the subject,—a popularity clearly proved by the frequent allusions in other works,³—that so few English versions of the Charlemagne Romances should

¹ M. Gaston Paris points out a curious instance of forgetfulness on the part of the author of 'Fierabras,' which, in itself, is a strong proof of the source of the poem. Mousket in his analysis of 'Balan' says that Oliver threw the two *barils* containing the sacred ointment into the Tiber, and so in 'Fierabras' the author, forgetting that he had shifted the scene to Spain, says (l. 1049)—"Pres fu du far de Rome ses a dedans jetés."—*Histoire Poétique*, p. 252.

² Published by M. G. Græber, in *Romania, Recueil Trimestre, consacré à l'étude des langues et des littératures Romanes*, edd. MM. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, January 1873, pp. 1—48. It was composed in England towards the end of the 14th century.

³ For references to the Charlemagne Romances generally, see the *Cursor Mundi*, ed.

exist, and that those which do survive are each *unique*.¹ This last word perhaps calls for a few words of explanation. Mr J. Shelly, in his analysis of the English MSS. of the Charlemagne Romances,² writes as follows :—" *Ferumbras*. We have two versions of this romance : one of them the Farmer MS. analyzed by Ellis, and now in the library of Sir Thomas Phillipps ; the other a fragment of great length [Ashm. 33], which will shortly be printed by the Early English Text Society. They both belong probably to the end of the fourteenth century. *The original of the romance is the French 'Fierabras.'*"

Now this I believe to be likely to mislead. The two poems appear to me to be essentially different works : the 'Sowdone' being a translation of a MS. of the poem, analyzed by M. Gaston Paris, and already referred to, under the name of 'Balan ;' while 'Sir Ferumbras' is, as has before been stated, a translation of the French 'Fierabras,' itself an enlarged and greatly modified version of the second part only of that poem. What Mr Shelly refers to as the "long introductory account" is, in point of fact, only a condensed reproduction of the 'Destruction of Rome,' which, as I have said, represents the first portion of 'Balan.'

To point out all the differences between 'Sowdone' and the present poem would take up too much space, besides being unnecessary, as the former will

Morris, II. 15, 16 ; *Richard Cœur de Lion*, prologue ; and others mentioned by Warton, *Hist. Eng. Poetry*, ed. Hazlitt, II. 122, 125. And for direct references in other authors to *Sir Ferumbras*, see notes to II. 511, 1109 below ; Ellis, *Metrical Romances*, II. 369 ; Pinkerton, *Ancient Scottish Poetry*, I. 195, ed. 1792.

¹ The following are all which are at present known to exist :—

1. 'Roland and Vernagu.'

2. 'Sir Otuel.'

(These two are in the Auchinlech MS., the date of which is 1330, and have been analyzed by Ellis, *Met. Romances*, II. 283, the first under the title of 'Roland and Ferragus,' and the second from a more complete version in a MS. belonging to W. Fillingham, Esq. They were both published by the Abbotsford Club in 1836.)

3. 'The Song of Roland.'

(A fragment of about 1000 lines preserved in Lansdowne MS. 388, leaf 384. Extracts and an analysis of this fragment from the pen of the late Mr T. Wright will be found in the *Chanson de Roland*, ed. M. Fran. Michel, Paris, 1837.)

4. 'The Sowdone of Babyloyne.'

(Edited for the Roxburghe Club in 1854 from the MS. now in the Library of Sir T. Phillipps, at Middlehill, and analyzed by Ellis, II. 369, under the title of the Farmer MS.)

5. 'Sir Ferumbras.'

(The romance here printed. As all these romances will shortly be published by the E. E. T. S., it is unnecessary to describe them more in detail. I don't know whether I ought not to add that most amusing poem of "Rauf Coilyear," now being edited for the E. E. T. S., by Dr J. A. H. Murray.)

² Warton, *Hist. of English Poetry*, II. 197-8.

The author of *Firralug* has, however, considerably modified his view. To suit the altered plan of the poem, he transported the scene of *Sodom*, and the surrounding for the simple and matter-of-fact end of the earlier poem, and built upon this. From these facts, and the view my reference to it by my author, which dates the XIV century, and the fact that the fragments of *Firralug* in other works found in it, M. G. came to the conclusion that *Firralug* is a comparatively late work, and he thinks it probable that it was composed in the XV century, in order to draw attention to the relics preserved at the time.

These allusions to a pre-existing Romance are not, of course, the only ones. The first leaf of the Ashmole MS. being now in the English translation rendered the introductory line of the poem in the same sense as of which y tolde a tale in his mention of them in his (now lost) introduction, and in 1794, however, as already stated, already said, as he also in 1844.

But since the publication of M. Paris' exhaustive study in the Municipal Library of Hanover a uniform edition of *La Destruction de Rome*, which is the Romance of *Rome* alluded to above. The first line contains the account of the capture of Rome by the Christians, and the seizure by Ferumbras. It is now come to the consideration of the Romance.

It is not a little remarkable, considering the popularity which proved by the English version of the

of *Firralug* that it is a curious instance of the *Firralug* which, in 1802, is a strong allusion to the capture of Rome, says that Oliver, with his sword, the 1300 and so in *Firralug* at the capture of Spain, says (l. 1049) —

Firralug (l. 1049) is 1049, in the original, in the *Chanson de Roland*, l. 1049, it was composed in the 13th century, in the *Chanson de Roland*.

unfortunately imperfect, but, judging from 'Ferumbras' and it, I do not believe that the beginning and perhaps three from the French version.

The MS. in the Bodleian Library, is an octavo of coarse, thick paper. The ink used by the scribe has faded so completely has it faded that it is not possible to decipher the words. As described by Mr Black in his Catalogue of the Bodleian MS. and I cannot do better than quote his account, Mr Henry Sweet, of Balliol Coll., Oxford. Mr

The MS. is more curious than its antient covers, which are now of parchment. They are a triple envelope of parchment flapping over, and consist of 2 sheets. The outer one is a letter of Pope Innocent VI for the presentation of Thomas de Columpton, in the diocese of Exeter, then vacant by the death of Moleyns; which bull, being addressed to the Abbots of Merton, and to John de Silvis, dean of S. Agricola at Avignon, (the last named) in the present letter addressed to the Bishop of Exeter, the date, containing the date, is cut off; but the bull is dated at Avignon, anno 5, which is 1357.

The inner cover is a very long and imperfect [latin] instrument, stating that on the 7th Sunday after Trinity, in 1377, in the chapel of the diocese of Exeter, Roger Langeman, rector Lydelynche (dioc. Exeter) read and expounded an instrument which cites the proceedings of the Court of Rome in consequence of the consecration of a church adjoining the said chapel, which was prejudicial to the rights of the Vicar of Buckfastleghe, to whose parish church the right of the said chapel being a member thereof. [But] these are most remarkable for having preserved a curiosity not equalled in any of MSS., and that for antiquity is unique of its kind, namely, a part of the author's original corrected draught of this poem [of 'Ferumbras'] written on the back of the documents already described. Thus the lines [in the draught]—

“As Charles stod by chance at conseil with his feris
Whiche pat wern of france his oȝene doȝepers.”

are read at the foot of fol. 3 [ll. 258-9 of the corrected copy]—

“As Charlys was in his greunace stondyng among his feren
And counsailede with þe grete of fraunce and with ys doȝpeperen.”

“The inner cover is folded double; and the draught, being written on the inner side, has been kept free from dust, though it is much worn at the edges

shortly be edited by Dr Hausknecht for the Early English Text Society, but I may mention a couple of important instances.

In the 'Sowdone' Roland is captured by the Saracens at the same time as Oliver, and both on being conducted before Lavan (Balan) at once avow their identity. It will be at once seen how greatly this alters a portion of the story as told in our poem.

Again, the names of the "douzeperes" do not agree. In fact, in the 'Sowdone' no less than 16 names are first given, and to these 11 more are subsequently added. (See note to l. 259 of the present volume.)

Moreover, in the 'Sowdone' the narration of the same events which in the Ashmole MS. occupy nearly 6000 lines, is compressed into 2224 lines (excluding the 1050 lines of the account of the taking of Rome), and as the lines in the 'Sowdone' are but half the length of those in Sir Ferumbras, as here printed, we see that the proportion between the two poems is over 5 to 1.

It is impossible to believe that two authors could have so treated the same MS. in so essentially different a manner. But the difficulty vanishes if we assume, as I think is clear, that the 'Sowdone' represents the original poem of 'Balan,' while Sir Ferumbras represents only a portion of it.¹

The version here printed is clearly a translation of a MS. of the same type as the *Fierabras*, edited by MM. Krœber and Servois. The author has followed his original closely, so far as relates to the course of events, but at the same time he has translated it freely, introducing several slight incidents and modifications, which help to enliven and improve the poem. That he has not translated his original literally is shown by the fact that the French version consists of only 6219 lines, or, allowing for the missing portion of the Ashmole MS., not much more than one-half the number of lines in the latter, and that too, although he has cut down the account of the duel between Oliver and Ferumbras from 1500 to 800 lines, by leaving out Oliver's attempts at converting the Saracen, Charlemagne's prayers, &c.

§ 5. I will now proceed to give an account of the MS. from which this

¹ In the Hanover MS., which contains the 'Destruction of Rome,' that romance is followed directly by a version of *Fierabras*, with the colophon—"Ici est li finemant de l'estoire de Fierenbras d'Alisandre et del bone roy Charles." Of this poem M. Grœber does not give any account, and I was in hopes that on examination it would be found to be of the same type as the MS. from which the 'Sowdone' was translated, but M. Gaston Paris informs me that it is the same as the printed text, differing only in slight variations of readings. He agrees, however, that the "Sowdone" is founded on a MS. similar to the Hanover one.

Romance has been printed. It is unfortunately imperfect, but, judging from the proportion between the French 'Fierabras' and it, I do not believe that more than *one* leaf has been lost from the beginning and perhaps three from the end. The missing lines have been supplied from the French version.

The Ashmole MS. 33, preserved in the Bodleian Library, is an octavo volume, consisting of 77 leaves of coarse, thick paper. The ink used by the writer was very bad, and in many places so completely has it faded that it is only in a strong sun-light that it is at all possible to decipher the words. The MS. has been fully described by Mr Black in his Catalogue of the Ashmolean MSS. col. 14, and I cannot do better than quote his account, which has been verified by Mr Henry Sweet, of Balliol Coll., Oxford. Mr Black says:—

"The book is not more curious than its antient covers, which are now preserved in a case with it. They are a triple envelope of parchment flapping over the right hand cover, and consist of 2 sheets. The outer one is a letter executory of a bull of pope Innocent VI for the presentation of Thomas de Silton to the vicarage of Columpton, in the diocese of Exeter, then vacant by the death of Peter Moleyns; which bull, being addressed to the Abbots of Schirbourne and Cerne, and to John de Silvis, dean of S. Agricola at Avignon, was executed (by the last named) in the present letter addressed to the Bishop of Exeter. The foot, containing the date, is cut off; but the bull is dated at Villa-nova, 3 *id Maij*, anno 5, which is 1357.

"The inner cover is a very long and imperfect [latin] instrument, stating that before mass on the 7th Sunday after Trinity, in 1377, in the chapel of Holne, in the diocese of Exeter, Roger Langeman, rector Lydelynche (dioc. Schirb.), publicly read and expounded an instrument which cites the proceedings and final sentence in the Court of Rome in consequence of the consecration of a burial-ground adjoining the said chapel, which was prejudicial to the rights of John Brygge, the Vicar of Buckfastleghe, to whose parish church the right of burial belonged, the said chapel being a member thereof. [But] these covers are most remarkable for having preserved a curiosity not equalled in any collection of MSS., and that for antiquity is unique of its kind, namely, a part of the author's original corrected draught of this poem [of 'Ferumbras'] written on the back of the documents already described. Thus the lines [in the draught]—

"'As Charles stod by chance at conseil with his feris
Whiche þat wern of france his oȝene doȝepers.'

are read at the foot of fol. 3 [ll. 258-9 of the corrected copy]—

"'As Charlys was in his greuance stondyng among his feren
And counsailede with þe grete of fraunce and with ys doȝþeperen.'

"The inner cover is folded double; and the draught, being written on the inner side, has been kept free from dust, though it is much worn at the edges

and folds. The sheet contains four large columns of text, each equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ pages of the MS.; half of the breadth of the fourth column was cut off to reduce the flap to a convenient width."

I may add to what Black says that the draft and the MS. are in the same handwriting, and that the handwriting is evidently, in the opinion of Mr Sweet, of the same character and period as that of the second document described as forming part of the cover, which is of the end of the fourteenth century. The draft is only of the earlier part of the poem, and contains numerous corrections.¹ The latter part of the poem itself is much corrected in the same handwriting, and was possibly written off at once, and not copied from a previous draft. Black concludes from the facts he mentions, that "the author [of the poem] was a clergyman, lived in the diocese of Exeter (probably in that city), and composed his work shortly after 1377, or early in the reign of Richard II. Mr Furnivall suggests to me, however, that the facts lead to a very different conclusion, viz., "that the author was not a man who cared much for bulls or Exeter diocese, and had no hesitation in using up for his poem documents that a Devonshire man would have valued and kept unharmed." I am inclined, however, to believe that Black is probably right. It is not likely that these documents would have wandered out of the diocese of Exeter, where their most likely place of deposit was the cathedral city, so soon after their date as the time when this draft of the poem was apparently written upon them. The documents are not such as were likely to be very carefully preserved, and we must remember that at that time there was no antiquarian interest attaching to them. From internal evidence I should be inclined to suppose that the author of the poem was a clergyman, and for the reasons I have given I think it is most likely that he lived at Exeter.

The date of the action of the poem is fixed by ll. 304-5, where we learn that the events related occurred *three* years before the battle of Roncesvalles, and the treachery and consequent death of Gwelonon, which took place in A.D. 778, and are narrated in the 'Song of Roland':—

"traytours wern hee.

As 3e schul huren after pys : or passede 3eres three,
pay be-traiede þe kyng & his."²

¹ The corrections throughout are given in the footnotes, the square brackets showing the words erased, and the text showing the corrected form of each line.

² The author of 'Sir Ferumbras' has gone out of his way to give the date of the poem wrongly, for ll. 4869—4871, in which he says—

§ 6. The character of Roland is throughout most admirably and consistently drawn. Everywhere we find him the same reckless headstrong fellow, whether it be in the battle-field or in delivering his message to Balan. He is far the most important personage in the poem, and it certainly seems a misnomer to call it after Ferumbras, whose actions fill only about one-fifth of the whole poem. The title having, however, been already given to the romance, it has not been considered expedient now to alter it.

Oliver is the next most important character. As he himself says, he "ys noȝt so good" as Roland, but he "ys a man heȝ of mod Sarasynȝ to yule arraye." He has not the daring nor the high spirit of Roland, and when he finds himself in captivity, with no probable hope of relief, his courage gives way.

Ferumbras himself after his duel with Oliver disappears from the scene, and does not appear again till close to the end of the poem. At his first appearance he conducts himself like a conceited bully, and his abject appeals for mercy when defeated do not tend to raise our estimation of him.

Of the remaining characters of the poem it is unnecessary to speak, with one important exception, Floripas, the handsome but certainly undutiful daughter of the Emir. From first to last she is consistently exhibited to us as an exceedingly strong-minded young lady, determined to have her own way, whatever the cost may be: her murders of Britomart and her governess are equalled only by her conduct towards her father in the closing scene of the poem. But yet at times the naturally soft disposition of the woman shows itself; as, for instance, when the French knights return to the castle after their sally against the Saracens, with the tidings of her lover's capture, and we cannot help admiring the daring of the woman who is never at a loss for an expedient, and who always effects her purpose, though without the slightest consideration as to the means adopted.

The origin of the name Ferumbras, which is only a corruption of the French *Fierabras*, is fully discussed in MM. Krœber and Servois' edition, pp. xi, xii, where they point out that the name was not invented by the author of the poem, since William II., Count of Poitiers (963—990), was surnamed *Fierabras* (*Fera brachia* or *Ferox brachium*) on account of his

"After þe ȝer þat our lord was bore
Nyȝen hondred & four score
 þe toun of mantrible conquerid was,"

are not in the original French.

FERUMBRAS.

b

extraordinary strength, in the same way as Baldwin, Count of Flanders, was surnamed *Bras de Fer* (the Iron-armed). Pierre de Maillezais¹ calls William III., the son of William II., Fierabras or Fierebrace: *Natus est willelmus cognomento Fera-brachia*. To these instances I may add that Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, ed. Hazlitt, II. 184, mentions that "about the year 1230, William Ferrabras, and his brethren, sons of Tancred the Norman, and well-known in the history of the Paladins, acquired the signories of Apulia and Calabria." In a footnote to this passage he explains the name as being simply *Bras de fer*, but the French Editors incline to the opinion that it is derived from the Latin *ferox brachium*, or *fera brachia*, a view which seems strongly supported by the quotation given above from Pierre de Maillezais. As to the name Floripas the same editors consider that it is equivalent to *passee-fleur* (the Wood Anemone).²

§ 7. Of the versification of the poem it is not necessary to say much. It is for the most part written in short alternately ryming lines, and, though not an alliterative poem, yet has a large amount of alliteration. In parts it is very rough, possibly from never having been finally revised by the author, while at times it runs along very smoothly. As a rule the final *e* is pronounced (see ll. 354-5, 1904-5, 1982-3, &c.). The rymes are full and true, to effect which, however, the author frequently has had recourse to some very curious spelling (see for instance ll. 260-1). Occasionally we have instances of half-rymes, as in ll. 76-7, 86-7 (first-half), 370-1, 1545-6, &c.

The change in form and metre at l. 3411 is remarkable, more especially as there is nothing to correspond with it in the original French version. It is noticeable that the concluding portion of the poem has been revised by the author more than any other, and is in consequence more smooth and finished, and "goes" better.

§ 8. The poem is written in a Southern (probably Devonshire) dialect, but has an unusually large admixture of Midland and Northern forms. Whoever the author may have been, it is abundantly evident that he had travelled, and most probably resided, for some considerable time in counties north of his own. In this way only can we account for the combination of Northern and Southern forms which so frequently occur. It is nothing unusual to

¹ *De Antiquit. Eccles. Malleac.*, Bk. I., heading of cap. II.

² It is worthy of notice that in the description of Floripas given in the 'Destruction of Rome,' l. 259, her lips are compared to the peach-blossom, *fleur-de-peiskier*.

find varying forms even in the same line : thus, for instance, in ll. 1975-6 we read :—

“ And er *sche* cam straucht in-to halle : neuere *heo* ne stente,
And forþ *sche* þraste among hem alle : & to hur fader ryzt *heo* wente.”

So again in l. 2380 :—

“ y not how þay schul ascape þen : þat *hy* ne gop to dede.”

A and *he* are also frequently met with in the same line, e. g. ll. 740, 2403, 3004, &c.; and so *þup* and *beo* in l. 2940.

To the same circumstance, doubtless, are also due the small number of instances in which *v* occurs for *f*;¹ the use of the Northern *-ande* in the present participle as well as the Southern *-ing*, *-yng*, and of such a distinctively Northern preposition as *til* (to); and the absence at times of inflexion in the past indicative.

We frequently find *c* substituted for *s*; especially in the words *wace* (was); *nace* (was not)²; *horce*,³ *pacye*: and in a few instances we find *t* for *d*; *hant*, *swert*.

Fry for *freo* occurs at l. 3441. This form is found also in the *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, and Shoreham's Poems.

Late examples of several forms which occur in Lazamon appear in the present poem. Thus we have l. 311 : *tweyre* (A.S. *twegra*), genitive of *twezen*; *beyne* (both), l. 661 : *þan* (dat. of the article); *y-kend* (begotten); *spelig* (spare).

-chs and *-sch* or *-sche* would appear to be equivalent, for we find *frecchs*, *flechs*, *frenchs*, used indiscriminately with *fresch*, *flesch*, and *frensche*.

To give a complete list of all the curious forms which occur in the poem would exceed the limits of this introduction, and is moreover unnecessary, since very many of them are, so to speak, ἀπαξ λεγόμενα, invented for the occasion, by the author, solely in order to make his rymes as perfect as possible.⁴ They can therefore only be looked upon as curiosities of orthography, except in so far as they bear on the question of pronunciation.

Perhaps the most curious form of all is *doppeper* for *dozoper*, which with one exception is found consistently throughout the poem, although in the original draft the correct form appears.⁵

¹ The following are all that occur:—*by-vore*, *vaste* (verb); *vaste* (adv.); *reme*, *vetres*, *vifty*, *vyve*, *vynde*, *vores* (furrows); *vacche*, *y-vere*, *vet*, *verde* (fared); *volde*, *auonge*, *voule*, *vuste*. In some cases the author has actually corrected the *v* as first written into *f*: see for instance, l. 5829.

² See ll. 186—190. ³ See ll. 4203-4. ⁴ See for instance, l. 260. ⁵ See note to l. 259.

Premising this much, I now proceed to give the principal dialectal and grammatical peculiarities of the poem.

NOUNS.

1. NUMBER.

Plurals as a rule end in *-s*, *-es*, or *-3*, but we find numerous examples of plural forms in *-n* and *-en*, and very frequently the same word occurs in both forms: thus we have *fon, fone, foes, foos, fos*; *feres, feren*; *otes, oten*; *browes, browen*; *tres, tren*; *mylen*; *lippen*; *knen*; *tren*, and others peculiar to the Southern dialects, as well as *eyene, eyne*; *schon*; *hosen*, which are found also in Northern writers.

A few instances occur of plurals in *-e* (representing an earlier *-en*); as *longe, lunge* (lungs); *feþeme* (fathoms); *hande, haunde, hond* (= *honde*, hands); *sythe* (times); *hyne* (servants); *gome* (men); *ferē* (companions); *tange* (tongs).

2. GENDER.

Inanimate objects are generally considered as *neuter*, but not unfrequently as *masculine* or *feminine*, the pronouns in these cases following the gender of the nouns in Anglo-Saxon. Thus l. 1551:—

"þay toke þe way as *he* lay ful euene." "the day *hym* sprunge;" "the sunne *hure* sette," &c.

3. CASE.

The genitive singular ends in *-s*, *-es*, or *-is*, and in the case of proper names *is* or *ys* written as distinct words: thus we find *godes gras*; the *Ameral ys* *pauylloun*; *Terry is sone*, &c.

When a proper noun ends in a sibilant, as *Charlis, Naymes*, the sign of the genitive is altogether omitted; as *Charlis Knyghts*, &c.

Fader, moder, suster, doȝter do not alter their forms in the genitive singular: thus we find *suster sone* (sister's son); *doȝter dede* (daughter's deed); *moder half* (mother's side); *fader loue*.

Of a genitive singular in *-e* there are a few instances, viz.: *heuene*, which occurs frequently in the phrase *heuene king, heuene blisse, helle pyne*; and *gode loue*; and of the genitive plural in *-ene* (A.S. *-ena*) we also find one example (l. 3222), *heþenens route*. (See also l. 4646.)

The genitive is occasionally used adverbially, as *lyues, willes*.

ADJECTIVES.

The rule as to the use or omission of the final *-e*, as a distinctive mark of singular and plural and definite and indefinite forms, has not been always followed by our author, a result probably due to Northern influence.

We find an instance of the genitive singular ending *-es* in *oprys syde*, and a few instances also occur of the genitive plural in *-re*; as *alre* (*aller, aldre*); *tweyre* (A.S. *twegra*).

Bopen is the only instance of the dative plural; and *anopernes*, acc. mas. occurs once in l. 995.

Adjectives and Adverbs in *-liche* form their comparatives in *-loker, -luker*; as *lodliche, lodluker*; *sykerliche, sikurlukere, surlokere*.¹

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

In this poem we find late examples of the inflexions of the definite article. The following forms occur:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
N.	<i>þe, þa.</i>	<i>þat.</i>	N. Acc. <i>þo, þay, þey.</i>
G.	[<i>þas</i> . ²]		
D.	<i>þan, þen.</i>		
Acc.	<i>þan, þan.</i>	<i>þat.</i>	

þo and *þat* are also found as demonstratives as in the Northern dialects.

THIS.

Many of the older inflexions of *this* occur in the present poem: thus we find:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
N.	<i>þes, þis, þys.</i>	<i>þis, þys.</i>	<i>þis, þys.</i>	<i>þes, þeese, þis, þus, þys.</i>
G.				
D.	<i>þis, þys.</i>	<i>þis.</i>		<i>þes, þis, þus.</i>
Acc.	<i>þees, þes, þis, þys.</i>	<i>þes, þys.</i>	<i>þis, þys,</i>	<i>þes, þeese, þis, þys, þus, þuse.</i>

Ilke, þilke, a distinctively Southern form, occur frequently: twice in combination with *þat*, as *þat þilke*.

¹ *Sykerer* occurs once.

² Only in the phrase *sons þas*; but see under Adverbs, p. xxvii below.

NUMERALS.

Amongst these we find the Southern forms in—*the*; *elleuefpe*, *twelpe*. No Northern forms occur.

We have only one instance of the dropping of the final *-n*; viz. *seue* (seven).

PRONOUNS.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The following table will show the numerous forms which occur:—

SINGULAR.				
1st Pers.	2nd Pers.			
		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>I, y, io, ich, yoh.</i>	<i>pou.</i>	<i>a, he, hee.</i>	<i>hee, she, sche, sheo.</i>	<i>it, yt, hit, hyt.</i>
G. <i>my, myn, myne.</i>	<i>py, pyn, pyne.</i>	<i>his, hys, is, ys.</i>	<i>her, hir, hire, hur, hure, hyr.</i>	<i>his.</i>
D. <i>me.</i>	<i>pe.</i>	<i>him, hym.</i>	<i>hir, hire, hure.</i>	<i>him, hit.</i>
Acc. <i>me.</i>	<i>pe, pee.</i>	<i>hem, him, hym, hymme, em.</i>	<i>her, hur, hure.</i>	<i>it, yt, hit, hyt.</i>
PLURAL.				
1st Pers.	2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.		
N. <i>we, ous.</i>	<i>3e.</i>	<i>hee, hi, hy, hymen, pai, pay, paye, bei, bey.</i>		
G. <i>our, oure.</i>	<i>3our, 3oure.</i>	<i>her, hir, hire, hure, hyre, pair.</i>		
D. <i>ous, us.</i>	<i>3ou.</i>	<i>hymen, hem, hymyn, paym.</i>		
Acc. <i>ous.</i>	<i>3ou, 3ow.</i>	<i>hymen, hyme, hem, homen, em, beym.</i>		

Ich, which is still retained in the Southern dialects of the present day as *uch*, *utchy*, occurs once in l. 389 of the original draft of the poem in combination with *wille* as *ich chille*, where the *ich* is unnecessary and the corrected copy reads *i wille*.

Ic, which is the Northern form, only appears once, l. 2799. The two forms, *ich* and *I, y*, are used without any distinction, except that if the pronoun follows the verb, the latter form is generally used.

The distinction between the singular and plural pronouns of the second person is regularly observed; *pou*, *pe*, being used in sentences expressing contempt, inferiority, and affection, while *3e*, *3ou*, imply inferiority or respect on the part of the speaker. This Balan addresses Floripas as *pou*, while she uses the plural *3e*. (But see l. 1998.)

A = *he*, which does not occur in any Northern writer, still survives in

modern dialects in the South of England, and is the usual form in the present poem.

Heo is the Southern pronoun corresponding with the Midland *sche, she* (Northern *sco, sho*).

My self, him selue, &c., occur as well as *me selue, þe self, ous self*.

In the pronouns of the third person plural, *þai, þair, þeym*, are Northern forms: *þei* Midland, and the remainder Southern. *Em* is only used in coalescence with a verb, as *castem, affuldem*.

Me, ma, is used as an indefinite pronoun of any person.¹

Hit, it, is usually referred to masculine nouns even in the plural number: thus (l. 1981) we read:—

“Hit beþþ kniȝtes y-sent to me.”

See also ll. 3114, 3183, &c.

We also find such forms as *hure boþen; ȝour summe; þat summe; hur ayþer; hur everech; our on*.

The pronoun frequently coalesces with the verb; thus we find such forms as *leuet* (leave it); *shaket* (shake it); *taket* (take it); *affuldem* (felled them); *profryem* (offer them).

A very noticeable peculiarity of the poem is the reflexive use of the pronoun in conjunction with the noun before an intransitive verb. We commonly find such sentences as the following:—“*þe nyȝt hure neȝhede faste*” (l. 1494); “*endelonges is side þat blod him ran;*” “*þat blod him renneþ;*” “*þat gret host hym come;*” “*on þe wal þat fur him hent;*” “*þe day hym sprunge;*” “*þe day him is a-go;*” “*forth hem wendith þes noble kniȝtes,*”² &c.

þat is commonly used as a relative, and *hwych, wich*, not infrequently is used indefinitely: see, for instance, ll. 514, 3101, &c.

The interrogative pronoun is *Ho, wat, what*; gen. *was*; dat. and acc. *wham*.

VERBS.

1. INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE.

The following are the personal endings:—

¹ It is frequently understood after the verbs *let, make, do*, in such phrases as “to don him sle” (= cause *men* to slay him, cause him to be slain); “let hewen hem flesch & bon.”

² As to this last instance see Prof. Skeat's note to ‘P. Plowman,’ B. Prol. 7.

SINGULAR.

1. *-a, -e, -y, -n*; as *granty, thonky, ha* (I have).
2. *-st*, as *ledest*; very frequently contracted as *gest* (gettest); *abust* (= *abeodest, tellest*)¹; *hurst* (hearest).
3. *-th, -t, -es, -en, -n*.

The ending *-y* of the first person which is purely Southern is common in this poem. The ending in the third person *-t* is used where the original ending *-th* has been contracted, as *stent, stont* (stendeth)²; *calt* (calleth); *bygynt* (beginneth); *telt* (telleth); *lest* (loseth); *sit, syt* (sitteth). Such forms as *rizdt* (he rides) and *typd* (betides) are noticeable.

Of the ending *-es, -s* (a West-Midland and Northern form) we have but very few examples; all that I am aware of are *wendes, ounlekes, strekes* (ll. 1364-5); *gas* (goes)³; *cryes* (l. 3079).

The ending *-en, -n* (Midland) only occurs in a few instances, l. 2195, *gon* (goes); l. 2782, *sen* (I see).

The *e* is very frequently omitted before the *-th* in the third person singular; thus we find *comþ, berþ, scherþ, &c.* In many cases this peculiarity, which still exists in Devonshire, serves to distinguish between the singular and plural.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>-n.</i> | } <i>e, -th.</i> |
| 2. <i>-es, -n.</i> | |
| 3. <i>-en, -n, -es.</i> | |

The Midland ending *-en, -n*, occurs but seldom in comparison with the other endings; but yet is not uncommon. We find *3e sen*; *we han*; *pay comen, &c.*

Of the Northern ending *-es* there is only one instance, viz. *goes*, which occurs in the second and third persons.⁴

There are several instances in which the plural ending *-th* is preceded by an *a*, as *pay prikeath*; *3e loueath, &c.*

¹ Explained by Halliwell wrongly "arranges?"

² According to Dr Morris (*Specimens of Early English*, 1867, Introd. p. xxxv) the rule is that "*-t* is used for *-teth* or *-deth*, only in verbs having *t* or *d* for the last syllable of the root," but from the examples given above it is clear there are numerous exceptions to this rule.

³ See ll. 1975, 2145, &c.

⁴ On l. 5821, Mr Parker says:—"I think this *s* is added, though by the same hand."

PAST TENSE.

The past tense of weak verbs ends in *-e*, *-de*, or *-ta*.

We find instances of inflected verbs as *pou slowe*, &c., as well as of non-inflected; the final *-e* being as often as not omitted.

The third person singular and plural occasionally ends in *-n*, as *hoten* (he bade); *kemen* (they came); *beren* (they bore).

2. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

With one exception there is no instance of any but the Southern forms:—singular, *-e*, plural, *-eth*: *-ath* occurs in *prykeap* (l. 979); *confortiaþ* (l. 1154); and *harneyscheap* (l. 2929); *schewyaþ*; *herknyaþ* (l. 2072).

The Northern imperative ending *-es* occurs only in l. 2347, where we have *letez*.

3. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Here we find a large variety of forms mainly Southern. Thus we have verbs ending in *-a*, *-y*, *-ye*, *-ie*, *-n*, *-ne*, *-o* (*on*). Very frequently the same verb appears in two or more forms; e. g. *sle*, *slee*, *slen*, *slo*, *slone*; *flee*, *flen*, *flene*, *fleo*; *be*, *bee*, *ben*, *bene*, *beo*. *Ha* and *prikea* (l. 3641) are the only instances of infinitives in *-a*.

The endings *-y*, *-ye*, *-ie* (representing older forms in *-ian*) are very common in this poem, but are *never* used by any Northumbrian writers.

The gerundial form of the infinitive occurs in three instances; to *tristying* (= *tristenne*, l. 199); to *done* (l. 811); and to *donde* (l. 681).

The verb to *Have* appears under the following forms:—*ha*, *hab*, *han*, *hane*, *hauen*: while *dan* occurs twice as the infinitive of *do*.

4. PARTICIPLES.

In the present participle instances of the Northern ending *-ande* are not uncommon, the same verb sometimes using it as well as the Southern *-ing*, *-yng*: thus we find such double forms as *fleoing* and *fleand*; *prikyng* and *prikande*; *liggyng* and *liggande*, &c., as well as the single forms, *lyuand*, *flyngande*, &c.¹

5. PAST PARTICIPLE.

The past participles of weak verbs end in *-ed*, *-t*, or *-te*, and of strong verbs in *-en*. In the latter the final *-n* is frequently omitted.

The prefix *i-* or *y-* (peculiar to the Southern dialects, and never used by Northern writers,) abounds throughout the poem.²

¹ Query—Is *gonde* (l. 1890) a present participle?

² This prefix *i-*, *y-*, is not confined to the past part., but is used also in (*a*) other parts

Instead of the prefix *i-* or *y-* we sometimes find *a-*, as *a-slave* (twice combined with *be* into the form *ba-sclave*), *a-go*, *a-broke*.

Verbs in *-che* and *-ge* make their past participles in *-nt*, or *-nte*, a form peculiar to Southern dialects. Thus we have *i-spreynt* (*springe*, to sprinkle); *i-dreynt* (*drenche*, to drown), &c.

To *Be* has the forms *i-be*, *i-beo*, *y-ben*, *be*, *ben*, *bene*, *beo*; and to *Do*; *do*, *done*, *dow*.

Negative Verbs, which occur but very seldom in Northern writers, are here common, e. g., *nas*, *nel*, *nabbe*, *nyste*, *nam*, *nad*, *naþ*, &c.

The curious form *nixt* (mightest) occurs in l. 474, and *syst* (seest) in l. 5809.

The following are examples of the pt. tenses of verbs:—*blan*, *bute*, *carf*, *to-chon*, *clef*, *dradde*, *floze*, *ful*, *gan*, *gun*, *glod*, *huld*, *keem*, *lowe*, *nam*, *nome*, *preynte*, *rozþ*, *schad*, *schar*, *schet*, *shette* (to shoot), *shutte* (to shut), *shutte* (to shoot), *sez*, *skryzte*, *slowe*, *swarf*, *swer*, *sworn*, *swatte*, *praste*, *wep*, *zaf*, *zif*, *zoue*.

Hab occurs in the 2nd person plural of *have*.

The verb to *Be* in the present indicative has the following variety of forms:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>am</i> .	<i>are</i> , <i>beeth</i> , <i>bene</i> , <i>beo</i> , <i>buth</i> , <i>byth</i> .
2. <i>art</i> , <i>ert</i> .	<i>are</i> , <i>buth</i> .
3. <i>is</i> , <i>ys</i> , <i>yssæ</i> .	<i>are</i> , <i>aren</i> , <i>arn</i> , <i>beeth</i> , <i>ben</i> , <i>buth</i> .

Of these *aren* and *arn* are Northern forms.¹

It is not at all an unusual thing to find two different forms in the same line; thus (l. 2940)—“we ne *bup* bote ten her now, & mo ne *beo* we nozt;” and (l. 1070)—“my felawes þat her *beeþ*, knyztæ pay *bup* fol sure.”

In the past tense we find the following forms:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>was</i> .	<i>were</i> , <i>wore</i> , <i>wern</i> .
2. <i>wer</i> .	<i>were</i> .
3. <i>was</i> , <i>wes</i> .	<i>war</i> , <i>ware</i> , <i>wer</i> , <i>were</i> , <i>wern</i> , <i>weore</i> , <i>woren</i> , <i>worne</i> .

In the imperative *beo* is the singular, and *beeþ*, *beþ*, the plural form.

of verbs, as *y-lastæ* (inf.); *y-knowe* (pres.); *y-lif* (imperat.); *y-saw* (pt.): (b) with adjectives, as *i-liche*; (c) with adverbs, as *y-feræ*, *y-mone*, *y-same*.

¹ *Aren* occurs in ‘P. Plowman,’ C. xi. 155.

We also find numerous examples of the *verbal prefixes* peculiar to the Southern dialect. Thus we have :—

1. *An* (*a-*); as *angrise* (*agrise*), to frighten : *anhonge*, to hang ; *a-lacche* (catch).

2. *Of* (for, to); as *of-seche* (seek for); *of-sende* (send for); *of-take* (overtake).

ADVERBS.

With the exception of *algate* and *until*, which are purely Northern forms, the adverbs are mainly Southern. Thus we have :—

1. Adverbs in *-e*, as *longe*, *swype*, *hanne*, *henne* (= *hennene*); *whenne* (= *whanene*); *thenne* (= *thanene*), &c.

2. Adverbs in *-en*; as *suppen*, *wepen* (Northern).

3. Adverbs in *-es*: as *endelonges*, *willes*, *hannes*, *lyues*, *pannes*, *ones*, *wannys*.

4. *Ac* (but); *eke*, *eek*, *yke* (also); *so—so*, *as—so* (*as—as*).

The phrase *some þas* (= soon thereafter, directly), which occurs several times in the poem, is noticeable. Dr Murray inclines to consider *þas* as the genitive of the article (compare “wel was him þas,” in *Early Eng. Poems*, &c., ed. Furnivall, xii. 122); while Dr Morris thinks it is a corruption of *suppes* afterwards.

PREPOSITIONS.

Til (to), a purely Northern preposition occurs frequently. Of peculiarly Southern forms we have :—

1. *An*, *a* (on, in); as *an-hez*, *an-honde*, *a þys side*. The corresponding Northern form *on-* occurs only in *on-lyue*, *on þe lift* (aloft), *on sonder*.

2. *Fram* (from).

3. *Mid* (with).

§ 9. To Mr George Parker, of the Bodleian Library, Oxford, who has always taken a very lively interest in this romance, is due the sole credit of deciphering the MS. Written as it is on bad paper, with bad ink, and with numerous interlineations and corrections, it is difficult for any one who has not seen the MS. to appreciate the difficulties under which he has had to labour—difficulties increased as they have been by his having to compare the proofs with the original in the dull, sunless days of winter, when, as I have

already said, in some passages nothing but a strong sun-light is sufficient to render the writing legible.

To him my best thanks are due, as also to the Rev. Professor Skeat and F. J. Furnivall, Esq., who have rendered me assistance as to the meanings of some obscure words.

S. J. HERRTAGE.

SKETCH OF THE STORY OF "SIR FERUMBRAS."

CHARLES, at the head of his army, had encamped close to Morimond, when Ferumbras, a gigantic Saracen knight, appears and challenges any six of the French knights to single combat (p. 2). Charles requests Roland to accept the challenge, but he refuses (p. 5). Oliver, who is suffering from a serious wound, with difficulty obtains Charles's permission to accept the challenge (p. 10). Ferumbras, despising Oliver's youthful appearance, tries to frighten him (p. 12); asks him to describe Charles and the douzeperes (p. 15); and enquires his name (p. 16). Oliver declaring himself to be a poor knight, Ferumbras derides him, and bids him return and send Roland, or another of the douzeperes (p. 18). Stung at last by Oliver's language, Ferumbras prepares to fight (p. 22). The struggle lasts with varying success, till Ferumbras, in striking at Oliver's head, exposes his side, which Oliver pierces (p. 31). Ferumbras begs for mercy, promising to become a Christian (p. 32), and warns Oliver of an ambush of Saracens close by (p. 34). Oliver, finding himself obliged to abandon Ferumbras, tries to escape by flight, but is surrounded and taken prisoner (p. 36), as are also four others of the Douzeperes, who had come to his assistance (p. 38), and the five are bound, blindfolded, and led away to Balan, at Aigremont (p. 42). Ferumbras, being discovered by Charles, lying wounded, is taken to the French camp and baptised (p. 42). Oliver and the other French captives are brought before Balan (p. 43), who at first orders them to death, but afterwards throws them into a deep dungeon, without food or light (p. 45). Floripas, Balan's daughter, hearing their cries, comes to them, and offers to release them, if they will help her in gaining Guy to her husband (p. 47). They agree, and Floripas conducts them to her own chamber (p. 48). Charles determines on sending a messenger to Balan to demand the restoration

of the prisoners (p. 51), and the seven remaining Douzeperes start (p. 53). On their way they meet seven kings coming from Balan on a similar errand, whom, with one exception, they slay (p. 57). By a trick they pass the bridge of Mantrible (p. 61) and arrive at Aigremont. They deliver their message in turn, and Balan in a rage orders them to prison (p. 66), from which they are saved by Floripas, who leads them to their comrades (p. 68). She then presents to them the Sacred Relics of the Thorns, Cross, Nails, &c., which Ferumbras had carried off from Jerusalem, and sent to his father Balan, the Emir of the Saracens (p. 71); and advises them to kill all the Saracens while unprepared (p. 75). They follow her advice, but Balan escapes (p. 76), and gathering his army, lays siege to the tower (p. 77). Provisions failing, the French sally out (p. 85), and capture a convoy, but are forced to abandon it. Guy is captured (p. 88), and is about to be hanged by Balan, when he is rescued by Roland (p. 96). The French capture a convoy of provisions (p. 99). Balan attacks the tower with a battering ram (p. 103). The tower is set on fire, but the flames are extinguished by Floripas (p. 104). The French Knights in default of stones throw Balan's gold at their besiegers (p. 105). In a sally by night Roland captures Aspayllard (p. 107). Provisions running short, the French determine to send Richard of Normandy to the Emperor Charles the Great for aid (p. 110). Balan, however, besets the bridge so that none can leave the tower (p. 111). After eight weeks he escapes, pursued by King Clarion, whom he slays (p. 116), and crossing the river Flagot by a miracle (p. 123), reaches Morimond, just as the French are starting for France, Charles having given up all hope of his knights (p. 131). By a stratagem the bridge and town of Mantrible are taken (p. 150), and Charles presses on to Aigremont (p. 152). Balan, instigated by the devil, ventures on battle (p. 170): he himself is defeated by Charles, and captured (p. 175), and the Saracens utterly routed (p. 176). Balan, in spite of the entreaties of Ferumbras, refuses to be baptized, and is slain by Ogier (p. 182). Floripas is baptized, and wedded to Guy (p. 183), between whom and Ferumbras Spain is divided; and Charles returns to Paris, where he distributes the Sacred Relics (p. 188).

ERRATA.

Page 209, *note to l. 2034, for gayme read gayne; and for amuse read profit.*

ADDITIONS.

Introd. p. xxii, to forms of 3rd pers. pron., acc. pl., add *þam* (l. 2650; cf. *Lazamon*, l. 763).

Introd. p. xxvii, l. 15, "*sona þas*:" compare *Lazamon*, l. 1787: "*wel was Brutus þas*:" and the *Peterborough Chronicle*, sub ann.: "*Ða com se arcebiscep and sona þæs to þam cyng gewænde*."

p. 38, l. 971. I have since found an instance of this use of *acre*: see *Morte Arthure*, l. 3849:—

"Ane *akere lenghe* one a launde, fulle lothely wondide."


So also Allan Ramsay in his poems, ed. 1844, p. 73, says:—

"By ane *akorbraid* it came nae near him."

To Glossary add—*ABYE*, 176/5657, *vb.* bend, bow. A.S. *abēgan*, the tra. *s.* form corresponding to the intrans. *abūgan*. The two forms appear to be confused by Stratmann under *abezen*, where the first two examples should be referred to *abūzen*. See the *Saxon Chronicles*, ed. Earle, sub ann. 1073 (p. 212):—"swiðe þet land amyrdon. and hit eall *abegdon*. Willelme to handa" (completely devastated that land, and subdued it all under the power of William), and *ibid.* p. 223:—"mycel *abegdan* to heora anwelde" (subdued much of it under their power).

DONE MAN, 109/3445, *pp.* For the explanation of this phrase I am indebted to Prof. Skeat, who refers to *P. Plowman*, B xviii, 298: "to warne pilates wyf what *dones man* was ihesus." The phrase is very rare and singular. Prof. Skeat, in his notes to *P. Plowman*, shows that "*dones* is the *pp.* *don*, made, used as a substantive, and even taking a genitive suffix, such as we see in the phrase *what kynnes man*." He refers to three other instances of the phrase, two being from the B. fragment of the *Alexander Alliterative Romances*, ll. 222, 999 (MS. Bodley 264).

Since the footnote ⁽¹⁾ to p. xiii of the Introduction was written, a paper MS. of the early part of the 15th century has been purchased by the authorities of the British Museum. This MS., amongst many other poems, contains two Charlemagne Romances, the first, which is entitled "The Siege of Milan," being unique, while the second is a version of "Sir Otuel" (No. 2), but varying so much as to be practically an entirely different poem. Both these romances are now in the press for the E. E. T. S.

 The cost of the *Gesta* and *Sir Ferumbras* being over the income of the Extra Series for 1879, the Committee give notice that *Sir Ferumbras* must be looked on as partly an 1880 book, tho included in the 1879 issue.—F.

CHARACTERS OF THE ROMANCE.

Charlemagne, Emperor of France, &c.

Balan (Laban), Emir of the Saracens.

Ferumbras, Balan's son ; defeated in single combat by Oliver, and converted to Christianity.

Floripas, daughter to Balan ; in love with Sir Guy, to whom she is finally married.

Reyner, a French Knight, father of Oliver.

Roland.

Oliver.

Terry (Thierry).

Geoffrey.

Ogier.

Basyn.

Naymes.

Richard of Normandy.

Berard.

Aubrey.

Gwylmer.

Guy of Burgundy.

Raoul.

Howel.

Alorys.

Gerard.

Hugo.

Gwenylon (Ganelon)

Hautefulle.

Malkare.

Hardree.

Turpin, the Bishop.

Alagolofure, a Saracen giant ; warden of the Bridge of Mantribe.

Brytamon : Balan's gaoler at Aigremont.

Turgys.

Kargys.

Lucifer of Bandas.

Lampatrys.

Moradas.

Clarion.

Sortybran.

Bruyllant.

Aspayllard.

Tenebre.

Bruyllant, King of Persia, brother to Balan.

Maubyn, a Saracen thief.

Enfachoun, a Saracen giant.

Amyote, a giantess, wife to Enfachoun, slain by Charles.

Malyngbras, Balan's messenger.

Maumecet : chamberlain to Floripas.

Maragounde : governess to Floripas.

} Charlemagne's *douzeperes*.

} French Knights.

} Saracen Kings.

Sir Ferumbras.

[*Ashmole MS. 33, Bodleian Library.*]

(As the first leaf of the Ashmole MS. is lost, the missing introductory lines are here given from the edition of "Fierabras," published in the Series of "Les Anciens Poètes de la France," from the MS. in the French National Library, No. 180.)

[S]eignour, or faites pais, s'il vous plaist, escoutez
Canchon fiere et orible, jamais meilleur n'orrez,
Ce n'est mie menchoigne, mais fine verités.
A Saint Denis en France fu li raules trouvés :
Plus de cent cinquante ans a yl esté celez.
Or en ores le voir, s'entendre me volés,
Si com Karles de Franche, ki tant fu redoutés,
Reconquist la coronne dont Dix fu couronnés,
Et les saintismes claus, et le signe honneré,
Et les autres reliques dont ill i ot assés.
A Saint Denis en France fu li tresors portés ;
Au perron, au lendi, fu partis et donnés.
Pour les saintes reliques dont vous après orés,
Por chou est il encore li lendis apelés.
Ja n'i doit estre treus ne nus tresors donnés ;
Mais puis par convoitisse fu cis bans trespasés ;
Moult par est puis li siecles empiriés et mués ;
Se li peres est maus, li fix vaut pis assés,
Et du tout en tout est li siecles redoutés,
Ke il n'i a un seul, tant soit espoentés,
Ki tiegne vraiment ne foi ne loiautés.
N'en dirai ore plus, s'arai avant alé.

FERUMBRAS.

Listen to me,

4 and I will
tell you a
wonderful
and true
story of
Charles,

8 the doughty
king
who recover-
ed the crown
of thorns,
the nails,
and the other
sacred relics,

12 and brought
them to
St Denys.

16

20

B

Charles had
collected all
his barons,

Karles ot ses barons semons et demandées

De par toute sa tere où est sa poestés ;

24

Moult fu grans li barnages quant il fu assanles.

and advanced
on Morimoud.

Tant les a l'enpereres et conduis et menés,

K'es vaus sur Morimonde a fait tendre ses trées.

Oliver, who
commanded
the advance-
guard,

Oliviers li jentieus, ki tant fu alosés,

28

Icil fist l'avangarde à .v^e. fersarmés ;

is suddenly
attacked by
the Saracens
in the valley
of Rayer.

Le val Raier garda tout contreval les prés.

Et paien lor salirent à l'issue des gués ;

.L. mile furent, les gonfanous fremés,
is wounded,
and the
French are
on the point
of being put
to flight,
when Charles
with his old
knights
comes to
their aid.

.L. mile furent, les gonfanous fremés,

32

Pour calanger les teres et les grans yretés.

Olivier li gentius i fu le jour navrés.

Desconfit fuissent Franc, c'est fine verités,

Quant les secourut Karles o les viellars barbés,

36

Et paien s'en tournerent les frains abandonés.]

[leaf 1]

. . . Charlis doghti [knyztes] . . . ta . le as pay a waywarde spedde

Mo þan a þausend with out slowe þai as pay fledde

& drow hym wiþ on . . are : with his host þat was þere. 40

Ac Olyuer was a-woundede sare : at þat tyme wiþ a spere.

That night
Charles said
that his old
knights had
borne them
better than
the young
barons.
Roland heard,
and the
boasting
grieved him.
Next morn-
ing, after
mass,

¶ þat nyzt was Charl[es] proude] y wet : & auainted his kniȝtes olde.

& sayde þat pay had [boren] hem bet : þan ys zonge barouns bolde.

& [Rolan]d iherd hit euery del : & his auauunttyngge hem greuede sore,

Ac þoȝ him self had born him wel : þanne spak he no more. 45

Erlích on þe morrwenyng þe kyng aras : & al his chiluelarie,

& hurd is masse wan hit was : & so to þe mete gan hye,

& al on murȝþe was he y-sete : wiþ a fair baronye ; 48

Ac or he hadde þane half y-zete : on herte him gan to nuye,

comes a
Saracen
knight.

Wan cam þer a Sarsyn [werreour] þere : by-fore is host al-one :

Of such anoper herde ȝe nere : nowar þar ȝe han gone,

Of Strengþe, of schap, of hugenys : of dedes of armes bolde. 52

þe kyngdom of Alysandre was al his : & fro babyloyne, þat holde,

Riȝt in to þe rede see : lord was he and syre.

To ma[r]trye cristen men & slee : þat was his desyre.

Alexandria
was his, and
all from
Babylon to
the Red Sea.

Apulia,
Palermo and
Russia were
his subjects.

Poille, palerne, and russaye : he putte to seruage, 56

To holde of hym by maystrye : & to do til hym homage.

But for pay of Rome in such a cas : wolde noȝt grantte ys [wille]

- He slow þe Pope þat þo was : and alle þat he myzt tille :
 Cardynals, Abbotes & Pryours : monekys & frerys eke,
 & alle clerkes of honours : boþe pore & reke,
 Saue nunnes : sloȝ he sykerly : þe relygyous þat þar war.
 Wyemen he tok, & lay hem by : & afterward duden hem [slee]
 þat Cite a struyede, & þanne beer : þe relyqes fayre & free,
 Of wham y tolde ȝow of eer : þe croune & þe nayles thre.
 Of ierusalem & of al þat lond : lord he was aboute,
 þer-for þer duden vntil his hond : many a sarsyn loute ;
 Of turkys, persans & arrabyen : gret puple had he wypholde.
 He ne doutede þer-for non cristen men : so riche was he of golde.
 He was departid fram ys host : þat was ful gret of nombre,
 & soȝte þat contree & al þat cost : cristenmen to encombre.
 Wan he with non ne may ymete : on herte him greueþ sare ;
 To Charlisward rod he wiþ herte grete : & fyndeþ hym loged þ[are]
 In paулons riche & wel abuld : a fair host him aboute.
 . . þe¹ feldes wern al y-fuld : wiþ hym & wiþ his route.
 ¶ Wan he was war of þe frenschemen : on h[ert] him likid ille
 He stynte & þoȝte noȝt remuye hem : þere til he ha foȝt is fille.
 By þe egle of gold þat briȝte schon : vppon charlis paулoun
 knew he þer-by þe kyng, was on : þat was of gret renoun :
 & ful wel saw hym whar he sat : & knew him by his araie.
 for angre þat he toke of þat : he wax so pal so clay—
 By Mahonet ys oþ þanne a swer : as he was þar al-one
 þat he ne wolde for no fer : out of þat felde gone,
 Er Charlis wiþ þe hore berde : wer take ouþer a-slaȝe,
 & discoumfite were al his ferde : þat lyuede on þe cristene lawe,
 him self schelde þer ben is bane : he swor þan by his driȝte.
 now wil ych to ȝow telle ys name : & sigge ȝow wat he hyȝte
 ¶ Syre Fyrumbras of Alysandre : me calde þat Sarsyn.
 His body wold he putte in auntre : for þere riȝt þoȝte he lyn
 & liȝt hym doun an vndre a tree : a boȝe-schot fram þat host :
 þar-to ys stede þan tyep he : & gan to blowe bost.
 He seȝ Charllys sitte & ete : þan þoȝte he as a stod,
 If he may let him of his mete : ys herte hit wold do gode.

He had slain
the Pope,

60

64 and destroyed
the city of
Rome.

He was lord
of Jerusalem.

68 He had
fought with
Turks,
Persians and
Arabians,

and had come
to that coun-
try to haras
Christians.

72

[leaf 1, back]

76

By the
standard he
knew the
king is there.

80

He grows
pale with
anger,
and swears to
take or slay
Charles.

84

88 Fyrumbras
[Fyrumbras]
of Alexandria
was his name.

He alights
under a tree.

92

¹ Originally [Al] þe. the Al having been erased.

- and cries to Charles,
"Send thy
best knight
panne cryede he "Charlis, with þe berde : herkne what y speke :
[S]end me þe beste knyzt of þy furde : myn auger for to wreke,
Duk Roland, oper Olyuer : ouper any of þy route, 96
- to fight with
me.
& fízte y wile wiþ hem her : beo þay nozt so stoute :
& if þat on of hem ne dar him self : wiþ me fízte al one
Send hem boþe on þyn helf : to fízte wiþ me ymone ;
[&] if þay two ne buþ nozt bolde : azen me to fízte on stoure, 100
[Of] such þre y ne 3yue auelde : & þo3 þer come foure,
and
though there
come twelve
[&] þo3 þer come twelue : þe beste of þy fered,
[B]ot if y slee hem sone helue : ne kep y neuere ete bred.
I will pound
them to dust.
[I] wil kuþe on hem my mizt : & dyngen hem al to douste. 104
Wheþer þay wille on fote fíz : ouper on horse iouste,
Send hem hider to me anan : for ich hymen her diffye,
Ouper by Mahoun þat made man : þou schalt wel sore a-bye.
Y haue wyþ myn handes two : y-slawe kynges tene, 108
So schal y þe now or þow go : þat al men schal it sene."
he dude his helm þan of is hed : & set him doun þat tyde ;
Of þyng he haueþ þer y-sed : an answer he þo3te a byde. 111
[leaf 2]
Charles is
angry,
Kying Charlys þe Sarsyns speche y-hurde¹ : & so dude al his host,
& how foule þat þe freke him furde : blowing such a bost ;
He was atened of his envy : he tok of hym so lizte,
And asked of Rychard of normandy : if he knew þat knyzte 115
þat mad hem þer so peryllous : & auauntid him þo so 3erne.
"He ne telleþ bote lyte of ous : bæ his wordes sterne ;
Proutelich he auauntteþ hem : wiþ xij. for to fízte. 118
Wiþ þe beste þat buþ of al my men : & to dulfulle deþe hem di3te."
¶ "3ea," quað Ri[chard], "with outen op : y knowe him wel to wisse ;
Hit is on þe grettest kyng for sop : þat dwelleþ in hepenisse. 121
In al paynye nys prync3 ne kyng : þat berþ so gret a name :
þo3 out þe werld of is beryng : spryngelþ los & fama.
Ne douteþ he kyng ne Emperour : þe value of a ryssche, 124
þar for hem folwyþ al þat flour : þat in paynye ysse."
¶ þanne þe kyng gan waxe wroþ : & aboute him gan be-holde,
& by seynt dynys a swer is op : þat after þat tyme a nolde
Ete ne drynke no more þat day : for none kynnes þynge, 128
Ete ne drynke no more þat day : for none kynnes þynge,

¹ Charlys [sat &] hurde.

- Or on of hys¹ in god aray : had fozt with þat kyng.
 ¶ þe Emperour, sir Charlemayn : a wondrede of þat man :
 More wolde he wyte fayn : & of Richard askep þan
 What ys rizte name was : þat made such a slaundre. 132
 "Sire," said he, "sir Fyrumbras : þe kyng of Alysandre :
 þys ys he þat be-lay : Rome py gode Citee,
 & þyn relyques bar away : þe croune & þe nailles three, 135
 þat þou & þyne with strengþe of hond : in hepnisse sum tyme wonne.
 To cristenmen in many a lond : gret sorwe he haþ by-gonne."
 ¶ Wan þe frensche i-hurde þys : sore pay wern afrizte, 138
 Was non of hymen þat wolde y-wys : profryem with him to fize ;
 Euereche behuld on oþer tho : bot ech man held hym stille.
 Charlis bot is lippen tho : for he nad nozt is wille,
 ¶ He clipede is neuewe duk Roland : þat was aman of myzte, 142
 & prayede him faire to take an hond : azen hym to take þe fyzte.²
 Roland answerede wyþ egre mod : & sayde so most he þe,
 Leuere him were he were wod : oþer hanged on þe tre,
 Or he wolde euere after þan : for hys prayere fize 146
 Wyþ Sarasyn ne with cristen man : noþer in wrong ne rizte.
 "For zester neite wan we had fize : zonder out on þe playne,
 A þousent þer we putte to fize : & x þousent þer wern sleyne,
 & My³ felawe Erld Olyuer : was þar y-wounded sare ; 150
 Alle þe hadden be a-slawe ther : with sarsyns þat þer ware,
 Ne had þyn do[33]epers þe bet i-swonke : ich & my felawes :
 & to-nizt wan þat þov were dronke : þan þou laigest py lawes,
 & saydest þat þyn knyktes hore : hadden wel betere ifyzt⁴ 154
 þan we þat zonge knyktes wore : þat disconfitedem alle with myzt.
 þyn angre⁵ ous greuede sore : wan þou toke of ous so lyzt ;
 At al men know⁶ þat þar weore : þat þov saigest ounrizt,
 þou madest þat anaunt, soþ to saye : for to preyse þe selue. 158
 Ac⁶ Be-hold aboute now y praye : ouer and on euery helue.
 Hwych of him wil take þe fize : azen þat Sarsyn strong ;

of his has
fought with
that king.

'And the
man's name?'
'Sir Feruin-
bras,' says he,
'the King of
Alexandria.'

The French
are
frightened.

None would
fight with
him.

Charles prays
Roland to
take the fight
in hand.
Roland
refuses,

[leaf 2, back]

because
Charles had
insulted him.

'Look about
who will take
the fight,

¹ hys [pers] in.

² Aze [þe sarsyn to] fyzte.

³ My [owe].

⁴ MS. altered (?) to ifozt.

⁵ þyn [speche]

⁶ The MS. has a line drawn from Ac to At above; the Ac being added before Behold. The line originally ran:—Be-hold aboute y þe praye : her by euery helue.

for I will not.' For y ne wil noȝt by god almyȝt : & wyt þat þyn owen wrong,
 & ho so takeþ hit on þy part : y swere by cryst in trone, 162
 Of me neuere after-wart : loue ne get he none."

¶ "A : glotoun," saide þe Emperer : "entempre þou beter þy tonge¹,
 If þow nere my cosyn þe near : wel heȝe scholdestou be honge." 165

Charles, with
 his gloves,
 smites
 Roland in the
 face.
 Roland draws
 his sword,
 but the others
 separate
 them.

Wiþ gloues² þat he þan had an hond : þat wiþ gold ibotened were,
 In þe face smot he duke Rolond : þat þe blod sprong out þere.
 þe duk a syde þanne gan to sterte : & drow ys swerd anon, 168
 & wolde ys vncle þar-wiþ herte : nad oþre between hem gon.

¶ "Alas" : quap Charlis þar a stod : "wel sory now may y be,³
 Wan he þat ys my flesche & blod : wiþ wepne assaylleþ me :
 & he þat scholde me socoury : to ȝen myn enymys 172
 Despyseþ me her dispytously : & telt of me no prys.

Now y pray to god of heuene : þat al þyng knoþ & seeþ,
 Ne lyue he noȝt þys day til euene : wyþ oute schentful deef."

Charles
 orders him
 to be put to
 death,

for wrappe þan him criep þe kyng : & het to taken him sone, 176
 & swer he nolde ete ne drynk : til he to deþe wer done.

but Roland
 swears whose
 comes near
 him shall
 be slain.

¶ Roland huld ys swerd a-drawe : & swer bi god al one
 Ho so neȝed him schold ba-sclawe : & cloue doun to þe stone.
 Wan þe frensche men ihurde þys : þay douted him for to fonde, 180
 þan was non sa hardy y-wys : on hym to leyn no honde.

Oger
 interposes.

¶ Oger spak for duk Roland : & praide þe kyng to cesse,
 & saide "sire, ȝe doþ hym wrong : to smyten him on þis presse.
 Wel ofte he haueþ socourd ȝow : & of ȝour fon ȝov venged, 184
 Wer for y rede cessyep now : til eft hit may be amended."

[leaf 8]
 Charles is
 sorry.

Charlis be-huld þan how ys blod : ran doun of ys face⁴
 þe lasse him wondrede þoȝ ys mod : til anger gunne him chace,
 þoȝ he for him þan sory were : no wonder for soþ hit nace 188
 Amonges þe lordes alle þere : ofte he saide "alace !
 Fader, & sone, & holy gost : wat schal y don," he⁵ sede,
 "Suppe þe man y trist an most : for-sakeþ me at my nede,
 & draȝþ ys swerd bi-fore my fas : to sle me ȝif he miȝte ? 192
 þat y so longe scholde lyue alas : to sen hit wiþ my siȝte !"

¹ [measure] þou beter þy [speche].

² Wiþ [þe] gloues.

³ [Now] sory may y be.

⁴ These words, face, chace, nace, alace, are altered from a final s in a hand of the same date.

⁵ MS. he [he.]

¶ Duk Neymes þan him spak anon : & sayde wordes wyse—

“At þis tyme, sir, now let him gon : he wil him betre auyse ;
3e habbeþ knyghtes among ous her : þe beste þat moȝe be founde, 196
Sendeþ anoper doþþeper : to fiȝte wiþ þat hounde.”

Duke
Neymes then
said, ‘Let
him go,

and send
another.’

¶ “By god,” quath þe kyng, “now it is so : þat Rolond hit haþ for sake,
y knowe non opre to tristyng to : batail with him to take,¹
Out-take hys felawe Olyuere² : & he were hol & sounde ;
ac he lyþ hert now with a spere : & bereþ a gryslich wounde.”

200 ‘I know none
but Oliver,’
says the king,

‘and he is
sorely
wounded.’

¶ As he þanne³ stod & þoȝte : to wham he speke may,
þe tydyngge was to Olyuer broȝte : þer he on bedde lay
Of þe sarsyn þat was y come : & of þe kyng al so,
& how Roland haþ Charlys vndernome : & wold noȝt þat batail do.

204 Meanwhile
Oliver had
heard of the
Saracen,

¶ Wan þe Erld hit vnderstod : þat Rolond hit nolde take
To fiȝte aȝen þe Sarsyn wod : & al for wrappes sake,
& non opre ne profrede him noȝt : þat batail to vnde[r]fonge,
Him was ful wo þan on is þoȝt : & ofte sekede amonge ;

208 and how none
would fight
with him.

Sone he arerd him after þan : & lokede oppon is syde,
& saw is blod how [doun] it ran : out of is wonde wyde :
Hys wounde was þo in yuel aray : & for Angwys gan to chlyne.

212 Soon he lifts
himself up,
and seeing
how his blood
runs from
his wound,

Olyuer tok his mantel of say : gold peynt hit was wel fyne,
& rent hit al to peces smal : & þer wiþ is wonde he diȝte,
& stoppede is wounde þer wyþ al : & bond hure as he miȝte.
þan he clepede ys squyer : Garyn, & til hym he sayde :

tears his
mantle to
pieces,

and stops his
wound with
it.

“Do þat myn armes sone be heer : & help me y were a-rayde :
I wil fiȝte wyþ þat heþene kyng : as crist me helpe & rede.
ne langede me neuere more do þyng : þat toched mannes dede.”

216

Then calls
for his arms.

¶ Garyn þanne answered aȝen : “sire, wat hast þow þoȝt ?
Wilt þ^a silf willes lete þe slen : þy purpos ne preyse y noȝt.
By-þenk þe how þy blod ys schad : & hast a gryslich wounde ;
How scholdest þou fiȝte þat art so mad : wyþ þat heþene hounde ?”

220 His squire,
Garyn,
remonstrates
with him,

¶ “Let of þy speche,” þe Erld hym saide : “for no þyng wil y spare, [leaf 3, back]
Bot y made til hym abraȝde : of blisse y were al bare.
To helpe my liege lord Charloun : to batail mot y fare,
y wil hold vp his renoun : wyþ al my myȝt & mare.

225

but Oliver
insists.

¹ [þat battail] with him to take.

² Out-take [þe gode erld] Olyuere.

³ As he [hyþoȝte him] þanne.

If y him faillede on þys nede : wan Roland hit haþ for-sake 228

þer is non oþer, so god me spede : þat wil hit vndertake :

ne schal no man bet proue is frende : bot a-say hem on his nede,

y praye þ°, Garyn, as þou ert hende : go bryng þou forþ my wede."

"Sir," said he wel delfolly : " þoȝ hit beo noȝt my wille 232

y wol þe armye sykerly : þy purpos to fulfille."

His arms
are brought,
and he puts
them on,

his armes he bryngþ him þanne anon : & Olyuer gan him schride,

wiþ is hosen of mayle he by-gon : nolde he no leng a-byde :

& suppe an haberke al of steel : on is body he caste, 236

Garyn hur lacede faire & weel : & mad hur sitte faste.

His helm he setteþ on is heuede : & fastnede þe auentaille.

Hautecler is swerd was noȝt be-leued : he gurd him *with* saun faille.

Garyn his gode stede hym fette : þat was in spaygne iboȝt ; 240

mounts his
steed,

þe erld lep vp wyþ oute lette : his styrop trepede he noȝt,

And smot þe stede him to saye : wiþ is spores of golde.

þe stede was god & lup a waye : wel fifty fet i-tolde ;

þat gode hors blessedde he þo : & louely strek ys mane, 244

He miȝte sikerly hym triste to : hym semede wel by þane.

"Garyn," quap Olyuer, " wel þe be : þov hast wel kept my stede,

If y may lyue & come age : ȝelde y wil þy mede." 247

takes his
shield and
spear,

¶ Garyn him þankede & tok hym als : his scheld *with* hym to bere,

& Olyuer hit heng a-boute is hals : & til him tok a spere.

wan he was armed on horses bak : a fair knyȝt a was to see,

a iolif on wyþ oute lak : boþe strong & fers was hee.

God him spede for his miȝt : now he takþ ys waye, 252

wiþ þe werste Sarsyn wil he fiȝt : þat he dude euere a-saye.

and rides to
Charles' tent.

¶ fforþ þan rod he stoutely : wel i-armed oppon his stede,

ys herte was god & sykerly : serued him to do þat dede : 255

he lifte vp ys hond & blessed him þan : & recomandedem to god almiȝte,

To Charlis paunlloun þe way he nam : til hym rod ful riȝte.

AS Charlys was in his greuance : stondyng among his feren, 258

& counsailede *with* þe grete of fraunce : & *with* ys doppeperen,

Roland drow him a-side þare : among hem he ne keem,

& þan he by-gan repentye sare : þat he haþ greued his Eem. 261

[leaf 4]
Roland is
sorry that

Wel sore him greuede þat þe kyng : was angred for ys sake,

þan had he leuere þan eny þyng : had he þat batail take :

- þer to wolde he þanne be fayne : for schame ȝif he miȝte
 ffor þat batail to dereyne : profry hym forþ to fiȝte. 265 he offended
Charles.
- ¶ Olyuer rideþ wyþ sper & scheld : in-to þe pauylloun,
 Many was þe knyȝt þat him beheld : wan he spak ys resoun :
 To þe kyng said he among þe pres : " y haue þe serued ȝore 268 Oliver
reminds
Charles of his
long service,
- In werre & eke in lond of pes : wel seuen ȝer & more,
 & euere suppe y haue me raid : redely to þy seruise,
 & ȝut i holde me wel apaid : to don þe same gyse,
 for y haue me preued on þy werre : to fiȝte agen þy foes. 272
- In many a lond boþ ner & ferre : y gete me prys & loes ;
 y þank þe þat in many a lond : my name ys kud aboute.
 & namliche be cause of duk Rolond : þe more me doþ me doute,
 for sippen to gaddre we furstly knewe : neuere ous two to sterte. 276
- We habbeþ be felawes gode & trewe : in body & eke on herte ;
 he haþ me holpen in many plas : syn we to-gadre come.
 y þonky þat ȝow & godes gras : þat he tok frendschip to me.
 for al my seruise y haue þe don : y pray þe now a bone, 280
- Oþer sond ne kep y non : so þow hit grante sone."
- ¶ þe kyng ansuerede him a-ȝe : " dure frend, say þy wille,
 be it castel, burgh, outhur Cite : & ich hit wol ful-fille.
 And wan we comeþ to fraunce : more miȝt þou craue, 284
- As god ȝyue þe gode chaunce : ask on & þou schalt haue."
- ¶ þe Erld hym þonkeþ lome : & til him gan to sayne :
 " Graunte, sire, þe batayl to me : þe sarasyn to fiȝte agayne,
 for al þe seruise y haue þe do : y aske non oþer þyng." 288 and asks to
be allowed
to accept
Ferumbras'
challenge.
- Alle þat herd him wondrede þo : of is bold askyng ;
 & for he was wonded so sore : þat is colour was neȝ a-go,
 hymen wondrede wel þe more : þat he therste hym profry to.
- ¶ þan saide Charlis kyng : " Olyuer, what hast þou þoȝt ? 292 Charles
remonstrates
with him.
- By-þenk þou art y-woundȝyng : & neȝ þe deþe ybroȝt,
 & art now al þat of hewe : for þe blod þou hast schad,
 & þy wounde ys ȝut al newe : & no medecyn naueþ ihad,
 how miȝtest þou now fiȝte þanne : þy miȝte ys þe be reued, 296
- wyþ þat myȝty heþene manne : y rede þe þat þou leuet."
- ¶ " Nay," quap O[liver], " be god of heuene : for no þyng wil y spare,
 noȝt for grete Citees seuene : in what lond þat þay ware.

- & if 3e been a trewe kyng : þat batail wil y haue." 300
- [leaf 4, back] ¶ "Noȝt by my wil for noȝyng" : said he so god him saue.
 Then þanne þer come bi fore Charloun : Gweneyloun & hardree.
 Gweneyloun and Hardree come before Charles. Cristes cors come on hure croun : for traytours wern hee!
 They were traitors, and ere three As 3e schul huren after þys : or passede 3eres three 304
 years they betrayed the king and were hanged. pay be-traiede þe kyng & his : war-for þai had hure fee,
 an honged þai weren & to-drawe : þer after boþe two,
 As for traytours 3af þe lawe : for traysoun pay had ido¹.
 þanne wolde pay wel faze : 3if þei miȝt helpe to 308
- They say to the king, 'According to the law of parliament,
 þat sir Olyuer hadde be slaȝe : & to þe kyng pay saide þo :
 ¶ "Syre, hit ys ordeynt be parlyment : among ous to ben yholde,
 þat wat be rewarded be tweyre assent : þ^e pridde assenty sholde : 311
 Hit ys rewardet ous two be twyne : þat Olyuer schal wende & take
 þe batayl wiþ þe 3ond Sarsyne : & do hit for þy sake."
 ¶ þe kyng answered þis traytours : "Gweneyloun & hardree,
 For 3our iuggiment out of cours : haue 3e muche maugree ! 315
 Now schal he to þat batail fare : on him 3e hit habbeþ ypilt ;
 & if þe sarsyn ouercomþ þim þare : certis 3e bereþ þ^e gilt.
 Body & saule mot y forfare : 3if hit be falleþ so,
 Bot if 3e boþe for-þynk hit sare : 3our lyues schul 3e for-go." 319
- 'Christ shield us,' they say. "So crist," quaf þay, "scheld ous fram care : þat batayl mot be do,
 & alþoȝ he ben a-slawe þare : what mowe we do þer-to ?"
 'May he never return.' By twene hem þan þay sede stille : "ne come he neuere aȝen !"
 For þat was al hure herte wille : þat þe sarsyn schold him alen.
- Charles wishes him God speed. ¶ Charlis to Oliuer saide þo : "god help þe, dere herte, 324
 þat þou mote ouercome our fo² : & come aȝeyn in querte.
 y hope þe scholde spede wel : nere þy greuous wounde,
 ȝut trist y to god þat so þe schal : for þyn herte is hol & sounde."
- Reyner, ¶ Wiþ þat com forþ Duk Reyner : þat of Genyue duk was þo, 328
 Olyuers fader, a knyȝt ful feer : for him his herte was wo :
 "Mercy, quaf he to kyng Charloun : my sone ys wonded sore,
 Fram hym ys falle ys blod adoun : how miȝte he fiȝte more.
 He ys boþe paal & feynt : & ȝut me greues more, 332
- ¹ [god] for traysoun, &c. ² ouercome [þy] fo.

Original draft. From him ys falle his blod adoun . how miȝte he fiȝte more ?" 331

þat if he beo þer in batail atteynt : þou lest þy los þerfore."

¶ þan him answerede Gweneylloun : & Hardre in hure scorn :

"þov hast y dremed of venesoun : þov mostest drynke a torn.

He schal do now þat he be-sozte : for we assentieþ to :

ho so wil or wil hit nozt : þat batail he mot do."

¶ "zif hym þy blessing, swete Reyner : saide Charlis kyng,
For fízte he mot wyþ þat sarsyn feer : me semep bi hure tellyng."

þe duk hef vp an hez his hond : & blessede his sone þare,

& O[liuer] þat was wel fre to fond : tok is leue to fare.

for him praiede many a wyzt : þat god him scholde spede,

boþe kyng, duk, erld & knyht : scholde help him in þat nede.

DVc Oliuer him rideþ out of þat plas : in a softe amblere,
ne made he non oþer pas : til þey wern met y-fer¹ :

And wan he cam þer as he was : pyderward he caste ys chere,

& fyndeþ þer sir Fyrumbras : liggyng on þ^e erþe there.

¶ Wan he saw erld Olyuer : a tornþ him þat oþer side ;

Azeyn him for to arise þer : dedeyngnede he þo for pride.

þe knyzt him nezeþe þanne neer : & spak til him þat tide :

"Arys vp, Sarsyn, þat ert so feer : no lenger ne miȝtþou bide ;

¹ til þey [come], &c.

Gweneilon
and Hardres
inalet.

336

'Give him thy
blessing,'
says the king.

340

[leaf 5]
The duke
blesses his
son ;
many pray
God speed
him.

344 Oliver rides
away,

and finds
Ferumbras
lying down.

348

Oliver calls
to him, 'Arise,

[þan him answerede Gweneylloun] & Hardre in hur scorn :

þou [ha]st y met of venysoun [þou mostest] drynke a torn

[He moste] ytake þat he bi-sozt [for] we assentieþ to

Ho so wil or wil hit nozt . he [mot þat batail do]

. saide charlis þou zif hym þy blessinge

Siker he

þe duke hef vp an-hez his hond & blessid is sone þare ;

& Olyuer was fre to fond & forþ he gan to fare.

For him prayede many wizt þat god him scholde spede,

Boþe of baroun & eke knyht : & holp him in þat nede.

Oliuer torneþ him þanne wiþ an hardi chere,

Toward þat heþene manne he rideþ a softe amblere ;

Til he cam þer þat he was him þozte ech stap was þre,

At þe laste he fyndeþ Fyrumbras liggyng vnder a tre.

Whan he of saw¹ Sir O[lyuer] he turnep þat oþre side,

Him dedeyngnede to him arise þer, so ful he was of pride.

þe knyzt him nezeþe ner & ner, & spake to him as he lay,

& askude of him what he were þat made such affray,

¹ of saw added above the line.

334 Original
draft.

336

340

344

348

	& þat auantyngge þat þou hast mad : & þou hit meyteyne wolle	352
and defend thysel;	Loke þat þou be armed sad : & hele þy bare scolle :	
I am come to fight with thee.	y am come her .o. semple knyzt : y-redy <i>with</i> þe to fize,	354
	yf þou þyn auunt perfony myzt : a-rys vp anon & dizt þe."	
Ferumbras says scorn- fully, 'If thou knewest me thou wouldst not offer to fight me,	¶ Fyrumbras on him glente ys eyze : scornfullich & low :	
	"Lef," saide he, "þy grete foleye : y rede þe for þy prow,	
	For if þou yknewe me arizt : my doynge & my creaunce,	358
	þou noldest profry me no fize : for al þat gold of fraunce.	
altho' I am alone.	Al þoȝ y ben her my self al one : a gret lord am y holde,	
	A kyng ycrounede on my trone : þe richeste man on molde.	
I am Ferum- bras of Alexandria, the troubler of Christen- dom.	Fyrumbras is my name : of Alysandre kyng y-tolde,	362
	In tal þe worlde sp[r]ynggeþ fame : of myne dedes bolde.	
	¶ Wyþ my werres y haue a-nyed : muche of cristendome,	
	& spayne & poyle y haue distryed : þe Citee eke of Rome ;	365
I slew the pope and all his cardinals.	þer slow ich þa[n] [þe] pope prout : & al his Cardynales þat yfond,	
	& alle þat wern of þe rout : y slow hem <i>with</i> myn hond.	
and took the Crown of Thorns and the Nails	¶ þanne tok ich þe croune of thorn : & þe nayles three,	
	þat paynede crist wan he was born : on þe rode Tree,	
and sent them to the Emir Balan, my father.	& send hem to þe Amerel Balaan : my fader to present.	370
	Muche del of cristendam : y haue y-slawe & brent :	

<i>Original draft.</i>	& þat anaunt þat he gan make zif he metenye wolde	352
	A preydem army him for þat sake for <i>with</i> him fize he scholde.	
	Fyrumbras on him glent his eye scornfully & low :	
	"Lef þou," seid he, "þy foleye, y rede þe for þi prow ;	
	If þou yknewe me arizt & wat is my creance,	358
	þou woldest profrie me no fize for al þat gold of fraunce.	
	þoȝ y be her now al-one a gret lord <i>ich</i> am iholde,	
	A kyng [y-]crounede on my trone, þe richest man of molde.	
	Fyrumbras ys my name, of Alisandre ich am kynge,	362
	In tal þe world sprynggeþ fame of my wel berynge.	
	ich am pilke þat haþ destruiet ¹ muche of cristente :	
	Al Spaygne an[d] poile y haue anuyed, & Rome <i>ȝour</i> oȝe Cite.	
	þar y slow þe pope of Rome & alle his cardinals,	366
	& alle þat wolde noȝt loute to me þanne slow <i>ich</i> als :	
	þar tok <i>ich</i> þe croune of þorn & þe nailes pre,	
	þat peyne crist wan he was born on þe rode tre,	
	& sende hem my fader Balahen & zif hem to present.	370
	Miche puple of cristen men me self y haue i-schent.	

¹ destruiet [Rome].

Fram babylony þat ys my owe tour : in to [þe] rede see
 Al þe lordes of honour : hure londes holdeþ of me.
 Ierusalem, naym, & ierico : ich wan wyþ my prowesse,
 & alle þe tounes aboute al so : boþe more & lesse.¹
 þe croys þat ihesus deyed an : & þe sepulchre al so,
 With dede of armes ich hem wan : & relyqes many mo."
 ¶ þanne saide Olyuer "by my croun : y hure wel by þy sawe
 þow hast y-do distruccion : myche to cristen lawe ;
 & hast al so y-mad envy : wiþ christene men to fize,
 of alle oure zonder company : wiþ .xij^e. þe moste of mizte.
 & y am her bote a demeyne knigt : of þe realme of fraunce,
 & am y-come wyþ þe to fize : for al þy grete bobbaunce.
 Arys vp raply & þyn helm do on : & aray þe on þy stede,
 & grayþe þe to fize wiþ me anon : or elles y make þe blede."
 ¶ þe Sarzyn gan to lawe smere : & to O[lyuer] sayde þan :
 "Wat wendest þou now so me a-fere : þov art an hastif man,

From Baby-
 lon to the
 Red Sea all is
 mine.

374 I won Jeru-
 salem and all
 the towns
 about,

[leaf 5, back]
 the cross and
 sepulchre and
 many more
 reliques.

378 Then says
 Oliver, 'Thou
 hast done
 much harm
 to Christians.

382 I am here but
 a lowly
 knight to
 fight with
 thee.
 Arise, and
 prepare to
 fight with
 me.

386 The Saracen
 says,

¹ At the bottom these lines (the 3rd and 4th in a different hand) :
 Duk O[lyuer] priked in-to þe feld þer þe Sarzyn lay,
 Wel y-armed with sper & sheld his harneys was so gay.

[These are crossed through and were probably a substitute for lines 344,
 345, between which a line is erased, though written in the margin.]

Do on þyn helm oppon þyn hed . & lep oppon þy stede
 If þou mizte proue þat þou hast sed . let se hit now in [dede]
 which seem to be a substitute for lines 384-5.

Fro Babalony þe heze tour in-to þe rede se
 Al þe lordes of honour alle þay holdeþ of me ;
 Ierusalem & ierico ich wan with my prouesse
 & al aboute tounes mo boþe more & lesse.
 þe croyz þat zour god dayd an¹ & þe sepulchre also
 Wyþ dede of armes ich am wan, & reliques many mo."
 O[lyuer] saide, "by my croun y haue y-herd þy sawe :
 þou hast do muche distruccioun to oure christene lawe
 & hast mad² þy avy wyþ xij men for to fize
 (Of al oure zonder company þe alre beste knyghte.
 Y am her a meyne knyzt y-comen out of³ fraunce,
 Al-redy now with þe to fize for al þy gret bobaunce.
 Arys vp & anon do on þyn helm & lep oppon þy stede,
 & rap . . . redy ray þe wel & elles y make þe blede."
 þe Sarazyn law . . . smere & to Oliuer sayde þan :
 "Wenist þou so me a-fere ? þou ert an hastife man.

Original
 draft.

374

378

382

386

¹ your god [was] an [ido].

² & [now] hast mad.

³ MS. of of.

- Er y remuue me of þys place : þat soþe þou schalt me telle, 388
- 'Who art thou, and who sent thee here, and what is thine intent?' Of wat kunne comen þow wace : & þy name wyten i wille,
& of þy comyng whar for it ys : & ho þe hiderward sente.
y wol wyten¹ þat soþe of þys : & wat is þyn entente :
& wan þat y know it wyterly : þe soþe þat þou saye, 392
þan schal y sykerly : arise vp and me arraye."
- Oliver answers, 'I am sent by Charles to say, Turn to Christendom, or else fight, or flee.' ¶ þan him ansuerede Olyuer : wyþ sterne contynauce :
"y am y-sent to þe heer : by Charlis kyng of fraunce.
Charlis þe sente be me to say : þow torndest to crestendome, 396
& for-soke þy false lay : & to follozt sone þow come :
belyue þou scholdest on god almyt : þat for ous gan blede,
& elles y chalenge wiþ þe to fyt : outhur y schal haue þy stede, 400
& fleo þow schalt of þis lond : as a ladde doþ on þy fote.
Charlis sent to þee þis sond : þou ne ge[te]st non oþre bote."
- 'Christian knight,' says Ferumbras, 'there is no haste.' ¶ "Christene knyzt," quap Fyrumbras : "þou art a wonder gome :
þer is non haste in þys cas : to fyt 3ut mowe we come.
Ac for þou tellest so litel of me : ne were it for repreue, 404
By Mahoun, þat ys my vowee : of þyn heued y wolde þee reue.
Ac tel me o þyng noþeles : er we to-gadre fytte.
- Tell me one thing, before we fight,
- ¹ MS. wynten, *marked for correction.*

-
- Original draft.* Or ich remuwy of þys plas þat soþe þou schalt me telle 388
Of wat kyn y-come þou was, & þy name wyte ich chille,
& war-for þy comyng is, & ho þe hider sente.
Y wil wite þat soþe of þis & what is þyn entente.
& wan y knowe hit wyterly þat hit is soþ þat þow saye, 392
þan schal y sykerly arys vp & me a-rye."
- ¶ þan him ansuerede olyuer wyþ sterne continauce :
"Y am y-sent to þe her by Charlis kyng of fraunce ;
Charlis þe sente by me to say þou torne to cristendome, 396
& reneye þy false lay & to follozt sone þou come ;
by-lyue þou scholdest on god almyzt, þat for ous gan blede,
& ellis ich chaulange with þe to fyt, oþer y wil haue þi stede.
Fleo þou a-way out of þis lond as an harlot al afote. 400
C[harlis] sent þe such a sond, þou getest non oþer bote."
¶ "Crestene knyzt," quap F[yrumbras], "þou ert a wonder gome.
Ne haste nozt me myche in þis cas to fytte þou myzt wel come.
Ac for þou letest so lite of me, nere hit for repreue, 404
By Mahoun þat ys my vowe of þyn heuede wold y þe reue !
Ac tel me o þyng noþeles or we to-gadre fytte,

- & say me soþ & no lees : as help þee þy god almiȝte.
 of C[harlis] þat ys ȝour Emperer : of whame men stondeþ aye,
 & of duk Roland þat ys so fier : þe soþe þou me saye,
 & ek of is felawe, Erld Olyuer : tel me y þe praye,
 And of duk Berard of moundisdier : what manere men buþ paye.”
 ¶ “Sarsyn,” saide þe gode knyzt : “þat soþe schaltou here.
 Charlis ys so strong in fiȝt : he fyndeþ nowar is pere :
 & Rolond ys so muche of myzt¹ : so coraious & so fere,
 þat nowar nys founde non so wyzt : wan he ys on ys gere.
 Olyuer þ^e erld ys noȝt so god : þe soþe for to saye,
 Ac he ys a man heȝ of mod : Sarasynȝ to yule arraye.
 Onys y wiste oppon a day : þat he slow kynges three
 þat lyued on ȝour false lay : & tweyne mad he flee :
 Ac he slow Sarazyns on þat place : [so doȝtilich þat t]yde
 þat al þe feld y-strawed wace : of hymen on euery syde.
 Terry is sone duk Berard : ys a noble knyzt.
 þer ys no doþpeper þat nys hard : & strong iholde & wyzt.
 Now haue y told þe þyn askyng : for þy fer arys vp sone
- 410 of Charles
and Roland,
and of Oliver,
and Berard.”
- 414 [leaf 6]
Oliver says,
‘Charles is so
strong he has
no equal,
and nowhere
is such a
knight as
Roland.’
Oliver is not
so good, but
once he slow
three kinge,
and made
two to flee.
- 418
- 422 Berard is a
noble knight.
- Now I have
told thee,
arise and put
on thy gear.
- ¹ & Rolond ys so [noble a kni].

- & say me soþ & no les, so helpe þe þy driȝte !
 Of þi lord kyng Charloun, of wam men stondeþ aye,
 & of Roland þat knyzt of gret renoun þe soþe þou me saye ;
 & of his felawe oliuer tel me, y þe praye,
 & eke of Berard of moundisdier, wat maner men buþ paye.”
 “Sarazyn,” saide þe gode knyzt, “þat soþe y telle þe here.
 Charlis ys so stronge in fiȝt he fyndeþ no-war is pere,
 & R[oland] is an hardi man, so strong man & so wiȝt,
 þat in no batail þer he cam . ne fond he neuere knyzt,
 þat onys a strok hym astod þat he on him leide,
 þat he ne affuldem were wod, ouþer slowe at a braide.
 Olyuer his felawe is noȝt so god, to soþe i þe telle,
 Ac nopeles he is a man of mod heþene men to quelle.
 Y wiste onis on a day war he slow kynges þre,
 þat bi-leuede on þe false lay & tweye he made fle ;
 He laide on Sarazyns on þat plas so doȝtilich with wille
 þat al þe feld y-strawid was of Sarsyns þat weren ille.
 Terry is sone, sire Berard, is a noble knyzt,
 & alle þe opre doȝpers buþ doȝty men & wiȝt.
 Now y haue þe al itold ne tarie þou me no mere ;
- 410
- 414
- 418
- 420
- 424

*Original
draft.*

- And do on þyn helm þou heþene kyng ! & let se wat þou canst done,
& bot þou þe rapere gynne to spring ! y swere by crist on trone 426
Sone getest þou euyl endyng ! *with my swerd y wil þee slone."*
- The Saracen
says, 'Thou
art a fool.

Little
prowess
were it for
me to fight
with a
vassal.'
'Saracen,'
says Oliver,
'ere the sun
set
thou shalt
yield.'
- ¶ þan þe sarsyn huld vp ys hed ! after þes wordes felle,
& sayde, "knyzt þou art a qued ! to make me such a spelle,
Litel prowess for me it were ! wiþ a vauasour for to melle, 430
Wiþ my swerd þat ys here ! ellis y wolde þe quelle."
¶ "Sarayn," quap Olyuer, "let now ben ! þy prude & þy manace ;
Or þe sonne hure sette þou schalt sen ! of þy blod ful þis place.
þow schalt þe zelde recreent ! ouþer her riȝt schaltou dye." 434
þe Sarazyn saide "verament ! y hope þow schalt lye."
His scheld tok he þo til hym ner ! & laide vnder ys hed an hye :
Hym dredeþ noþyng of Olyuer ! no more þan of a flye ;
For he was strong & coraious ! & heȝ man of parage, 438
Him semede it nas noȝt worþ a lous ! batayl wiþ him to wage.
¶ "Christene kniȝt," quap Firumbras : "y haue of þe god game,
Tel me nov riȝt in þis plas ! what ys þy riȝte name ;
& of wat kyn þou ert y come ! tel me al þat soþe." 442
'Christian,'
says Ferum-
bras,
'tell me thy
name and
kin.'
'Garyn,' says
Oliver,
'at Perigot
was I born.'
"Garyn," quap O[lyuer], "Gwylmynes sone ! y tel þe wyþouten oþe :
At Perigot ich was y-bore ! a borgeys dude me gete.
y haue trauayld her be-fore ! wel herde for my mete,
y haue trauayld her be-fore ! wel herde for my mete,
At Court
Til ich me droȝ to courte-ward ! & an seruise diȝte me þare ; 446

- Original draft.* If þou ert to fiȝte bold, arys ; & do on þy gere,
& bote þou þe rapere haue y-do y make myn be-heste,
With my swerd y schel þe slo ȝif þat hit wil leste."
þan þe Sarazyn held vp ys hed . warne he had herd him telle
& saide, "knyzt, þou ert a qued to make such a spelle.
Litel prowess for me hit were . with a uauysour for to melle, 430
With my swerd þat is here ellys y wold þe quelle."
"Sarazyn, quap O[lyuer], let þis ben, þy prude & þy manace ;
Or sonne . . . sette þou schal y sen of þy blod ful þis place.
þou schalt þe zelde 434
[(?) 10 lines missing.]
[top of col. 2] saie with-outen [oþe] 443
[At Perigot ich] was [y-bore, a borgeys dude] me gete
y haue trauayld her bifore many many for my mete
At . . . y drow to courtward an seruise ich þer me diȝte, 446

þan serued ich þe kynges¹ styward : [seuene²] 3er & mare :
 He bar my los to Charlis kyng : for my gode seruyse,
 þat he ȝaf me lond & oþer-þyng : & halp me in þis wyse :
 þe kyng supþe mad me knyȝte : to seruie him in is werre,
 & he me sente wiþ þe to fiȝte : com on ȝif þou derre."

I served the
high steward
7 years.
He bore my
praise to
Charles,
who made
me knight.

450

¶ Wan O[lyuer] hym haueþ al itold : Fyrumbras gan to smyle :
 "Garyn," quap he, "þou art ful bold : bot lust to me a wyle :

[leaf 6, back]
Come on
now, if thou
dare !"
Ferumbras
smiled.

Why ne sendeþ he duk Rolond : with me for to fiȝte,
 Ouþer olyuer with þe harde hond : þat is so god a kniȝte ;
 Oþer duk bera[r]d of montdisdier : ouþer Ogeroun þe wiȝte ?"
 "Parfay" ansuereþ erld Olyuer : "þay han of þe dispiȝte
 þar-for y am to þe y-sent : to spelie þai doȝty men :
 for þoȝ y ben in batail schent : it ys no lest for hem.

454

'Why send-
eth he not
Roland,
or Oliver,
or Berard,
or Ogeroun ?'
'Faith,'
answers
Oliver, 'they
despise thee.

Arys vp now & don þyn helm : þy scheld & [eke] þy gere,
 & kep þe silue with oute herm : & be-þenk þe self to were.

Arise, now ;
arm thyself.

Ouþer be þe deþ þat ȝ schel deye : y ȝeue þe such a stroke,
 þat þou him neuere schalt clowe a-weye : wile þou þy lyf miȝt broke."

462

¶ "By my fayþ," quap Firumbras : "haue þis wel in mynde,
 Neuere ne faȝt y ȝut in plas "with man of lowe kynde,

¹ þe [heȝ] styward.

² MS. sone.

& serued styward & memden with al my miȝte :
 He [bar my los to Charlis kyng] þat he me gan auaunce,
 & ȝaf me beste lond [& thyng] þat be in þe realme of fraunce,
 & ȝaf me beste lond [& thyng] þat be in þe realme of fraunce,
 Charlis [supþe mad me] knyȝt to seruie him on his werre,
 He se[n]te me hider with [þe] to fiȝt, asay now [if] þou derre."
 Wan O[lyuer] hym haueþ [al i-]told F[yrumbras] gan to smyle :
 he [said] "Garyn, þou ert ful bold, but lust to me a while :
 Wy [ne] sendeþ he hider sir Roland with me for to fiȝt,
 [Ouþer] O[lyuer] with þe herde hand, þat ys so noble a kniȝt,
 [Ouþer Be]rard of moundisder, oþer sir Oger þe wiȝt ?"
 "Parfay," þan said Olyuer, "for þay han of þe dispiȝt,
 þarfor y am to þe y-sent to spelie þai doȝty men,
 þoȝ y ben in batail schent : it is ne lest for hem.
 Aris vp now & do on þyn helm þy scheld & þy gere,
 & lep vpon þy stede ariȝt & by-þenk þe for-to were ;
 Ouþer by þe fayþ þat y schal to kyng Charlemeyn
 On þyn heued y ȝeue þe a knal & cleue þe in-to þe brayn."
 "By my . . . fayþ," quap F[yrumbras], "haue þis wel in mynde,
 Neuere ne faȝte y ȝut in plas with no man of so lowe kynde

*Original
draft.*

450

454

458

462

Bote wyþ duk ouþer Erld of myzt : ouþer kyng y-crowned free. 466
 þoȝ y slowe þe her in fiȝt : what prys were þat for me ?
 Men wolde sayn y were to blame : wyþ such on for to fiȝte,
 Bote þou haddeſt a betere name : þan Garyn a pore kniȝte.
 Ac o þyng y ſchal now for þe do : i dude it neuere to wiȝte. 470
 ȝyf þov wilt assenty to : in armes y wil me diȝte,
 & lepe y wol now on my ſtede : & bere to þe a ſpere,
 with anoþer ryd þou to me : wyþ a cors of werre,
 Als ſo harde as þou mixt flynge on : a-rede me on þe ſchelde ; 474
 y ſchal þe harmles lete gon : & falle y wil on þe felde ;
 Tak þou þanne my gode ſtede : & þy beſte þer-wyþ þou do,
 & to Charliſ þou him lede : & eke my ſcheld al-ſo.
 Say him þanne as þy god þe ſaue : þat þov hem y-wonne heer, 478
 & ȝif he þenkeþ more to craue : ¹to me ſend he¹ Olyuer,
 Ouþer Roland, þat iſ ſo ſtrong in fiȝt : oþer þe ſcot Gwylmer,
 Terry, ouþer Gy þe hardy kniȝt : Berard, ouþer Ogier.
 & if it [be] ſo þat on al-one : ne dar noȝt þat batail take, 482
 þeyȝ þay come euerechone : nel ich hem noȝt for-ſake."
 ¶ " þov ſpekeſt folie," ſaide Olyuer : " & makeſt muche delaye,
¹—¹ [þanne] ſend he.

Original Bote it wer duke or erld ful wiȝt, ouþer kyng y-crowned fra. 466
draft. þoȝ y ſle þe in ſuch a fiȝt, what pris wer þat for me ?
 Men wolde ſayn y were to blame wyþ ſuch on for to fiȝte,
 Bote þou haddeſt a better name þan Garyn a pore knyȝte.
 ¶ Ac o þynge y ſchal for þe do, y dude hit neuere to wiȝte : 470
 If þou wolt assenty to, in armes i wil me diȝte,
 & take y wol my ſtede & bere to þe a ſpere,
 Wiþ an oþer rid þou to me with a gret cors of werre
 As harde as þou miȝt flyng¹ [on a-]rede me on my ſcheld. 474
 y ſhal þe harmles lete gon, & falle y wil on feld,
 & take þou þanne my gode ſtede þy beſt þer with to do ;
 & To C[harliſ] þou him lede & eke my ſcheld al-ſo ;
 Say him as þy god þe ſaue how þou hit geteſt her, 478
 Bot ȝyf he þenkeþ more to craue ſende hider Oliuer,
 Ouþer Roland þat ys ſo ſtrong in fiȝt, oþer þe ſcot Gwylmer,
 Terry, ouþer Gy þe hardi kniȝt, berard, ouþer Ogier.
 & if hit ys ſo þat on al-one wil noȝt þe batail take, 482
 þeyȝ þay come euerechone nel ich noȝt hem for-ſake."
 " þou ſpekeſt as fol," qua[þ] O[liuer], " & makeſt moche delaye ;

- Wiþ þyn auaunt þou makest heer : þou ne miȝt noȝt me amaye.
 þy stede ys myn, y haue y-þoȝt : wather þou wile or no, 486
 þer-of schalt þou me lette noȝt : þat hit ne schal be so.
 þyn auaunt worþ dere aboȝt : þyn heued þou schalt for-go.
 To do þat batail þou hast i-soȝt : al redy am y þarto.
 ¶ Arys vp þer-for hastely : & aray þe wel to fiȝte, 490 [leaf 7]
 Oup̄er y swere be þat Mary : þat bar þat child of miȝte,
 no lenger wil y spary þe : for al þy grete bostyngge :
 bote liggyng her y wol þe sle : *with-oute more drecchyngē.*"
 ¶ Fi[rumbras] gan to waxe wroþ : & vp bi-gan to sitte : 494
 Were O[lyuer] lef, oþer wer him loþ : þannes nolde he flitte :
 Egrelich he be-huld aboute : & lokede on þe kniȝte,
 & saw þe red blod russchen out : þorw is armure briȝte :
 endelonges is side þat blod him ran : & ful down to þe grounde 498
 þe sarsyn knew it wel by þan : he hadde a greuous wounde.
 & þan he askede of Olyuere : þat houede þer him tabide ;
 If þat he any¹ wonde bere : in ys body þat tyde.
 "Me þynkþ þou hast a wonde þere" : said he, "in þy syde." 502
 "þer-of," quap̄ . O[lyuer], "ne haue þou no fere," : & turnd him þat
 sor to hyde.
- ¹ he [a].

run away.
 'Thou
 speakest like
 a fool,' says
 Oliver;

'thy boast-
 ing will cost
 thee thy life.'

'In spite of
 it all I will
 slay thee.'
 Ferumbras
 begins to be
 angry, and
 sat up.

He sees the
 blood on
 Oliver,

and asks if he
 is wounded.

'Trouble
 thyself not,'
 says Oliver :

- With þyn auaunt þou makest her þou schalt noȝt me amaye,
 þy stede ys myn y haue iþoȝt, waper þe wil or no, 486
 þow ne schalt me lette noȝt þat hit ne schal be so.
 þyn auaunt worþ ful dere a boȝt þyn hed þou schalt for-go.
 To do þat batail þat þou hast soȝt me self am redi þer-to.
 Go now & raye anon to fiȝt 490
 Oup̄er by my god of [miȝt]
 þy gret bostyngē
 þe sle as þou ert liggyngē."
 Ferumbras made him þane wroþ & vp he gau to sitte, 494
 Were O[liuer] hem lef or loþ þannes nolde he flitte ;
 Egerlich he be-huld aboute & lokede on Olyuer,
 & saw þat red blod rusched oute out of his body þer ;
 þorw-out his armure þe blod out ran riȝt down to þe gronde, 498
 þe Sarzyn knew it wel by þan he hauede a grisly wonde :
 He askede þanne of Olyuer, þat houede þer him to hyde :
 "Me þenkp̄ þou ert y-hert ful sere & berest a wonde wyde
 By þat blod þat rennep̄ down by þyn oþer side." 502
 O[lyuer] saide, "[þat] is noȝt so," & turnde him hit to hide ;

Original
 draft.

- 'the blood
is that of my
steed.'
- "þat blod," quap he, "þov seȝe þo : it comeþ out of my stede,
For he scholde ȝerne go : his side y made blede :
Of þe hors it comeþ þat y sit on : þat blod¹ þat þou y-seȝe" 506
- 'Thou canst
not so
deceive me,'
says the
Saracen.
- "þat ys lees," saide he anon : "þou blereest noȝt so myn eȝe,
Ac if i can þat riȝt arede : þat blod him compþ of þe,
Fram vaste be-side þy nauel-stede : as it semeþ me. 510
- 'But at my
saddle hange
a vessel
full of the
balm with
which thy
God was
anointed.
- Ac by myddel þer hongep her : a costrel as þou miȝt se,
hwych ys ful of þat bame cler : þat precious ys & fre,
þat ȝoure god was wiþ anyont : wan he was ded & graued,
y wan hym wyþ my swerdes poynt : many man haþ he saued.
For hwych man þat haueþ any wounde : & beo þer-wiþ enoynt, 514
- It will heal
any wound.
- it wil don him be hol & sounde : & maky him in god poynt :
& if he þer of drynke may : beo þe deþ him noȝt so neere,
Sone he schel be on god aray : & beo al hol & feere.
- Drink a little,
- Go tak him now þer he hongep : & dr[i]nk of him a stounde, 518
þan schaltou noȝt a-bide longe : til þou be hol & sounde ;
& wan þou felest þy body feer : þe better þan miȝt þou fiȝte."
þan him answerede Olyuer : "y wil noȝt by þis liȝte ;
& or we departye henne : al hool þou schalt me vynde." 522
- ¹ þat [rede] blod.

- Original
draft.*
- "þat blod þat þou y-seȝe þo hit comeþ out of my stede,
For he schold faste hider go his sides y makede blede :
Hit is þe hors þat y sit on þat blod him rennep fro." 506
- "þou lyst," he saide, "by Makeron ! hit miȝte neuer be so,
Ac If y can þe riȝt arede þat blod him rennep of þe.
Fro Faste by-sydes þy nauel stede, so ymote y þe !
But ȝunder at my sadel boȝe hongep o botel, 510
Ful of baume oun y loȝe ys he euery del,
þat ȝour god was anyont þer-with wan he byried was :
Ich hem wan with swerdes poynt at rome ȝour oȝene plas.
þe man þat haueþ wonde & is þer-with anyont 514
He schel be hol & sonde & waxe on god poynt.
Ac If he þer-of drynke, beo þe deþ noȝt so neer,
Anon riȝt he may swynke & beo hol & fer.
Take him þer he honge and drynke þer-of a stonde, 518
þou schalt [noȝt] abide longe or þou be hol & sounde,
& wanne þ[y] hert [ys] hol & fer þe surlokere þou miȝt fiȝte."
þan him ansuerde Olyuer, "y wil non bi þis liȝte ;
Or we departe a-twynne al hol þou schal[t] me fynde." 522

þe Sarasyn sayd til him þanne : “ þyn heȝ herte wil þee schynde.”

¶ Fyrumbras of Alysandre : to Olyuer spak & lowȝ :

524 Then Ferumbras asks Oliver to describe Roland,

“ Of what schap ys duk Rolandre : tel me y pray þe nowȝ,
& ek of Olyuer þat is so wiȝt¹ : of what schap ys hee y praye,
As þou art a iantail knyȝt² : þat soþe þat þou me saye.”

¶ Olyuer him answerede þan : “ be-hold me þat am heer !

528 and Oliver answers,

for In al þyng þat þou auyse can : such schap ys Olyuer.

Roland ys noȝt so long as hee : ac more is he of myȝte,

& doȝtyere man on to see : & sternere man in fiȝte :

ne fast he neuere ȝet in felde : wyȝ kyng ne Ameraunt,
þat he ne asloȝ ouȝer madem ȝelde : ys body to him creaunt.”

532

¶ Fyrumbras ansuerde him agayn : prouteliche & sayde :

“ þoȝ þay wern her boȝe twayn : þay scholde me noȝt dure abraide,

536 ‘Though they,’ says Ferumbras, ‘or four such were here I should not fear them.’ ‘Thou art ever boasting,’ says Oliver;

& þoȝ suche foure were here : be Mahoun & ternagaunt,

Ich hem wolde wel conquere : wiȝ my swerd trenchaunt.”

¶ “ Sarsyn,” saide Erld Olyuere : “ al day þou makest bost ;

Wer al þyng soþ þat þou saist here : þou were a grymly gost.

Arys vp anon & arme þe : y ne wil no lenger duelle,

540 ‘arise, or else

Oȝer be þe lord þat schep lef and tree : heuene & eke helle,

Bote þou arys vp on þy fet : & schippe þe a-non to fiȝte,

A tweyne i wol foreleue þyn hed : with my swerd her riȝte.”

I will cleave thy head.”

¹ { And ek of [þe Erld] Olyuer.

² { As þou art iantail knyȝt [& feer].

þe Sarazyne saide þanne, “ þy prude wol þe schynde.”

¶ Ferumbras of Alisandre to O[liuer] spak & low,

524 *Original draft.*

“ Of what shap ys Roland, tel me y praie þe now,

& of þe Erld Olyuer, of what facioun is he :

As þou ert iantail kniȝtes peer anon riȝt tel þou me.”

Oliuer him answered þan, “ be-hold me fer & ner,

528

In alle þyng þat þou can, riȝt such ys Oliuer.

Ro[land] is noȝt so long as h[ee] [Ac] more he is of miȝt,

& doȝtyere man y w[i]ste to see & sternere man in fiȝt.

532

Ne fauȝt he neuere in fylde with kyng ne Amerant,

þat he [ne] made him ȝelde [ys] body to him creaunt ;

& if he him ȝelde nolde, & putte him to ys grace,

Sle him [þanne] he wolde [for] he went out of place.”

F[erumbras] ansuerde h[im] agayn, prout[fulich] & saide,

534

“ þoȝ þei were her boȝe tweyn, þey scholde me noȝt dure abraide,

& þoȝ suche iiij wer her, by Mahon & ternagant,

Ferumbras is wroth,
and starts up. ¶ Wip þat þe Sarsyn þat was þor : wax wroþ on his herte 544
& bente hym brymly as a bor : & vp hym gan to sterte ;
& wan he stod appon þe ground : huge¹ was he of lengþe,

He is 15 feet high,
wonderfully strong Fifteuene fet hol & sound : & wonderliche muche of strengþe. 547

Had he ben in cryst be-leued : & y-vollid on þe haly fant,
A better knyzt þan he was preued : þo was þer non lyuand :

and broad-shouldered. **F**yrumbras of Alysaundre : was a man of gret stature, 550
& ful brod in þe scholdres was : & long man in forchure.

He is clad in cloth-of-gold. Oppon is armure was he clad : wyþ a cote-armure clene,
Of cloþ of gold it was mad : & enbrouded with perlis schene.

He beholdeþ oppon Olyuer : egrelich : as lyoun, 554

And by-gan to gon him ner : & siggeþ þys resoun ;

“Garyn, me meruaylleþ myche of þe : þat art so meyne a knyzt,

How þou darst entremetrie of me : a-zen me to take fizt.

A ful gret pite me þenkþ it were : for þou art so bold 558

To sle þe in fizte here : oper to take þe, if y wold.

Hit nys nozt on my porpos her : with no man to² fizte

Bote he ben a kyngis peer : & strong man eke of miȝte.

Wend a-wey þou vauasour : & say so Charlis kyng, 562

¹ [ful] huge.

² [for] to.

Original Ich hem wolde alle sone wip my swerd trenchant
draft. makest bost

[Bottom of sheet. ? 8 lines (long) wanting.]

. hol & sond he

Had he beo in crist be-leued, & fulled in holi fanston,

A betere knyzt þan he was preuid liuande nas þer non.

Fyrumbras of Alisandre was a man of gret stature, 550

Wel brode were his sholdres & long was his forchure

Vppon his armes he was clad wyþ a mantel

Of a cloþ of gold [it was] ymad ene

He beholdeþ O[liuer] egrelich as lyoun, 554

& by-gan to gon him ner, & siggeþ þis resoun,

“Garyn, me meruailleþ muche of þe þat ert so comune a knyzt,

þat þou þerst þe sette to me a-zen me for to fizte ;

Gret pite me þenkþ it were for þou ert so [meyne a kniȝte] 558

To sle þe her wyþ my gere, ouþer take þe to

Hit is nozt to fizte myn entente

Bote he beo of londe & rente, gret & eke of miȝt.

Wend a-wey, þou vauasour, & tel so [Charlis kyng] 562

'þys day he falleþ in deshonour : for is fol sendyng.'

¶ "What ! ys," quap O[lyuer] "þy prechyng : icome to such an ende ?

I ne schal neuere, by heuene kyng : a fot ferther wende

Or y haue of þe þe hezere hand : ouper sleȝ þee on þis felde, 566

Outher þow schalt be recreant : & maugre þy teþ þe zelde.

Tak þyn armys if þou wilt : no lenger nel y þe spare ;

On yuel deþ mot y be spild : if ich þe byde mare."

A lefte ys sper & drow ys swerd : & smyteþ til hym-ward sare, 570

& þozte cleue him vn-to þe berd : & til his hed hit bare.

þe Sarsyn anon bar of þe stroke : with ys scheld þat a held an honde

& a¹ quarter þer-of a smot : þat it fel down on þe sonde.

¶ "Arme þe, Sarsyn," saide Olyuer þan : "hit wil be for þyn prow."

"þou saist soþ," quap he, "by ternagan : þou haddest neȝ slawe me now.

Hadd y þat stronge strok y-take : þou haddest to me² mynt, 576

For euere my bred had be bake : myn lyf dawes had be tynt ;

Ac for þou mentest me þilke stroke : or ich ful armed were,

þow schalt abigge it al so hot : or þat y take my gere."

¶ þe Sarsyn þanne a drow ys brond : þat was so gret of strengþe, 580

¹ [noþeles] a.

² MS. mo.

Oliver
answers,
'I will not
move till I
have con-
quered thee.'

[leaf 8]

He draws his
sword and
strikes at
Ferumbras,
who wards
off the blow
with his
shield, which
is broken.

'Had that
stroke hit
me,' says
Ferumbras,
'my bread
had been
baked for
ever.'

He drew his
sword,

To day he falleþ in de[s]honour for his fol sendyng."

"Wat ! is," quap O[lyuer], "þy prechyng icome to such an ende ?

I ne schal neuere be heuene kyng, [a fot ferther] wende,

Or ich haue þe ouer hand y-slawe þe in þis felde, 566

Ouper þou schalt to me creant¹ maugre þy teþ þe zelde.

Take þyn armis ȝif þou wilt no lenger y nel þe spare,

In yuel deþ worþ y spilt if y þe bide mare."

He lefte ys sper & drow is swerd, & smot til himward sare, 570

& haued y-þozt to cleue ys hed in-to þe bar[de þa]re.

þe Sarsyn þan bar of þe stroke wyþ his scheld [þat a] bar an honde,

Noþeles a quarter þer-offe he smot ful down [oppon þe so]nde.

"Arme þe, Sarsyn !" saide O[lyuer], "hit wil be for þi prow."

"þou sayst soþ, by Iubiter, þou haddest neȝ . . . e now.

Hadde y þat ilke stroke y-take þou haddest [to me y-ment] 576

For euere my bred hadde ben bake, my lif dawes hadde ben spent.

Ac for þou mentest me þylke stroke or ich all armed were,

þou schalt a bie hit al so hot or þat y take my gere,"

þe Sarazyn þan a drow his brand þat was so gret of strengþe, 580

¹ MS. to [re]creant.

*Original
draft.*

7 feet long, & wan it was nakede on his hond : vij. fet it had of lengþe,
 Him self was eke strong & feer : & is herte gan vp sprynge,
 and showers So pikke he smot to Olyuer : as he miȝte flynge.
 blows on Oliver, who defends him-
 self well. þe erld was war, & kepte him wel : & laide til him *with* miȝte, 584
 Ac þe Sarazyn was ful fel : & kepte is heued ariȝte.
 His heued he kepeþ *with* is schelde : þat ounhelid was & bare ;
 Bytere he þoȝte is whyle ȝelde : þat hadde a-greued him þare.
 Ferumbras then smites Oliver on the helmet, but the sword
 glances off, and kills his horse. To Olyuer þanne smot he a stroke : riȝt on þe helm an heȝ ; 588
 þoȝ þat swerd wer god it noȝt ne bot : bot doun by is chyn it seȝ,
 & before ys scheld a-doun it glod : & oppon is sadel it ran,
 þorw sadel & hors þat swerd him wod : þan ful doun hors & man.
 þe Sarzyn drow him þanne a-part : & to O[lyuer] saide sanzfaille 592
 "þou ne schalt me fynde no cownt : a liggeng man to saille."
 A sterte to his helm, & pult him aan : & to O[lyuer] þanne a sede,
 "If þou *with* me wilt fiȝte aȝan : by Mahoun þou gost to dede."
 Oliver starts up un-
 wounded, deſſes Ferum-
 bras, and abuses him. ¶ Olyuere stert vp hol & sound : & spekeþ til him wyþ grame, 596
 "Y diffye þe nov, þou heþene hound : crist ȝyue þe muche schame !
 Why hast þou my stede a-slawe : wat hadde þat hors mysdo ?
 þy stede for hym now wil y craue : & haue him er þou go."

Original draft. Wan hit was naked on his haund vij fet hit had of lengþe ;
 & him-self was strong & fer, his herte gan vp sprynge,
 So þylke he smot to Olyuer as þat he miȝt flynge.
 þe duk was war & kepte him wel & laide to him *with* miȝt, 584
 Bot þe Sarazyn was ful fel & kepede his heuede ariȝt.
 He kepeþ his heued al *with* his scheld ounkeuere it was & bare ;
 Bytere he þoȝte his wile ȝeld þat hadde a-greued him þare.
 To Oliuer þan ment he a stroke, on his helm he dud bi-gynne ; 588
 þoȝ þat swerd wer god hit noȝt ne bot, bote ran doun be his chyne.
 A-fore his scheld a-doun hit glod, vppon his sadel hit gan renne,
 þorw hors & sadel þat swerd forþ wod, & O[lyuer] fel doun penne.
 þe Sarazyn drow him þanne apart & to O[lyuer] said, " sanz faille,
 Ne schalt þou fynde me no cownt, A liggynge man to saile." 593
 A sterte to ys helm & putte him an, & saide, " ich rede þou fle,
 for If þou¹ fiȝtest *with* me aȝan, by Mahoun, y wil þe sle !"
 O[lyuer] stertep vp hol & soun [& spekeþ] to him *with* [grame]
 " y dyffie þe heþene hond 597

(2 lines illegible)

¹ MS. þou þou.

A leyde to þe Sarsyn strokes smerte : riȝt als til his dedly fo ; 600
 & grete dyntes þanne þay gerte : hir eyþer til oþer þo.

NOW by-gynt a strong batayl : be-twene þis knyȝtes twayne ; *Now begins a deadly duel,*
 Ayþer gan oþer harde assayl : boþe wyþ myȝt & mayne
 þey hewe to-gadre wyþ swerdes dent : faste with boþen honde, 604
 Of helmes & sheldes þat fyr out went : so sparkes doþ of brondes ; *fire flies out of their helmets and shields.*
 So sterne strokes þay arauȝte : eyther til oþer with strengþe
 þat al þe erthe þer-of quazte : a myle & more on lengþe.
 þey weren so eger boþe of mod : & eke so fers to fiȝte, 608 *So mighty are their blows that [leaf 8, back] the earth shakes for a mile round or more.*
 þat eyþer of hem þan þoȝte god : to sle oþer if he miȝte.
 Hit ne miȝt noȝt longe endure : þe batail betwene hem two,
 for neyþer ne knew of oþer mesure : bot euere þay foȝte so.
 ¶ Olyuer hym by-þoȝte þan : his los was lost in londe 612 *Oliver exerts himself,*
 Bot yf he sleȝe þat heþene man : & þer-for he gan him fonde,
 & smot him on þe helm an heȝ : & a gobet away a bar ;
 Ys chyke þat swerd þo cam so neȝ : þat sum of is berd yt schar ;
 þe strok a doun him glente anon : ac he wiþ is scheld him hente, 616 *smites Ferumbras on the helmet, and cuts off some of his beard.*
 & elles had he his schuldre bon : for-coruyn wyþ þat dente.
 Fyrumbras saide til hym þan : “maugre mote þou haue !” *‘A curse on thee,’*

. on him strokes smerte
 . . . wel,” quap he, “wilt þou so haue at þe wyþ herte.” *Original draft.*
 ¶ Now by-gynneþ strong batail by-twyne þe knyȝtes tweyne,
 Eyþer oþer gan to assayl wyþ miȝte & with mayne. 603
 þey hywe to-gydre with swerdes dynt, with miȝt of boþe hir honde,
 of helm & scheld þat fur out went So sparke doþ of þe bronde.
 So Sturne strokes þay a-raȝte eyþer til oþer þe whyle
 þat al þe erþe aboute quazte men miȝt hure a myle.
 þey wer so fers on hure mod, & eger on hure fiȝte, 608
 þat eyþer of hem þoȝte god to slen oþer if he miȝt.
 Hit miȝt noȝt lange dure such fiȝt by-twene hem two,
 for Neyþer ne couþe no mesure bote euere foȝte so.
 ¶ O[liuer] by-þoȝte him þo is los wer lost in londe 612
 Bote he miȝte þat Sarsyn slo anon a gan him fonde,
 He smot him on þe helm an heȝ, a gobet away he bar ;
 His cheche þat swerd cam ful neȝ, sum of is berd he schar.
 þe stroke adoun him glent anon, & he with is scheld him hente, 616
 & elles had he¹ is scholder bon for coruyn at þat dente.
 Fyrumbras saide to O[liuer] þan, “maugre mote þou haue ;

¹ MS. he had he.

exclaims
 Ferumbras;
 'never was I
 so shaved.'

Then he cuts
 the crest off
 Oliver's
 helmet.

They fight
 like two
 lions.

Their strokes
 resound like
 thunder.

Ferumbras is
 vexed and
 wonders who
 Oliver can be.

Suppen y was furst i-bore to man : my berd nas noȝt so schaue."

¶ þe Sarsyn by-gan to waxe wroþ : egre, & eke fere, 620
 & hef vp ys swerd, & til him a goþ : & smot to Olyuere ;
 Al anoneward þe helm an heȝ : ys crest a bar adoun,
 & þe cercle of gold þat sat þer-bey : þe perles wer worþ a toun,
 & of ys auantaille wyþ þat stroke : a carf wel many a maylle. 624
 þan olyuer profrede til him a st[r]oke : & gan him for to saylle,
 & þan by-gan þe stronge fiȝt : betwene þes kniȝtes tweye ;
 As twey lyons þay furde riȝt : þat wolde slen his preye.
 þe Sarasyn sayde to þe knyȝt : " by Mahoun þou schalt deye ! " 628
 þan said O[lyuer] " by god almyȝt : y hope þou schalt leye ! "
 ¶ Aȝeyn þey wente to-gydre thare : & hur armure hewe a-sonder ;
 Hure strokes fulle so styþ & sare : þay schulde so doþ þe þonder.
 Helmes & hauberkes þay kutte a two : wiþ hure strokes rounde, 632
 & eyþer enpaynede him other to slo : ac ȝut nad þay no wounde.
 ¶ Fyrumbras was aggreued sare : þat O[lyuer] hym stod so longe,
 & þan him wondrede wat a ware : for he was so stronge.
 He drew him þanne apart & sayde : " y pray þe, iantaille kniȝt, 636
 As þow louest þat ilke mayde : þat baar þy god almyȝt,—
 Wel y wot þou art ful gret of fame : a bettere kniȝt wot y non,—

Original
 draft.

Syþ y was i-bore to man my berd was noȝt so y-schaue."

¶ þe Sarazyn by-gan to waxe wroþ, egre & eke fere, 620
 & hef vp ys swerd & to him agoþ, & smot to Olyuere,
 Riȝt oppon is helm an heȝ þe crest he bereþ [adoun],
 & þe cercle of gold þat sat þer-by, þe perles were worþ [a toun] ;
 of his auentaille wiþ þat stroke he carf wel [many] a maile. 624
 þan O[liuer] profrede him a st[r]oke & gan him for to assaile,
 & þo by-gan ynewe fiȝt be-twene þis knyȝtes tweye ;
 As lyons þey furde boþe riȝt þat folhode on ys preye.
 þe Sarazyn saide to þe knyȝt, " by Mahoun, þou schalt dye ! " 628
 þan saide O[liuer], " by god Almyȝt, y hope þou schalt [lye]. "
 þan þay foȝte to-gydre mare, hur armure þay k[utte ason]der ;
 Hure strokes wer so dedly sare þay schulde so doþ þe þonder.
 Helm & haberke þay kutte a two wiþ hure strokes rounde, 632
 & eyþer enpeyned him oþer to slo. Ac ȝut nad [þay no wounde].
 Ferumbras was an angred sore þat O[liuer] hym stod [so longe] :
 Him wondrede myche wat he were for he was [so stronge].
 Adrow him apart þanne and saide, " y praye þe [iantail] kniȝt, 636
 As þow louest þat ilke maide þar bar þy god of miȝt,
 Tel me þy riȝte name for bettre knyȝt w[as] non.

Tel me þer-for þy riȝte name : Wat calleþ me þe at hom.		
Wyþ many a man y haue y-fauȝt : fond y neuere þy peer ;	640	He asks him his name, and praises him.
þe grete strokes þow hauest me rauȝt : sitteþ my bones neer.		
þow toldest me to day or þys : þy riȝte name was Garyn ;		
Hit is noȝt so, y wot to wys : by Mahoun & Appolyn ;		
If þat Garyn were þy name : y knewe it wel apliȝt	644	
In tal þe world scholde sprynge fame : of such a noble kniȝt.		
Tel me now þer-for þat soþe : as þow art gent & free,		
& suppe schul we to-gadre boþe : falle to fiȝt a-ȝe."		[leaf 9] 'Tell me the truth, and then we will fight again.'
¶ þe iantail kniȝt with-drow him þan : & spak with-oute duelle,	648	
"Herkne now, þow heþene man : & þat soþe i wol þe telle.		
Olyuer ys my name riȝt : a doþþeper y am of fraunce,		
& am an erld & a kniȝt : as haue ich gode chaunce.		
Y am Charlis Emys sone : y-come of men of gode,	652	Oliver tells him that he is one of the peers of France, and of royal descent,
& in my moder half i am y-come : al-so of kynges blode.		
nov haue y to þe her itold : my name with-oute lye,		
If þow art to fiȝte bold : com on . y þe diffye !"		
¶ þan ansuerede fyrumbras : & saide to Olyuer,	656	and challenges him to renew the fight.
"Y am now gladdere þan y was : for now y haue my per."		
þan aȝen þai toke þe fiȝt : with swerdes sherpe & kene,		
Eyþer til other wiþ mayn & miȝt : þe strokes were wel sene ;		
Harde þay foȝte to-gadre þo : þus miȝty men of mayne,	660	and fight even more fiercely than before.
þer was no reste betwene hem to : bot laide on ȝerne beyne.		
<hr/>		
for þow ert a kniȝt gret of fame wan þow ert at hom.		
Wyþ many a man y haue i-fauȝt fond y nere [such] an oþer,	640	Original draft.
Euery strok þat þow me rauȝt falleþ doun as a foþer.		
þow toldest to me to day or þys þy name was Garyn :		
Hit is noȝt soþ, so ȝyue me blys, Mahoun & Apolyn !		
If þat Garyn were þy name y knowe it wel ariȝt	644	
In tal þe world schold springe a fame of such a noble kniȝt.		
Tel þow me, kniȝt, al þe soþe as þow art gent & free,		
& suppe schalle we to-gadre boþe falle to . fiȝte aȝe."		
þe iantayl kniȝt with-drow	648	
[7 long lines cut off.]		
"Ich am gladder þan y was now	657	
þan aȝen þay toke þe fiȝt wyþ		
Eyþer til oþer wiþ al hure miȝt		
Wel hard was þat batail þe	660	
þer nas no reste be twene		

	Wan eyþer knew what oþer was : þe hardere þay gunne to fiȝte,	
Each tries his best.	& to slen eyþer oþer in þat plas : eyther dude ys miȝte.	
	¶ Firumbras þe heþene kyng : was a man of gret fertee,	664
	& anpeynedem þanne þorȝ al þyng : erld O[lyuer] þer to slee :	
Ferumbras had never been beaten.	Sipþe þe tyme þat he was bore : on batail ne com he non,	
	In-to þe day þat he com þore : þat he ne ouercom his fon ;	
	ne a-ȝen no man ne tok querel : by-for þat in no lond	668
	þat he ne hadde þe betere deel : & eke þe heȝere hond.	
	ac now haþ he so longe y-soȝt : ys peer he haþ i-founde,	
	& þat til hym worþ hard iboȝt : wiþ-inne a litel stonde.	671
The fight continues.	þey foȝten to-gadres þanne ȝerne : þys wytherwyns wilde & wroþe,	
	& smyte strokes smerte & sterne : in haberkes & helmes boþe.	
	Wiþ þe strokes þat þis frekes slente : flyngande to-gader in fiȝte,	
Helmets, hauberks and shields are shattered.	Hur helmes & haberions þay to-rente : þat arst wer fair & briȝte,	
	& hure scheldes stronge & grete : þey were al to-hewe ;	676
	Vnder hure boþen fete : þan miȝte me þe peces schewe.	
	¶ Olyuer laid on pikke y-now : so dude Fyrumbras,	
	Bot with enterlas þat a þrow : to þe Sarasyn bi-tid a cas :	
Oliver knocks Ferumbras' sword out of his hand,	Olyuer smot is swerd away : fer out fram ys honde :	680
	þan was þe Sarsyn in gret affray : & niste wat was to donde.	

Original	Wan eyþer yknew wat oþer was	
draft.	& To slen ys felaw in þat plas	663
	Of Alysandre ser F[erumbras] was . ful	
	In no batail neuere he nas þat	
	Ne aȝe no wiȝt ne tok querel	668
	þat he nadde þat betere del & e	
	Ac now he haueþ so longe ys[oȝt]	
	& þat worþ ful hard iboȝt wiþ	
	þay foȝten to-gaddre ȝerne þy	672
	& smyten strokes harde sterne in he	
	Wiþ strokes þat þay to-gadre slent w	
	Hure hauberions weren alto rent þat erst	
	& hure scheldes strong & gr[et]	676
	þe peces ley doun at hire fet	
	Olyuer laid on pikke y now	
	Bot with entrelas þat he þrow	
	Olyuer smot his swerd aw	680
	þan was þe Sarasyn in gret a	

Ac O[lyuer] was a corteys kniȝt : & a-syde by-gan to stonde.

"Tak vp," said he, "þy swerd ariȝt : & to kep it beter þou fonde."

¶ Fyru[mbras] was glad, & toke vp þat brond : quiklich at a brayde, 684

& wan it was on is hond : to O[lyuer] he spak & sayde,

"þou hast y-lyued þy lif to longe : to do me such a spyte,

y wil wiȝ þat selue bronde : þy whyle wel a-quyte :

þyn outrage schal be dure a-boȝt : by Mahoun, my god al-one ; 688

þy god ne may þe helpe noȝt : þyn heued þou schalt for-gone.

A-fore þis day ne toke y nere : of no man such a schame."

"ne make it noȝt so," quap Olyuere : "for oþer weys þes schal grame.

Or we departe þis ilke day : such tyme schalt þou sene 692

þat þow schalt sayn a weleway : þat y cam in þis grene !

ne schaltou by þat tyme noþyng ȝilpe : of þy doynge here ;

þy Mahoun ne schal þe noþyng helpe : þat þow ne a-biest dere."

¶ & þan þey waxe wonder wroþe : þys knyȝtes styȝ on stoure, 696

& eyþer of þis frekes boþe : til oþer ȝaf many a schoure.

þey fouȝte to-gadre þar so longe : & ȝyue strokes sore,

þat þe fom of hure mouȝ out spronge : so doȝ out of þe bore.

þe Sarsyn þat was noþyng feynt : smot Olyuer in þe side, 700

þorȝ is scheld wyȝ gold ypeynt : þe sterne strok gan glyde ;

but
chivalrously
tells him to
take it again.
[leaf 9, back]
Ferumbras
picks it up,
and says,

'Never before
have I
suffered such
a disgrace,
but before we
part thou
shalt repent
it.'

They both
wax wroth,

and
foam like
wild boars.
Ferumbras
smites Oliver
in the side.

Olyuer was wel corteys kniȝt

"Tak' vp," quap he, "þy swerd ar

F[erumbras] tok vp ys longe brond 684

& wan it was on hys honde to

"þou hauest y lyued wel to longe

Y schal þer-for wyȝ þis bronde þ

þyn out-raȝe schal beo dur 688

þy god ne may þe helpe noȝt

Y ne tok ȝute neuer er of no

"Ne make noȝt so," quap Olyuer, "for oþer

Er we departe þys ilke daze So tyme 692

þou schalt sayn a weleway þat y cam.

Ne schelt þou noþyng ȝilpe of

þy Mahoun ne may þe helpe þat þou ne abi

þan þey waxe wonder wroþe 696

Eyþer of hem þanne boþe to oþer . ȝ

þei fouȝte to-gadre so longe with

þe fom of hure mouȝ out spronge

þe Sarazyn þat was noþyng 700

þorw his scheld þat with golde y-pe

*Original
draft.*

of scheld & haberk a-wey a char : al þat he arauzte,
 & al þat side he made baar : with þe selue drauzte,
 nad he stert þan a side : with-oute wordes mo, 704
 Wip þat stronge stroke vnride : is lifdawes had be do.

The Saracen
thinks he has
wounded him,

¶ þe Sarsyn þan him vnderstod : he had ihert him sore,
 & saide, " þou lesest þyn herte blod : þou turnest agayn no more !
 Charlis wip þe hore berde : doþ þe lite Auaylle, 708
 Suppen þat y schal wyþ my swerde : sle þe in bataille."

but Oliver
says no,
and defies
him.

Oliuer ansuerede & swor ys oþ : " bi god, þou spekst folie ;
 Arst y wol þe make wroþ : 3ut her y þe diffie.
 for 3ut am y sond & heyl : & ne fele no maner sare ; 712
 y schal acquite þy trauayl : hennes or þov fare,

I will make
thee yield to
me, and to
Charles I will
hand thee
over.
Then began a
fearful fight ;

þow schalt 3ulde þe creaut : to me in þys felde ;
 To Charlis suppen y wil þe graunt : & to hym y wil þe 3elde."
 ¶ þan by-gan a ferly fyt : be-twene þis two baroun, 716
 Eyþer enpeynede him with al ys miȝt : to dyngen oþer adoun.

the sweat
runs down
their faces ;

þay smyte to gadre þo so feste : with grisly dentes grete,
 þat þe soot fram hem gan breste : & made hure chekes wete.
 ¶ Kyng Firumbras þe stronge : O[lyuer] ascriede þo, 720
 " þov endurest me to longe : þy lif þou schalt for-go,"

*Original
draft.*

Scheld & haberke a-doun he sch
 & al þat side he makede bar 704
 Nadde he stert þan a-syde y
 Wyþ þat strong stroke [vn]ride he h
 þe Saresyn þanne him vnder
 & sayde, " þou lesest þyn herte blod
 Charles with hore berd 708
 Sup
 O[liuer] ansuerden
 " Arst þou schalt þe make wroþ
 3ut am y boþe quert & heil 712
 y schal a-quyte þy trauail hen
 þou schalt 3elde þe recreant to
 To C[harlis] suppe i wille þe grant
 þan bi-gan þer a ferly fyte 716
 Eyþer enpeynedem with is my[3t]
 þey laide on þan so feste wyþ
 þat þe sot of hem gan out berste & mad
 Sir Fyrumbras þe stronge Olyuer 720
 " þou durest me alto longe . þ

þan him spak erld Olyuere : " þou ne afferest me noȝt so ! [leaf 10]
 Other tydyng schalt þow here : er we departe a-two."

¶ Al so scharply þes men of mayn : þan smyte to-gadre aȝy 724 their strokes
are like
flashes of
lightning ;
 So doþ þe fyr & wynd & rayn : an heȝ al on þe sky,
 With wilde strokes þat þay streken : eyþer on oþer asonder,
 Helmes & scheldes þar-wiþ to-breken : & schilde, so doþ þe þonder. their helmets
and shields
are shattered.

¶ Firumbras wax wod on Olyuer : þat he hym wiþstonde miȝte ; 728 Ferumbras is
angry,
 A toke is swerd, & ȝude him neere : to slen him had he tiȝte ;

A smot him on þe helm an heȝ : þat was of god entaille, smites Oliver
on the helmet,
 A qua[r]ter þer-wiþ a-way þar fleȝ : & for-carf ys cappe of maille ;
 Wyþ þat stroke a schar away : a gret del of ys hare ; 732 and cuts
through his
cap-of-mail.

Ac god halp O[lyuer] þat best may : þat he nas wounded sare.

¶ O[lyuer] egerlich¹ þo gan to lok : & smot til him wiþ ire, Oliver aims a
blow at
Ferumbras's
neck.
 & eymede ful euene to ȝyue þe strok : þe sarsyn on is swyre.

Wan Fi[rumbras] þe strok come seȝ : þat Oliuer til hym mente,² 736

His scheld held he vp an heȝ : to kepe hym fro þat dente ; Ferumbras
guards too
high,
and leaves
his side un-
covered.
 Ac As he huld is scheld vp so : discouert was al ys side,
 & O[lyuer] aperceuede ful wel þat þo : & no lengre nolde abide,

Bote Til him a gerte a stroke anon : & egerlich he hym sette : 740 Oliver thrusts

¹ In the margin 'sturnelich.'

² þat til hym [þo was] mente.

þanne him saide O[lyuer] " þou afferest		<i>Original draft.</i>
Oþer tydyng þou schalt here		
Als so scherply þys knyȝtes	724	
So doþ þe fur wynd & rayn		
With wylde strokes þat þey		
Helmes & scheldes þer-with		
F[erumbras] wax wod on O[liuer] þat he him	728	
A takeþ ys swerd & com him n[eer]		
& smot him on þe helm an heȝ		
A quarter þer-of he to clef & eke		
With þat stroke he schar a-way	732	
Ac god hym halp þat best may þat		
þan wax he ful egre of mod &		
& eymed to ȝyue him a stroke		
Wan F[erumbras] þat stronge stroke y[-seȝ]	736	
Hys scheld he held vp þanne an [heȝ]		
As he huld his scheld vp so		
O[lyuer] þat perceyuede þo, no len		
To him he a gerte a strok a	740	

at his breast, Vnder ys brest þe dent him com : ac ys costrel ffirst him mette ;
 þe costrel þat was with yre y-bounde : þer-with a-two he carf¹,
 & þatlykour þer-on schad on þe grounde : & þat swerd on ys sydeswarf¹,
 cuts his hauberk & Oper half spanne for carf² a two : of is hauberke ymad of maylle,
 & of is Iupoun hit³ dude al-so : þat was of riche entaylle, 745
 and 5 of his ribs in two, & wiþ þat strok doun hit do (t) nam : v. ribbes of ys syde,
 & wel neȝ ys guttes þat swerd him ran : & made hym a wounde ourride.
 and his guts begin to fall out. His guttes þer-with gunne out falle : & doun gan renne þat blod ;
 & ȝut stod he strong & stif with-alle : & ne batedede noȝt is mod ; 749
 Of herte was he hol & sound : & pleynede him þe ȝute no þyng,
 He kneels down, and Ac sone he knelede oppon þe grond : & þankede heuene kyng,
 ¶ þanne clypede til hym ryȝt : erld Olyuer and sayde : 752
 prays Oliver not to kill him, " Haue mercy of me, iantail knyȝt : for Marie sone þat mayde.⁴
 & For his loue þat al may see : y pray þe, sle me noȝt ;
 as he will be christened, Hit is my wille cristned to bee : certis þat is my þoȝt.
 My godes þat y me affied on : buȝ noȝt to haue on mynde, 756
 þay moȝe no more do þan a ston : & þat y now auynde,
 ȝif hit by-tideþ so þat y may : be y-wareschid of my wounde,
 persecute Mahomed-ans, y schal scaþe hem niȝt & day : þat bileueþ on Mahounde ;
 Cristendom by me schal encrested be : sykerly if y may scape ; 760

¹— These two lines in margin. ² spanne [he] carf.
³ he altered to hit. ⁴ for [loue of] Marie sone.

Original draft. Faste vnder is breste he com
 Oper half spanne he carf at[wo] 745
 & of his iupoun he dude also þat w
 With þat stroke a doun he carf his rib
 Neȝ þe guttes þat swerd doun
 Ac þow he seȝ his guttes fall a
 He stod als-so stif for al as h 749
 Of herte was he hol & sound &
 Bott knelede him doun on þe grond &
 Sone he clepede to him riȝt E 752
 " Mercy," he saide, " iantail knyȝt for loue
 For his loue þat al may se y p[ray]
 For y þenke to cristened be ce
 My godes þat y affied on beþ 756
 þay mowe ston
 may be
 [6 or 7 lines cut off ?]
 y schal boȝe niȝt & day 759

- & for payenye, so mot y þe : ful yuele wil y schape ;
 þanne schulleþ peynymes cristned be : & hure lay for-sake.
 & þe croune of þorn & þe naylles þre : aȝen þanne wil y betake,
 & al þe relyqes þat y haue : y-take aȝeyn þe riȝt,
 Y wil ȝeld op, so god me saue : & bileue on god almiȝt.
 ¶ y ȝylde me her to Charlis kyng : þe beste knyȝt y-core
 þat is owar now lyuynȝ : oþer euere was her be-fore.
 for þou me hauest conquerid her : i put me in-to þy grace ;
 y pray þe iantail Olyuer : for-ȝyf me my manace !”
- ¶ Wan Olyuer had him al yherd : is herte gan vp sprynge,
 In-to is scaberke he potte his swerd : & went him to þat kyng,
 & huld him vp, for he wax paal : bi-twene ys armes rounde,
 & laid him doun þar-wiþ-al : ful softe oppon þe grounde
 & pulte is bowels in ageyn : & is goffanoun he gan to berste ;
 To make a bond he was ful feyn : & bond hem in wel feste.
 ¶ þan saide Fi[rumbras] til him aȝe : “do let me hennes bere,
 þat y ne daye in þis degre : cristned y wolde y were.”
 “Certis,” saide þe ientail knyȝt : “y wolde wel fayne fonde,
 If y wiste how ymyȝt : make þe vp to stonde ;
 Ac þow hast so myche y-bled : þat paal ys al þy face,
 Wharfor y am sore adred : to remuwe þe of þys place.”
- ¶ þan Fi[rumbras] enforcede hym þer : to arise vp-on ys fete,
 & stod hym vp by Olyuer : & saide wordes swete :
 “Iantail knyȝt, of me tak rewþe : as þow art god & hende,
 & help me hannes for þy trewþe : for y am neȝ myn ende.
 Myn herte him ys a-go ful ner : ychaunged is al my chere ;
 y pray þe, iantail Olyuer : let me noȝt daye here.
 ¶ Go now, tak my gode stede : þat tyed ys at þis tree,
 & he schal wel in thys [my] nede : bere boþe me & þee.
 & tak al-so my swerd ploraunce : þat hongep her by my side,
 þe hefþe of hym doþ greuaunce : to my wounde wyde ;
 & help me y were on hym an horce : y pray þe, ne spare þou noȝt,
 & y wil me selue enforce : þat y wer on hym broȝt.
 Set me be-for þe on is bak : & þe silue be-hynde þanne,
 & so schalt þou wyþ-oute lak : saffy haue me hanne.
 ¶ Ac y warne þe of a torn : war-for y wolde þow spedde :

and make
Pagane be
christened.
[leaf 10, back]

764 He will
restore the
reliques he
has,
and yield to
King Charles.

768

Oliver pities
Ferumbras,

772

775 pushes his
bowels in,
and binds
them up with
his flag.
Ferumbras
asks to be
carried away.

778 Oliver says
he is afraid to
move him.

782 Ferumbras
asks

him to

786

fetch his
steed,

790 and take
his sword
Ploraunce
from his side,
as it hurts
his wound,

794 and to lift
him on to his
horse.

Ferumbras
warns Oliver

- of an ambush
of 15,000
Saracens
- [leaf 11]
- waiting
- for his return.
- Oliver lifts
him on to his
horse,
- and leaps up
behind him,
- but the
Saracens in
ambush
break out.
- The French
blow the
assembly.
- Charlemagne
and his peers
arm.
- Oliver being
surrounded,
sets down
Fierumbras,
- but finding
he cannot
escape,
- p̃ys dai erly by þe morwn : wan y ros of my bedde,
 y leuede 3ond on a buchymen : sarasyns wonder fale, 798
 In þe wode þat 3onder stent : ten þousant al by tale ;
 & in þat ilke brusschet by : v. þousant of op̃re and mo,
 y-horced & y-armed ful sykerly : fro þe top in-to þe to.
 Ac y for-bed hem alle þere : wan y departede hem fro, 802
 þat non of hem so hardy were : fro þenne þay ne scholde go,
 Or ich hadde sum viage done : & til hem come a-geyn.
 Go we hanne þer-for sone : & elles þow worst beleyn."
 ¶ Wan O[lyuer] y-hurde how he spak : in herte a was agreued, 806
 A tok þe stede þat was colblak : & softly vp him heued.
 Fir[umbras] was hard, & suffrede wel : þo3 hit him greuede sare,
 & O[lyuer] lep vp be-hynde hym snel : & forþ wiþ him gan fare.
 Ac al þat trauayl he cast away : as 3e schul here sone, 810
 For or þat he eft kyng Charlis say : ful miche had he to done.
 O F p̃ys anbuschymen3 þan brek out : Bruyllant of Mount mirree,
 & Sortybrant of Combles wiþ hure rout : & þ' kyng of Mantrehlee,
 Arrenor · Gwyhard · & Moredas : Gayot and Angwyree, 814
 Wyþ al þe power þat þeer was : xv. þousant & three.
 Olyuer sone y-se3 þat cas : & swyþþer bi-gan to haste. 816
 But he was encombred wiþ Fyrumbras : þat he ne may ride faste.
 Ac wan þe frensche men hit se3e & knewe : how þe Sarsyns come wiþ host,
 Hure commune horn þanne þay blewe : to assemble to-gadre hure host.
 ¶ Charlis neuwe duke Roland : þan was sore amayed, 820
 So wern þe doþþepers y vnderstand : for þay wern oun-araid,
 Ac as 3erne þay mi3te : þay caste þanne on hure gere,
 Boþe kyng, duk, erld & kny3t : & al othere þat þar were.
 ¶ þe Sarsyn3 gun prykie a-raundoun : & Olyuer bi-sette aboute, 824
 þe woundede man þan he set adoun : & þou3te askape þe route.
 & þan he prayde to god almi3t : schold saue him þat ilke day,
 As wys hit was in trowþe & ri3t : þat he tok þat iornay.
 & al-so he prayde for Fyrumbras : þat no man him be-reue 828
 Til he wer cristned þo3 godes gras : & y-bro3t to þe ri3t beleue.
 ¶ & þan he be-gan to prykie bet : & nolde no leng[er] abide,
 Ac wiþ Sarsyns he was bi-set : þat come on euery side,
 þat he ne mi3te a-scape þe ferd : so pikke þay fulle him aan ; 832

- & þanne at arst drow he is swerd ! & defendede him as a man.
 ¶ þanne was O[lyuer] þat sembbly knyzt ! al-one among is fon ;
 He hewþ on Sarazyns with al is myzt ! & sleþ of hem manyon.
 Wham he smyteþ wyþ his dent : to deþe a leyþ hem doune, 836
 Helmes & haberkes he al-torent ! & doztylich scherth hure croune.
 ¶ þan O[lyuer] bleynte hym a-side ! & þozte a-scape þ^e route, [leaf 11, bk]
 Bot þanne þer cam til him ride ! lampatrys þe proute : Lampatrys
 þe sarsyn bar til him a spere ! ac for O[lyuer] haþ no schelde charges him,
 þe strong strok away to bere ! is bodi a-side he felde, 840
 & ferlich til him a rod a-gayn ! wiþ wel egre mode,
 & wiþ is swerd a clef is brayn ! þorw-out halm & hode : but
 þe sarsyn ful doun ded anon ! & Olyuer tok is spere 844 Oliver
 & eke ys scheld & heng hit on ! þer-wiþ him-self to were, dodges,
 And metep with Turgys on þe feld ! & rideþ til him for tene, cleaves his
 & 3af him a strok on þe scheld ! þat was ful wel y-sene ; skull,
 þorw scheld, haberke, & aketoun ! þat sper him gan to glyde, and taking
 þorw-out is body he bar him doun ! & ded he ful þat tide. his spear,
 ¶ & þan he drow out hautecler ! is swerd ful scharp igrounde, 848
 & smot a sarazyn þat cam him ner ! & 3af him depes wounde : runs Turgys
 Wiþ four othre metep he þan ! þat of is way him lette, through ;
 & smot him boþe þorw hed & pan ! & fuld hem on þe flette. then draws
 Alle þat O[lyuer] areche mizte ! wiþ hautecler he dust him doun. his sword
 þanne þe sarsyns waxe afrihte ! & flowen him what þay mown. Hautecler,
 ¶ To himward come þar ride þan ! Moradas & kyng Kargys, 852
 & þe kyng of Combles, sir Sortybran ! & eke þe kyng Margys, and slays five
 þus kynges a-scried erld Olyuer ! & gradde til him ful hye, Saracena,
 “ þou ne askapest nozt ous, pautener ! bot her riht þou schalt dye.”
 ¶ þan Olyuer gan drede hym sare ! & faste prikede away, 856
 And com þo wel nez him þare ! Firumbras as he lay. He flies
 By þat tyme hadde sir Firumbras ! ys haberioun of y-caste, past Ferum-
 & to Olyuer clepede in þat cas ! & said til hym an haste : bras,
 “ þys hauberk y rede tak of me ! & cast it oppon þyn owe, 864
 þe sikerlukere þer-inne moze 3e ! defendy þour body aþrowe. who says :
 þow hast þer-to grete nede ! wyþ sarayns þow art enclos, ‘Take my
 þe grete god þe helpe & spede ! & kepe þe fram þy fos !” hauberk,
 ¶ þan Olyuer hym þonkede 3erne ! & schridde him with þat gere, 868
 and may God
 save thee !
 Oliver puts
 it on.

& anoþer way gan he terne : þat Firumbras y-founde nere.

The Saracens
press on him.

Aboute Olyuer þan ful faste : þay prikede wiþ spers & scheldes

& sturnelich on him þay þraste : Sarasyns in tal þe feldes.

Ac euere he metep hem with is brond : & deleþ strokes sounde, 872

Wham so he hitteþ wyþ ys hond : a 3af hem deþes wounde.

Kargys with
10,000 men
attack him.

¶ Kyng Kargys wes sturne & prout : & Olyuer gan 3erne assaille

With ten þousant sarsyns stif & stout : wel y-armed with-oute fuille.

Olyuer gan hym sturie about : & for-hewþ hem plate & maille 876

Oliver slays
20,

xx^{ti} slow he of þat rout : þat non armure ne miȝt hem vaille ;

& þan he metep wiþ þat kyng : & rideþ til hym wyþ mod,

[leaf 12]

& smot him wiþ is sward keruyng : a sterne strok & a god ;

and then
the King
himself.

þorw helm & scolle he clef him doun : & þorȝ auentaile & þorȝ hod 880

þorw haberke & þorw is aketoun : attes nauel þe dent a-stod.

¶ þan laid he on þe Sarsyns wykke : faste be euery helue,

Ac euere þay fulle on him so þykke : þat ouneþe he kepte him-selue.

The Saracens
swarm round
him.

þe sarsyns wente til hym wiþ strengþe : & laid on him al aboute. 884

Ac O[lyuer] kepte hymen¹ is swerdes lengþe : euerechone wiþ-oute,

& smyteþ til hymen with myȝt & mayn : & kepþ him be euery syde ;

Summe he smyteþ in-to þe brayn : & summe 3af woundes wyde ;

A sterne gret schour a 3af hem þar : & laide hem a doun ful þykke.

Neuer nas o man þat better him bar : amonges so mony wikke. 889

His horse is
killed.

¶ þan cam til him a Sarsyn prout : prikyng wiþ rendoun,

& smot his stede wiþ a sper þorw-out : þat he ful ded adoun.

O[lyuer] stert vp . & til hym wond : & 3af him a stroke wyþ miȝte,

Wyþ al þe strengþe of boþe ys hond : & to-clef ys body riȝte. 893

¶ þe Sarazyns wroþe gunne to waxe : & as wode men þanne þay furde,

& layde til him wiþ sper & axe : wyþ Gysarmes & with swerde.

His shield,

ys scheld þat was wyþ golde y-batrid : & eke wyþ ire y-bounde, 896

Sone þay had hit al to-clatrid : þe peeces leye on þe grounde.

his helmet,

ys helm, ys coyphe, ys habryoun : alle þay hadde to-rente,

and his
jacket are
in pieces.

& eke ys noble aketoun : was [al] for-hewe & schente.

Ac al þe whyle þat he was sounde : he delte dentes sare, 900

Til he hauede so many a-wounde : þat he ne miȝt fiȝte no mare.

The Saracens
overpower
him,

¶ þan þe Sarsyns on him runne : & set on him hondes fale,

To þe erþe þay habbeþ him wonne : & broȝt is body on bale.

¹ MS. hymem.

His hondes þan þay toke riȝt : & leyden him on his bake be-hynde, 904 tie his hands,
& al so harde as tweyne myȝt : wiþ a corde þai duden him hynde.

& suppe þay han y-take a clout : & duden him more tene, blindfold him,
& byndeþ þer-wiþ is eȝene about : for he ne schold noȝt sene.

An hakenay þay toke þat þay founde : & set him þer-on god spede, 908 set him on a horse,
& vnder ys wombe ys legges bounde : þe sykerluker hym to lede. and tie his legs under his belly.

¶ þan þe knyȝt is mone gan make : & sayde, "alas : alas !

Charlis kyng, for þy sake : me is bi-tid þys cas."

He saide, "Charlis, whar ert þou : in hwam my trist was euere ? 912

A ! Rolond, felawe, help me now : ! for þou ne failedest me neuere."

Til hym þan saide kyng Moradas : "a-noþer schal be þy songe, Moradas mocks him,
y ne schal noȝt ete, by Mahoun is fas : til þow be heȝe an honge."

NOW ys Olyuer þus ytake : among is enymys. 916 [leaf 12, bk]

Moradas þe kyng of wham y spake : clipeþ his companys,

L. Sarazyns þanne a chees : among hem þar and sede :

"Wendeþ bi-fore & ledeþ þees : to Egremoyneward with god spede ; and orders him to be taken to Algremonst.

Fareþ faste on þour way : bote euere habep on mynde, 920

þat he be kept in yuel aray : & we willeþ þow kepe behynde."

þay went hem forþ on apendant : with olyuer þat was ibounde,

þat hewles was of semblant : for he bar many a wounde.

His blod gan renne a-doun ful toȝt : by þe waye as he gan ride, 924

& ȝut þe sarasyns ne spared him noȝt : bote beten euere & cride, His escort torment and threaten him.

"Turmentye we wel þes cristene þef : þ' wile he is ous amonge,

For he hath don ous gret repreþe : to morȝe schal he ben honge."

¶ By þat was araid duke Rolant : & saw hymen awayward schake, 928 Roland sees them,

"Alas," said he, "god vayllant, : "Olyuer my felaw ys take !

y-seep þat ȝonder company : how þay him ledeþ away ;

now spede we him to socoury : for godes loue wat ȝe may !"

Roland prikede is stede of prys : so dude scot Gwylmer, 932 and calls for a rescue.

So dude Geffray and Aubrys : & Berard of Montdisdier ;

So dude þe duk of Borgoygne · Sir Gy : þat hardy was & wys, The French knights

& eke Richard of normandy : & eke sire Alorys ;

& duk neymes of Baueer : Wyþ þe gray hore berde, 936

Basyn, Terry, and Ogier : & Charlis wiþ al · his ferde.

þay criede "a mont ioie ! seynt dynys !" after hem as þay gunne ryde, ride to rescue him.

"ȝe token yuele þe knyȝt of prys : & yuele ȝou schal be-tyde."

- ¶ Rolant ran to Cornybourgh : & smot him with a spere, 940
 A persched ys scheld & bar him porwh : & slow hym for al ys gere.
 Berard in þe same plas : mette wyþ Turgys,
 & Oger deneyys wyþ Athenas : & Richard wyþ Margys,
 & sire Gyoun of Borgoygne : wyþ Brudelan of mountbys, 944
- Each slays
a Saracen.
So þat euerech with-oute ensoygne : hap a-slawe his.
 To þe Sarasyns ȝyuen þay hard batail : & slowe him alle aboute ;
 Wan hure speres gunne to faille : hure swerdes þay drowen oute. 947
 Of summe þay smyte of legges & armes : & of sum þe heuedes þay gerde,
 & summe pay stykede þorȝ guttes & þearmes : so foule with hem þei ferde.
- They are like
wolves in a
flock of
sheep.
Als furde þay wyþ þat ilke hepe : wyþ-oute tales mo,
 As dop wolues among þe shepe : wan þay comeþ hem to.
 Al þe feldes þo wern y-fuld : of dede men on þe grounde, 952
 Saue an vewe þat leye & ȝulde : & abide hure deþes stounde.
- [leaf 18]
Oliver's
escort hurry
him on,
¶ þe whyle þys batail was don þer : as y ha told ȝow here,
 þe opre of wyche y tolde of eer : chacyeþ forþ Olyuere,
 And leggeþ on hym strokes harde : as he rȝdt y-bounde, 956
 þe wyles þay of þe rereuarde : buþ y-laid down to grounde.
- and take to
flight ;
¶ Wan þay y-seȝe þat þes frensche men : ȝyue hem so scherp a schour,
 Faste a-wayward gunne þay fien : þay sparede no deshonour.
 Ac þe kyng of Combles, sir Sortybran : þat was hure gouernour, 960
 þazne cryede, "lordes, comeþ aȝen : & schewyaþ ȝour vygour !
 We wolleþ sle þus frensche her : rȝt in clene bataille."
- rallies them,
and they
attack the
French.
Wip þat þe Sarsyns reliede hem þer : & þe frensche men gunne tassaille.
 ¶ þe Sarsyns þanne with gode herte : foȝte & sparede hem naȝt, 964
 Harde strokes & eke smerte : to þe frenschemen þanne þay rȝt.
 þay caste til hem gleyues & launce : falsarȝ & feþerd dart,
 & slowe þer-wip kniztes of fraunce : & ȝaue hem batail hard.
- Gwater,
Gwylmyn,
and others
are slain ;
Gwater þay a slowe þen : & Gwylmyn þay duden al-so, 968
 And of othre frensche men : wel thre score & mo.
 So sherplich þo on hem þay fulle : þes Sarsyns al wip strengþe,
 þat þe frensche men þai made reculle : wel an akers lengþe.
- Gwylmer,
Berard,
Goffrey,
and Aubry
are taken,
þanne þay asayllede Scot Gwylmer¹ : & toke him a-force fyne, 972
 & eke sir Berard of Moundisder² : & Geffray of Langeuyne ;
 & þe ferþe þay token al-so þere : sir Aubry, a noble knyȝt,
¹ þay asayllede [Berard of montdisdier]. ² Some words erased here.

& alle þay arn of þe doppepere : þat þo buþe taken in fyzt.

¶ þus barons weren take wiþ force : & harde y-bounde y trowe, 976

And suppen y-set alle an horce : & awayward wiþ hem þay drowe.

Ac wan Charlis hit wiste & sez : for hymen hym gan to maye :

Ofte a cride to his host an hez : " now prikeap knyzttes, y praye ;

If þay hymen ledeþ þus away : my doppepers þat buþ y-take, 980

þanne ys my worschip lost for ay : certes for þat sake."

þanne mihte me sen þe frensche men : after þis Sarsynz chace,

þay huld hur scheldes bi-forn hem : & harde hem bi-gunne embrace.

At aualyng of an hulle : þe frensche han þey of-take, 984

& wanne þ^e frensche men on hem fulle : þe Sarasyns gunne to quake,

¶ þan comencede a batail newe : by-twene þes hostes two,

þe Sarasyns sone þay al-to-hewe : þat þay of-token þo.

Rolond drow out durenal : þat schon so siluer brizt,

For O[lyuer] hym was wo wyþ al : þat he ne had him in siht. 988

Ac suppe þat he ne may hym seen : a þozte þan or he wente

Amonges hem þer a-wreke is teen : sone wyþ swerdes dente.

¶ þe furste he mette hiht engwyld : a Sarsyn of gret renoun, 992

þorþ helm & coyphe þat wern hard : he clef ys hed a-doun ;

He fel doun ded oppon þe ground : is lifdawes wern ido ;

" Rest," quap he, " þou heþene hound " : & anoperne he lawte þo,

& ʒaf him a strok al on ys yre : wiþ durenal is brond : 996

His heued gerte he fro þe swyre : þat it tomblede on þe sond.

Al þat he areche mihte : a dust hem doun to dede.

þe Sarasynz wern of him affrizte : & prykede away god spede,

& ledeþ wiþ hem þe ryche prysouns : þat þay habbeþ y-take, 1000

& þay folzyeap after wiþ rendouns : wel sory for hure sake.

¶ Roland prykede after blyf : for þe loue of Olyuer þan,

& potte an auenture ys owe lif : to rescuwy þat doztly man.

Ogier deneyns on Bryafort : wiþ him prikede al-so,

And ʒaf Roland god counfort : þat chyuahee for to do. 1004

¶ Now chacieþ þay þe Sarseneyns : þis noble knihtes tweye,

Ouer mountayns & ouer valeys : ne dradde þai for non aye.

To rescuwe þis barouns gode : euere þay prykede faste, 1008

As noble men & hez of mode : þat of noþyng wern agaste.

Ac al þat þay of-take mihte : as þay prikede þo,

tied on
horses,
and carried
away.
Charles
laments
for his
knights.

Then the
French
pursue the
Saracens,
and overtake
them.

A fresh fight
begins.

Roland draws
his sword
Durenal

[leaf 13, back]
and cuts
down Eng-
wyld.

The Saracens
fly with their
prisoners.

Roland and

Ogier

chace the
Saracens over
hill and dale,

slaying all
they can
catch,

- With dent of swerd þay slozen him riȝt : & prikede forþ after mo.
þus þay prikede, þuse two baroun : hure frendes to rescowe, 1012
- till nearly
sunset,
Til þe sonne was neȝ go doun : & gan to sitte lowe.
Sory wer þey for hi ne miȝt : hure pruwesse fulfille þore.
when they
turn back.
To Charlis host aȝen þay tiȝt : be-hynde hem fer þoȝ þay wore.
¶ Wel longe hadde þys chas y-lest : of þys knyȝtes tweyn, 1016
þe Sarsyns fleȝe & noȝt ne sest : war-for þay turnde aȝeyn.
Al ful were þe weyes almost : of sarasyns þay han a-sleyn,
Ac for Rolond haueþ is purpos lost : þan was he noȝyng fayn.
- Charles at
sunset retires
to his camp,
¶ Charlis saw þe sonne neȝ set : þat red þan schon & lowe, 1020
In his pauillounz to haue recet : þiderward gan he drawe.
& wiþ his host he tornde aȝeyn : wiþ a wel yuele chere,
grieving for
Oliver.
& euere he siȝte & gan to seyn : 'Alas' : þat he cam theree :
"Alas : Olyuer, my gode kniȝt : for þe myn herte ys cold. 1024
Alas ! þe tyme þou scholdest fiȝt : with þat Sarazyn bold.
Alas ! now buþ myn barounz wyȝt : fro me y-take in hold.
Alas ! þe tyme þat in mi siȝt : þis mischef falle schold."
- Neymes com-
forts him.
¶ Duk neymes ihurde ys mone : & saide to þe kyng, 1028
"Auenge þe her-of eft sone : & let now þy mornyng.
[leaf 14] þyn barons schulleþ be delyuered wel : wiþ þe hilp of god almiȝt,
& þe Sarasyns, be þay noȝt so fel : schulleþ abigge þys ounriȝt."
- Charles vows
vengeance,
þan kyng C[harlis] swer is oþ : ne scholde he neuere be fayn, 1032
Til he had him mad hem wroþ : & his barons gete aȝayn.
- As they ride
they find
Ferumbras.
¶ As þey ride so¹ on þe way : sechyng on þe playne,
þey founde Firumbras þar a lay : vnder a tre of frayne.
Wan Charlis y-saw him war he was : he neȝhedem & sayde, 1036
"Maugree haue þou, Fyrumbras : for þy foul mysbrayde ;
y haue y-lost Erld Olyuer : þys day for þy sake,
& duk Berard of Moundesdier : & oþre þat buþ y-take."
- Charles
curses him.
"Maugree haue þou, Fyrumbras : for þy foul mysbrayde ;
y haue y-lost Erld Olyuer : þys day for þy sake,
& duk Berard of Moundesdier : & oþre þat buþ y-take."
- Ferumbras
sighs deeply
and humbly
answers :
¶ Fyr[umbras] herde what Charlis saide : & made a grete syȝyng, 1040
oppon ys arm ys heued a layde : & humbliche ansuered þe kyng,
"A : charlis, kyng of fraunce : ne spek þer-of no more ;
y haue ynow of greuance : & ȝut me ys wers þer-fore.
Erld Olyuer with strenþe in fiȝt : haþ me her conquered, 1044
& y til him am trewe y-pliȝt : & haue myn oþ y-swered,
þat y schal euere fro þys day : þe heþene lay for-sake,
- 'I have
sorrow
enough.
Oliver has
conquered,
and I am
pledged
to become a

¹ MS. ride [forþ].

- And beleue in *cristene* fay : & folloht to me take.
 y suffrie ynow of sorwe & pyn : my syde ys al to-tore,
 & if y daye her sarsyn : y wot y am y-lore.
 For þe loue of þilke crist : þat þou lyuest on,
 Help me þat y were baptist : in þe holy fanston :
 For wer ich mad a cristenman : & my wounde faire y-helid,
 Heþemen schold y so greue þan : þat þay shulle sore y-felid,
 & þay þat now buþ Sarasyns : schold turne to *cristene* lay,
 & elles þay scholde polye pyns : for hure false fay.
- ¶ þe croune of þorn schal y zeld vp : & þe nayles three
 þat pyned þour lord wan he was put : on þe rode tree ;
 & opre reliques riche y-now : whar-of y haue plentee,
 y schal hem zelde azen to þow : Charlis kyng so free.
- Be þe saule þat y bere : & as god lese me of my greuance,
 Me greueþ more for Olyuere : þan of my owe penaunce ;
 Ac If y be helyd by help & cure : of my wounde wyde,
 Alle þey schulle abbigget dure : þat token him in þat tide.
 For godes loue, sir Emperour : tak pite of me here,
 It turneþ þow to gret deshounour : & y daye in þis manere."
- ¶ Wan Charlis had herd þis answee : is herte to himward feld ;
 He het .iiij. knyghtes him arere : & bere him forþ on a scheld.
 Softe þus knyghtes þan him bere : to þe kyngis paulloun
 & of hur handes ne let him nere : til Charlis het set him doun.
- ¶ Charlis hemself & sire Oger : ounarmede him þo anon,
 & wan he was sengle among hem þer : hy auysed is schap echon.
 Brode scholdres had he *with-alle* : & brustes ful quarree,
 Wyþ longe sydes & middel smalle : a wel schape man was hee.
 With Browes bente & eȝen stoute : and lokede so þe facoun :
 To seche þe worlde al aboute : ne was man of fairer fasoun.
 Alle þat him be-hulde þan : among hem þai saide pere,
 þat Olyuer was a doȝty man : wan hym he miȝt conquere.
- ¶ A wel fair knyȝt was Firumbras : ounarmid wan he lay,
 Ac ys Fysage al discolourid was : for is blod was gon away ;
 thre aȝes a sounede afforn hem pere : for angwys of ys wounde,
 By-fore þe lordes þat þar were : wiþ-inne a litel stonde.
- ¶ Charlis tok pite of þat siȝt : an archebiischop a clepede anon,

Christian ;

1048 I am sore wounded.

Help me now
and I will
make all
Saracens
become
Christians.

1052

1056 I will give up
the crown of
thorns, and
the three
nails
and other
relics.

1060

I grieve more
for Oliver
than for
myself,
but I will
avenge him."

1064

[leaf 14, back]

1068

Charles
orders four
knights to
bear him to
his tent,and takes off
his armour.

1072

A well shaped
man he was,
with broad
shoulders,
and eyes like
an eagle.

1076

1080

Thrice he
faints with
pain.Charles
orders an
Archbishop

- to baptise him that night. And het him sone þat he wer diȝt : to blessy þe holy fanston, þat he were fulled þat ilke niȝt : & ymad cristenmon. 1084
þe prelat dide al so he hiȝt : & plungeded him sone þer-on.
- He is baptised, and his name changed to Florens, but he is always known as Ferumbras. ¶ þan was cristned sir Firumbras : a man of gret deffens, ys name ther y-chaunged was : & was ihote Florens, ac þoȝ me tornde þar ys name : as þe manere was, 1088
Euere ȝut after a baar þe same : & men cliped him Firumbras.
¶ Wan he was cristene man ymad : on a bed þan was he laid, þat with riche cloþes was y-sprad : & ful faire araid.
- Charles' own physicians attend to him. Charlis clipede ys leches þo : & ȝerne gan him praye 1092
þat þai scholde til him go : is wounde to enserche & saye.
¶ At is heste þey wente þer-to : & softe gunne taste is wounde, His lyure, ys lunge & is guttes al-so : & found hem hol & sounde.
- They declare they can cure him within two months, at which Charles is pleased. þan saide þay to Charlemayn : þay wolde him vndertake, 1096
þay wolde with-inne monþes twayn : hol & sound him make.
"Dop," quap he, "þat faire cure : & siker ynow ȝe beo, Of ȝour warysoun ȝe schul be sure : wan þat ich it seo."
- [leaf 15] ¶ þanne saide þ^e Emperour : "iherid beo god almiȝt ! 1100
Had y now erld Olyuer : myn herte were al lyȝt : & myne opre barons gode : þat þe Sarazyns han y-take."
þan set he him doun drurymode : & dropede for hure sake.
- Meanwhile Oliver and his fellow-prisoners **T**Orne we aȝen in tour sawes : & speke we atte frome 1104
Of Erld Olyuer & his felawes : þat Sarazyns habbeȝ ynome.
þe Sarazyns prykyap faste away : as harde as þay may hye,
- are hurried on And ledeȝ wiȝ hymen þat riche pray : þe flour of Chyualarye, By hilles & roches swyȝe horrible : on hur cors þay wente, 1108
- to Mantrible, And er þay come to Mantrible : neuere þay ne astente. Ouer þe brigge þay gunne ride : þat was ful huge of lengthe,
- where they pass the night. In þe Cite þat nyȝt to abyde : to kep hem þer in strengthe. Wiȝ hure prisouns þay comen in : þat were ytake be chaunce ; 1112
þe draȝtbrigge was drawe vp after hem : for drede of þe host fraunce.
- Next morn- ing early they start to Aigremont. Sone þay ryse vp-on þe morwe : & to Egremoygne þay toke þe way. God kepe þe prisouns out of sorwe : for carful þay were þat day !
Wanne þay come to þe castel ȝate : hure hornes þay blewe faste, 1116
þe porter alredi was þer-ate : & let hym in an haste.
- The Emir, Balan, ¶ þe heghe Amerel sir Balan : þat was on his halle an heȝ,

- Faste pyder þanne he ran : wanne he hymen come y-seȝ,
 & wiþ hem al-so sir Lamaȝour : a kyng of heþene londe, 1120 runs to
meet them,
- & wan þay comen doun of þe tour : after tydyngges þay gunne to fonde.
 ¶ Bruillant, þ^e kyng of mountmirree : of is stede him liȝte adoun,
 þan amyral þanne saluede hee : in þe name of sire Mahoun,
 þe Amyral of hym axeth sone : wat tydynges þay had y-broȝt; 1124 and enquires
what tidings
they bring.
- "Tel þou hem me riȝt anone : and for no-þyng hele þou noȝt.
 haue ȝe taken duk Roland : & Olyuer his felawe,
 & wyþ Charlis foȝt wyþ hand : & hys doþpepers a-slawe?"
- ¶ "Nay," seyþ he, "by seynt Mahoun : it is noȝt as ȝe sayn; 1128 Brillant
says : 'We
have been
beaten by
Charlemagne,
and Ferum-
bras
- We buȝ discomfyt & sleyn a-doun : wiþ þe kyng Charlemayn,
 & þy sone sir Fyrumbras : þat fauȝt with a knyȝt of fraunce,
 Be name ne know y noȝt wat he was : ac þar is betid a chaunce,
 þat Fy[rumbras] by him ys ouercome : as þay foȝte in felde, 1132 has become
a Christian."
- & to cristendom haþ him nome : & to Charlis kyng is ȝelde."
 ¶ Wan þe Amyral haþ iherd þe kyng : in sownenyng gan he falle;
 Ac wan he awok of his soȝnyng : loude he gan to calle,
 & wrong ys hondes & saide, "alas ! ys my sone y-nome? 1136 The Emir
grieues
- My ioie ys lost For Fyrumbras : wat man is he bi-come.
 ¶ Alas ! what sorwe haþ he don : þat was so hardy & wiȝt,
 þat he was encombred so for on : to yeld him to such a knyȝt?
 V. hundred y saw aȝen him gon : & he slow alle in fiȝt, 1140 for Ferum-
bras,
[leaf 15, back]
- & now ys he take among is fon : y-lost ys al my miȝt.
 & if he is turnd to cristene lay : alas ! þanne is hit wers,
 Leuere me were by my fay : he were to-drawe wyþ hors."
- ¶ þe Amyral saide þanne aȝeyn : "tel me what is þe knyȝt, 1144 and asks who
conquered his
son.
- þat was so miȝty man of mayn : to ouercome my sone in fiȝt."
 Bruyllant saide, "so mot y pryue ; þes moste man in siȝt,
 þat stent ibounde among hem vyue her by-fore ȝow riȝt."
- ¶ "Aha !" quap he, "is þes þe þef ? : þe deuil him mote for-gnaȝe,
 þat ouercom my sone þat was me lef : & broȝt him to is lawe ! 1149 Brillant
points out
Oliver.
- By Mahoun, þat is my god in pref : ne schal y noȝt be fawe,
 Er y sen him haue mischef : an-hanged & to-drawe."
- ¶ Wan þay herd him prete þus : þe frenschemen þar þay stode, 1152 Balan swears
Oliver shall
be hanged
and drawn.
- Olyuer saide, "help, iesus : þat boȝtest ous wiþ þy blode !
 & felawes," he saide, "confortiaþ ȝow wel : & for noȝt þat may be-falle, Oliver warns
his
companions

- not to tell
their names,
or else þat non of ous is name ne tel : auysyep þow wel *with*-alle :
for wiste þe Ameral sykerly : of þe doþþepers þat we were, 1156
for al þe gold in cristenty : non of ous wolde he spare,
- they will
assuredly be
hanged. þat we ne scholde to deþe gon : be hangid & to-drawe,
Oupre be demembrid euerechoun : & broȝt of lyues dawē.”
¶ “As þy wil is,” saide þay þo : “we willeþ alle heere.” 1160
- The Saracens
unblind them. To hem þan wente Sarsyns two : & ounarmide Olyuere ;
þe bond þat is fysage was bounde wyþ : to stoppen is louely siȝt,
þay ounbounde & is felawes siþ : þat were al men of miȝte.
- Oliver is pale. ¶ þan was Olyuer al colourlees : for þe blod þat he had schad. 1164
- The Emir
asks his
name. Wan þe Amyral y-saw al wat a was : for wrappe he wax neȝ mad,
And til him a wente anon : & askede hym what he hiȝt :
- Oliver says,
“Angwyron,” “Sire,” said he, “Angwyron : of france a pore knyȝt,
To serue Charlis in bataille ; him self me dobbede riȝt ; 1168
y ne haue no þyng *with*-oute faille ; bote wat y may wynne in fiȝt.
- and that they
are all poor
knights. & my¹ felawes þat her beep : knyȝtes þay buþ fol sure,
Ac þay ne haue namore þan ȝe seeth : hure hors & hure armure.”
- “Alas!” said
the Emir,
“this is a
sorry chance : ¶ “Alas,” þan sayde þe Amyral : “how is þys afare ? 1172
For my sone þat y louede wel : of blisse y am al bare.
- [leaf 16]
I had hoped
these were
dukes or
earls. & now y hopede þat þuse had y-ben : dukes & Erldlis of fraunce,
& [þay] ne buþ bote demeyne men : þis is a sory chaunce !
noȝt for þat ȝe schul wel sen : þat þay schul haue greuaunce.” 1176
Quyke he het þay scholde hem flen : *with*-oute more distaunce.
- Lamasour ad-
vises him not
to alay them, ¶ þanne saide kyng Lamasour : þat stod him faste bye,
“y rede þe, sire, for þyn honour : a-staunche þyn herte hye ;
For to slen suche vaumasours : what miȝt hit profetye ? 1180
- but to im-
prison them.
The Emir
agrees, and
orders
his gaoler to Enprisone hem her wiþ-inne þy tours : & so þer let hem lye.”
¶ þe Amyral þo wiþ-drow ys mod : ys herte was ful of grame ;
& clepede ys iayler þer a stod : brytamoun bi is name :
“Tak,” he sayde, “þys vaumasours : & to prisoun þou hem lede, 1184
& pote hem to sorwe out of cours : y hote þe oppon þy mede.
- bind them
strongly and
surely, Bynd hem herde wyþ yre & steel : & pote hem in stokkes of trow,
& loke þay fare noȝt to weel : bot kep hem harde ynow.
And ȝe, lordes, þat han hem take : goþ now alle y-same 1188
& helpeþ him for my soncs sake : þat þay ben maked tame.

¹ MS. my my felawes.

- & namlich þis ilke chef feloun : þat haþ me þus anuyed,
 Lokieþ he be in such prisoun : þat sone he be distruyed." but especially Oliver.
- ¶ þan wende forþ þe iayler : & tok til hym socoure, 1192 The gaoler
 & ladde wiþ hymen erld Olyuer : & þe oþer barons foure.
 Wan þey comen þer the prisoun wes : wiþ yre þay bounde hem faste, binds them, and leaves them without any food.
 & left hem þer al mete-les : & so fro þeym þay paste.
- ¶ Wan þey wern in prysoun þare : þay criede & made hure mone, 1196 They lament and pray.
 And saide, "lord, how schul we fare : in prisoun her al-one.
 As þow seest boþe fer & ner : sitting on þy trone,
 help ous, lord, whyle we buþ her : & kep ous fram our fone !"
- F**Loryppe on hure chambre seet : þ° Amyral is doȝtre dere ; 1200 Floripas, the Emir's daughter, hears the cries,
 Sche was a mayde fair & swet : & hurde hure dulful bere,
 & þe grete noyse sche herde also : þat among hem y-maked was.
 Sche clepede hure maydens to hur þo : wyte sche wolde þat cas.
 Florippe, þat maide fair & gent : hur maidens þan tok anon, 1204 and goes to find out the reason.
 & out of chambre doun sche went : þar þat folk gan gon.
 Wan sche cam þar þay were : sche askede of on & on,
 Why þat noise was maked þere : amonges hem euerechon.
- ¶ On ansuerede as it was : & told hure al & some : 1208 She is told of her brother's conversion, and the capture of the French knights.
 How hur broþer Fyrumbras : cristen man was bi-come,
 & how þat þilke stronge knyȝt : þat wan hym in bataile
 Wyþ four othre men of myȝt : wern put þo þer in baile :
 And how þay criede, & made hure mon : as þay in prisoun sete. 1212
 Sone sche leuede hem echon : & þan iayler gan sche mete, [leaf 16, back]
 For hure broþer sche gan to wepe : ac sone sche had ido.
 ¶ Wiþ hure maydens at an hepe : to þe iayler is sche go ;
 Sche takeþ a syde Brytamoun : a conseil, & gan him frayne : 1216 Then she asks Brytamoun, the gaoler, who his prisoners are.
 & askep what buþ þay baroun : in prysoun sche herde pleyne.
 "So Mahoun ȝyue me gode chaunce : ma dame," gan he sayne,
 "Hit buþ kniȝtes out of fraunce : þat were wyþ Charlemayne.
 þus buþ þaye þat han oundo : þy brother, sir Fyrumbras ; 1220
 & many of oure þay habbeþ al-so : y-sleyn on many a plas.
 On þer ys amonges hem þer : a bachelor fair of syȝte,
 In þis world ne saw ich er : so fair y-schape a kniȝte.
 He conquerede sir Fyrumbras : in batail þar þay fiȝte, 1224
 now haþ he in prisoun herde gras : & more til him is tyȝte."

She asks to speak with them.

¶ "Brytamoun," þanne saide sche : "let me wiþ hem speke a þrowe For to wyte wat þay be : & hure couyne y-knowe."

He says it can't be done.

"Dame," said he, "for drede of gyle : y ne dar noȝt þat it be so : 1228

þy wyt wolde turne with-inne awhyle : haddest þou leue þar-to.

þy fader me for-bed al-so : þat for þyng þat miȝte be-falle

His orders are strict.

þat to no man ne schold y þe dore vñdo : with hymen to speke or calle ;

& y wil don ys commaundiment : þy speche ys al in vayne. 1232

For þe ne wil y noȝt ben y-schent : i tel þe in certayne."

'Thou vile rascal,' said she, 'thus to answer a lady!'

¶ "Wat ! harlot gadelyng," saide sche þan : "mote þou be heȝe an-honge !

How answerest þow a iantail womman : þat budeþ þe no wronge !

þou schalt abyte it · if y can : ȝe ȝut or come oȝt longe. 1236

þe meede þat þou schalt her for han : wel sone þou schalt a-fonge !"

She winks at her attendant,

¶ & þan sche preynt with hure ȝe : oppon hur chamberere þarsche stod.

¶ þat mayde was boþe wys & sleȝe : & knew ful wel hur mod,

who runs to her chamber,

In-to þe chambre sche sterte anheȝe : rennyng as sche wer wod, 1240

& tok vp a strong staf þat sche seȝe : hwyȝ was herd & god,

returns with a staff, and gives it to her mistress.

Vnder hur mantel sche hidde þe staf : & turnde aȝe wel faste

& hym to hur lady sone sche ȝaf : & to-ward þ^e prisoun sche paste.

They try to break open the prison door.

Wanne sche was þe dore affore : sche gan be-holde aboute, 1244

& sayw þer no man þat was bore : with-inne ne with-oute,

Saue Brytamoun abod þe iayler : þat of hur þan tok wonder.

þe prisoun dore þan wend heo ner : & putte hure staf an vnder

As sche wolde þe dore to-breke : sche gan þo hebbe & pyngre : 1248

þe iayler þan þyderward gan to reke : to letten hur of þat pyngre ;

Sche lefte þe dore & wend him ner : & lifte vp þ^e staf with mayne,

& so on þe heued sche set him þer : þat out sterte al is brayne.

Brytamoun runs to stop her, but she knocks out his brains with the staff.

[leaf 17]

"Rest," quap sche, "þow sory wyȝt : god ȝyue yuele chaunce ! 1252

now schal y speke my fille riȝt : with þes knyȝtes of fraunce."

She unlocks the door,

¶ þe keyes sche tok of him anon : & ounlok þe dore an haste :

By-twene hymen þanne euerechon : þay lift vp þat bodi faste,

and they throw the body into the pit,

& in-to prisoun þay gunne hem gon : with þat cors vnwraste, 1256

& in þe dupe pit þer þay wer on : sone þas hit caste.

¶ þan were þus prisouns alle : of þe fallyng i-pot in fere,

which frightens the prisoners. Floripas sends her maid for a torch.

So harde amongen hem hit gan falle : þay wende þe deuel it were.

Florippe het a damesel briȝte : hastelich gon & fette 1260

A gret torche & hym aliȝte : sone wiþ-oute lette.

- þe damesel dude ase sche hiȝt ! & com aȝen ful sone,
 & broȝte a torche brennyng briȝt ! & sperde þe dore anone.
- ¶ Florippe hure drow to anoþer part ! & þar an dore ounlekes 1264
 þat drow to þe putte ward ! & doun in the pyt sche strekes.
 Wan sche to þe prisouns was y-come ! of hymen sche asked þare,
 What þay buþ þat þar buþ nome ! & wannys þat þay ware.
- ¶ "Damesel," saide erld Olyuere ! "as god me ȝyue god chaunce, 1268
 We buþ knyȝtes alle y-vere ! y-born in douce fraunce,
 And buþ Charlis men þe Emperere ! & vnder his liegeaunce.
 þe Ameral haþ y-put *ous* in prisoun here ! & doþ ous gret greuaunce.
 We buþ her wel herde y-bounde ! with gyues & cheynes grete, 1272
 Lyggyng on þys pittes grounde ! with-oute drynke & meta.
 By god þat made þis werlde rounde ! me were leuere my lif for-lete
 þan her to þolie þe stronge stounde ! þer wormes doþ ous ete.
 For hongre our bodies waxeþ feynt ! & þolieþ moche pyne, 1276
 War-for damesel as þow art gent ! ȝyf ous sum what to dyne."
- ¶ Flo[rippe] tok wel gret pyte ! of þys iantaile knyȝte,
 & þus þanne answerede sche ! "ȝow be-symeþ to heo men of miȝte,
 ȝe schul ha mete, so mote y the ! & drynke y-now at riȝte : 1280
 Ac arst þow schalt sykery me ! & þy treuþ surly plyȝte,
 þat þou for me schalt don a þyng ! þat y schal the saye,
 & ther-to ben myn helpyng ! by the power þat þou maye."
 "Certes," said Olyuer, "my derlyng ! y wil don at þy paye, 1284
 y nolde þe faille, be heuene kyng ! in payne þar-for to daye.
 ȝyf y schal for þe fiȝte ! ȝyf me mete & drynke,
 & supþ arme me at my riȝte ! & y wol for þe swynke ;
 & if y schal þanne gon & mete ! wyþ þe Sarayns þat buþ abowe 1288
 Doggedlich y schal hem grete ! swetyng for þy loue,
 þoȝ þer be of hem two hundred ! y wil slen hem helue."
 þat mayde þan gan wax awondred ! & þoȝte by hur selue
 þat he was doȝty man ynow ! suche dedes to fulfille. 1292
 Flo[rippe] saide, "sir, for þy prow ! y pray þe hold þe stille.
 To auunt þe her in þis plas ! it is ful gret folie,
 It miȝte hermye ȝow alle in cas ! if my fader miȝt it spie."
 ¶ þan him spak sir Berard ! þe erld of montdisdier, 1296
 þat was þe fairest kniȝt of regard ! of alle þe doþþeper ;

She goes
down and
asks the
French who
and whence
they are.

Oliver an-
swers they
are French
knights,

and begs her
to give them
some food.
Floripas pro-
mises to do so

if they will
do one thing
for her.

Oliver says
he will do
whatever she
wishes :

he will fight
any number
[leaf 17, bk]
of Saracens.

Floripas begs
him to be
quiet,

lest her
father should
hear him.
Then Berard

says that if
she
will be their
friend
they will do
anything for
her.

"Comly mayde of kynges kende : þe corteyst þat i knowe,
Fayr of face now beo our frende : and we schul ben þyn owe ;
& For þy loue þat art so hende : we schul boþe ryde & rowe, 1300
& pylke þat buþ to þe ounkende : þayschulleþ be brozt ful lowe."

¶ "Certis," saide þat faire flour : "y þanke þe swete wyzt,
þow coupest wel louye paramour : me semep a lady brizt."
"þea for soþ," quap scot Gwylmer : "þe habbeþ aredid arizt, 1304
In many a lady fer & ner : his loue haþ he y-pyzt."

Then
Floripas

¶ þanne was þat mayde fayn : wan sche wiste hure wille.
After Maumecet hure chamberlayn : þanne sche sente stille,
& het to brynge with him anon : anuyt, tange & slegge. 1308
& sone he com wyþ euerechon : & brozt hem on is rigge.
"Oundo þis prysouns on & on" : Florippe til him gan sigge,
"þey schulleþ out of þis sory won : & her no lenger ligge."

sends for an
anvil, tongs,
and sledge-
hammer,
and orders
the knights
to be un-
bound.

This is done,
and
the knights
get up and
follow
Floripas,
by an old
disused
passage,

¶ Maumecet coupe ful wel þat craft : & put him anon þar-to : 1312
Of al hure chaynes he haþ him raft : & ek hure vetres oundo.

Sone þay stode oppon hure fete : and god þay þankede þo.
And þe damesele fair & swete : with hure sche made hem go,
¶ By an old for-sake ȝeate : of þe olde antiquytee 1316

Sche made pys barouns passye ate : þe damesele þat was so fre.
Maumecet þe torche afforn him baar : brennyng fayre & brizte,
And ful pryuyly ladde hem þar : in-to hure chambre rihte.

to her
chamber,

FLorippe is in-to Chambre gon : pryuiliche & stille, 1320
& pys kniztes wiþ hure ecchon : as it was hur wille.

Wan þay were wyþ-inne ibrozt : aboute þay gunne be-holde
So riche a chambre & so y-wrozt : ne saw þay neuere on molde.

the walls of
which are of
precious
stones,
the windowes
of jasper,

¶ þe walles of þe chambre were : araid for þe nones, 1324
y-maked of ful riche gere : of coral & riche stones,
þe wyndowes wern y-mad of iaspre : & of opre stones fyne,
ypoudred wyþ perree of polastre : þe leues were masalyne,

the beams
and rafters
of cyprus,

Al þe coples cipres were : & þe raftres wer al-so, 1328
And þe bases þat hem bere : wiþ golde were bi-go :

[leaf 15]
and the
ceiling
of silver gilt.
It is built on
a rock over
the sea, and
in it Floripas

þe celynge with-inne was siluer plat : & with red gold ful wel yguld.
ne sawe þay neuere by-fore þat : a place so faire ybuld.

þe chambre stod oppon þe se : amidward a roch of stone : 1332
þer-inne duelte þat maide fre : as chef of al þat wone,

& with hure maide Ioyaunce : þe kynges doȝtre of Floyre,
Clarmounde & mayde Floraunce : & þat fayre may Baudoyre,
& opre maydens elleuene : burdes briȝte on boure ; 1336

lives with
fifteen
maidens.

xv. þar were of hem ful euene : duellyng in þat toure.

¶ Ful noble was þe ryche aray : þat in þe chambre was.

þat vessel was of golde gay : þat scholde be tyn & bras.

þe dossers were of ryche pal : y-brouded al wiþ golde,

1340 The curtains
are of rich
cloth,
embroidered
with gold.
The knights
look out of
the window
at the sea,

& þe beddes of sente þorw-out-al : as parto falle scholde.

¶ To a wyndowe wente þes barouns fre : & ther þay loked oute,

þay seȝe þe wazes of þe se : harde to-gadre route.

As þay auysede a-boute oueral : þe wardes þat þer wore,

1344

þe wawes walwede a-geyn þe wal : a sper schaft lengþe & more.

"Parfay," þan saide erld Berard : "þys tour is strong to wyne,

and admire
the strength
of the tower.

For any kyng it were ful hard : wyþ assaut to comen inne."

¶ þe wyle þis barouns ley out þan : & tolde hure tales rounde, 1348

To Flo[rippe] com hure maystres gan : þat hiȝte Maragounde,

Floripas'
governess
asks who the
knights are.

"Doȝtere," sche saide, "wat men buþ þeese : þat þou hast of prisoun
y-broȝt ?

þy fader loue þow schalt lese : for hymen as y ha þoȝt.

þe longe man wyþ þe pale fas : þat ys erld Olyuer

1352

þat ouercom þy broþer Fyrumbras : ful wel y knowe hym þer :

þat other wyþ þe crollid her : þat stent hym faste by,

She recog-
nises the
knights,

þat ys Berard of mountdisdier : & þe pridde ys Aubery :

þe ferthe þat stent hymen bytwyn : þat is Scot Gwylmere ;

1356

þe fifthe ys Geffray Langeuyn : of france a doþþepere.

ne schal y neuere ete no more : bi Mahoun, þat ys my lord,

and declares
she will tell
the Emir.

Or y ha told þy fader fore : þy doynge euery word."

¶ Wan þat mayde y-hurde hure speke : chaunged was al hure blee ;

Floripas runs
to the
window,
and leans
out ;

Til a wondowe sche gan to reke : þat lay out to þe see ;

1361

& atte wondowe sche lynede out : hure angre sche þoȝte awreke.

Hure maistresse þanne sche clipede aloud : & bad hur wiþ hure to speke.

then calls her
governess to
her,

Marigounde compþ til hure renne : & hure hed til hire gan layn, 1364

Flo[rippe] stod vp & preynthe þenne : to-ward hure Chamberlayn,

and winks
at her at-
tendant,

& aȝen sche laid hur there : & fur out sche bent hure þo,

& to whyte what hure wille were : hure maistrasse dude al-so.

¶ þyderward þ^e Chamberlayn hym fasteran : þat hurcast y-knew ful wel, [leaf 18, bk]

- who seizes the governess, and throws her out of the window. & By þe legges lifte he þe schrewe þan : & schef hur out ech del. 1369
 þan ful doun þat olde trate : in-to þe salte see,
 & Flo[rippe] þat was þanne þer ate : turnþ hure in faire aȝe,
 & sayde : " Maumecet my mate : y-blessed mot þou be 1372
 For aled þow hast muche debate : to-ward þys barnee."
- The knights are delighted. ¶ Wan þys Frenschemen wiste of þis : al how it stod ariȝt,
 In herte þay hadde ioye & blys : & þonked god almiȝt.
 Flo[rippe] þanne til hem wendes : & spak til ȝam & saide : 1376
 " Confortyeþ ȝow, my leue frendes : & buþ nopyng amaiede,
 Syþe ȝe buþ her on þis clos : at my owe ledyngge ;
 Ne drede ȝow nopyng of ȝour fos : bot leteþ away mornyngge."
- She sees blood on Oliver, and asks if he is wounded. Oliver says yes. ¶ Sche caste hure eȝe on Olyuer : & saw him al be-bled ; 1380
 þat mayde þan hym neȝed ner : & askede war he hed
 On his body any wounde : & Olyuer sayde, " ȝee !
 Wyþ swerdes and speres scharp igrounde : y haue take three."
 ¶ " Parfay," saide þat burde briȝt : " þou schalt be hol anon, 1384
 & recuuer y al þy myȝt : maugre al þy fon."
- She gives him a warm draught, which heals every wound. ¶ Sche fet him a drench þat noble was : & mad him drynk it warm,
 & O[lyuer] wax hol some þas : and felede no maner harm.
 Muche him wondred of þat cas : & þan gropede he euery wounde, 1388
 And founde hem þanne in euery plas : ouer al hol & sounde.
 ¶ & þan she dude hem to drynke and ete : of þe beste þat miȝte bee :
 & seruede hem alle at þe mete : & tauȝte þat sche was free.
 Sche confortede hem with Al hure miȝt : & bad hem be glad & blyþe,
 And hy hure þankede faire aplyȝt : & ete & dronke swyþe. 1393
- and rich clothes. ¶ Wan þay had ete & dronke ynow : þe bord sche het arere,
 Ryche garnymenȝ forþ sche drow : & by-tok hymen for to were.
 þan said she : " lordes wel ȝe knawe : þat y haue do myche for ȝow
 Floripas then Suppe y haue ȝow of prysoun drawe : agayn my fader prow : 1397
 y do hym wrong ȝow to saue : Syn Olyuer þat her ys now
 My broþer in batail ouer-come haueþ : & is worschip þer-with oundow.
 y knowe O[lyuer] swyþe wel : he ne may noȝt to me be hud, 1400
 nopeles ne drede him neuer adel : for me ne schal he be kud.
 Now wolt þou Oliuer þat couenant holde : hwich þow me be-hete ?
 As þow saidest þat þow wolde : wanne þow in prysoun sete."
 ¶ " ȝe," said he, " þat wil y do : do say me now þy wille." 1404
- asks Oliver if he will keep the promise he had made her. Oliver asks what she wants done,

"pat wil y noȝt," quap sche þo : "til þou me han sakred tille."

þan O[lyuer] huld vp his hant : trewely for to holde

By is power þat couenant : þan spak she til hym & tolde,

þat a knyȝt þar was of fraunce : þat sche hadde longe y-loued ; 1408

hwych was icomen of gret lyaunce : & a noble knyȝt aproued.

þe knyȝt þat was so gret of fame : was cosyn to kyng Charloun,

& Gy of Borgoyne was þe name : of þat bolde baroun.

"Wan þe Amyral my fader, Sir Balan : waste Rome Citee, 1412

þar saw ich þanne þat noble man : to don a dede free.

Lucafer of Bandas : a kyng of gret renoun,

On a stede y-armed was : and rod to þat Baroun,

And bar til hym wiþ a spere : to ha sleyn him in þe feld ; 1416

& þe knyȝt þe strok away gan bere : manlich wyþ is scheld.

þe iantail kniȝt þan drow ys brond : & ȝaf him a stroke wiþ mayn,

þat hors & man adoun he wound : & leye þer-on þe playn.

Fro þat day in-to þys : myn herte haþ he yraft, 1420

Ne kepte y neuere more blys : were he to meward laft.

Wolde he be my worldly make : & weddy me to wyue,

For his loue wold y take : cristendom al so blyue.

As þou art a trewe knyȝt : do & help now wat þou maye." 1424

Olyuer saide : "bi god al-miȝt : damesele y schal a-saye."

Now let we be þis Barouns ther : speke we of other þyng.

Olyueris fader, þe duk Reyner : com to Charlis kyng,

Ther he was among is host : & spekeþ on hys resoun : 1428

"For þy sake my sonne ys lost : þat was a bold baroun,

To mo[r]þe erly wan it is day : to sechen hym wil y fonde,

& bote ich him aȝeward gete may : for sorwe y go to schonde."

"¶ Wan þe Emperour haþ hurd him speke : of him he toke pyte, 1432

On is fet sone gan he reke : & Roland þan clipeþ he :—

"Cosyn," saide he, "þoȝ hit be so : þat hit falle in drede,

A message for me þow most do : þat toucheþ a mannys dede :

To Egremoygne-ward scheltou fare : to morwe wan it is day, 1436

To þe Amyral Balan þat is thare : and belyfþ on þe false fay.

Loke for noþyng þat þow ne spare : to tellen him as y say.

On myn half say him þat he me restare : þat he haþ mystaken away,

And specialiche myn barouns free : hot him in myn helue, 1440

and swears
to do what-
ever she
wishes.

[leaf 19]
Then she
says she
has long
loved

Guy of
Burgundy,
whom she
had seen at
the taking of
Rome,
when he slew
Lucafer,
king of
Bandas.

If he will
marry her,
she will be
baptised at
once.

Oliver says
he will do all
he can.

Meanwhile
Reyner tells
Charles

that he is
going to seek
for Oliver.

Charles

runs to
Roland, and
tells him
that

he must go
to Balan,
and demand
with threats
the surrender
of Oliver and
his com-
panions.

- pat he hymen hastelich zelde azee : as he wol saue hym selue.
And if a doþ noȝt as y say : & tarieþ per wyþ to longe,
y wil do take hym on a day : & on galwys heȝe an honge."
- Naymes ¶ þan hym spak duk Naymoun : that was his counseyller, 1444
A gret lord was he of renoun : & of fraunce a doþþepeer.
- remonstrates "Certis, sire, ȝe buþ noȝt sleȝ : to sende til him Roland :
By-þenk þat he ys þy cosyn neȝ : and al þyn other hand.
- [leaf 19, bk] Duk Ro[land] is a man of myȝt : þe doȝtyste þat lyþ to fraunce ; 1448
þanne the to lese suche a knyȝt : it were a¹ sory chaunce.
Myn herte me ȝifþ þat ȝif he went : and takeþ þat iornee,
pat þou ne seest hym no more verament : & per-for auyse þe."
- that they will never see Roland again. Then said the King, "He shall not go alone, thou shalt go with him." Basyn intercedes,
"Wel depardieux," quap þe kyng : "ne schal he noȝt gon al-one ; 1452
Wend þow wiþ hym, my derlyng : my message schul ȝe done."
¶ By-fore þe kyng com duk Basyn : þe þridde doþþepeer,
& of is speche by-þoȝte him : & neȝede Charlys neer.
"Sir," said he, "me þynkeþ now : be þat ȝe goþ aboute, 1456
pat riȝtself willes þou þenkst oundow : þe beste of al þy route."
- and Charles says, "Thou, too, shalt go."
"Certis," quap Charlys, "and þou schalt gon : wyþ hymen & be þe þridde,
pat schal my message to þe Amyral don : and do now as y bidde."
- Then Richard of Normandy protests,
¶ þan com forþ a doþþepeer : Rychard of normaundye, 1460
And sayde to þe kynge ther : "sire, þow dost folye
In suche a message for to sende : of al þy lond þat prys,
To don him sle ther & to schende : amonges þyne enymys."
- and Charles says he shall go with them as their guide.
"Aha" : quap kyng Charlemayn : "now is þis wel by-þoȝt, 1464
pat Rolond ne is felaws twayn : þe contreye ne knoweþ noȝt.
þou schalt ben hure iantail gyde : & my furþe Messenger ;
For þou knowest by euery syde : þe contreys fer & neer."
- Then starts up Terry of Ardane, and remonstrates,
¶ Vp a sterte after þane : a doþþepeer of fraunce, 1468
þe duk Terry of Ardane : A baroun of gret lyaunce.
"Sir," said he, "what hast þow ment : wilt þow þyn barons spille ?
If þay goþ, þan buþ þey schent : þay comeþ þe no more tille."
- and Charles says he shall be the fifth.
"Wel depardieu," quap Charlis þo : "greyþe þe on þy gere, 1472
þow schalt be þe .v. þat schal go : my message for to bere."
- Then Ogier
¶ Vp þan aros oppon ys fet : sir Ogier þe Denys,
& spak to Charlis thar a seet : & sayde on his deuis ;

¹ MS. y.

- "Sir," saide he, "y 3ow praye : as 3e buþ of kynges flour, 1476
 Al þys doynge letēþ away : & kepeþ 3our honour.
 For if 3our barouns þat buþ fre : wendeþ in þat message,
 In aunture ys hure comyng a3e : fram þat sory vyage."
 Charlis saide to hym þan : wyþ a stordy chere ; 1480
 "y knowe þe for an hardy man : & of my lond a pere,
 Such a message for to don : ne ys non bettere here.
 Go þou al-so with hem ecchon : & be my messagere.
 Cryst of heuene 3ow alle saue : my messagers alle sixe ! 1484
 & 3ut þe vij schulle 3e haue : 3our felaschip to make wixe."
 ¶ Sir Gy of Borgoygne stod faste bye : þe vij. doþeper :
 Charlis on hym caste ys ey3e : & bad him come neer :
 "Sir Gȳ," quap Char[lis], "y loue þe wel : for þow art of my blod, [leaf 20]
 & euere y hope þat y schel : for þow art wys & god : 1489
 A doȝty knyȝt & hardy ynow : to don al mannys dede,
 & canst ful wel as y trow : gon in such a nede.
 þar-for Gyoun, by god of heuene : wyþ þes othre þou most gon ; 1492
 þan haue y barouns seuene : my message wel to don."
 ¶ þe nyȝt hure neȝehede faste : þe day was neȝ ago,
 þe lordes buþ þan a-paste : wyþ-oute more a-do.
 þys messagers agayn þe morwe : a-rayd hem for hure message. 1496
 god saue hem alle fro sorwe : þay takeþ an hard vyage !
 ¶ On þe morwe wan it was day : & þe larke by-gan to synge,
 þys messegers come in god aray : alle by-fore þe kyng ;
 Wel y-armed þorw-out al þyng : euerechone þey ware, 1500
 & toke hure leue of Char[lis] kyng : on hure message forþ to fare.
 Char[lis] bi-tok hymen god almiȝt : þe heȝ kyng of heuene.
 Hure way toke þay þanne riȝt : to Egremoygneward ful euene ;
 To þe Amyral ward, sire Balan : on ys castel þar he lay. 1504
L Many was þe iantail man : þat for hymen bad þat day,
 þat god hemgrauntede grace & miȝtes : to aȝe come in god aray :
 & forþ hem wendeþ þes noble knyȝtes : & takeþ hure iornay.
 Ete we now þys lordes fare : god leue hym wel to spede ! 1508
 And turne we aȝen þar as we ware : & of þe Amyral y wol rede.
 For his sone, sir Fyrumbras : & is Sarsyns þat wern a-slawe,
 Sory & wroþ ynow a was : riȝt al so sayþ þe sawe.

begs him not
to send them.

Charles says
he shall go
too.

Then he
turns to Guy
of Burgundy,

says he shall
be the
seventh.

The knights
get ready.

At daybreak

they
take leave of
Charles and
start to
Aigremont.

Meanwhile
the Emir

- summons
seven kings
to his
presence, Vij. kynges þo made he come : afforn ys owe presaunce ; 1512
Peynymes þei were alle & some : & vnder his liegiaunce.
Among hem seuene on þar was : þat was chef of alle,
Ys name hote Moradas : þay comen to þe Amyralle.
¶ Moradas askede for wat nede : þat þay wern of sent. 1516
- and tells them þe Amyral ansuerede for a dede : “y-hyreþ now pantent.
Lordlynges, wel 3e wyteþ alle : how Char[liſ] þe kyng of fraunce
now is oppon my lond afalle : with prude & gret bobaunce,
And he þenkeþ my lond conquerere : & to don ous alle schame. 1520
Bot arst y þenke hym affere : & alle hise to grame.
Wendeþ þer-for to Morymond : y-logged þer he lys,
And siggeþ to þe cristene hoñd : Char[liſ] of parys,
[leaf 20, back] Ys cristene fayþ þat he for-sake : and be-lyue on Mahone, 1524
& hastelich myne amendes make : & 3ylde a3eyn my sone,
to go to Morymond and bid Charles
& eke al þe realme of fraunce : þat he hur holde of me,
to give up Feruinbras, and become his vaasal.
þorw-out al in god liegeance : for euere-more in fee :
& þat he fle fro þanne a-way : & lete my lond in pees. 1528
& yf he ne doþ nozt as y say : þat neuere ne wil y sees,
Til y haue him distrayed : & alle þat y fynde of his ;
for he me haueþ so sore anuyed : wendeþ & siggeþ him þys ;
& 3if 3e metep with any cristen man : baroun outhur knyzt, 1532
lokeþ þat 3e legge hem an : & slep hem a-doun wyþ myzt.”
¶ Sir Mora[das] saide to þe Amerel : “þys message ys mucho to drede.
'This is a dangerous errand,' said Sir Moradas,
þys frensche men buþ boþ lyther & fel : wan þay hereþ ozt of quede,
& if we schul don þys message : we ne comeþ nozt alle a3eyn. 1536
'nevertheless we will do it.'
We wollep nopeles do þat vyage : þer-fore to ben a-sleyn.
þat y ne say it for no drede : 3e mowe it wel deuyse,
Do we wollep wel þy nede : with-oute any feyntyse.
Me selue þy message y wil abede : in such a manere gyse, 1540
þat, bot y be taken oþer dede : an hundred hit schulleþ a-gryse.
Wiþ my sward scherp¹ y-grounde : hure crounes wol y schaue ;
&, bot if my sawe soþ be founde : maugre mot y haue.”
¶ þe sixe saide þay wolde al-so : & faste þay made bost 1544
þat to Char[liſ] þay wolde werche wo : & eke to al is host.
Sone þay wern araid arizt : þus vij kyngis y-vere,

¹ MS. schrep.

In stedes þat were fair of sizt : & eke on riche armere.

Alday þai riden & noȝt ne aliȝt : to don þat ilke cure,

Til þai come to Mantrible at niȝt : & wolde abyde þere.

On þe morwenyng wan it was day : forþ wende þes kynges seuene,

To morymond-ward þay toke þe way : as he lay ful euene.

Faste þay passede ouer al þe weys : þey knew ful wel þe cost ; 1552

Ne sparede þay hulles, noȝer valeys : bote prikede forþ with bost.

AS þese frensche men come ryde : on message fro Charloun,

Duk Naymes gan be-holde a syde : & saw hem & hure penoun.

"Mercy god," quap naymes þan : "now buȝ we betraied ; 1556

ȝonder y se come many a man : y-armed & wel araid.

Hit semeȝ sarasyns as be sizte : þat prikeap as wynd & rayn ;

Willeȝ we wiȝ hymen mete & fiȝte : oȝer ȝe wollaȝ turne agayn ?"

"Sir duk," quap Rolond, "what eyleȝ þe : þer ne buȝ noȝt xxx^u þare ;

Ne .xx^u. neȝer, ful wel y se : why makest þou such a fare ? 1561

Mete we with hem on cristes name : & gowe to hymen afrount.

We schulleȝ hastely make tame : alle þilke heȝene hound."

þay prykede hure stedes with hure spores : & þan þay runne away ;

Ne spared rigges noȝer vores : til þay mette þat pray. 1565

¶ Wan þey come to-gadre neȝ : & Moradas þe kyng hem mette ;

A cryede to hymen wel an heȝ : & þus he hymen grette :

"If ȝe lyueȝ on þe heȝene lay : Mahoun ȝov saue & kepe : 1568

& if ȝe ben cristene men of fay : y diffie ȝow al þe hepe."

¶ "Sarsyn," saide duk neymoun : "haue þou muche maugree,

We wendeȝ on message fram Charloun : to þe Amyral of nubbee.

þow scholdest no messenger bere a doun : for al þyn heȝ degree." 1572

"ȝus," quap he, "be Seynt Mahoun : & ȝut y ȝow diffie aȝee.

Wolleȝ ȝe ȝou defende : ouȝer ȝe wolleȝ flen ?"

"ȝea, so god me mende" : þe duk him sayde aȝen ;

"Hwȝch of ȝow wil wyȝ me fiȝte" : saide þe Sarsyn þan. 1576

"y am," quap Naymes, "al-redy i-diȝte : a-ȝeyn þe for to gan."

¶ "Fy," quap Moradas, "wat ert þow : þat telest of me so lyte ?

For such a doȝeyne¹ y make auow : y nolde noȝt ȝyue a myte.

Al for elde ys hor þyn her : hit semeȝ wel by sizt : 1580

Send me an oȝer þat ys my peer : on him to kyȝe my miȝt.

¹ MS. doȝeyne.

1548 They ride all day till they come to Mantrible, and on the next morning,

as the French ride along, Naymes spies the Saracens, and says,

'Shall we fight them, or retire ?' 'There are

[leaf 21] ;

not 20 of them,' says Rolond, 'we shall soon tame them.'

When they come near the Saracens Moradas challenges them.

'We are messengers,' said Naymes.

Moradas dares them.

Naymes accepts the challenge. Moradas says he is too old.

- A doȝty iolyf bachelor : a ȝong man & a wiȝt,
 þat is of body fresch & fier : wiȝ such on wold y fiȝt."
- Then he
 orders his
 companions
 to stand back. ¶ þanne bad he to þe company : þat wiȝ him were þare, 1584
 þat non of hem ne come him ny : how so it by him fare.
 "For al þes *cristene* conquere y schal : þis day me self al-one,
 & hymen presenty to þe Amyral : to-morwe or it be none."
- Roland is
 indignant,
 seizes a spear
 and
 ¶ Wan Ro[land] hurd him how he spak : for angre a wax neȝ wod :
 A tok a spere wiȝ-oute lak : & rod til him wyȝ mod ; 1589
 "Whar to makest þow al þat bost, Sarazyn ?" Ro[land] sede
 "Or þow passye out of þys cost : me self schal do þy nede.
- charges him. War now of me, ich þe diffie " : & bar til him is spere, 1592
 And he anoȝer tok an hye : & scherply til him gan bere.
- Their spears
 are broken,
 So harde þay acoupede on hurscheldes : þat broke buȝ boȝe hureschafte,
 & þe peces fulle on þe feldes : þe hedes on þe tre by-laȝte.
- and they
 draw their
 [leaf 21, back]
 swords. Now haueȝ þay hure speres tynt : hure swerdes out þay twyȝte, 1596
 On helmes & scheldes ful many a dynt : ayȝer til oȝer areȝte :
 So harde þey hywe on helm & scheld : þat þay al to-rente,
 Me miȝte y-sen in tal þe feld : how þe sparkes by-fore out-wente :
 þe cercles þat were on hur helmes set : of perre y-mad & golde, 1600
 þey bern hem doun wiȝ-oute let : ne miȝt þay noȝt with-holde.
 What halt hit mucche her-of to telle : to drecchen¹ ous of our lay ?
 Ro[land] ate laste wyȝ hym gan melle : & taȝte him a sory play.
- Roland
 cleaves
 Moradas
 through his
 helmet. Roland smot hym on þe helm an heȝ : & laid hit a doun with mayn,
 Helm & coyfe ther wyȝ a clef : þorw-out heued & brayn. 1605
 His auentaille ne vailede him noȝt : þat þe sward ne clef him þanne,
 Til it hadde in-to is bodi i-soȝt : by-nythe is brest a spanne.
- His followers ¶ Wanȝe his felawes þat y-sye : þat Moradas þe kyng was ded, 1608
 Loude þay cryede & skryȝte an hye : "Mahoun wat is þy red ?
 How schulle we now ous selue gye : now ous lackeȝ our hed ?
 þus *cristene* houndes schulleȝ sore abyē : auengy we hym," þay sed.
- charge at
 Roland to
 avenge their
 leader. ¶ Agayn duk Ro[land] þan com þys route : wyȝ hure swerdes drawe,
 & heweȝ til hym al aboute : to hauen hem þanne a slawe. 1613
 & Ro[land] ȝerne him gan defende : wyȝ durenale is brond,
- Roland
 cuts Lam-
 brok's
 head off, and And sturne strokes til hymen he slente : þanne wiȝ boȝe ys hond.
 Rolond smot þe kyng Lambrok : wan he was ameued, 1616

¹ MS. *dracchen* altered to *drecchen*.

- In þe necke : þat wyþ þat strok : A wypeðe of his heued.
 A-noþer strok þan a gerte : to Colbrant þe kyng with mayn,
 & þorw-out is helm & ys coyfe him herte : & [al] for-clef is brayn.
- ¶ þe foure opre flozen faste : wan þay seȝen hem falle, 1620
 Ac þys frenschemen an haste : aȝe requilled hem alle,
 & wan þay hadden hymen with-inne : alle þay sloȝe : saf on.
 On was clouen in-to þe chynne : another to þe brust-bon ;
 þe bridde was styked with a sword : þe furthe a-scapede away, 1624
 And prykede faste to þe furd : þar þat þe Amyral lay ;
 Til he com to Egremoyne : neuere þat he ne blan :
 þan wente he wiþ-oute ensoygne : to speke wiþ Balan.
- ¶ Wan þat þe Ameral y-saw him come : pilke heȝene kyng, 1628
 þan way aȝen him haþ he nome : & askede what tydyng.
 " Certes sire," sayde þe kyng : " suche tydynges haue y broȝt
 þat willeþ lyke þe noȝyng : by þat þow art by-þoȝt.
 ȝester day, so mote y thee : as we ryde forþ ryȝtes, 1632
 Wiþ seuen glotouns mette we : þat buþ of Char[lis] knyȝtes :
 Al þyn Messagers þay han a-slawe : saue me þat am a-scaped,
 To schewe to þe þorw my sawe : how þat ous is hapid.
- ¶ þey vij. þe vyage han vndertake : hiderward fram Char[lis] kyng,
 To þe a message for to make : & hiderward buþ now comyng. 1637
 Hure wyle miȝt þow now wel ȝylde : beo þai hider i-come,
 Al quike y rede þan let hem hyldre : þe glotouns alle & some."
- ¶ " Alas !" saide þe Amyral þan : " now am y broȝt in care, 1640
 No lengre lyue y ne can : of blisse y am al bare.
 Furst y loste Fyrumbras : my sone þat was me dere :
- L** & now haue y lost kyng Moradas : a knyȝt with oute pere :
 And othre kynges manye : & mucche of my socour ; 1644
 Now my folkes doþ þus wanye : y-lost ys myn honour."
 Eue we her þan Amyrel : liggyng in sorwe & care ;
 & of þis barouns y wil ȝow tel : þat to hymward buþ a-fare.
- ¶ Wan þe vj. kynges wern y-aleyne : & þe vij. was a-go, 1648
 þan were þay alle in wittes tweyne : what was best to do.
 Duk Naymes þe furste was : þat spak of þys entent :
 " How mowe do, lordes, in this cas : þat we buþ now y-sent ?
 If we goþ now to þe Amyrel : certis we buþ y-schent. 1652

cleaves
Colbrant's
skull.
The others
fly, but the
French over-
take them,
and
slay all, save
one.

The Emir
asks what
tidings he
brings.

The mes-
senger tells

[leaf 22]

him what has
happened,
and that the
French
knights are
on their way
with a mes-
sage from
Charles.

The Emir
laments his
knights and
Fyrumbras.

The French
knights
consult.

Naymes
advises them

- to return, Turne we aȝe, y rede wel : & telle we how it stent."
- but Roland declares he will ¶ "Nay," quap Roland to þe duyck : "þan [wer] we yuele spedde ;
Leuere me were to han be syk : liggyng on my bedde.
If god send grace my wit to heldé : & my owe lif to saue, 1656
And durenale my swerd to welde : by-fore þis as y haue,
- never turn back till he has delivered the message to Balan. Turne aȝeynward y ne schal : for no manniss speche,
Til y ha spoke wyþ þe Amyral : whar ich hym euere seche :
& lokeap ȝe lordes do al-so : to kepe ȝou out of blame : 1660
& certis, sirs, bote ȝe do : ȝe doþ ȝow selue schame.
- He proposes that they ¶ And take we þe heuedes of þys Sarsyns : & lede we with ous þader ;
Euerech trossye on at his dyuys : to þe aroun of his sadel.
we willeþ hym lede forþ boldely : with ous wiþ-oute affray, 1664
& if þar is any þat spekeþ oȝt by : say we it is our pray.
& wan we comeþ to þe Amerel : al-so mot y waxe,
- each present a head to Balan. Naymes dissuades them, but y schal him presenty¹ fair & wel : þe heuedes alle sixe."
- Terry supports Roland, and ¶ "Ro[land]," quap neymes, "why spekestou so ? þou ert of heȝe parage,
Wilt þou þe selue & ous a slo : þorw such a fol outrage ?" 1669
"Be dure god," quap Terry þo : "it wil be riȝt god rage,
Riȝt as he wil let it be do : for þat is vassalage."
- [leaf 22, bk] each takes a head. ¶ Euerech of hymen þan tok an hed : as it dyuysid was, 1672
& forþ þay riden wyþ-oute dred : god help him for is gras !
- Naymes Duk naymes be-fore þaym gan to fonde : & afferrom lokede þo :
þan saw he Mantryble afforn him stonde : & þe brigge þat lay þar-to.
"By-holdeþ now, syrs," quap duk Naymoun : "þe ȝondre faire Citee :
Me þynkeþ þat þat is Egrymoun : þer we scholden bee." 1677
"Nay," quap Richard of normaundye : "soþely y þe sigge,
Hit ys Mantryble þat þow sye : wyþ þe grete brigge.
A þes half Mantrible þe grete Citee : ys þe brigge y-set, 1680
Al of marbre y-mad ys sche : wyþ a quynte iet.
Sixty pers þar buþ þar-on : þat buth grete & rounde.
þe werste piece of hem ecchon : cosnede a þousant pounde.
Oppon ech pere þar stent a tour : enbataild wyþ queynte engynne, 1684
Twenty knyȝtes of gret honour : mowe wel beo loged ynne.
þe syd walles þat on þe brigge stondeþ : buþ an hundred pas of lengþe ;
Bot how dup sche ys no man ne fondeþ : þe ryuer is so gret of strengþe.
- The bridge is 100 yards long,

¹ MS. presently.

- þe brigge ys of fair entaylle : on brede fourty fete. 1688 and 40 yards wide.
 An hundred knyghtes wyþ-oute faille : þer-on affrount mowe mete.
 .x. cheynes þar buþ ouerthwart adrawe : in stedes dyuers y-set, Ten chains are drawn across it.
 As heuye as twenty men drogy mawe : ys euerech wiþ-oute let, 1691
 In tyme of nede þe chaynes buþ bent : & on othre tymes buþ oundo.
 Wo wer him þat wyþ-inne went : ȝyf he þar hadde a fo.
 Oppon þe tour aundward riȝt : þar stondeþ a iuwel gay, Upon the tower
 An egle of gold þat schynap briȝt : so doþ þe sonne on may.
 þar is þe wacche y-mad anigt : wyþ sarsyns of gret aray ; 1696 the watch is set.
 Many ys þe gode cristene kniȝt : þat þar haþ be don of day.
 þe fairnesse þar-of no man ne wot : to telle it al on sonder.
 þe dotouse ryuer me calt flagot : þat raply renneþ vnder : The river is called Flagot.
 A geant ys maked briggeward : þat symeþ þe fend to see ; 1700 A giant is keeper of the bridge.
 Wyþ an hache an honde heuy & hard : þe brigge ay kepeþ hee.
 þe geant ys so wonderly wyȝt : and so pereillous on ys pray, So mighty is he that
 þat þoȝ þar come an hundred kniȝt : þar forþ to take þe way,
 Bot if þay don as he wol riȝt : wyþ-oute more delay, 1704
 Hasteliche wil he wiþ hem fiȝt : & don hem out of day.
 for wham he may with þe hache arede : þoȝ he be i-armed wel, he would be a match for 100 knights.
 He clefþ him doun to þe gurdelstede : ouper is body þorw echdel."
 Euerech til oþer þanne sede : "ther by-gynneþ luther haunsel, 1708 The French are frightened, but
 To don þe Message þat we buþ bede : to Balan þe Amyrel."
 ¶ "Lordes," quap Ro[land], "now hauy cast : to speken wiþ þat hounde. Roland says he will tackle the giant [leaf 23]
 To knowe ys wil y wil him tast : & drecchen him a stounde.
 Til ȝe alle be wel apast : & þan iwil him ȝyue a wounde 1712
 Wyþ durenal by godes fast : þat he ne schel neuere be sounde." and slay him.
 ¶ "Nay," quap Naymys, "by myn hed : so ne schalt þow noȝt ; 'Nay,' says Naymes,
 If þou duest as þou sed : it miȝte be dure aboȝt.
 Ac wan we seep him doþ after my red : & makieþ it noȝyng toȝt, 1716 'leave him to me.'
 & y wille ouercome þe qued : wyþ lesynges þat y ha þoȝt."
 ¶ Alle þay duden þanne assente : to þat : þat he gan sigge, They agree,
 & forþward faste on hure way þey wente : & entrede on þe brigge. and ride on to the bridge.
 þe Briggeward was y-redy ther : at entre of þe ȝeate, 1720
 Wyþ an hol hundred of sarsyns fer : þat y-armed stode þar-ate.
 ¶ Duk Naymes furst gan to entre : þe brigge aforewarde,
 Ac þe Briggeward sone him hente : by þe brydel harde ; Naymes tries to cross, but the briggeward seizes his bridle.

- & sone he askep wyþ-oute ensoygne : wyderward he was boun 1724
- Naymes says "Sir," saip naymes, "to Egremoygne : þys day if me mown."
 "Was men both 3e," sayde he agayn : "þat comeþ in such aray?"
- they are on a message to Balan, "We buþ," quap he, "with Charlemayn : þe emperour, for soþ to say.
 To Egremoyne we moste on his message : to þe Anyral sir Balan. 1728
 Let ous nozt of oure vyage : y praye þe, gode man."
- 'Ye must first pay a toll,' said the Saracen, ¶ "3e mote furst," quap þe Sarazyn : "syþþe 3e þyder fondeþ,
 For þe truwage make fyn : þat to þis brigge longeþ."
 & N[aymes] hym answerede sone : "do tel me wat is þe trow, 1732
 & ful longe or hit beo none : þy pees schal wel be dow."
 ¶ þan Ansuerede þe wardeyn : "hit is nozt lyzt to fynde,
 Ac nopeles y-hure me seyn : and haue it on þy mynde.
- 'of 100 maidens, Of grete hertes refet at al : y asky of 3ow an hundred, 1736
 & clene maydens faire smal : al-so manye y-sondred.
- 100 falcons, An .C. of gyrfacouns y asky bo : y-muwed ouer 3ere,
 and 100 white steeds ; and for each hoof of your horses a carbuncle stone. & an hundred of whyte stedes al-so : þat neuere no sadel bere.
 For ech fot of 3our stedes : þat 3e now rydeþ on, 1740
 3e mote al-so her paye nedes : a charbuncle ston.
 Quyclych payeþ þys truwage : þat 3e han i-hurd me sigge,
 And wendeþ forth on 3our viage : ouer þys iolif brigge.
 & þo3 3e now wolde leue hit : & turne a3e as 3e come, 1744
 For-gon 3ou tidde þerfor 3our heued : & þer-of nemaþ gome."
- Naymes says it shall be paid, that their baggage is following, and there he will find all he requires, ¶ "Wel, depardieu," nemys said : "al þys y knew be-fore,
 of Al þyn askynge schaltou beo ipaid : sippen it nys no more.
 Oure harneys comeþ her be-hynde : wiþ to hundred men araid : 1748
 With hymen schalt þou al þyng fynde : þat þow hast to ous y-said ;
 Gyrfacouns y-muwed & white stedes : & hertes of gresse y wene ;
 And louely ladies on hure wedes : maydeyns pay buþ clene.
- '[leaf 23, bk] and besides, cofers of gold and precious stones. The keeper agrees, and lets them pass. þey bryngeþ al-so cofres fylð : of golde & precious stones ; 1752
 Tak y now þer-of wat þou wylt : and let ous gon at ones."
 ¶ "y grante wel," saide he þo : "suppen þay schulleþ paya."
 þe rayne þanne let he go : & let hem gon hure waye.
 After him alle þan toke þe way : & Ro[land] gan lawe smere, 1756
 And lawyng to Naymes gan he say : þat he was a gret lyere.
 ¶ As þay ouer þe brigge gunne ryde : Ro[land] him lokede aboute,
 A Sarasyn saw he ful of pride : ouer þe brigge þat lyned oute ;
- As they cross Roland sees a Saracen leaning over the bridge;

- A boȝ adoun on þat tyde : and cauȝte hym by þe snoute, 1760 stoops down,
& cast him on þe ryuer vnryde : & folghede þo forþ þe route. and pitches him over.
- ¶ "Alas," quap Neymys, "wat man is þys : alas ! why fareþ he so ?" 'Alas !' says Naymes,
Hys heȝe herte & his hardynys : schel brynge ous alle in wo. 'you will bring us into trouble.'
- y had leuere þan myn hors y-wys : were we fayre ago, 1764
- Or we wern a-spyed of þys : god kepe ous fram oure fo !"
- ¶ þay wern þanne ful sore agaste : þe Citee to wende þorwgh, They ride on,
Nopeles þanne þai prikede faste : til þay wer passed þe borwgh. 1768
til þey wer comen to Agremoun : neuere þey ne astynte. — and arrive at Aigremont.
- & bi-fore þe castel þay lizte adoun : & at þe ȝeate in þay wente.
- ¶ Wyþ a sarsyn þan þai mette : þus barouns gode & lel, They enquire where Balan is.
- And askede of him wiþ-oute lette : war was hure Amyrel. 1772
- þe sarsyn hym answerede þer : þat faste þar-by was he, 1772
- Sittyng on a grene erber : & talkede wyþ kynges thre.
- ¶ "Lorlynges," saide naymes þanne : "delyuerieþ me þe wryt, Naymes says
þat Char[les] sente to sir Balanne : for y wol presente hit. that he will deliver the message ;
- y wolde fayne be þe furste : to tellen him oure message, 1776
- Leste þe Amyral don ous burste : for any of oure outrage."
- ¶ "Let of, sir duk," Sir Ro[land] sede : "whar-to spekest þow so ? but Roland says
þyn herte ys naȝt to such a dede : me self y wil hit do.
- y schal be þe furste of alle : þat our message schal a-bede, 1780 he will be the first to tell it,
Wat so euere þar-of falle : y ne leuet for no drede
- þe lettre þat ys til hym wryte : takeþ him me, y praye,
& þe heuedes þat we of smyte : ȝusterday by þe waye ;
& als ȝe alle schul sen it wel : boldelich wil y gon, 1784
& y wil hymen to Amyrel : presenty vp anon : and will present the heads to Balan.
- y schal it don apertely : be god þat me haþ boȝt :
For drede of him ne his maygny : nel ich spare noȝt."
- Al was til hym þo by-take : be hure commun assent, 1788 They give him the heads, and enter the labour. [leaf 24]
- & þat present to Amyral make : in-to þe erber þan þay went.
- ¶ þe A[myral] þan þay founde þer : conselyngge with kynges þre,
And wyþ hymen a gret power : sarazyns of hure meyne,
Ac nopeles þey of fraunce : affore þe Amerel ȝude 1792
- And Ro[land] wiþ sterne continance : ys message þus gan bude :
Roland delivers his message 'God save Charles
- G**Od þat ys our Sauyor : þat al þyng knowþ & seep,
Saue Char[les] þe Emperour : & al þat wiþ him beep !

- and the devil & þe Amyral þat sittest ther : þe deuel þe for-drawe, 1796
take thee, And alle þat buþ wip þe her : & lyueþ on þ^e false lawe :
and all thine. For þov mayntenest þef reyuours : her neȝ to þyn honde,
To gon aboute & robby ous : þat walkaþ on þy londe.
- Yesterday seven robbers of thine tried to rob us, but they were sadly deceived.
¶ As we zusterday at pryne : hiderward comen euene, 1800
on þe gate we mette of þyne : stronge þeues seuene.
þay þoȝte ous þar haue be-reyued : of our hors & of our gere,
Ac þay were foule deceyued : hure heuedes þay leste there ;
& if þou ne miȝt me þar-of ilyue : be-hold her war þay beep.” 1804
- He throws down the heads,
¶ “ Herkne ȝut more,” said he þan : “ þe cause of oure comyng,
and says, “ We have been sent to demand the holy relics
We buþ y-sent¹ to þe, Balan : be Charlis, þe Comly kyng.
By ous sente he þe to sayn : to warnye þe by-forne, 1808
þe nayles þow scholdest him ȝelde aȝeyn : & eke þe croune of þorn,
& þe oþre relyqes þat buþ fre : þat þou hast away y-born
Out of Rome ys owe Citee : & elles þow gest a torn.
- and the five knights.
¶ þov scholdest hym ȝelde aȝe also : ys barouns þou hast y-take, 1812
And out of þy prisoun let hem go : & for hymen amendes make.
& certis he sayþ bote þow do : after þat is *lettre* spake,
And if thou refuse we will
He wol þe chacy as ys fo : & werche þe sorwe & wrake.
Whar ere þou be founde in londe : of hym þou miȝt be adrad, 1816
for þe tyȝd be-take wyþ honde : & to parys þou worst y-lad,
And thar þanne þe tyȝd be an honge : ys auow he haueþ y-mad.
So schel he quyte þe þy wronge : & þer-of wil y be glad.”
- take thee and hang thee.
¶ þe Amyral wax þan wod & wroþ : wan he haþ herd him speke ; 1820
& be Mahoun he swor ys oþ : þat he wolde ben awreke,
Of pilke þat slowe kyng Moradas & ys oþre kynges fyue :
- Balan is enraged, swears he will have vengeance,
& specially on Roland.
& namlich of him þat so hardy was : to fore him so to stryue, 1823
& presenty til him with such outrage : þay heuedes bi-fore him selue,
& so vylenly beode ys message : & schamy hem in euery helue².
- [leaf 24, back] He orders him to stand aside,
He het Roland þan stonde a-side : ther him self al-one,
Til he hauede y-herde þat tyde : þe speche of euerrechone.
& be Mohoun þan swer þe schrewe : þat he nolde ete no bred, 1828

¹ MS. of y-sent.² This line at the bottom in the margin :—

for þy schrewed sake as he sayde & to ous spake.

Til he were al to-hewe : for þe message þat he abed.

"Ȝif þow dost so longe faste" : Rolond to him sede,

"þyn herte þanne wil ouercaste : & ake wil þyn hede."

¶ Duk neymys com forth þan : & by-fore Balan ȝude,

1832 and then
Naymes
courteously
delivers
Charles'
message to
Balan.

And in þe fairest manere þat he can : þe Message he gan abude ;

"Now list to me, sire Amerant : & tak it to non outrage,

War-for we buþ to þe y-sent : þoȝ y telle my message.

Charlys kyng & Emperour : sente þe to sayne,

1836

þat þou scholdet wyþ honour : ȝelde vp til him aȝeyne

þe ryche relyqes þat þow toke : in Rome ys owe Cytee :

& al-so þow scholdest loke : þat is barons were sent aȝe,

þat þow hast to þy prisoun take : & liggeþ among hure fone : 1840

& his amendes þou scholdest make : of þe harmes þou hast him done :

Outher such word he þe sent : þat he nel neuere a-stynte,

Or he þe habbewyþ strengþey-hent : outherslawe þe with swerdes dynte." Balan tells
him to stand
aside till he
has heard
the others.

"Wel," said he, "y knowe ys wille : fairer þou abust þy tale. 1844

Let anoþer ys message telle : & stond þou þer by þy fale."

¶ þan com forþ hym bi-fore : Rychard of Normaundye ;

Richard of
Normandy

A strong knyȝt & a wel icore : was he wiþ-oute lye :

"Herkne," said he, "sire Balan : Ameral of nubbye :

1848 repeats the
message.

& y wil her as y can : my message to þe ounwrye.

¶ Charlys þe noble kyng of fraunce : sendeþ to þe tydynges,

þou scholdest leue þy false creauunce : & belyue on heuene kynges :

þou also ȝelde him þe croune of thorn : & ys othre relyqes dere, 1852

þat þou dudest a-way be born : in Rome thar thay were ;

And eke ys barouns þat buþ y-take : þow scholdest hem ȝelde aȝeyn ;

And supþe to him amendes make : for hymen þat buþ y-sleyn.

Outher certis for þy wronge : he doþ þe now to seyn,

1856

þow worst ful heȝe an honge : wyþ-inne þes moneȝys tweyn."

"Ȝea : haue þow yuele grace" : þe Amyral sayde an hye,

Balan

"þou semest me by thy face : Rychard of Normaundye.

He þat slow myn owen Eem : þe kyng of Mandralye ;

1860

Were þou he by þys leem : sone þow scholdest dye.

Now haue y herd three of ȝow : þat wolde i were in bale.

Go thow to þy felawes now : & þe furthe let telle ys tale."

¶ þan com forþ a doppepeer : duk Basyn of Genueys,

1864 [leaf 25]

tells
him to join
Roland and
Naymes,
and let the
fourth tell
the message.

Basyn
delivers the
message.

& to þe Amyral he wente ner : & til hym þus he seys :
 "Wost wat word he þe sente : Charlis kyng by ous.
 As þou ne wilt be y-schente : to zelde him his barons,
 And þe scherpe croune of thorn : & þe nayles three, 1868
 War wiþ cristes flesche was torn : on þe rode tree ;
 & if þou tarie longe : her-wyþ þou worst y-schent
 Heze þow worst an honge : such word he þe sent."

Balan tells
him to stand
aside with
Roland,
and let
another
speak,
and after
him Terry,
of Ardenne,
a stern,
grim man,
fiercely
repeats it.

"3ea, trupt" : quap þe Amyrale : "y set nozt by þy sawes. 1872
 let come þe fyfþe & telle ys tale : & go þou to þy fclawes."
 ¶ þe duk of Ardane, sire Terry : sterte forþ on is fet :
 Wyþ a sturne look & hardy : is herte was ful gret :
 Ys berd was long, & al whyt hor : a was [a] grymly freke. 1876
 His brest he bend vp as a bor : & to Amyral gan he speke :
 "Now list to me, þow Sarazyn : þat makest so gret bobaunce,
 What word þe sende Charlemyn : þe noble kyng of fraunce.
 Charlis þe kyng of fraunce : þe sende þis tydyng, 1880
 To leue þy false creaunce : & belyue on heuene kynge ;
 & zelde him þou scholdest þe croune of þorn : & þe nayles three,
 Hwych þou & þyne away han born : of Rome is owe Citee ;
 & ek ys barouns þat þou hast y-take : þou scholdest hem sende a-gayn,
 & ys amendes fayre make : for þilke þow hast a-slayn : 1885
 And ellis for þy wronge : or come þus monþes twayn,
 Wel heze þou werst an honge : he sendeþ þe þus to sayn."

Balan is
frightened at
him,

¶ þe Amyral herknede hym ful wel : how he tolde ys tale : 1888
 A-fryzt he wax of hym sum del : so grym a was in gale :
 "þow semest bet," quap Amerel : "a deucl gonde in dale,
 þan a man of flesche & fel : so grym þou art a fale.

and asks him
what sort of
a man is
Charles.
Terry tells
him that he
is a noble
and religious
man,

Ac nopeles woldy of þe fayn : wyte wyþ-oute strif, 1892
 Wat maner man ys Charlemayn : & how he let his lif."
 Terry him ansuerede þan : at schorte wordes & runde :
 "Charlis ys a noble man : nys nowar is per y-founde :
 He loueþ god almiȝty wel : & eke al holicherche. 1896

and that
with one
blow of his
flat he could
knock out
a man's
brains.

þat day come neuere ne schel : þat [he] ne wil almys werche.
 Gode knyȝtes wil he haue : goyng with hym aboute.
 Were a her so god me saue : þan wer þou brozt in doute ;
 With ys hond a wolde þe ȝyue : a such on on þe luste 1900

þat al þy breyn scholde clyue : al aboute ys fuste."

[leaf 25, back]

¶ Wan þe Amerel herd him sigge so : in ys herte wax he wroþ :

Balan is
angry,
vows to hang
Terry,

"þou ferly freke," saide he þo : "of o þyng say me soþ :

And y wer now on þy mastrye : as þou art her in myne,

1904

Tel me be waye of compayne : how wostou þan do by me."

"By þe cristendom þat y fong" : quath Terry þanne sone,

"þou scholdest be ful heze an-honge : þis day ȝut or none."

"So schalt þow beo þe self" : saide þe Amyrel þanne :

1908 and calls the
sixth.

"Go stand ther in þat other helf : & let come þe sixte manne."

¶ þan com forþ a doppepeer : Erld Ogier þe Deneya, .

Then comes
Ogier, and
delivers the
message.

& to þe Amyral he neȝeþ neer : & til him þan he seys :

"Charlemayn, kyng of fraunce : sente þe word be ous,

1912

þow scholdest, wiþ-oute more distaunce : ȝelde him his barouns,

& þe scherpe croune of þorn : & þe oþere reliques dere,

þat þow & þyne away han born : of Rome ther þay were

& cristendom þou scholdest fonge : & leue þy foule entent ;

1916

& amendie hem of þy wronge : of al þyng þou hym hast offend.

& if þou tariest oȝt to longe : þan certis ert þow schent,

He þe wil don heze an-honge : & such word he þe sent."

"y haue y-hurd .vj. of my fon" : saide þe Amyrelle,

1920 Balan calls
for the
seventh
knight.

"Do let come þe .vij. anon : and is tale let hym telle."

¶ Wyth þat com sterte þe gode Gy : þat duk was of Borgoygne,

Guy of Bur-
gundy next
delivers the
message,

þat bore was in normaundy : y-norschid in Sessoyngne.

He comeþ by-fore þe Amyrel : & ys message abed him þere,

1924

Riȝt as y ȝow now telle schel : ȝif ȝe me wollep here :

"Charlis, þat is of fraunce kyng : & of Rome Emperour,

Hotep þe þow alle þyng : to leuen : þyn error ;

& hotep þe þat þou for-sake : þy false god Mahone,

1928

& to cristendom þat þow take : and belyue on godes sone.

Such word al-so he sendep þe : Charles þe Emperour,

þat þou him scholdest sende aȝe : ys knyȝtes of honour¹ ;

And ȝelde aȝe þe croune of thorn : and the naylles three,

1932

War-wiþ cristis flech was torn : on þe rode tree ;

& þe other relyques ryche : wyche þow him hast y-raft ;

Oþer ellis certis he wil þe syche : whar þou euere be laft ;

¹ MS. hononour.

- & take þe as a proued þef : an do þe wel heze an-honge. 1936
- and advises
him, if he
loves his life,
[leaf 36] & þer-for if þy lif is lef : ne tarie þou noȝt to longe :
Y wil þe techen how þow may : abaty al þys strif ;
& loke þou do as y þe say : if þou wilt haue þy lyf.
Al þy cloþes þou schalt of don : with wyche þou art y-ahrid, 1940
& eke þyn hosyn & þyn schon : let don of þer myd ;
to go barefoot
and bare-
headed,
Lef þou sengle on þy scherte : & bar-fot þou most go,
Al open-her, & eke oungeȝte : and be-for Char[les] com þow so,
and beg
mercy from
Charles.
Wyp a rop aboute þy nekke : to Char[les] so wend an hye, 1944
& loke þat þou þan mukly speke : & to hym mercy crye.
& þus schalt þou gete þy pees : & esye al þy lond :
& elles ne wol he neuere cees : til þow beo broȝt to schond."
- The Emir is
fearfully
angry, and
swears
¶ þe Amyral gan waxe wonder wrop : wan he herd him spoken : 1948
By Mahoun þanne swer he ys op : þat sone a wolde be wreken
Of hymen þat hadde ys kynges slayn : & dryuen him so to schonde.
he will hang
them all.
He swor he scholde neuere beo fayn : til þey were alle an-honge.
¶ þe zeates were þanne sone y-schet : & þe draȝt-brige vp y-drawe ;
Sone he þoȝte wip-oute let : þus barouns lete don of dawe : 1953
þe Amyral bende ys browes rowe : & clepede is consaile :
Kyng Sortybrant & opre ynowe : ther come wyp-oute fayle.
- consult what
is to be done
with the
knights.
"Barouns," sayd he, "þanne sone : telleþ me ȝour purpos : 1956
What is þe beste wyp hem to done : þat buþ now her enclos,
þat habbeþ þus my kynges slone : & foule oundo my los ?
Whar-for to ȝow y make my mone : eniugieþ ȝe my foos."
- They advise
¶ Sortybrant spak þat word for alle : wan þat þay were assent : 1960
"Sleep hem wat so þer-of by-falle : þat is our iuggymet.
death by
torture,
Hastely doþ þey be to-hewe : & sleep hem wyp such turment ;
& so þow schalt hem en alle schewe : þat þay buþ al mys-went.
& þar-after schalt þow wende : to Morymond wip þyn host, 1964
And take þe kyng þat is ounhende : Charlys for al þis bost ;
& discourmfite þar his ferde : þat wip hym dar abyde.
þan do an-honge him wyp þe berde : Char[lys] for al ys pride.
& þus þow schalt a-wreke þe : of alle þyn enymys." 1968
- Balan is
pleased, and
orders Oliver
and the others
to be brought
"By Mahoun," þanne sayde he : "þys ys a god deus.
To my Gayhol goþ anon : & þe fyue þat buþ ther
Bryngeþ hem out euerechon : to hure falawes her.

- pys day ne wol y on myn halle : drynke whit wyn ne red, 1972 that they may
Til y [haue] seen þe glotouns alle : on schentfule depe be ded." all be hanged
together.
- F**Lorippe, his doȝtre þe cortoyse : in chambre þar sche was, Floripas
hearing the
noise
comes to the
hall,
[leaf 26, back]
- In the paleys y-hurde noise : & þyder sone she gas ;
And er sche cam strauȝt in-to halle : neuere heo ne stente, 1976
& forþ sche þraste among hem alle : & to hur fader ryȝt heo wente.
By þ^e hond she tok him euene : & drow hym by þ^e oþre helue,
& askede of him what were þay seuene : þat stode þar by hem-selue. and asks her
father who
the knights
are.
Balan tells
her,
- ¶ "Doȝtre dure," þan saide he : "as Mahoun me auauunce, 1980
Hiȝ beþ kniȝtes y-sent to me : fram charlis kyng of fraunce ;
Myne kynges þay han a-slawe : hyderward as þay come,
& avoweded wel wiþ hure sawe : & presented þe hedes to me.
And ȝut were þay noȝt apaid þer-by : bote wolde me greue more, 1984
Hure message þay abode dispitously : & schamede me ful sore,
Now, dure doȝtere, myn Al-one : wat ys þy gode red
Wyþ myn enymys for to done : þat habbeþ ido þis qued ?"
¶ þan him ansuerede þat faire mayde : sleȝ sche was & sad : 1988
"So þat ȝe þer-of be a-paide : my red schel sone be rad ;
Doþ þat hy be faste y-bounde : sonderliche euerechon,
& suppen y-cast to þe grounde : euerech by hym on ;
& þanne wyþ swerdes sherp y-grounde : let hewen hem flesch & bon, hewn to
pieces.
þat no lym be laft y-sounde : & chaste ȝe so ȝour fon." 1993
¶ "By Mahoun, doȝtre," saide he : "parforny y wol þy red,
Ne schal no mete synke on me : or þat þaye beo ded.
& ek hure felawes for wham þay come : of pryson y wil do fecche,
& þay schulleþ haue þe selue dome : nel y no lenger drecche." 1997
¶ "Fader," quap sche, "let beo þyn haste : it is wel neȝ þe non,
Hit were ful longe ȝow to vaste : or þis were al y-don.
Takeþ hem to me al þe hepe : and goþ ȝe to ȝour mete, 2000
And sykerliche y wil hem kepe : þe wyle þat ȝe doþ ete.
After [þe] mete fol wel moȝe ȝe : al þys þyng ful-fille.
Now, fader, as ȝe louyep me : doþ ȝe as y telle."
¶ "Doȝtre," saide þe Amyrel : "þy counseil ys god & hende ; 2004
So tak hem to þe & kep hem wel : til y to þe sende."
þan him spak kyng Sortybran : wordes wel ounkende : but Sortybran
"þow ert a-sotid, as y am man : þy doȝtre wil þe schende.

- By-þenk þe wel of þat brayde : þat touchide duke Myloun ; 2008
- warns him
that Floripas
will betray
him, for How ys doȝtre hym betrayde : þat hyȝte Saramoun,
[leaf 27] Wan sche tok out Godefrayde : þat was in his prysoun.
 þe Duk þanne þay yuele arayde : to depe þay duste him doun,
 & she hym wedede after þan : þat was hure fader fo. 2012
- women are
not to be
trusted.
Floripas
becomes pale
with rage,
abuses
Sortybran, Many ys þe manlich man : þat þorw womman ys by-go."
 ¶ Wanne þat mayde y-hurde pys : for wrappe she was nez wod ,
 For angre sche wax al pal y-wys : & spak til him with mod ;
 "Say, þow gadelyng horesone : lecher, & stronge þef ! 2016
 To speke yuele euere ys þy wone : Mahoun ȝyue þe euele þref !
 Wy woldest þow letten wiþ þy speche : þat ys my fader lef !
 and threatens
him.
Balan quiete
her. If y may lyue y wol þe teche : a torn þat schal þe gref."
 ¶ "Doȝtre," quap Balan, "y þe pray : now let al þat be stille, 2020
 & tak þys prysouns & go þy way : for haue þou schalt þi wille."
 "As ȝe willeþ," sche gan say : þe barons sche wendeþ till :
 Floripas leads
the knights "Now comeþ wyþ me," quap þat may : "ȝut haue ȝe her non ille."
 ¶ Wyþ hure þan way forþ þay nome : þorȝ-out halle & bour, 2024
 to her
chamber. Til þay in-to hure chambre come : þat y-buld was on a tour.
 Wan þay weren alle yn y-paste : þe mayde & þay yfere,
 Florippe het schitte þe dore [faste] : & welcomedem with gode chere.
 ¶ Roland y-saw erld Olyuer : & ys herte wax glad anon, 2028
 Roland sees
Olyuer,
runs to him,
and kisses
him. Wel sone þo he neȝed him ner : & to hym gan he gon.
 Ro[land] kuste him louelich ther : & þonked god al-on,
 þat he haþ founde him hol & fer : thar among his fon.
 Oliver
enquires after
his father. Olyuer þanne gan a-spye : what is fader doþ ; 2032
 & Roland sayde ; "sykerlye : for þ^e he ys ful wroþ.
 þer nis no murgȝþe þat may him gayne : y say þe verament,
 Til he may hure word certayne : by þ^e al how it stent."
 ¶ Wan þay were ther alle y-same : þes doȝopers xij. of fraunce, 2036
 Floripas says,
that Florippe þat maide hadde ioie & game : to sen hure contynauce.
 To hem com þan þat iantail may : & corteisly spekeþ hem till :
 'Lystep now, Lordes, wat y schal say : & perfornyeþ ȝe my wille.
 ȝif ȝe þynkeþ to askape away : þat my fader ȝow ne spille, 2040
 To me ȝe mote sykery ȝour fay : my purpos to fulfille :
 & þat is : to do me haue a þyng : þat al myn herte ys on."
 "We wolleþ," quap Naymes, "be heuene kyng : so þat we mowe it don ;

- So þat þou ous sykyrre affore : to help ous in this clos,
 þat non of ous ne beo for-lore : her among our fos." 2044 do whatever
 she wishes.
- þar-to sche sykerede þanne hure fay : to help hem be hure miȝte,
 In alle wyse þat sche may : to daye for þar riȝte. [leaf 27, back]
- ¶ & þanne tok sche þat swete wyȝt : duke naymes by þe honde : 2048
 "Tel me," sche saide, "þy name ariȝt : as þow art free to fonde."
 þe duk aunswerede þat mayde free : humelich & fayre :
 "Damesel, certis me clepeþ me : duke neymys of Bauayre. He tells her.
- Char[li]s consailer am y pryue : y-sent on his message." 2052
 "By Mahoun, sire," saide sche : "þou madest an hard vyage."
 ¶ þanne to Richard of Normandy : wente þat burde briȝt,
 & prayedeȝ faire & corteysly : to tel hure what he hiȝt. Then she asks
 Richard's
 name;
- "Certis y wol ȝow telle my name" : sayde he, "with-oute lye, 2056
 In fraunce men calleþ me, ma dame : Richard of Normaundye."
 "ȝe : Mahoun," quap sche, "ȝyue þe schame : for þyn oncortesyse !
 Myn vncler þow slowe a kniȝt of fame : Corsible of Mantrie. and re-
 proaches him
 for having
 alain her
 uncle.
- Ac suppe þou art now on þis clos : among þes fair ferede, 2060
 y wol þe kepe fro þy fos : haue þow none drede."
 ¶ To Rolond þanne tornde þat mayde : þat was so gret of fame :
 "Ia[n]tail kniȝt," til him sche sayde : "tel þow me þy name." She questions
 Roland next.
- "Ful fayne," sayde þe noble kniȝt : "wil ich, swete dame. 2064 He tells her
 who he is,
 Ro[land]¹ my name is callid riȝt : wan y am at hame ;
 And Char[les] suster sone y am : y-comen of heȝ parage ;
 And to þy fader fro him y cam : to bryngen him message."
 þan hur spak þe² damesel : "myn herte now waxeþ liȝt, 2068
 þat þyng now hope y gete wel : on wham myn herte ys piȝt."
 Wel corteysly þanne aboȝede she : & to help hure gan him praye.
 "Tel me þy wil," þan sayde he : "& y wol do what y maye."
 ¶ þan hure spak þat burde briȝt : "herknyap my chesoun : 2072
 In Charli's companye ys a kniȝt : as fers as any lyoun ;
 Gwy of Borgoygne ys name ys riȝt : y-called in euery toun ;
 On hym for-soþe my loue ys liȝt : for he ys god baroun.
 Wan þat my fader sire Balan : be-segede Rome Citee, 2076 since she saw
 his prowess
 at Rome,
 þar saw y þat doȝty man : to done a dede free :
- : Lucafer þe kyng of Bandas : a strong kyng of renoun,

¹ [Duk] Roland my name is riȝt.

² [þat] þe.

- In a stede y-armed was : & rod to þat baroun.
 Lucafer egrelich wyþ a spere : mette hym in þe feld, 2080
 & Gy þe strokes away gan bere : manliche with ys scheld.
 Gyoun þanne adrow is brond : & ȝif him a strok with mayn,
 þat hors and man a-doun it wond : & leye þer on þe playn.
 Riȝt fro þat day in-to þis : myn herte hap he y-raft. 2084
- [leaf 28] y-now y hadde of ioie & blys : were his to me-ward laȝt ;
 Wolde he be my worldly make : & wedde me to wyue,
 For his loue wold y take : cristendom þanne blyue.
 As þow art a trewe knyȝt : & for doȝty baroun y-knowe, 2088
 Help me to haue þat worldly wyȝt : & y¹ wil ben is owe.”
- Roland laughs, says he knows Guy well, and that he is close to her at the moment.
 ¶ Rolond aunswerede hure & low : “dame, by god of heuene,
 y knowe Gyoun wel ynow : he ys my cosyn euene ;
 Fuliche ne is he noȝt now fram þe : vȝ fet y-mete in brede.” 2092
 “For þy cortesyne þan ȝif hym me” : F[lorippe] to hym sede,
 “Dame, þy wille schal be don : as y am trewe knyȝt.
 Com now forþ, sir Gyon : & tak þys burde briȝt !”
 þan Ansuerede þat baroun : þat wyuy nolde he noȝt, 2096
 With-oute assent of kyng Charloun : þat had him vp i-broȝt.
 ¶ Wan þat maide hym vnderstod : on herte she wax ful wroþ :
 For angre sche braid hure wel nez wod : & by Ma[houn] swor
 hur oþ,
 þat bote if Gy to wyue hure take : þat sche had loued so longe, 2100
 Ecchone þay scholde for is sake : or euene beo an-honge.
- Roland persuades Guy,
 ¶ þan hym spak duk Roland : to Gy² ys cosyn free,
 “Tak thys damesele by þe hand : as þow louest me.”
 “As þow wolt y wol done” : saide þe kynde knyȝt. 2104
- and they are betrothed.
 By þe hond þanne he tok hur sone : & be-treupede þat swete wiȝt.
 þan wern þay glad boþe ȝonge & olde : & comforted wel apliȝt :
 Floripas & Flo[rippe] hure handes gan vp holde : & þankede god almiȝt :
 “Lord,” sche saide, “y þanky þe : þat al þyng sest & wost, 2108
 now þou hast y-sent to me : þat þyng i louede most.
 & now wil y for þe loue of hym : my false fay for-sake,
 & eke my fader and al my kyn : and cristendom to me take.”
 Loueliche þay wente to-gadre þo : & cussede i-same an haste, 2112

¹ MS. & : & y.² to [Gyoun].

To fermye loue by-twene hem two : & to makye hem stedeuaste.¹

Wan þat F[lorippe] þat swete þyng : so y-comforted was } a. Then Floripas
A dore sche openeþ & let hem in : in-to a pryue plas.

War sche tok out of a shryn : araïd of riche golde, 2116 brings out
þe relyqes precieuse & fyn : þat y 3ow ere-of tolde.

Furst sche tok out þe croune sterk : þat crist on is heued let ; the crown of thorns, and the nails, and lays them on a cloth of gold.
& suppe þe nailles þat wer scherp : þat percede him honde & fet ;
þan after sche tok a cloþ of gold : þat was þer-for arayde 2120

& oppon þat cloþ ase heo wold : þes reliques fayre layde.

"Be-holdeþ, lordes," sayde sche þan : " & buþ now murie & glad ; [leaf 28, back: 'See here,' she says, 'the relics for which you came.
þis ys þat tresour whar-for 3e han : trauayl² & tene i-had ;
Which þat my fader let bere away : of Rome as 3e knowe, — 2124

& haueþ y-kept hit in-to þis day : euere as for ys owe.

Fyrm[bras] þat my broþer ys : to me þys þyng be-toke,
& be-fore al þyng bad me kepe þys : & faste hit her by-loke.
& now 3e haueþ þar-of a siȝt : & whar hit is y-knowe. 2128

Wyp 3ow 3e take hit be day or nyȝt : & holdeþ hit as 3our owe.

¶ þis barouns þanne hir þankede alle : wan þay y-knewe hir wille ; Take them now and keep them. The knights
& Adoun þay gunne³ falle : knelyng on þe erthe stille.

þay worschepede hem þanne with al hure miȝt : & kussedem euerechone ; worship the relics, and then replace them in their shrine.
& þan wente sheo þe burde briȝt : & tok hem vp anone, 2133
& laide hem in-to þe schryn aȝeyn : & dude hure þar sche was.

þan were þys lordes glad & feyn : & þankede godes gras,
þat þay hadden founde þore : þe relyqes ryche and fayre, 2136
For whicche þay hadde þar byfore : ben in gret dispayre.

Now leue wil y þis matere : of þys Barouns stille,
And turne aȝeyn þar y lafte ere : & of þe A[myral] y wil telle. Now I will tell of the Emir. While Balan is at meat, comes a Saracen King.
þus wyle was he on halle sitting : with is puple atte mete, 2141
þan com þer an heþene kyng : rydyng atte ȝete ;

A wykeder man þan he was on : nas non on al hure lawe :

Many was þe cristene mon : þat he had broȝt of dawe.

Kyng Lucafer of Bandas : cleped was he of alle. 2144 Lucifer of Bandas, is his name.

he liȝt him doun, & forþ a gas : spedlych in-to halle,
& byfore þe Amyral þanne he goþ : & by-gan him fort-affrayne :

¹ [þan was Florippe on hure bour : murgheþ þas sche was, } b.
þe barouns sche ladeþ wyþ honour : in-to a pryue plas.]

² [muche] trauayl. ³ Adoun þay gunne [ecchone].

He asks
Balan if it is
true that

"Sir," saide he, "ys þis soþ : on contre þat men sayne ?
y hurde telle a wonder cas : supþen þat y slep uake, 2148

Ferumbras
has been
taken
prisoner.

þat þy son Fyrumbras : conquerid was & take.
þe beste knyzt of is hond : oueral he was y-holde
þat was knowed in any lond : for to do dedes bolde."

Balan says,
yes,

¶ "3ea, for-soþe," quap þe Amyrel : " & þat ys al my tene : 2152

Taken ys he, y wot it wel : and y-lost for euere y wene,
þys 3onder day at morymond : conquered for soþ was hee,
With a þef, a cristene hond : þar many men dide hit see.

but that his
conqueror
has been
taken with
others,
[leaf 20]

Hys conquerour ys a bold baron : & on of Charlys route, 2156

Ac now lyp he in my prisoun rízt : & opre mo wel proute.

And now buþ come opre al-so : vij bolde bachelers,
þat han me mucho schame ido : & y-slawe my messagers,
Fram kyng Charlis as þay were sent : to meward on message. 2160

Ac alle þay schullen sone be schent : for hure foul outrage ;
neuere ne wil y ete more : or þey be dede ecchone.

þe opre al-so þat come bífóre : þe same way schulleþ gone." 2163

and are in
charge of his
daughter.

¶ "Whar buþ þe messagers, y wolde hem sen" : sayde þe heþen kyng.

"In my do3tere bour þar þay ben : sche haueþ hem in kepyng."

'That is
foolish,' says
Lucifer, 'I
will go and
see them.'

"By Mahoun," saide Lukafer : " þat ys wel gret folye ;

For wommanes wyt goþ her & þer : in hymen ys no3tt affye.

By þy leue y wol go ner : of hymen y wolde aspye, 2168

Of Charlis purpos wat hit wer : þat makeþ so gret maistrye."

Balan gives
him leave.

¶ "Go forth," saide þe Amyrel : " & gret wel my do3tre dere,
& bid hure þat sche wardye wel : þe messagers þat buþ þere."

Lucifer
hurries to the
chamber of
Floripas ;

Lucafeer turnd him & faste gas : & spedde him til þe tour, 2172

þar as Flo[rippe] chambre was : ibuld wiþ gret honour.

He put him-seluen on a cas : whar-for agat a schour,
þat turnd him þar after to harde gras : to schennes & dolour.

¶ Kyng Lukafer of wham y spake : was a wykked man ; 2176

To þe chambre so harde he rake : þat pyderward he ran ;

Ac wan he com þe dore to : ys herte was so gret,

he bursts the
door in with
his foot.

þat he dedeynede to clepe, "oundo" : bot ran to wiþ is fet :

So harde he bot here in þat haste : þe kyng þat was so strong, 2180

þat þe henges boþe barste : & þe stapel þar-with out sprong.

& þo3 þe dore were strong & huge : wiþ þe strok sche fle3

Out of þe Hokes & fram hir sege : x. vet y-mete wel neȝ.

¶ Wan Flo[rippe] y-saw þe dore vn-do : al chaungede hure hew & mod : Floripas in alarm tells Roland this is her intended husband.
 To Rolond sche spak & playned him to : þar-of how it stod ; 2185

“ þis is he þat fader myn : ordeyneþ my lord to be ;

In al heþenis ys no Sarsyn : wikkeder þan is he ;

Wiþ is hond oppon o day : at rome in ȝoure Citee, 2188 At Rome, but for Guy,

he slow þer þat it y say : hundredes¹ mo þan þree.

nad² my spouse þat her is : þar i-born him doun

Lyues nolde he haue ilaft y-wys : no criste man in þe touȝ.

& now haþ he³ my dore y-broke : ous alle in dispyte ; 2192 he would have killed every Christian.

y pray ȝow þar-fore al þus y spoke : ys trauail þat ȝe quyte.”

¶ Ro[land] answerde þat mayde anon : & bad sche scholde be stille, Roland says he'll make him suffer. [leaf 20, back]

“ For þat torn or þat a gon : ful sore him schal a-grille, 2196

neure ne brak he dore non : þat dude him so mykel ille.”

With þat com he among is fon : with a ful wikked wille. Lucifer feels

¶ þar fond he þes lordes alle : in armure araid ariȝt ;

& F[lorippe] with þe middel smalle : þat þan was sore affriȝt,

Duk naymes stod next hur by : & had hure by þe honde. 2200 jealous because Naymes has Floripas by the hand.

þe kyng þar-of hadde envy : & comeþ by hymen stonde ;

& þoȝ duk naymes were al hore : he was ful wel ymaked,

ys helm was don of by-fore : & ys heued was þo al naked ; 2204 He seizes Naymes by the beard,

ys berd was huge & strazte along : & Lukefer þo gan taket,

And wyþ his fyngres þat were strong : harde gan he schaket.

By þe berde as he hym held : a askeþ wiþ-oute drede :

“ Wannes ert þow, olde cherld : & what makest þou in þis þede ? ” 2208 and asks him what brings him there.

¶ “ Y am of Bauere,” þan saide he : “ & haue þar herytage ; 2208 Naymes tells him who he is.

And am Char[liis] consayller pryuee : y-sent hider in message.

& alle þus oþre þat ȝe her see : buþ lordes of heȝ parage ;

Dukes, & erldis, & barons in fee : & holdeþ by baronage. 2212

A message ous sente Charlis kyng : to þamyral þat is so bolde,

& for we told it noȝt at is lekyng : he pot ous her in holde.

Let of my berd, y pray þe now : suppe y haue þe tolde.”

“ y nelle,” quap he, “ y make auow : to Ma[houn] þat stont in golde. 2216 Lucifer refuses to let go till he has told him how the Christians pass their time.

Tel me furst by þy lay : wat dop ȝour men of fraunce ;

Of hure disport & ek hure play : what is ȝour mest vsaunce ? ”

¹ MS. huddredes.

² nad [ibe].

³ he [her].

- Naymes says
first they
hear Mass
and after
- ¶ "þe manere of hem," þan sayde he : "is erly gon to cherche,
& after-ward ech man on his degree : after his stat þay werche.
þo þat lordes buþ of þe lond : in som tyme of the 3ere, 2220
þay takeþ hure facouns faire an hond : & fareþ to ryuere ;
some go
hawking,
some hunting,
some to
joustes and
tournaments ;
others
play chess,
or draughts,
- & Summe a deer hontep of hem þar went : & some to fox and hare ;
& to ioustes and tornymment : wel mo þer wendeþ ofte pare.
þo þat willieþ to leue at hame : pleyep to þe eschekkere, 2224
& summe of hem to iew-de-dame : & summe to tablere :
Summe þay vseþ a maner of play : to caste wel a spere ;
and some
fence.
- And somme for to sckyrme asay : with swerd & bokelere.
þys buþ þe games of my contre : þat y þe telle here." 2228
"3ea : alle pese buþ nozt worþ a stre" : þan saide Lucafere.
- 'I will teach
you one of
our games,'
says Lucifer.
He drags
Naymes by
the beard to
the fire,
[leaf 30]
- ¶ "We haue a game in this contray : to blowen atte gleden.
þov schalt lerny þat ilke play : & Ma[houn] me helpe & spede."
þan was þer on a chymenay : a gret fyr þat brente rede, 2232
þan duk drow he be þe berde gray : & to þe fyr a dop him lede.
¶ þan lawede Ro[land] on Olyuer : & to hym gan to saye :
"þow schalt sen god game her : suffrie we hem to playe."
Lucafer þanne tok op an-haste : þe brennyngest bronde a coupe, 2236
& to neymes-werd blew he so faste : þat þe fir ful on is mouþe.
"now tak þou þe brond," saide he þan : "& blowe to me þou fonde."
"y wil," quap naymes, "as y can" : & tok hym of his honde,
Naymes seizes it
- Naymes þanne with-oute 3ede : & hadde þe kyng wiþ-inne, 2240
& to þ^e schrewe he huld þe gleden : & blew toward is chynne :
So narde leid he þer-on is onde : þat sone þe lye out rende,
and burns
half his
beard.
Lucifer
smites at
Naymes,
- & in-to ys-berd sone it sprong : & o syde þer-of hit brende.
¶ Lucafer þanne wax nez wod : & drow out a schort fachoun, 2244
& smot to neymys þar a stod : & þozte haue born hym doun ;
Neymes was war & sterte a-syde : & let þe strok to pace,
who with a
blow of his
fi-st kills
him.
- & with his hand 3yf him a strok ounride : wiþ-inne þe neckes space ;
Such on a gurt him with is fuste : þat sondrede al þe lip, 2248
& ys necke þar-wiþ a-two to-duste : & ys e3ene floze out þar-wyþ.
þat bodi ful doun amidde þe fyre : with-oute any more delay :
"now rest," quap Naymes, "þou proute syre : þou playest a sory play."
¶ þan him lawede duk Rolond : & to naymes saide an haste : 2252
"3ea faire hure falle þat ilke hond : þat so can foles chaste ;
- Roland
laughs and
compliments
Naymes.

He wende wiþ is ferete : haue do þe vylonye,
And now is fallen is nytyte : in-to ys owen eye."

¶ "Syre," quap Flo[rippe] "he louap þat fyr : let hym enchaufye ynne,
3ute naþ he no desyr : to aryse and go þenne. 2257

For he hopede haf wedded me : of him he hadde enuye,
þer-for in his iolyte : he cam to make maystrye."

To Duk naymes saide heo þan : "leue sir, faire þe falle, 2260 Floripas
þow hast delyuerid me of þe man : ich hatede most of alle." thanks
Naymes for
delivering
her,

[N]ow buþ þay delyuered of Lucafer : hur enmy þat was a schrewe.
Byfore þes barouns þan Flo[rippe] ther : hure purpos gan thus
schewe.^{1]}

"Ac lusteþ now alle . what y schal say : & warny 3ow for 3our prow : and then tells
3e buþ her² in yuele aray : and in gret peril now. 2265 the knyghts
her plana.

þe Amyrel my fader as he can : arayeþ him for þe nones,
To destruye 3ow sone euerech man : & for-hewe 3ow flech & bones. She points
out their
danger,

þys dom to day y demed³ was : longe by-fore þe none. 2268

now helpeþ 3ow silue on þes cas : or ellis 3e buþ for-done.

3our helmes makieþ alle faste : hastilich on 3our heued,
& 3our scheldes on 3ow 3e caste : for noþyng 3e ne leuet : and recom-
mends them
to arm,

Wan þay seþ 3ow armed wel : þe more þey wil 3ow drede. 2272 [leaf 30, back]

Gop out⁴ of þis chambre snel : & doþ now as y rede ;

Secheþ þis paleys ouer al : boþe in lengþe & brede,
& lokieþ 3e ne spare gret ne smal : þat he ne go to dede," and kill all
whom they
can find.

¶ þat counseil þoþte hem alle god : & þanked hur lasse & more. 2276 They

Hure helmes þay duden oppon hure hod : þey alle þat þer wore⁵

[Wherfor þay duden oppoun hure hod : hure helmes lasse & more ;^{6]} arm them-
selves,

Hure scheldes on hem fast þai caste : euerech of þes barouns,
& of þe chambre out þay paste : as hardy as any lyouns. 2280 and start off

Hure swerdes þan þay a-drowe : þat wern scharp y-grounde,

& alle þe Sarsyns þay a-slowe : þat þay afforn him founde. and slay all
whom they
meet.

þan wente þay in-to þe heze halle : þar þat þe lordes sete,
& þoþte þar to slen him alle : sitting atte mete. 2284

Roland cryede an hez "mountioye" : wan he be-huld þay scoute : Roland cries
out
'Mountjoy ;'

¹ These 2 lines crossed through.

² MS. [Y warne 3ow] 3e buþ [now].

³ MS. dememed.

⁴ MS. out out.

⁵ This line written over a line erased.

⁶ This line in margin at bottom of page.

- Many sarsynȝ þan huld hem coye : þat raper wer fers & proute.
 Ac þis barouns laid hem on : wiþ swerdes al aboute,
 And to-hewe hem boþe þarȝ flechs & bon : þ^e moſte dol of þe route.
- he kills
Corsyband ;
 ¶ Ro[land] ȝaf a ſtok wiþ mayn : to Corsyband þe kyng, 2289
 & clef ys body euene a-twayn : wiþ þat ſtronge ſpryng.
 Olyuer ſmot kyng Coudryn : & gert him in-to þe brayn.
 and Oliver
slays
Coudryn.
 Many was þe proute Sarsyn : þat þar was þanne a-slayn. 2292
 for Al ſo furde þis xij. barons : by þat foule¹ hepe,
 Also wolde ſo many lyouns : among ſo many ſchepe.
 þe mete þat was ful richly raied : in diſches of golde fyn,
 Wel ſone it was a-doun i-leid : & ſchad was al þe wyn. 2296
 þe coupes of gold were treden a-ſyde : al wiþ mannys fet,
 And alle þe ſarsyns þat wolde abyde : þar þai lore þat ſwet.
- The Saracens
jump out of
the windows,
 þe Sarasynȝ þat þo wer laſt on lyue : faſte þay gunne fle,
 & ful out at þe wyndowes blyue : be twye & ek be three, 2300
 & ſumme fulle out ouer þe wal : in-to þe dupe dongoun,
 & breke hure nekkes to pieces ſmal : ſo heȝe þay fulle adoun.
 over 100 fall
into the
dungeon, and
break their
necks.
 Wel an hundred out þar praſte : þanne in þilke wyſe,
 þat wiþ þe fallyng þai to-braſte : & neuere ne miȝte aryſe. 2304
- Balan flies,
 ¶ þe day hym was ful neȝ agan : & come was neȝ þe niȝt,
 þan dude þe Amyral Balaan : turne him to þe flȝt ;
 purſued by
Roland ;
 Roland him folghede as wilde & wod : wiþ is ſword a-drawe,
 þat þo al baþid was on blod : of Sarsyns he haþ alawe. 2308
- [leaf 31]
 ¶ And heȝ dude hym þanne aſcrye : & ſayde : “ now kep þyn hed,
 Torn to me, ich þe diffye : her riȝt þou ſchalt be ded.”
 þe Amerel vm-til a wyndow ran : & þar lep out þat ſyre.
 he jumps out
of a window.
He falls 20
fathoms into
the mud.
 Wel xxth feþme ful he þan : of dupniſſe . vmtil A myre. 2312
 Duk Ro[land] after hym ſlent : wiþ his ſword to ſlen him þanne,
 Ac on a marbre ful þe dent : & ſmot þer-on a ſpanne.
 Bote wan þ^e A[myral] was ſcapid him ſo : þat Ro[land] hym² ne lauȝte,
 Angry wax he þer-for þo : & þe deuele þan hym betauȝte. 2316
 ¶ “ Felawe,” ſaide ſir Olyuer : “ ys he ous now a-ſcapid ?”
 “ ȝe, for-ſop,” ſaide he ther : “ ac oper-weys y hadde y-ſchape hit,
 Miȝte ich him ones habbe araȝt : wiþ my ſword y-grounde ; 2319
 ys heued ſchold ich him habbe y-raft : ouper ȝeue him deþes wounde.”

¹ þat [mykle].² MS. hyn.

- N**OW habbeþ þes frensche lordes stoute : conquered þ^e stronge tour, Now the French hold the castle;
 And habbeþ a-slawe & dryuen oute : þe Sarsynz with vygour.
 þay schutte þe gates & vp þay drowe : þe draȝtbrig al with gynne :
 Wolde god þat þay had y-nowe : of vytailes þer wip-inne ; 2324
 For in þ^e contre þer with-oute : vitales geteþ þay none
 Bot if þai moȝe be so stoute : to geten hem of hure fone. but they have no provisions.
 ¶ þe Amyral þat was so riche : ys falle doun fram an heȝ,
 And walwede þanne on þe dyche : & was y-sowe wel neȝ. 2328 Balan is nearly suffocated in the mud, and cries for help.
 Ase loude so he þanne miȝte : to ys men criede he there :
 "Helpeþ me, myne men so wiȝte : & elles y daye here ;
 Bote if ȝe me helpe vp to drawe : þe rapere out of þis fenne,
 Wip colde chile ich worþ a-slawe : ne go y neuere henne." 2332
 ¶ Wip þat cam renne sire Bruyllant : þe kyng of mountmirree,
 & þe kyng of combres, sir Sortibrant : is conseyler þat was pryuee ; He is drawn up out of the mud,
 & op þay drowe . sire Balan : þe Amyral of þe dyche :
 þat so on þe fenne þo was by-gan : þat a semede þe diuel ileche. 2336
 Wanne þat he was vppe þo : & stod oppon ys fet,
 for sorwe made he muche wo : & mornynge eke gret ;
 & saide : " alas ! for Lucafer : þat was so strong a kniȝt,
 & for my barons þat wern her : so noble men &¹ wiȝt ! 2340 and laments for the loss of his knights.
 þe flour of Chyualarie now haue y lost : [al] for þe loue of one,
 In wham y trust to alre most : & heo me haþ by-gone."
 ¶ "Sire," þan saide Sortybran : "y-lif me betre eft-sone,
 Ho þat ne wol bi conseil dan : som tyme hym schal mone." 2344 'Believe me [leaf 81, back] another time,' says Sortybran. Balan
 ¶ "By Mahoun," þan swer þe Amyrel : sykyng e al for tene,
 "Er xv. dawes y wil ful wel : of hymen y wreke bene.
 doþ now & leteȝ myn hornes blowe : quiclich and anon,
 þat myne men mowe iknowe : what þay schulleþ don. 2348 orders his men to
 þe tour we wollap anon asaile : & awreke ous of our fon."
 "It is now," quap he, "sanȝfaile : to late þer-to to gon,
 þe day him is a-go ful ny : y rede ȝut þat ȝe leue
 Til to-morwe þat þe sonne be hy : ne schal hit no-þyng greue. 2352 attack the castle, but Sortybran advises him to wait till the next day.
 By þat þy barons wollep be come : & beo assembled here."
 "y grante," quap þamyr, "al & some : god counsail is god to lere. Balan assents,
 Alas : for my gode felawe : Lucafer þat me ys wo.

¹ & [so].

- þes frensemen him habbeþ a-slawe : now wot y wel it ys so. 2356
 Ac to Mahoun y make auov : to wham ys al my chere,
 To morwe we wolleþ with strengþe y-now : by-gynne þe sege here ;
 & fro þat time¹ she ys by-gunne : ne schal heo neuere be laft,
 Til þe tour aȝen be wonne : wiþ strenþe ouþer be craft. 2360
 & þan schulleþ þay þeues stronge : þat þus me habbeþ agreued,
 Beo to-drawe and eke an-honge : & al-so for-gon hure heued.
 and Floripen. & my doȝtre þe foule scoute : þanne schal heo beo for-brent,
 For hure couyne to-ward þat route : & hure anbetyment. 2364
 þey mote nedes wiþ-oute faile : sone ȝeld op þe toure
 For þay ne haueþ noȝt vytaile : to lyue with dawes foure.
 Of Charlemeyn ne his ferede : nabbeþ þay non help, y legge ;
 y knowe it wel he wol drede : Mantryble for þe brigge." 2368
 Next morning the Saracens assemble. Amorwe be non pyder wern .y-come : so many Sarsynȝ wyȝte,
 þat þe feldes wer keuerid alle & some : with scheldes & helmes briȝte.
 þe Ameral pyderward haþ him nome, to þe feldeward þan ful riȝt ;
 & wan he sawe þat huge trome : his herte anon gan lyȝte. 2372
 þan þe Amiral hem tolde with tristour : by him how [it] is y-went
 & of þis barons on þe tour : how þay him habbeþ y-schent.
 The Emir tells them what has happened. The Saracens swear to avenge him. þay sworn þanne ȝunge & olde : to hym by commun assent,
 þe syȝe scholde be þer iholde : to ȝer ȝyf nede by stent. 2376
 þe sarsyns þan gunne vaste bulde : hure paulyons þar with-oute.
 Their camp is 6 miles round. þe logyng of þat gret host fulde : vj. mylen to gon aboute.
 Now god helpe þe frensche men : þay aren in grete drede ;
 y not how þay schul a-scape þen : þat hy ne goþ to dede. 2380
 The French are not afraid, **N**ow buþ þus barouns of honour : al-one þer enclos ;
 Wyþ Sarsyns biseged² in þe tour : an .C. þousand fos ;
 Of hem alle þat þar were : drede had þei none,
 [leaf 58] but they are short of provisions. Balan induces Maubyn [Ac] þe vytailles lacked there : hwyche were neȝ agone. 2384
 ¶ þe Amyral clypede to him þan : Maubyn of egremolee ;
 A s[uch] þ[er]ef as he was an : was non in his regnee. " " "
 "Maubyn," saide þe Amyral : "wolt þou hit vndertake,
 To steȝe out ouer þe castel wal : wanne þe nyȝt gynt blake, 2388
 & priuyliehe stalke in-to hur bour : my doȝtre þat lyþ þere,
 & stele þe gurdel of honour : þat she ys woned to were ?

¹ MS. time.² bisegged.

& brynge him me hol & sound : wan þov hast don þy dede ;
 And þov schalt haue an hundred pound : of golde for þy mede. 2392
 for if y may þat gurdel dure : fro hure so take away,
 To wynne þe tour þan am y sure : with-inne þis þridde day.
 for whyle heo haueþ þat gurdel fyn : no hunger ne may hem deere. which is a
 Stel me þe gurdel, gode Maubyn : ne spare þov for no fere." 2396 talieman
against
hunger.
Maubyn
agrees.
 ¶ "Sire, my lord," þan saide þe þef : "let me þar-wiþ al-one ;
 y wol do þe haue þat þe ys lef : to-morwe or it be none.
 þis nyzt wil y my myster kype : & do an hardy dede."
 þe A[myral] þankede him þanne swyþe : & sayde "Ma[houn] þe spede!"
 ¶ Wanne þe day him was afalle : & tyme was come to walke, 2401
 Maubyn toward þe Castel walle : pryuyliche gan hym stalke : At night he
 scales the
 wall
 Sone he cam out ouer dych : wiþ wyles þat a couþe,
 In al þe world nas þef him lych : by norþe ne be souþe. 2404 (never was
 there such a
 clever thief) ;
 Wan he cam to þe castel wal : oppon wend he by sleþe,
 Wyp a laddre of lethere & crokes smal : sone had he þe heþe.
 Comen ys he wiþ-inne þe tour : þe paleys he þorw sazte ;
 Atte laste he cam to Florippe bour : as þe deucl [þan] him tazte, he reaches
 the chamber
 of Floripas ;
 and opens the
 door with a
 talisman,
 þe chambris dore þat was y-schyt : sone he haueþ oundo. 2409
 Wyp a charme oundude he hit : and in he ½wente þo.
 And fyndeþ þe barons in bedde ibrozt : & hymen he charmeþ so, with which
 he also
 charms the
 knights to
 asleep.
 þat hy ne myzte a-wakye nozt : for wele ne for wo. 2412
 Wyp a charme he makeþ fyr : & a candlee he attendeþ ;
 And to haue is desyr : to Floripe bour he wendeþ.
 þanne þe þef by-gan be-holde : þe chambre al aboute,
 And fond hure þer þat burde bolde : liggyng vnder shroute. 2416 He searches
 for the girdle,
 Slepyng was þat ladi softe : þe þef him bar ful stille,
 And to & fro wende he ofte : or he hauede ys wille :
 Ate laste þan gurdel he fond : liggyng at hure hede.
 Mahoun he þonkede þan of is sond : & gurd him with þat wede, and finds it
 lying at her
 head.
 He puts it on,
 ¶ Gy of Borgoyne hure druwerie : wakyng þe ȝute was hee, 2421
 & out at a wyndowe þan gan lye : þat lay to-ward þe see ;
 Of þat host to be-holde þe huge aray : & of sarsynȝ þe semberlee.
 þe wyle þe þef þo dude is pray : þat yuele moste he þee ! 2424
 ¶ Wan he haueþ þat gurdel so : mo maystries wold he fonde ;

1 MS. he [ys ago].

- [leaf 82, back] To lye be þat burde þoȝte he þo : & to don hure schame & schonde.
 and then attempts to ravish Floripas.
 þe cloþes þat wern on hure bed ilaid : araid al wiþ þe beste,
 Alle haþ he wiþ is hondes braid : doun be-nyþe hure breste. 2428
 þan liþ sche þer, þat swete þynge : as whit as wales bon ;
 ys feye blod him gan to pyngre : and ful on hure anon,
 And hent hure by þe middel faste : & gan to kisse þat free. 2431
 Floripas awakes and cries out.
 Florippe a-wok and cryde an haste : “ now, lordes, helpeþ me ! ”
 “ Al þy crying is on waste ” : saide þe þef aȝee ;
 “ y nam of hymen noȝt agaste : þei mowe noȝt helpe þe.”
 Her maids run to her,
 ¶ Hure damesels wiþ þat cry a-wakede : & vp of hure bed pay ras,
 Al affraied pay sterte al nakede : til hure þar sche was : 2436
 but are frightened and run away.
 þe þef to hem þan tornd is fas : þat was so blac so cole.
 þan runne þai away & saide alas : & wende þat deucl he wore.
 By þat had he hur legges oundo : & saide, “ so Mahoun me saue,
 Wheþer þow wile now ouþer no : þy maydenhed schal y haue.” 2440
 Guy hears her cries,
 ¶ Gyoun þat on þe turet was : þow grace iherd hure crye,
 he torneþ him sone fro þat plas : & þyderward gan hym¹ hye ;
 hurries to her assistance,
 & wan he saw him wyþ yule gras : how he on hure gan lye,
 “ þef,” saide he, “ by godes fas : aȝeld þe, þow schalt dye.” 2444
 ¶ þan wax maubyn sore afferd : & lep out of þe bedde ;
 Ac Gy wiþ þat adrow is swerd : & a strok on him a ledde,
 and cuts Maubyn down.
 þow is heued, chyn, & berd : þat swerd adounward fledde,
 & in-to þe breggurdel him gerd : þan ful he adoun & bledde. 2448
 Floripas thanks him.
 ¶ þan sche spak þat burde briȝt : þat al naked was saf hir cerke ;
 “ Wel worþ þat hond, my swete wiȝt : y þankie þe for þy werke,
 ne haddeþ þou come to me now riȝt : & mad him of þy merke,
 A schame for euere had he me diȝt : now her al on þe derke.” 2452
 Guy tells his companions what has happened.
 ¶ His felawes awakede he þan & tolde : how he haþ founde a þef
 þat was come in-to þat holde : hem alle to repref ;
 & how þe þef þer riȝt scholde : haue leyen by ys lef,
 Nad he come þo as god wolde : & disturbed þat myschef. 2456
 & how he haþ sleyn him a tolde him al : þan wondrede þai myche þer
 They all wonder how he got in, and what he came for.
 How he miȝte come oun þe wal : & into hure chambre,
 Ac [sikernesse] nad þey non : his comyng whi yt was,
 But vp þey sterte enerechon : & be-held him on þe fas. 2460

¹ hym him.

þan lai he þar so blac so pych : ys bodi was neȝ to-hewe.

"þes ys," quap Ro[land], "þe deuel ilych delyuery we *ous* of þ^eschrewe."

þai leid on him hande þan an haste : & to þe water gate him bere
& into þ^e see þer him caste : & bede pleye þere.

2464 They cast
him into the
see; but, alas,

Alas : þe tyme þat he was bore : for þe damage þat þer was þo :

For þo was þe gurdel þat he com fore : y-lost for euere-mo.

the girdle
was on him,
and is lost.

þat gret damage ho may restore : þat þanne was þar ido.

þoȝ he kyng ouper Emperour wore : to litel had he þar-to.

2468

¶ Bote wan þe frensche men vnderȝyte : by þe gurdel how it was,

[leaf 33]

Sory þai wern, ȝe mowe wel wyte : for þat foule cas.

They are
grieved, but
since there is
no help,

Ac wan þai seȝe þat of þat þyng : recuuerer non þar nas,

þay lefte þanne hure mornyng : & þankede godes gras ;

2472

And confortede þat maide gent : þat was so faire of sizte,

And to hure beddes aȝen buȝ went : & rest hem þer al niȝte.

they return
to bed.

¶ þan erlich oppon þe morwe : wan þe sonne hure schon,

In the
morning the
Saracens
prepare to
attack the
castle.

þe ameral & is host with sorwe : armede hymen ecchon,

2476

In gode & wel sykere wede : y-mad of fair entayle ;

And ȝurne þo þai gunne hem spede : þe frensche men for tassaile.

¶ þe A[miral] calleȝ sir Bruyllant : þe kyng of mountmyrreeȝ,

Balan calls
a Council.

& þe kyng of Comble, Sir Sortybraunt : & othre of his pryueeȝ :

"Herkenyaȝ, lordes of honor" : saide he, "what is my þoȝt.

2481

Our þef ys slawe on þe tour : now he ne comeȝ noȝt,

If he wer now lyues man : afore þis had he come."

"ȝea, for-soȝ," saiȝ Sortybran : "he is ded or nome.

2484

Let blowe þyn hornes riȝt anon : we wollep assaile þe tour."

"now to," quap þe A[miral], "euerechon : myne barouns of honour."

Hure hornes þai gunne þo to blowe : ful many at one blaste,

The attack
begins.

þe Sarsyns þanne þyderward drowe : to assaile þe tour an haste.

2488

Hure engyns þanne þay arayde : & stones þar-wiȝ þay caste,

They hurl
stones at the
castle.

& made a ful sterne brayde : wiȝ bowes and arbelaste.

Wel scherpe doȝ þay by-gynne : to assayle þe grete tour ;

Ac þes barons þat buȝ wiȝ-inne : defendieȝ hem wyȝ vygour.

2492

The knights
fear nothing
but want of
food.
They kill
more than
100 Saracens.

With stones & tres þat þay cast out : oppon hure fon þat day,

Mo þan hundred of hure rout : þay affulde ded on þe clay ;

Of noȝyng certis doȝ (?) þay drede : bot of liflode one.

Ac now failed boȝe wyn & bred : vatailles habbeȝ þay none.

2496

FERUMBRAS.

G

Hunger
begins to be
felt :
Guy of
Burgundy
proposes to
his com-
panions

þe damesels þat woren of gret honour ! for hungre þai fulle y-sowe,
So dude Flo[rippe] bryt on bour ! whar-for was sorwe ynowe.
¶ G[y] of Borgoyne hure nywe spouse ! confortede hir wat he maye ;
for hure is herte was angwischouse ! & to his felawes gan he saye :
“ Lordes,” said he, “ 3e wyteþ wel ! þat we buþ her enclos, 2501
Herde by-ayged wyþ þ^e Amyrel ! & of oþre þat buþ our fos :
And now is this þe þridde day ! þat oure vytails failed ;
Our bred, our wyn ys al away ! & harde we beþ asailed. 2504
On myn herte me ys wo ! þat pys wymmen waxeþ feynte,
þey buþ so mate þay mowe nozt go ! so longer haþ hem teynte.

[leaf 33, back]

& if þat hy among ous here ! for hungre scholde dye,
For ous a gret reþref it were ! in euery companye. 2508
Leuere me were, bi god almiȝt ! in my body be wounded sare,
þan to sen pys burdes bryt ! for hunger þus forfare.
Teche we þar-fore in dede ! þat we buþ men of myȝte,
and do we now on our wede ! & araie we ous to fiȝte. 2512

to make a
sortie against
the Saracens,
to obtain food.

& wende we out of þis stronge tour ! to-ward þe Sarasyns ;
And gete we ous vytailles with honour ! among our enymys.
Certis, come we hymen among ! somme [vytaille] schulle we haue ;
Ouper þey schullen don ous wrong ! al so god me sauē. 2516
Wat so þei ben þat letteþ ous ozt ! vytailles þar to vacche,
non of ous ne sparie him nozt ! strokes þat þai ne lacche.
Teche we þar to oure fos ! þat vytailles gete we konne,
And cesse we neuere of our purpos ! or we ha summe y-wonne, 2520
Wer-wyth þes damesels of honour ! hure lif þar-with mown lede,
Til we haue other socour ! of Charlis and is ferede.

Better it is to
die fighting
than from
hunger.

Then says
Floripas :

‘ Had ye
worshipped
Mahomet, ye
would have
had food ere
now.’
Roland asks
to see her
gods.

For betere is ous forto die ! amonges our fos in fiȝte,
þan her-inne clynge & drie ! & daye for hunger riȝte.” 2524
¶ þan spak Flo[rippe] þat burde bryt ! to hymyn euerechone :
“ Ful lital ys 3our god of myȝt ! þat vytailles ne sent 3ov none ;
Hadde 3e worschipped our godes free ! as 3e 3our han done,
Of vytailles had 3e had plente ! maugre al 3our fone.” 2528
¶ Roland hure ansuerede & saide ! “ damesele, were þat soþ,
We wolde þanne do be rayde ! 3e þoȝ þay ben ous loþ.
Damesele if 3e wolde ous lede ! to þe godes of wham 3e spake
þanne scholde 3ee seen in dede ! what worschip we wolde he[m] make.”

- ¶ Of þat word was sche wel paid : & þe keys sone sche hente, 2533 Floripas
& with þis lordes þat buþ for-said : to þe maumerye þo sche wente.
To þe Synagoge wan sche cam : þe dore heo haueþ oundo,
þan wei by-fore þan sche nam : & þay come after þo. 2536 leads them to the shrine,
- ¶ Flo[rippe] drow a ridel þan : þat stod be-fore þe frount,
þan sawe þay þar Sir Ternagan : & eke hure god Mahount :
Iubiter al-so & iouyn : stode þar hymen by-syde,
& eke hure god appolyn : araid wiþ grete pryde. 2540 draws a curtain and shows them Ternagaunt, Mahomet, Jupiter and Iouyn and Appolyn,
- ¶ þe mametes þat þai sezen þare : bi-fore hure aldre sizt,
Euerchone y-maked ware : of gold þat schon ful brizt,
y-poudred wiþ stones preciouſe : þat wern þer-on i-pizt.
þay schyne þer in tal þat house : so doþ þe candelizt. 2544 all of gold and precious stones.
- ¶ þan was þar at hure fete : of encenȝ a fair dentee,
And of balme þat smyllep swete : & spycery gret plentee.
¶ "Ihesu lord," quap Olyuere : "fro wan comeþ al þis gold ?
now wold it god þat it were : þar as me self it wold." 2548 [leaf 84] Oliver wishes he had all that gold.
- ¶ þan hym spak sir Richard : þe duke of normaundie,
"I kepte no more to my part : bot iouyn wyþ-oute lye,
y wolde do þar-witȝ to werche : in Rowan my Citee,
And make newe þe heze cherche : in worschip of þe trynitee." 2552 Richard says one would satisfy him.
- ¶ þanne sayde Duk Roland : "þe tale to fulfille,
Char[lis] scholde haue þe remenant : miȝt it be at my wille,
Tharwiþ miȝt he þanne an haste : restore Rome Cytee,
þat þamyrall Balan waste : somtyme wiþ ys meygnee ; 2556 Roland thinks that if Charles had the rest he might rebuild St Peter's.
- & do make vp Seynt petris churchē : þat þe Sarsynȝ han yule arayd,
And othre gode werkes werche : þat god schold ben on apayd."
- ¶ Florippe to hymen saide þen : "ȝe spekeþ gret folye,
If ȝe doþ as wyse men : mercy ȝe hem crye, 2560 Floripas tells them they should pray to the idols.
- & prayeþ hem ȝerne þat hy ȝov spede : as þay buþ gode and hende,
& alpyng þanne what ȝe ha nede : to ȝow wollep hy sende."
- ¶ "Damesel," saide duk Gyoun : "my prayer ys now ido."
"For gode," saide erld Ogeroun : "so ys myn al-so ; 2564 Ogier says they are asleep, so
- Ac þay alepeþ alle so vaste : þay mowe ous noȝt y-here :
y wil þar-for teche a caste : to a-wakye hem alle yfere."
Ogier Deneyſ adrow is brond : & smot to sire Mahound,
þat al to pieces he to-wond : & ful doun on þe grou[n]d. 2568 he'll wake them. He breaks Mahoun to pieces.

- Oliver
 smashes
 Termagaunt, Olyuer tok vp ternagan : & casten aȝe þe wal,
 þat legges & armes brek him fram : in-to peces smal.
- and Richard Richard, þe duk [of] normandye : a drow is swerd wel fyn,
 the other two. & al to-hew þe opre twye : iubiter & appolyn. 2572
- Roland says ¶ "Parfay," þan saide duk Rolond : to þat maide briȝt,
 those gods
 are not very
 strong. "þyne godes buȝ naȝt in hond : Wel litel ys hure miȝt,
 for now þay buȝ a-doun afalle : þay mowe noȝt vp aȝene."
 Floripas is
 converted and "þat is soþ," saide þat briȝt in halle : " & þat is now wel y-sene,
 If ich hem worschipie after þis : maugre mot y haue. 2577
 for þay mowe noȝt her y-wys ' hem-selue fram herme saue ;
- begins to pray
 to Jesus, Ac y by-seche þat god of miȝt : þat diede on þe rode,
 Hwich of marie þat mayde briȝt : while tok flechs & blode, 2580
 Ase wisly as y lyue riȝt : a[nd] dayde for mannys gode :
 þat Sone sum socour to ous diȝt : & helpe ous of lifode."
- but faints
 with hunger. nad sche þer noȝt of hure bone : fulich y-mad an ende,
 Or heo for hunger had forgone : hir wit & ek hur mende. 2584
- [leaf 84, back] A seȝenyng þanne ful hure oppone : & gan to walwe & wende.
 "Alas !" saide þay euerechone : " wo is ous for þis hende ! "
- Roland lifts
 her up, ¶ Ro[land] tok hure vp wel softe : & confortd hure wat he maye,
 & for hure þanne sykede he ofte : & til þe opre gan to saye : 2588
 " In myn herte me ys wo : þat our frend gynt feynte ;
 Sche is so mat sche may noȝt go : so hunger hur haueþ enteynte,
 & if sche þus among ous here : for hunger daye scholde,
 For ous for euere repref hit were : for heo is trewe & holde. 2592
 Me were leuere, be swete iesus : beo iwounded neȝ þe dede,
 þan to sen hure fare þus : for defaute of brede.
 & now is þe þridde day a-gon : þat our vitaille gunne to slake,
 & bred ne wyn ne haue we non : þat we hure mowe take, 2596
 Hure to conforty wiȝ-in þis nede : ne non of þe burdes alle,
 þer-for do we by Gȝ is rede : & vitailles ous schullep falle.
- and proposes
 to adopt Sir
 Guy's advice,
 and sally out
 in search of
 food. ¶ Fare we out of þis castel her : vnto þe Sarazyns,
 Ous to gete vytailes ther : amonges our enymys. 2600
 & wan we comeþ hem among : somme schulle we haue,
 Ouþer elles þay schullep don ous wrong : al-so god me saue.
 What so þay be þat letteþ ous oȝt : our purchas for to make,
 for godes loue ne sparieþ noȝt : hure croȝes þat ȝe ne crake. 2604

& if y þys day forþward spare : Sarasyn ouþer torke,
for euere mot y þan for-fare : for my dayes werke.

þer-for, lordes, on þys porpos : let ous now so by-gynne,
þat we mowe þar of our fos : such vytailes ous y-wynne, 2608

Wer-with þis damesels & we : mowe oure lyues lede,
Or we mowen bet y-socoured be : wiþ Char[li]s & ys ferede."

Alle þe opre barouns free : assentieþ to þat dede :

Now dure god in trynhte : grantye hem wel to spede ! 2612

All the knights approve of the advice, and quickly arm themselves, and mount.

SOne þanne were þes barouns diȝt : in ful sykere wedes,
In aketouns, helmes, & brynnes briȝt : & on styȝe stedes.

þe Castel ȝate was opened þo : & þe draȝbrigge lete adoun,
& were in poynte forþ to go : þan spak Ro[land] to Naymoun, 2616

Roland wishes Naymes to remain and guard the gate, but Naymes refuses.

& prayde hym tabide þare : to kepe þat entree,

þe wyle þay made þat ilke fare : & þyder wer comen a-ȝe.

¶ Neymys answerede & sayde, "nay : why wiltou me mysbede ?

ȝut am y bold in myn aray : to don a mannys dede." 2620

"ȝe," quap Ro[land], "by my fay : þou art wel god at nede,

þow schalt forþ wiþ me þis day : þe betre þat ous may spede,

And duk Terry her schal leue : for he ys doȝty man."

Wan Terry hit herde, him gan greue : bot noȝt ne saide he þan. 2624

[leaf 35:] Then Roland orders Terry to remain ;

Wan Ro[land] hit a-perceuede & seȝ : þat he gan waxe wroþ ;

In is doynge he was ful sleȝ : & til him sone he goþ.

"Terry," saide he, "as þou art me lef : ipraye þe on godes name

þat þou ne take it noȝt to gref : þoȝ þou be laft at hame. 2628

Our on mot nedes leuen her : to kepe þis entree ;

y pray þe kepet gode vere : til þat we comen a-ȝee."

Ouneþe Terry wolde assente : to Abiden for þat nede ;

Nopeles þis lordes buþ for y-wente : crist of heuene him spede. 2632

he agrees, but with reluctance.

¶ Forþ now prikeap þis bolde barouns : wiþ a wel hardy chere,

Al so fers as any lyouns : was euerech on is manere ;

Wel y-armed on sikere stedes : hure armure schon ful briȝte ;

The knights sally out.

Don þay þenkeþ doȝty dedes : longe or come þe nyȝte. 2636

Toward þe Sarazynȝ þay prykede faste : & þe sonne schon ful liȝte.

¶ þe A[myral] a-perceyuede hem þan an haste : & awondrede him of
þat siȝte ;

The Emir sees them,

Til him þan clipede he Sortybran : and Bruillant of mountmyrreeȝ :

"Telleþ me," quap þe A[myral], "if ȝe can : what maner men buþ þeeȝ,
þat comeþ hiderward so boldely : prykyng on þis grene." 2641

"Hit buþ," quap þay "ful sykerly : frenschemen wiþ-oute wene,
þat buþ new comen out of þe tour : & þenkeþ wiþ ous to fiȝte,
& for to do þe deashonour : or we ben fullych diȝte." 2644

and orders
the assembly
to sound.

¶ "Let blowe oure hornes," quap þe A[myral], "y hote ȝow riȝt a-non,
þat myn host may come wiþ-oute dwel : to fiȝte aȝen my fon."
þan miȝte men many hornes here : of latoun y-mad, & bras :

The Saracons
arm in haste,

Wel sore þe Sarysyns affraid were : wan þay herde þat blas. 2648
Hure armes þai toke to hem for fere : to aray hem in þat cas :
A schrewed lessoun scholde þey lere : somme of ȝam sone þas.

but are not
ready for the
French,

¶ þus Barouns fulle on hem ful sone : or þay wern y-diȝte :
& Ro[land] cride "mont-ioye," anon : & smyteþ on wiþ miȝte. 2652
þay laid on þanne wiþ herte & wil : sturne strokes & grete ;

who kill
more than
1000 of them.

& to hewe þe Sarasyns boþe bok & bil : here herte blod mad þey swete.
With hure swerdes sherp y-grounde : þai kuld hem & dude hem wo ;
A þousant þay aslowe wiþ-inne a stounde : & ȝut y wene wel mo.

¶ Wel fauȝt þanne duk Rolande : wyþ durenale ys swerd adrawe :
He hew of heuedes, armes, & haunde : of þe Sarasyns þat were on mawe.
And so hym dude þe erld Olyuer : alle þat he miȝte a-reche,
A kulde hem doun afforn him ther : & was hure laste leche. 2660
& euerech of al þe frensche ferde : þar þay bere him so

[leaf 55, back] þat euerech haþ slawe wyþ dent of swerde : an .C. wiþ-oute mo,
So þat þe furste schak was ouercome : of hure enymys.

Clarion, king
of Gryes,
comes up
with 15,000
Saracons.

Ac þanne com frechs a ferly gome : Clarioun þe kyng of Gryes, 2664
xv þousant in-to þe feld : broȝte he of Sarsyn,
Wel araid wyþ sper & scheld : and in armure god & fyn.

Cosyn was he to Balaan : ys soster sone a was,
In paynye was þer þan no man : þat in wrappe þerst sen ys fas. 2668

Roland cries
for help,

¶ Wan duk Ro[land] y-saw him come : wiþ so many men of miȝtes,
To is felawes a cride al & some : "now helpeþ, hende knyȝtes,
Teche we now wat men we byþ : & gete ous vytailes here,
þat we mowe ous fede þar-wyþ : & þe wymen þat buþ our fere." 2672
With þat drow he ys gode swerd : and to Templer gan he ryde,
& þorȝ þe heued he him gerd : wyþ a strok pat tyde :
A-noþer a smot þat was him neȝ : & wel him gan a-rede,

cleaves his
skull,

- And gurd him fro þat heued an heȝ : in-to þe gurdel-stede. 2676
 þan laid he on wiþ miȝt and mayn : in eche syde aboute ;
 So many he haueþ of Sarsyns slayn : þat þe opere by-guane hem doute and puts his
 & floȝe þanne out of is way : wan þay knewe ys miȝte ; men to flight.
 So doþ þe lارke on someres day : þe sperhawk þat is in flizte. 2680
 ¶ þan asscriede duk Roland : sir Berard of moundisdier :
 "Berard," said he, "let go þyn hand : & tech hem þat þou art her, Roland then
 And by my trowþe fande y schel : to don al my power, perceives
 & ho-so wil noȝt now do wel : for-sake he þys myster." Berard, and
 2684 challenges
 ¶ þe speche þat Ro[land] to Berard made : gerte here hertes sprynge,
 þay laide on þe Sarsyns strokes sade : as herde as þay miȝt flynge.
 Faste þay foȝte þanne euerchon : & laide hure fon to grounde,
 & to hewe hem boþe flechs & bon : & ȝaue hem deþes wounde. 2688
 So many of hem thar had for-heawed : Roland & is route,
 þat al þe feldes þoȝte y-strawed : of dede men al aboute.
 ¶ þan turde hymen þys bachelers : & seȝe comynge there
 xxiiijth of faire somers : whiche þat heuy bere, 2692
 Wyp vytaylles boþe gode & fyne : icharged alle þay worne ;
 Boþe wiþ bred & wiþ wyne : wiþ flour & eke wiþ corne ;
 Wyp grys, & gees, & capouns : wyp veneȝon & wyp oyle,
 Wiþ motoun, & bef & bakouns : and othre gode vytayle. 2696
 Kyng heruer of Goran : þe vitailles hadde y-sent
 To þe heȝe Amyral sir Balan : þyder þanne to present,
 Be neȝentene vitailers : þat of þat syde were,
 þat þanne dryuen þey somers : to þe A[miral] as y said ere. 2700
 ¶ Wanne þe frenschemen y-seȝe hem come : aȝen hem hy toke þe waye, They slay the
 & by-trappede hem þanne al & some : to wyte what ladden þaye. escort and
 Ac wanne þe barouns it i-knewe : what þay in lode hadde, 2703
 þe Sarayns þanne þay alto-hewe : & þe vytailles with hem þay ladde.
 ¶ Wyp þat come out þe Sarasyn[y]s : þat rathere were noȝt a-raid ; carry off the
 xxx. þousant of stoute paynymys : in armis wel a-said. provisions.
 þey wern y-armed in-to þe tep : & araid wel for þe fiȝt. [leaf 38]
 Wan þis barouns hymen seep : somdel þay wern afriȝt. 2708
 To Duk naymes & Scot Gwylmer : þan Ro[land] gan to crye :
 "Dryueþ forþ þe vytailles ther : [ȝond] to dure an hye,¹ Then come
 80,000
 Saracens.

¹ to [þe tour] an hye.

- whyle he and
Oliver
protect them. And y me-self and Olyuer : wyþ þys oþer part
Wolleþ come be-hynde her : & kepe þe rereward. 2712
now spede 3ow þat 3e were : as 3e loueþ 3our honour,
Wyþ hors & al þat ilke gere : wyþ-inne þe 3onder tour."
- The Saracens
rally and
pursue them. ¶ Alle þe Sarsyns þat were þanne : by-gunne hem to relye
& after hem faste come renne : & by-gunne hem to ascrye ; 2716
Ac Ro[land] tok his companye : & let þe Somers pace,
And torneþ to hem-ward boldelye : to mete hem in þat place.
Nov help hem þe heȝ kyng of heuene : þat art of miȝtes most !
Ne were þer þo bot kniȝtes neȝene : to fiȝte aȝen þat host. 2720
¶ þey fulle to-gadre atte laste : & by-gunne a newe fiȝt ;
þe barouns layde on hem vaste : wiþ swerd faire & briȝt ,
Of alle þe route was þar non : þat þe frensche a-raȝte ariȝt,
þat þai ne cloue hym flechis & bon : & dryuen hem doun with miȝt :
In a playn þat was ful fair & grene : þat lay þar neȝ þe tour, 2725
þe frensche men to muche tene : was mad þat harde schour.
¶ þe Sarazyns þanne atte laste : wan þey seȝe þat cas,
Glaiues scherpe þai gunne caste : & dartes y-feþered wiþ bras. 2728
Duk' Basyn, a doþþeper of fraunce : þorȝ þe heued i-gerd þer was,
& ful doun ded þar by chaunce : þan saide þe frensche "alas !"
- Basyn is
killed. ¶ Duk Ro[land] & erld Olyuer : þan þay bleynte a syde,
They begin
to give way. & so he dude þe gode Ogeer : & Gy wolde noȝt abide, 2732
For drede of the lancyng þat com ther : of speres þat fulle ounryde
þorȝ þat so war-of þ' frensche wer : dyscomfyted neȝ þat tyde.
¶ þan cam Clarioun þe sturne kyng : & loude hem gan ascrye : 2735
"Falleþ on hem þai buþ fleoyng : we schulleþ hem haue an hye."
Gyoun turde til him hys stede : and sayde þo, "þow schalt lye,
Arst y schal þe make blede : her riȝt ich þe diffye."
- Guy chal-
lenges
Clarion. ¶ þe whyle þat Gyoun drow ys brond : & þat word had spoke oneþe,
His horse is
killed ; þar com a dart to hym fleand : & herte his hors to depe. 2740
þe gode knyȝt þanne him ful a-non : and eke ys stede of prys ;
& wel sone þer fulle him vpon : an hundred of Sarsyns.
þan was þar þat stronge baroun : among is fon y-take.
þe Sarasyns dude his helm a-doun : & maked is hed al nake, 2744
His handes þanne þay toke riȝt : & layden him be-hynde,
He is bound, And ase faste as tweyne miȝt : wiþ a corde þay dude him bynde,

And suppe þe schrewes toke a clout : to don him more tene, [leaf 86, bk]
 & hyndeþ ys eþene þar-wiþ about : for he ne schold nozt sene. 2748 and blind-
 ¶ þanne made sir Gy. a dulful mon : & sayde, "welaway, folded.
 A, Ihesu lord, wat schal y don : y am i-lost þis day !
 Alas ! Char[les] vncler myn : & kyng i-crowned free,
 Now y knowe wel-a-ffyn : þy message schendeþ me." 2752
 Clarioun saide to þe kniȝt : "þow syngest an ydel songe,
 þis day schaltou ben yuele y-dyȝt : & to morwe heȝe an honge."
 ¶ Wan þe oþre barons it wyste : þat Gy was so y-take,
 Wat þay miȝte do þay nyste : bot gret sorwe þay gun make. 2756 The knights
 Alle þe vitaylles þay hauede nome : þan þai lete hem gon,
 & gadrede hem to-gadre alle & some : to help ech oþer anon. let the con-
 Ac arst erld Olyuer him¹ bi-þoȝte : wan he hem leue schel, but Oliver
 Of a somer þan he cauȝte : of wyn a ful barel, 2760 a barrel of
 & of² bred loues three : y-mad of flour of whete ; wine,
 & Capouns y-bake al-so tok he : foure in þilke hete, 3 loaves,
 & iij. pecokkes y-bake on past : & a syde of venyȝoun ; four capons,
 & þese vytailles ther haþ he cast : in-to þe dych adoun, 2764 three pea-
 & to his felaschipe him is adrawe : wiþ hymen for ta-byde, cock pies,
 Hwich þe Sarazyns þat were ounmawe : angryde in euery syde. and some
 þe frensche men þai hadde y-dryue ; wel neȝ þe tour þat stounde, venison,
 So hard batail þai hadde hem ȝyue : with wepnas scherp y-grounde. inside the
 ¶ Ac wan þay neȝede soneȝ hure strengþe : hure hertes spronge vp ageyn, but they
 þay dryuen hem aȝen an aker lengþe : þe Sarazyns in þe pleyn ; rally.
 & in þe reculynge þat þay made : an hundred of hem wer sleyn,
 Wyþ sturne strokes þe frensche hade : ȝyuen him in-to þe breyn. 2772
 þe Sarsyns þan lefte þat discourmit : & to þe tour þay buþ ago.
 Olyuer þ^e vitails nozt for-ȝyt : bot after wente þo.
 To þe tour þai come to-gadre an haste : & spedilich in þey wente,
 & After hymen made þe gate faste : & þ^e draȝbrig vp þay bente. 2776 They retire
 Sory men þay alizten alle : of hure stedes þan adoun, inside the
 For þe meschef þat was by-falle : on Basyn and Gyoun. castle,
 ¶ Of þe paleys þan com adoun anon : Flo[rippe] þat burde briȝt, and draw up
 & to Rolond sche ys agon : & askede of him ful riȝt : 2780 the bridge.
 " War is he, myn owene spouse : Gyoun, þe gode kniȝt ! Floripas
 enquires
 after Sir Guy,

¹ him [wel].

² of [bulted].

Now y sen hym noȝt in þis house : a-gon ys al myn hiȝt."

and when she ¶ "Damesele," said he wiþ-oute faile : "to sayn soþ of þy make,
Hit ne may beo no consail : þe Sarazyns him habbeþ itake, 2784
& Duk Basyn we han y-lore : among þe Sarsynȝ blake.
& ȝut for Gy me greueþ more : certis for þy sake."

[leaf 27]
hears of his
capture,
faints, and

¶ Wan Flo[rippe] of ys takyng herde : for sorwe sche saide, "alas !"
Sche wrong hur haundes & foule ferde : & soweden in þat plas : 2788
And wan sche out of sowenyng ros : loude sche gan to crie :
"Alas : ys Gyoun wiþ is fos : alas ! for sorwe y dye.

threatens,
if Guy is not
within 2 d. yz
rescued, to
give up the
castle.

Certis bot y haue Gy aȝen : wiþ-inne þis dawes twye,
þis ilke tour schal iȝelde ben : þe þridde day be Marye. 2792

Alas : heo saide, & welawo : to longe y lyue in londe,
Now is he . fram me ago : þat scholdbe myn hosbonde.
Alas ! loue, wo dost þou me : þow sturest al my blod.
Alas ! Gyoun þe loue of þe : wil do me waxe wod." 2796

Wiþ þat ful sche þat burde briȝt : in sowenyng doun aȝeyn,
And wanne þat maide speke myȝt : wepyng sche gan to sayn :
"Now ic certis neȝ for-ȝete : þe Angwys þat i hadde
thre dawes for defaute of mete : so sorwe me haueþ be-stade." 2800

Roland
promises to
rescue Guy.

¶ þan had Ro[land] þe noble kniȝt : gret pite of þat mayde,
And confortede hure wiþ al is myȝt : & tok hur op' & sayde :
"Now damesele, by god almiȝt : so þow be wel a-paide,
þow schalt him haue to-morwe or niȝt : þat þe cok hym graide." 2804

Oliver pro-
duces the
provisions he
had taken.

¶ To Ro[land] þan sche gan abowe : almost doun til his fete,
& þankede him wel faire i trowe : of is confort swete.

þanne him saide erld Olyuer : "we buþ in yule aray,
þat we ete any mete her : þis ys þe þridde day ; 2808

& þus damesels for-werneþ al : þat me greueþ werst :
& we ous self buþ feynt & þal : for hungre & for þerst.
Al ȝour mornyng leteþ now ben : & murȝhere let ous make,
of þys vytailles þat ȝe sen : whyche y haue y-take. 2812

Her-of mowe we take our fille : þa wile þai wollep leste,
& mo þer-after gete we schulle : & take we her-of þe besta."
þe othere him þankede þanne anon : for he was so hande,
And toke þe damesels wiþ hem ecchon : & in-to þe paleys guanne þay
wende. 2816

To þe mete þay set hem þere : & ete & dronke hure fille.

Now torne we aȝen þar we were : & of Gy y wil þou telle.

PE Sarasyns ledeþ forþ Gyoun : harde & faste y-bounde,
To þe Amyralis pauylloun : þei come wiþ-inne a stounde ; 2820

The Saracens
conduct Guy
to Balan's
tent.

& by-vore Balan, þe Ameral : þay hym broȝte an haste,
And Gyoun þanne was teynt & paal : so longe he hadde yuaste.

Ac of body was he a seemly kniȝt : of fair schap & of free ;

nas þer nowar yfounde in syȝt : a fairer man þan hee.

2824

þe Amerel het hym sone þere : to tel him al þat cas,

Of wat kyn come he were : & wat ys name was.

¶ And Gy Answerede wiþ-oute ensoyngne : as he him stod afforn.

“Ma calþ me Gyoun of Borgoygne : in þ^e contre þat y was born.

Balan asks
him his
name and
race.

[leaf 37, bk.]
Guy tells
him.

þe kyng of fraunce Charlemayn : he ys myn vncler riȝt,

2829

Cosyn also y am Germain : to Roland, þe gode kniȝt.”

¶ þan þe Amyrel saide an haste : “y knowe þe wel ynow :

Hit is twelmonth and more apaste : to Ma[houn] y make avow ! 2832

Balan
recognises
him

þat my doȝtre hure loue to þe caste : & euere suppe haueþ y-dow.

Hure loue ys mored on þe ful vaste : & þat me semeþ now,

By-cause of þe now haue y lore : myn men of heȝe kynne.

& þe ȝond tour me ys wers þer-fore : & al my tresour with-ynne :

as the cause
of all his
trouble,

By þe haue y þat deshonor : tel me þer-for anon,¹

2837

Wat men buþ þat buþ on my tour : & hure names euerechon.”

and enquires
the names of
the others.

¶ “Sire,” quap Gyoun, “by myn hand : þat schel y · þe telle fawe :

Guy tells
him,

Ther ys ferst Duk Roland : & Olyuer his felawe,

2840

And ther ys Berard of mountdisdier : & Richard of normandye,

And Duk Naymys, & erld Ogier : & Alorys þe erld of Brye,

& Geffray þe lord of langeuyn : & eke þe erld Aubry ;

Ther ys also the Scot Gwylmyn : & of Ardan þe duk Tery, 2844

Basyn was þe alleuefþe : þat ȝe han slawe there,

& y me self was þe twelpe : y-take amonges ȝow here :

Ac ȝut or come oȝt longe : & Charlis may ride & gon,

Abigge þow schalt þis wronge : þat þow ous hast y-don.”

2848

and threatens
him with
vengeance.

¶ Wyp þat a Sarsyn cam forþ starte : þat souȝte is owene deþ,

& wiþ ys fuste harde a gerte : Gyoun agayn þe teþ,

þat endelonges is berde riȝt : þan² ran adoun þat blod ;

A Saracen
gives him a
blow
on the mouth.

¹ tel þer-for [blif] anon.

² [þat rede blode.]

- And þan him wax þat man of miȝt : for wrappe wel neȝ wod, 2852
 þar-fore to ben alto-hewe : to wreke him wolde he fonde ;
- Guy dashes By þe nekke hent he þan shrewe : & heuid vp ys honde,
 & þar-wiþ an þe heued him duste : & harde gan hit layn,
 out his brains þat al aboute is grete vuste : þan wend out al þat brayn. 2856
 with his fist.
- Balan orders him to be bound, but ¶ þe Ameral þanne gan loude crye : wan he soȝ him falle :
 “Byndeþ þan þef,” gan he seye : “þat schameþ þus ous alle.”
 þe Sarsyns þanne on him fulle : alle wiþ herte grete,
 & shrewed-liche þai dede hym kulle : boþe with honde & fete ; 2860
 His cote armure þay alto-drowe : þat he had him oppon,
 & dude him sorwe & schame ynow : þer ne spared him neuer on.
- ¶ þe A[meral] þanne gan crie an haste : “y hote ȝe sle him noȝt,
 Bote byndeþ hym herde & faste : til y haue my consayl soȝt.” 2864
 þe Sarȝynȝ after his heste dide : ¹Sir Gwy¹ so harde bynde
 þat þe blod barst out þar mide : at euery nayles ynde.
- Balan calls a council. ¶ To hym þan clepede sir Balan : þe Ameral of nubbee,
 Kyng Bruyllant and kyng Sortybran : ys counseilers pryuee, 2868
 & oþre ynowe he dude al-so : þat come to him wel sone
 By þe prysoun he askede þo : wat was best to done.²
 ¶ “Sire,” sayde kyng Sortybran : “hast þou gode chere
 þy faire tour to gete aȝan : wyþ-oute any where, 2872
 And þe frensche distruye þat buþ þer-aan : and þees þat is here !”
 “By Mahoun, ȝea,” quap balaan : “þer-of wold y here.”
- Sortybran advises him to take 20,000 men. ¶ “þou schalt haue consail god” : saide þe Sarsyn þo ;
 “Tak xx^{ti} þousand men of mod : ate leste way or mo, 2876
 þat ben doȝty on hure dedes : & y-diȝt in god armure ;
 & loke þay haue faire stedes : þat ben gode & sure,
 þanne do þat þaye in-buched beo : to-niȝt how so be-tyde,
 In þe wode þat þow miȝt see : ȝond her fast be-syde : 2880
 & þan scholtou don þe forchys there : by-fore þe castel riȝt,
 So þat þay wyþ-yne there : y-sen hem vp y-pȝȝt,
 þan wollap þay wel vnderstonde : why þat þay buþ diȝt
 And to-morwe let þes be þar an honge : by-for hure alre siȝt. 2884
 Y wot ful wel þay buþ so prout : & of hure dedes ournawe,
 þat þay willeþ þanne come out : to rescuwy hure felawe.
- Then in the morning hang Guy in front of the castle : if the French try to rescue him,

¹ [þe gode kniȝt.]² [of hymen] wat was to done.

¶ þan schullaþ our men of hem be-war : & breken out of þe bossche,
 & þov wyþ þyne, & be-trappe hem þar : & take hem at one russche. they will be taken in the ambush.
 & þus schalt þov wreke þe of þy fon : & gete þy tour aʒeyn." 2889
 "þus conseil is god & schal by don" : þe Amerel þan gan seyn.

¶ Wel sone dude þe Amyrel : after ys counseil riȝt : Balan follows the advice.
 xx þousand Sarsyns araide he wel : & to þat wode he haueþ him diȝt.
 Hure ledere dude he þanne make : Cornyfer an hezene kyng ; 2893
 & pay hit habbeþ vnder-take¹ : to parfornye wel þat þyng.

ERly on þe morwetyde : after þat þay were there, In the morning the gibbet is erected, in front of the castle.
 þe Amyral wolde no leng abyde : bot þe Galwys let arere ;
 By-fore þe tour y-set þay were : a litel by-syde a cost, 2897

Noȝt fer fro þen buchymment þere : & neȝ to ys owen host.
 And þanne ordeynde he for drede : an hundred of Sarsyns stronge,
 þat scholde Gyoun pyder lede : sickerliche,² & hym an honge. 2900

þay hundred Sarsynȝ after his heste : harde han him bounde, Guy is led bound [leaf 38, back] with a rope round his neck.
 And þanne aboute ys nekke þay caste : a rop ful harde y-wounde.

¶ And wan þat aperceuede þe gode kniȝt : þat a scholde ben an honge,
 ȝerne prayhede he to god Almiȝt : scholde ys soule auonge. 2904

þys schrewede Sarsyns þat wern ouzwraste : þan ladde forþ Gyoun,
 To þe Galwis-ward wel faste : þay enchacede þan baroun ;

& wyþ sturne staues þay him bute : as þay þo dryuen him forþ,
 þat after euerech of hure strokes grute : ys body al swart y-worp. The Saracens drive him along with blows.

Ac wan Gy y-saw þe galwe tree : þan gan he wepe stronge : 2909

"Alas !" saide he, "þat y schold see : þat day to ben an honge.

Alas ! myne felawes war buþ ȝee : wy tarieþ ȝe so longe ?

Certis bot if ȝe helpe me : y her daye now wyþ wronge." 2912

¶ Duk Ro[land] þat ys cosyn was : at a wyndowe out gan lye, Roland sees the gibbet

Sone saw he be-fore ys fas : þe Galwys arered an hye,

And many Sarsyns stonde aboute : araid on hure gere ;

Wel y-armed was al þe route : þan wondrede he wat hit were. 2916

Sone clipede he erld Olyuer : & ys opre felawes wyȝte ;

And prayed hem alle come neer : to seen a³ selcouþ siȝte. and calls his companions.

And þanne of hymen he gan enquer : wat þat amounty myȝte,

And wham þay þoȝte an honge ther : on þe galwys þat þer were diȝte.

¶ þanne answered duk Naymoun : & saide on his entent : 2921 Naymes guesses for

¹ MS. vnder-takake.

² MS. sirkerliche.

³ a [wonder].

whom the
gallows is
prepared.

"þay wolleþ an honge þar Gyoun : sone þay han y-ment.
Ys clopynge þai han alle of i-don : & al naked þar a stent,
Bote we him þe rathere helpe mown : thar he worth y-schent." 2924
¶ Wan Duk Ro[land] þat soþe y-knew : þanne stured al ys blod,
ys colour changed & ys hew : for angre wax he neȝ wod.

Floripas begs
Roland to
rescue Sir
Guy.

Afforn him sone com knely þat may : Flo[rippe] þat was so god,
Hym to helpe sche gan him pray : for his loue þat daiede on rod :
" & harneyscheap ȝow with-oute lette : hastelich þat ȝe be diȝt, 2929
And we wymmen willeþ ȝow fette : ȝour stedes araid ariȝt."

Roland calls
his com-
panions to
arms.

"Doþ þanne, damesele, as ȝe sede : " quap Ro[land] þat was so wyȝt,
" & we nulleþ spare for no drede : to help him with al our miȝt."
¶ "Asarmes !" þanne cride Rolond : "asarmes, euerchon ! 2933
Gowe army ous wyþ ayþer hond : þat we wer þar anon."

Hastily they
arm.

Hasteliche buþ þay wel y-diȝt : in gode & syker wede,¹ ¹syker [armure]
hwyȝ was clene & fayr of siȝt : and fyn ynow at nede. 2936
To ech of hem tok þat swete wiȝt : sunderly þanne ys stede,
And wan Ro[land] was on his alyȝt : to is felawes þanne a sede :

[leaf 89]
Roland warns
them, as they
are so few,

¶ "Lordes vnderstondeþ ȝow : of wat y am be-thoȝt ;
We ne buþ [but] ten her now : & mo ne beo we noȝt. 2940

to keep
together.

And of þus Sarasyns þer nys no numbres : þat ous haueþ by-set,
& hy ous wolleþ foule encombre : bote we ous bere þe bet.
þer-for doþ by counsayle : y pray ȝow in godes name,
þat non of ous to oper faille : bot hold ous to-gadre y-same ; 2944
& þat ech of ous on his helue : do al þat a may,
To helpe ys felawe euene him-selue : among our fon to day,
& anpeyny we ous our felawe to fette : þat ys among ys fos.
& allee we hymen þat willeþ ous lette : to don þar our purpos, 2948
For to ben þar alto hewe : our non him fancy noȝt.

And egreliche y schal hem schewe : somdel of my þoȝt.
And euere draweþ to-ward me : wanne ȝow nedep meste,
And y wille ȝour warant be : þe whyle my swerd wil leste. 2952
And whar any of ȝow be in stour : haue ȝe þar-of no doute,
Y schal ȝow come to socour : maugre al þe route,
And doþ ȝe al-so euery man : helpeþ other att nede."

Floripas
urges them
to start,

So þey wolde : þai sayden þan : " crist of heuene ous spede ! " 2956
¶ "Lordlynges," saide Floripe þo : "ȝe dwelleþ her wel longe ;

Bote 3e þe rathere ben a-go : my lemman worth an honge."

In-to hure chambre sche rennep faste : & þat shryn sche broȝte adoun,

And openede hit bi-for hem an haste : & tok out þat comly croun

þat was on cristes heued y-set : on his passyoun ; 2961

& þay hit cussede wiȝ-oute let : wiȝ god deuocioun.

And suppe þay blessedede þer wiȝ hure face : & set hit hure helmes oppon.

And þan þay hopede by godes grace : þe sykerloker þay miȝte gon.

þe ȝeates wern y-opened wyde : þe draȝtbrigge þay lete falle, 2965

Euerech þanne by oprys syde : wenten¹ out fair wiȝ-alle.

Floripe, þat maide briȝt & schene : þe ȝeate þan made faste,

& þe draȝt-brigge drow op aȝene : wan þay were apasta. 2968

¶ þus Frenschemen of douce fraunce : euene þay toke hure pas,

þe Sarazyns þo to yuele chaunce : þar þat þe fourchys was.

By þat was Gyoun vp a-stoȝe : oppoun þe laddre an heȝ,

& þe rop y-knyt þe tree aboȝe : & he y-pult out wel neȝ. 2972

ac Ro[land] wiȝ þat cam þyder renne : sodeynliche on is stede,

And criede² to þe Sarsynȝ þenne : "aȝeld ȝow, ȝe buȝ dede !"

Wanne þe Sarsyns y-sawe him come : ful sore þay were affriȝt,

þe hardieste þat were of al þe trome : polte hem to þe flizt. 2976

And þan was Gyoun þar y-laȝt : in the ladre him-self al-one,

Al ys cloȝes were him by-raȝt : wiȝ Sarsyns þat buȝ a-gone.

¶ þe Sarasyns þanne wiȝ yule grace : wel faste þey floȝe away,

And our barouns hem gun chace : as harde as þay may. 2980

So harde hy hem þanne quaȝte : fleoyng toward hure host,

þat þe moste part of hem hy caȝte : & sone abatede hure bost.

Somme of hem þanne þay gerte : þorȝ þe heued in-to þe tonge,

And summe of hymen þay wer herte : þorw lyure & þorȝ longe. 2984

Alle þat þo miȝte ben of-take : wiȝ-oute tales mo,

Wel sone hur bred was y-bake : hure lif-dawes wern ago.

Al þat company was so by-fraped : among þes frenschemen,

þat among hem alle þar ne ascaped : ouneȝe bote ten. 2988

¶ þanne þe Sarazynȝ at arst brek out : þat were on þe enbuchymment ;

Kyng Cornyfer & al ys rout : aȝen hem þanne þay went.

Cornyfer hem gan ascrye : "cowardes, what hav ȝe ment ?

For ȝour outrage & ȝour maystrye : ȝe schulle beo now y-schent. 2992

¹ [þay] went.

² MS. And [ascriede].

and brings
down the
Crown of
Thorns,
which they
kiss,

and they
pass out,

and Floripas
shuts the
gates after
them.

Guy is on the
point of being
hanged,

but Roland

puts the
Saracens to
flight.
[leaf 39, back]

The French
chase them,
and slay

x

all but ten.
The other
break out of
ambush.

Alle 3e schulleþ beo an honged hye : wiþ him þat 3under stent,
 & hasteliche 3e schul dye : a3eldeþ 3ow, 3e buþ hent ! ”

Roland ¶ Wan duk Ro[land] yhurde hym speke : for angre a wax nez wod,
 By-fore ys felawes he gan out-breke : & modyly til him rod, 2996

smites at
 him, but the
 sword glances
 off his helmet. And with durenal ys gode swerd : a strok til him a sente.
 Ac Cornyfer is helm was herd : & mad þe strok to glente ;
 þan Cornyfer to Roland werd : a sturne strok gan slente :

Cornyfer
 cleaves
 Roland's
 shield, but
 does not
 wound him. Ac Ro[land] kepede hym fram ys berd : & with his scheld him hente ;
 bot þor3 is scheld þe strok him sprong : and þe schild to-chon, 3001
 ac ys habryioun was ful strong : it ne miȝte no ferrer gon.
 God þan þankeþ duk Roland : þat harm hauede he non.
 With þat heuede he an he3 ys brand : & sone a 3af hym on ; 3004
 Oppon is heued with egre mod : a strok til him he ledde,
 And þor3 is helm were fyn & god : þorw-out is heuid it fledde.
 þe dynt was smert & forþ him glod : & endelong is chyne hym spedde :
 At ys breggurde þat swerd a-stod : he ful adoun & bledde. 3008

seizes his
 horse,
 and gives it
 to Guy. ys stede he sayseþ sone þas : & forþ-wyþ him awente,
 & til he cam þar galwys was : neuere he ne astenta.
 Gy of Borgoyngne þar afond : y-blyndfalled, and by-bounde,
 Hondes & e3ene he him ounbond : þanne with-inne a stounde. 3012

Guy puts on
 his
 [leaf 40]
 clothes. His clopis leyen þer faste by : þat Sarsyns him hadde by-nome :
 he shridde him þer-with¹ þan hastely : & cloped him al & some²
 Ro[land] þan tok him with-oute lak : þe stede he haueþ y-wonne,
 and mounts. And Gyoun sterte oppon ys bak : & faire þankedem þanne : 3016

¶ “ Cosyn,” saide duk Roland : “ hold þe by my syde,
 Til þow haue armys at hand : to defendy þe wiþ pryde.”
 “ Sir,” said he, “ as 3e me bereþ : y wol do loude & stille.”
 þe Sarazyns sone þat cry arereþ : in tal þat host ful schille, 3020
 And þanne þay prykede³ among our men : as þay were wode ;
 Ac hymen⁴ duste doun on þe fon : wiþ swerdes & axes gode.
 þanne comencede þat harde fiȝt : scharper miȝte non bene ; 3023
 Many was þe helm & brynne briez : þat þar was cloue with tene ;
 & many a scheld was þar y-cleued : & many a man was to-hewe.

¹ [And duden oppon him.]² Over this is written, & Ro[land] to hym ys come & tok him þat stede.³ MS. prykede.⁴ MS. hy hymen.

of legges & armes honde & heued : sone þan lay ful þe rewe.

Ro[land] hente kyng Saladyne : & duden a dede bolde, 3027 Roland dismounts Saladin,

for his armure was riche & fyn : on is lift arm he him gan volde,

& plyzte him of is sadel with mayn : & let go way þat hors :

& wiþ is riȝt hond a-brak is necke a-twayn : & to Gy tok he þat cors : breaks his neck, and tells Guy to take his arms.

"Dispoille þis body," þan gan he saye : "& arme þe on ys wede,

& þanne hast þou armes gode & gaye : to helpe þe on þis nede, 3032

And y wil kepe þe if y maye : þe whyle þow dost þy dede."

þan was he sone in his araye : & aȝen oppon ys stede.

¶ Wanne Gy was armed & wel an horce : þan sprong vp is herte ;

"Leggeþ on, Lordes," said he, "wyþ force : & smyteþ strokes smerte ; Guy declares

And techeth hem a lessoun of our lay : for þai buþ neȝ be-vapid, 3037

And y schal tech hem wel þis day : þat ych am askapid."

he will teach the Saracens a lesson.

Wan þay herde what he spak : grete strokes to hymme þay rauȝte,

With strengþe þay reculede þat host a-bak : more þan a boȝe-draȝte.

So many of hem þay han for-hewed : as þay reculede aȝeyn, 3041

þat al þe feld semed y-strewed : of Sarzynes þat þo were sleyn.

Ac þe wyle þat þys was don : opere araid hem vaste,

xxth þousand of hure fon : to fȝte with hem an haste.

3044 20,000 more come on.

¶ Now buþ þus furste discourmyt : þe frenschemen doþ abyde.

Duk Naymes þan behuld a syt¹ : & saw war þay come ryde,

Naymes advises his companions

Al frechs out of hure paupylouns : to hymen-ward wiþ pride.

þan spak Naymes to þus barouns : & saide til hem þat tyde : 3048

"Lorlyngee, drawe toure strengþe bet : & lete we al thys ben,

Ouper with þus Sarsyns we worþ y-let : þat ȝe her come y-sen.

Were we a litel ner þe tour : þanne nere we in none doute,

þar miȝte we take god socour : & þe Sarsyns holde with-oute." 3052

[leaf 40, back] to retire towards the castle,

¶ þan spak Ro[land] þe werreour : wordes þat dude auaille :

"What scholde we now don on þe tour : with-oute sum vytayle ?

but Roland asks what they are to do for food.

We ne lafte to day þar wanne we wende : neȝþer wyn ne bred,

Were we ther we wern y-schende : for hunger we scholde be ded.

Betere ous ys to daye her : worschiply agayn our fos, 3057

þan schamly for to asterue þer : for hungre on þat clos :

& þer-for abyde we ase men : & fȝte we with hem ȝeare,

& vytaylles we wollap maugre hem : gete ous or we fare." 3060

¹ *syt altered to syt.*

- "Wel depardieux," quap þis barouns : "ounþank habbe þat spare,
& þat we ne prikie to þe pauillouns : to chalangie ous summe þare."
- They charge the Saracen's tents,** ¶ þanne þay gunne to pryke vaste : toward hure logyngge,
And þe Sarsyns aȝen hem anhaste : as harde as þay may flynge 3064
& þan þus doþþepers of fraunce : torndem to þat ferde,
Boþe wiþ sword, axe, & launce : þe[y] mette hem in the berde.
- and a fearful struggle follows.** Faste þay layde þe Sarazyns on : wiþ swerdes & axes gronde,
& dussched a-doun to deþe hure fon : a þousand with-inne a stounde.
þar was cloue ful many a scheld : & many an helm to-flent, 3069
And many an haberke þat arst wel held : þan was þer to-rent.
- Guy slays all round him.** ¶ Gy of Borgoygne þanne a droȝ : þat sword þat Saladyn oȝte ;
Many a Sarsyn þar-with a sloȝ : & is takyngge þanne aboȝte. 3072
He leid on Sarsyns al aboute : strokes styþe and sterke,
Wham so he smyteþ of þe route : he ȝyfþ him deþes merke.
- Floripas sees the battle from the Tower,** ¶ Flo[rippe] with hure damesels stoute : in þe tour þan sche lay,
And at a wyndowe loket oute : & al þis batail y-say. 3076
Wan sche saw hure lef Gyoun : þat þanne delyured was,
And doȝtyliche dynged ys foes adoun : amonges hem as a gas,
- and cheers on Sir Guy.** Hure care was gon þanne euerydel : & toward him sche cryes :
"Wel worþ þat hand þat can so wel : chastye ys enymyes, 3080
Wer þou, leman, with me her : riȝt now y wolde þe kyasse.
Nopeles now y se þe ther : recuuered ys al my blysse.
ȝut schal my fader þe Amerel : in þy donger falle y-wisse,
& þan schalt þov him acyqyte wel : of al ys shrewidnesse." 3084
- ¶ "Gy," said ogier þe Deneys : "herkne a lytel wyȝt ;
Hurst þou noȝt what sche says : Flo[rippe] þat burde briȝt !
Al hure herte on þe sche lays : Gyoun, by god almiȝt,
Bote þov hure louye wel alweys : certis þou dost ounriȝt." 3088
- [leaf 41] ¶ "My herte," quap Gy, "gan vp-sprynge : wanne ich herd hure spake,
y wot it were hure lekyngge : miȝt y-me selue a-wreke.
& so schal y or þe sonne go doun : haf at hem her an hye."
þan saide iantail ogeroun : "smyt on & ich þen-vye." 3092
With þat þay prikede forþ on þe pleyn : toward þe pauyllouna.
þe Sarsyns relied hymen ageyn : & metep with our barouns.
- The fight becomes still fiercer.** & þanne be-gan þe furthe fiȝt : a sherper was þer non ;
þe Sarsyns were to-hewe þar riȝt : boþe þorȝ fleschs & bon. 3096

þe frensche laid¹ on wip swerdis briȝt : & laiden a-doun hur fon,
Alle þat þai þan alacche miȝt : þer na ascapedem non.

¶ Ro[land] laid on wip herte god : in euery syde aboute,
And bapede is swerd in hure blod : þay gunne him sore doute. 3100

The Saracens
fly before
Roland.

Alle þai floȝen out of is way : by wich side so he wente,
for non nas founde þat ilke day : þat miȝte with-stonde is dente.

¶ Gy of Borgoygne to a Sarsyn rod : þat hiȝte Cursegreyn,
& wip ys swerd þat wel bot : a gert him in-to þe brayn. 3104

Guy slays the
Saracens in
every
direction.

Anoþer a slow sone on þe plas : & þan þridde he smyteþ so,
þat helm & heued & al þat þar was : he clef hit euene a-two.
þan ferthe he smot þan on ys yre : & set him with al ys mayn,
þat ys hed fleȝ þerfro þe swyre : ten fet on þe playn. 3108

¶ "Cosyn," sayde duk Rolond : "now þou berst þe wel,
y-blessid be þy gode hond : & eke þy Damesel.

For suppe þe tyme þat hure² steuene : com to þyn ere aȝite,
Hit was no ned, be god of heuene : to bidde þe for to fiȝte." 3112

Wel longe haȝ þys batail dured : & muche murdre of men þer was,
Al þat þay smyteþ wip ax or swerd : sone to depe it gas.

¶ Flo[rippe] þat mayde fair & slegh : at a wyndowe þer sche lay,
To þys barouns sche gradde an hegh : as ich ȝow telle may. 3116

Floriap from
the window
reminds the
French that
the pro-
visions are all
gone.

"Of³ oþyng, lordes, beo ȝe war" : til hymen gan she say,
"Newe vytaille to gete ȝou þar : þe olde buȝ al away."

¶ Olyuer herde þe damesel : & to his felawes he saide a-non :
"Certis þat maide ous redeȝ wel : our profyt for to don." 3120

"Parfay," saide duk Rolond : "y hurde wel what sche saide.
Go we þer-for wip strengþe of hond : we willen make a braide.

Prike we Euene to þe paulyous : ne spare we noȝt for fere,
Vytailles for to gyten ous : if þar buȝ any þere." 3124

þanne þay prykede forþ with pride : þis frensche men echone ;
þe Sarsynȝ nold hem noȝt abide : bot duden hem for to gone.

[leaf 41, back]

Ac þus lordes hem gunne to chace : euene by-fore hire syȝt,
& duste to depe riȝt on þe place : al þat þay atake miȝt. 3128

The French
chace the
Saracens,

þis barons enchacede hur fon so faste : with swerdes igronde briȝt,
Til þay kemen atte laste : to Amyral ys paulyoun riȝt.

as far as the
Emir's tent

¶ By þat wern þe feldes alle : of þe Sarsyns y-vewdid wel,

¹ [hew] on.

² suppe hure [murye].

³ [Byþynkeȝ] Of.

- & were a-flozen grete & smalle : and eke þe Amerel ; 3132
 In-to hure paulyons þay floze for fere : & þe barouns þozte after fare,
 & maugre hem alle þat þar were : haue i-had vytailles thare.
- when they
see 32 pack-
horses Bote þanne be-hulde þus bachelers : by-forn hem & sezen come
Two & þyrty grete somers : y-charged alle & some 3136
- laden with
provisions, Wyþ fair flour y-maked of whete : & wyþ bred and flechs & wyn,
 & opre vytailles smale & grete : þat were bothe god & fyn.
- escorted by
24 Saracens
of Mantrible. xxiiij. Vytaylers : of Mantryble þat Sarsyns were,
 By-fore hymen dryue þay somers : þat þanne come there. 3140
- ¶ Smerthly wan þay sey3 hem come : a3en hem þay toke þe way,
 & by-trapd hem ther al & some : to wete what ladden þay.
 Ac wanne þay it wiste & knewe : what þay in lode hadde
 þe vytailers þay alto-hewe : & þe vytailles with hymen þai ladde.
- Roland bids
Naymes and
Terry to
drive the
convey
within the
castle,
while he and
Guy protect
them; To duk Naymes & to duk Terry : þan Ro[land] spak & badde, 3145
 To dryuen hem by-fore him spedily : & noþyng þay ne adradde.
 þey twyne hit habbeþ vndernome : þe somers to brynge enclos,
 And þei othere to after come : & to kep hem fram hure fos. 3148
 To þe tour-ward þey dude hem drawe : þes lordes þanne with pride,
 & Basyn þay founde þat was a-slawe : on þe way as þay gun ryde.
 þe somers buþ alle forth a-paste : & at þe tour 3eate a-stente.
 þus othere toke þat cors an haste : & to þe tour 3eate þar-wiþ buþ wente.
- Floripas
admits them. Flo[rippe] redely was thar-ate : & let in þuse lordes gente, 3153
 And schutte faste a3en þe gate : & þe dra3brigge vp sche bente.
- They have
provisions
sufficient for
three months. **N**OW habbaþ þus lordes of honour : y-maked a fair iornee,
 And habbeþ wyþ hem þar on þe tour : of vytails gret plente.
 Mete and drynke þay han y-bro3t : ynow for monþes thre,
 þan Amyral þanne ne dradde þay no3t : for al is grete poste.
 þe castel þay þozte þanne holde : boldelich with honour,
 Til Charlis wyþ is barnye bolde : come hymen to socour. 3160
 ¶ To is pauillon y-floze was : þe A[miral] & huld hym there,
 & Til hym he clepede in þat cas : of ys conseyl þay þat were,
 & sayde, "lordes of muche honour : what is 3our best consayle
 Of þes frenschemen on þe tour : þat habbeþ oure vytaille? 3164
- [leaf 43] Bred & wyn þay haue y-now : & flour al-so y-bake,
 & fleschs al-so as y trow : iij monþes hem mury to make.
 Wyate Char[li]s þat ys her ny : by hem nov how it stant,

Wel sone he wolde hem socoury : & þanne were we schent." 3168

¶ "Syre," saide kyng Sortybran : "assemble þow þyn host,
3onder to-ward þe Barbygan : in þys nexte cost.

Sortybran
advisee

þy castel of tre þat hiȝt brysour : þyder þou do him fette.

the employ-
ment of a
wooden
tower.

& let bryng anon him by-fore þe tour : with-oute more lette ; 3172

& pote þer-on · vj hundred men : þat kunne boþe launce & caste,

& othre þat kunne¹ demayny hem : wiþ boȝes & arbelaste,

& let þyn opre Sarasyns : wan þou hast by-gunne so,

beo be-nethe wyþ þyn engyns : & teche what þay kunne do. 3176

& þan let þow þyn hornys blowe : a þousant at o blaste,

& wanne þe frensche men it knowe : þay wollep beo sore agaste.

þe tour schaltou þanne assaille : wyþ schot & cast of gynne,

& sone wyne him with-oute faille : maugre hem al wyþ-ynne, 3180

& alen hem ther with strengþe of hant : & so of hem þe wreke."

¶ þan him answerde kyng Bruyllant : "of folie dost þow speke.

Bruyllant
reminds
them that the
French are
not ordinary
soldiers,
but the pick
of France,

Hit ne buþ," he said, "none Vauasers : þat buþ þer on þe tour,

Ac it buþ noble bachelers : of al france þay bereþ þat flour : 3184

þar is with-inne duk Rolond : on batail þat is so wyȝt,

And Olyuer wyþ þe harde hond : þat Fyrumbras ouercom in fyȝt :

Thar ys Duk Berard of mondisdier : on of þe beste of fraunce,

And Terry hys fader þat is wel fier : a man of gret bobaunce : 3188

In his forest þat hatte ardane : mucche schame ofte he deþ,

He haþ y-beo many a man ys bane : & a-strongled hem with ys teþ.

þar is Oger Deneys þe hardy : & Naymes wiþ þe lokkes hore,

& Richard þe Duk of Normaundy : þat ofte haþ greued ous sore,

& chacede sum tyme þe Amerel : in rome by-fore þe playn, 3193

& herte him so þer on þe chel : þat he was neȝ y-slayn.

And Gy of Borgoyne he is þer : þat slow Corsebrayn,

And oþer þat buþ noȝt nempned her : þat wollep ous stonde agayn.

Of þe doȝtynisse of þilke men : ech man ys a-wondred, 3197

hwych þat ys þe worste of hem : of ous ys worþ an hundred.

the worst of
whom is
worth 100
Saracens.

Ro[land], Charlis suster sone : he ys a noble kniȝt,

Ne douteþ he non er[þ]lich gome : ne be he noȝt so wyȝt : 3200

Mucche he hermeþ þe Ameral : wiþ assautes he hym makeþ.

By oure it is² þai libbeþ al : & maugre our teþ hit takeþ.

¹ kunne [wel].

² is [þat].

- Were þer such an hundred ther : as þay buþ now¹ to fonde,
 By Ma[houn] we ne derst noȝt duelle her : but fle we moste of londe ;
 Hure god doþ euere helpe hem wel : and þat we sore auynde ; 3205
 Ac oure ne helpeþ ous no del : þe se[h]rewes buþ wax al blynde.
 Wel y-fern þay helpe ous noȝt : y trowe þai slepe vchone,
 In al þe anger þat we buþ broȝt : hylp on hem nys none." 3208
- Moreover their God helps them, [leaf 42, back] while theirs are asleep.
- The Emir is enraged,
 ¶ þan wax þe Amyral wroþ & sede : " what ! traitour art þou wod ?
 Go out of my siȝt anon y rede : þow trechour, þow wykked blod !"
 A strong staf tok he vp anon : & smyte hem þanne he poȝte,
 Ac betwene hem wente kyng Sortybron : & a-paysede hem as he moȝte.
 ¶ " Sire," said he, " let ben al þys : as þou louest me ; 3213
 & if þer ys oȝt spoken amys : yt may amehded be :
 & by-þenk how þyn assaut schal gon : & of þyng þat may þe vaile.
 Let blowe þyn hornes, y rede anon : þe tour we wollaþ a-saille : 3216
 þys frenschemen ne andurieþ ous noȝt : beo we y-broȝt þer-to,
 Wel dulfulliche it worþ aboȝt : þe scapes þay han ous do."
 ¶ Sone þer-after þay gunne to blowe : hornes y-mad of bras :
- who recommends an assault on the castle.
- The Saracens assemble ; they cover two square miles.
 þe Sarasyns with-inne a litel þrowe : come as þykke as gras : 3220
 Wel two Mile to loke aboute : a stryde voides þer nas,
 þat of þat ilke heþenene route : al ful was euery plas.
 ¶ þe Amyral made his engyneour : þe engyns to sette & bende,
 þer-with to breke þe grete tour : & is fon with-inne to schende. 3224
 þanne by-gunne þay to grede & houte : þe Sarsynȝ sherp & wikke,
 And to be-sette þe tour aboute : & to schete þykke ;
 And he þat was engyneour : stones to caste grete,
 þat foule verde with þe tour : so harde þay gunne him mete. 3228
- The assault begins ; arrows and stones fly thick.
- The French cast trees and stones back.
 Ac þe frensche þat wiþ-inne ben : defendede hem for þe nones,
 & caste out among hem grete tren : & wonder heuy stōnes ;
 & sloȝe of þe heþemen : twenty sum tyme at ones, 3231
 þat fullen doun ded þer on þe fen : to-broke boþe body & bones.
- The maidens
 ¶ þe dameseles were boþe kynde & gode : & armedem in syker wede,
 And at þe kernels be hymen stode : & holpe hem in þat nede ;
 & cast out stones gret & sade : oppon hem þat wer with-oute, 3235
 & gret slaucht of Sarȝyns made : with þe help of þe lordes stoute.
 þan gan Flo[rippe] þat ientail maide : Gyon hure lef a-scrye ;
- throw stones from the battlements.

¹ now crossed through.

- "Kys me, gode lef," þanne sche sayde : "ones for al þys nuye."
 Al y-armed as þay wer þan : a kuste hure as a myzte : 3239
 "Grant mercy," said sche, "swete lemman : now am y prest to fizte."
 ¶ þan at þe furste þe Assaut by-gan : sterk & strait to be :
 þengyneor cryde to Balan : "Sir Amyral, lyst to me : The Engineer
says if he had
 Let leue al þys balaunsyng : & castyng of speres & stones :
 y-magened y haue a-noþer þyng : to conquere þe tour at ones. 3244 [leaf 43]
 Vyfty þousand of Sarasyns felle : raply to me þow dizte,
 And loke þat þay be y-armed wel : & þat hy be sur & wyzte."
 "Hit schal be don," quap Balaan : "anon her in þy sizte."
 Hastely het he kyng Sortybran : to arayen hem as he spihte. 3248
 ¶ þe Sarazyn dude ys heste son : no lengre nolde he duelle,
 So many Sarsyns ches he anon : & brohte hem þyder snelle. He picks out
the men,
 þe engyneour, yuele most he þeo : so narwe he him by-pohte !
 To þe castel þat was ymad of treo : al þat host he brohte ; 3252
 þat haluendol þan dizte he : wiþ-inne forþ to stonde,
 & þat oper dol wyþ-oute to be : to schute & caste with honde.
 ¶ In þat same tre castel : weren maked stages thre ;
 þe hezeste hiht mangurel : þe middel hiht launcepre, 3256
 þe nybemest was callid hagefray : a quynte þyng to se,
 & was diht for ys owen aray : for þer-on wolde he be.
 þan þe hezest stage of al : fulde he wiþ men of armes,
 To schelde hem by-nyþe wel : fram stones & othere harmes. 3260 The topmost
story he fills
with men ;
 þat wanne þe frensche þyderward : caste stones oper tre,
 þay scholde with hure scheldes hard : kepe þe dent aze ;
 & summe scholde schete to þe frensche rout : with gunnes & bozes
 of brake,
 þat þay ne beo hardy to lokie out : defense azen hem to make. 3264
 And on þat oper stage amidde : ordeynt he gunnes grete,
 And oper engyns y-hidde : wilde fyr to caste & schete.
 þyder þanne he putte y-nowe : & tauhte hem hure labour,
 Wilde fyr to schete & þrowe : azen þe heze tour. 3268 on the second
he places
engines for
casting
wild-fire
 In þe nybemest stage þanne : schup he him selue to hove,
 To ordeyne hure fyr þar-inne : & send hit to hem above.
 To him-ward þanne tok he Sarazyns : an hundred atte leste,
 To come & go to þe engyns : and seruy hem in þe beste : 3272 100 are to
attend to the
engines,

- while the
others shoot. Al þe remanant of þe nombre : he ordeyneþ to schute & caste,
þe grete tour fort encumbre : in þys wyse atte laste.
¶ Now by-gynneþ þay wiþ wreke : glyues to casten wykke,
And wyþ boȝes eke of brake : for to schute þykke. 3276
By-fore þat was mad a sterne schour : ac þe werste was comynge,
þey schute wilde fyr to þe tour : as faste as þay miȝt flynge.
- The fire takes
hold on the
walls. ¶ On þe wal þat fur him hent : wiþ-inne a lytel space,
þat he be-gan þar-wiþ be atend : in an hundred place. 3280
[leaf 48, back] þat fyr þat setlede so on þe walle : ȝerne hit gan to brenne ;
þe peces faste gunne schaly & falle : & þat fyr to renne.
The French
are alarmed, Wanne þis barons loked out : & sawe þe wal brennyng
Alle þay saide *with-out*e dout : "her ys hard dwellynge, 3284
Bote we þe rapere don ous henne : & fien out of þis tour,
Sone ous tyd her for-brenne : wyþ sorȝe & deshounour."
- but Floripas
cheers them. ¶ þan saide þat maide : "leteþ of ȝour pleynt : & nabbe ȝe none drede,
þys fyr wel sone schal be aqueynt : ȝe schulleþ it sen in dede." 3288
She throws
hot camel's
milk, mixed
with vinegar,
on the fire, Melk of þe camele me fette hur son : a damesel broȝt it hot,
& þer-wiþ sche mellede vynegre anon : no lenger sche ne abod ;
and puts it
out. þar þat fyr was setled on þe walle : oueral *þer-with* sche spreynthe,
& wel sone þar-after þay seȝe it alle : how þat fyr a-queynte. 3292
¶ Wan þe Amyral a-perceuede þys : how þat þe fyr ys fare,
Al ys hope was agon y-wys : ys herte was cast in care.
"Certis, syre," quap Sortybraunt : "þys ys þy doȝter dede ;
In þat sche may sche ys vsaunt : to do þe yule to spede." 3296
"Wel know y," quap þe Amyrel : "þat ofte sche doþ me gyle,
Y hope to Mahoun þat ȝute y schel : ones a-ȝyte hur wyle."
Sortybrant
recommen-
ds
an assault at
the breach, ¶ "Sir," quap Sortybrant, "do by my red : & let þyn hornes blewe,¹
& hot þat þyn assaut be noȝt aled : and let by-gynne hit newe. 3300
By-hold þe places on þe toure : war þat fyr haþ hente,
þer ne wantep noȝt enches foure : þat þay ne buþ þorw brente ;
Sone he falleþ me þenkeþ wel : & þer-for go we þer-to."
"As þow wilt," quap þe Amyrel : "anon let it be do." 3304
¶ With þat þe same kyng Sortybran : to þe wallas haþ him nome,
& þanne he hoteþ euery man : to þe assaut aȝeward come.
Sone þas men miȝte y-here : hornes loude blowe ;

¹ blowe *altered* to blewe.

- L. þousand Sarazyns were : y-come wyþ-inne a þrowe, 3308 and
 þat summe to þe engyns wente : & caste stoness sterke ; leads 50,000
 And summe springols stiþe bente : & schute gleyues scherpe ; Saracens to
 And summe þay schuten arwes wykke : as faste as þai miȝt fle. the assault.
- & þe quarels floȝe out pikke : of arbelastes y-mad of tre. 3312
- Grete slabbes of styl & yre : to þe walles þo wern y-slente ;
- þe kernels þat arst wern strong & suyre : þer-with wer broke & schente, The
 & þe brytasques on þe tour an heȝe : dulfully a-doun wer caste. battlements
 are broken.
- Was þay with-inne hit perceuede & seȝe : dedlich þai were agaste.
- ¶ þan saiden hy þus lordes alle : “ her ys noȝt god to abide, 3317 [leaf 44]
 þys tour is now in poynt to falle : wyþ-inne a litel tide.”
- Floriþe þat mayde fair and hende : to þys barouns sede :
- “ Ne drede ȝe noȝt, myn leue frende : ȝe ne schulleþ haue no nede ; Floriþas
 My fader let make þis ilke tour : strong ynow to kepe ; 3321 recommends
 of stones.
- To putte þar-inne hys tresour : þat he wold leyn to hepe.
- On þys tour ys more gold : y wot riȝt wel to wisse,
- þan half þe kynges han in wold : þat buþ in al heþenisse. 3324
- þoȝw þys asaut wolde y-laste : þys forty dawes ryȝt,
- her with-inne ys gold y-maced faste : to cast out day & nyȝt ;
- And supþe ȝe now þat soþe y-knoweþ : on defaute ȝe han of¹ stoness,
- Takeþ þer-of ynowe and þroweþ : & to-brekeþ hem body & bones.”
- ¶ “ ȝea, faire þe falle, my wete wyȝt ” : to hure Ro[land] saide. 3329
- Gyoun wente to hure ful ryȝt : & swetly kuste þat maide : -
- þanne sche lad þaym by þe hond : þar þat tresour lay,
- & þanne saide duk Rolond : “ her ys a ryche aray.” 3332
- þay toke op slabbes grete & þykke : of þe gold þat þar lys,
- And caste among þe Sarsyns wykke : ne sparede þay noȝt þat prys ;
- Many was þe Sarazyn prout : þat þar-with was affulled, 3335
 þe² opere drowen hem ferþer out : for drede þat þay nere kulled.
- ¶ Wanne þe Sarasynȝ had aperceued ariȝt : þat gold þat briȝte schon,
- To gadrie þat gold þay dude hure miȝt : & leued þe assaut anon :
- On þe gadryngge þat þay made : þan þay by-gunne to fiȝte
- And ȝyue eche oper strokes sade : wyþ axes & swerdes briȝte. 3340
- Ech on oper gan to hewen : & euerech other afulde,
- Mo þan a þousent of þe schrewen : wel sone þer were y-kulde.
- ! [in þe] defaute of. ² [&] þe.

There is
 enough, she
 says, to last
 them for 40
 days.

They take
 great bars of
 gold and cast
 them
 amongst the
 Saracens,

who give up
 the assault,
 and begin to
 fight over it.

Balan, in
alarm for his
gold,

¶ Wan þe Amyral þat y-seȝ : on ys herte him gan to greue ;
To ys barons he cryede an heȝ : & het hem þe assaut be-leue : 3344

“And ellis schal her al my gold : & my tresour beo for-lore,
þat y haue gadred in-to þat hold : long tyme her by-fore.”

causes his
men to retire.

þan wende þe¹ grete to wiþ þat : among þe communes alle,
And made hem cessen of hure debat : and fro þe assege falle. 3348
þe sunne by þat was neȝ a-doun : þe Assege þanne þay y-laſte.
þe Amerel goþ to ys pauylloun : al murghe was him by-raſte.

The French
make merry.
[leaf 44, back]

NOW ys þe Amyral aȝen y-wend : wyþ ys baronye ;
With sorwe was is herte be-trend : wiþ care & eke anuye.
And þe barons of honour : murye gunne hem make, 3353
And ete & dronke on þe tour : of þe vytailles þay han y-take ;
For of vitailles þai hadden þo plantee : & burdes briȝte & bolde,
To ete & drynke & murie bee : & to layky hem wan þay wolde.

Roland from
a window
sees the Emir
at supper,

¶ At a wyndowe as² Ro[land] lay : lynynge & lokede out, 3357
þan Ameral atte is soper he of-say : sittynge vnder shrout.

Wanne he haþ aperceuede apertely : þan Amerel & his aray,
To hem he clepede ys company : & þus he gan to say : 3360

“Lordes, be-holdeþ þan Amerel : ȝounder out on þe grene,
At is soper ys he me semeþ wel : it doþ myn herte tene.

and proposes
an assault.

Hit were me þynkþ a fair viage : to letten him of his *purpos*.”
þan saide þe other barnage : “fonde we to greue our fos.” 3364

They arm,
and start.

¶ Sone were þys noble barouns : y-armed in sykere wedis,
& as fers as any lyouns : þay sterte vp-on hure stedis.
þe damesels duden vp þe ȝeate : & þe draȝtbrigge lete adoun,
And þay fareþ out þer-ate : stoutelich ech baroun. 3368

Balan sees
them,
and calls for
help.

Balan hymen aperceyueþ anan : as þai come on a mede ;
Of þe sizte agrise he gan : and wax neȝ wod for drede.
Aspayllard of nubbye clepede he þan : & þus til him he sede :
“Do Cosyn anon þyn Armys aan : & aray þe in syker wede. 3372
Lo whar þay comeþ stout & bold : þe frensche men of þe tour ;
þay þenkeþ make our soper cold : þai casteþ hem to þat labour.”
“Al redy, sire,” Aspayllard sede : and armede hym þanne anon,
And sone haþ he take ys stede : & smertly he was oppon : 3376
Ys scheld he takeþ in þat nede : launce ne kepede he non,

¹ þei (?).

² [panne] as.

A dart takþ he in his hond for drede : & forþ he ys a-gon.

¶ Roland was þe furste of alle : þat rod afforeward,
þe Sarsyn þohte him for to quelle : & launceþ til him þe dart ; 3380

Aspayllard
charges
Roland.

þe dart was cast with such a mod : þat þorw ys scheld it schet,
Ac ys haberke was fyni & god : & ellis he had be ded.

Ro[land] brak þe schaft away : & smertliche to hym arod,
And þohte him smyte on þe hed an hey : ac þe dent a glod ; 3384

Roland aims
a blow at
him,

On ys stede ful þe dent : by-side þe for arsoun,
þorw þe necke þat sward him went : & þe Sarsyn ful adoun.

which
wounds his
horse.

¶ þe Sarsyn was dohty ynow : sone he vp aros,
& hasteliche ys sward adrow : and aȝe til him a gos. 3388

To han i-broched Ro[land] þorw : a-caste þo his porpos,
Ac Ro[land] þanne til hym a-bowȝ : & fuld him on is armes clos.

Roland seizes
him,

Wan he had him on is armes lauȝt : wiþ-oute more a-do
Vp a draweþ at o drauȝt : & set him by-for him þo.

3392 sets him
before him,

¶ Roland tornd hym þanne aȝeyn : & ys felawe dude al-so,
Toward þe tour al on þe pleyn : as harde as þe hors may go.

[leaf 45]
and rides
back to the
castle.

Wan þe Amyral þys of-seȝ : his herte was cast in care,
To is baronage he criede an heȝ : & prayede hymen after fare : 3396

“If my neuewe goþ þus a-way : by Mahoun ȝe buþ to blame ;
Helpeþ þer-for now wat ȝe may : þat y ne take no schame.”

Op a-sterde þe route anon : & hure stedes þai be-strydeþ,
And as faste as þe hors may gon : after hem þay rydeþ. 3400

The Saracens
pursue them ;

¶ Ac wan þe frensche baronage : y-saw hem after haste,
þey turnde to heman wiþ sturne vysage : & adrowe hure swardes they turn
faste :

& with hure fon þan þay fouȝte : & ȝeue hem strokes sare.

þilke companye þo ful dere aboȝte : þat þay come þare ; 3404

Mo þan .v. hundred þar þay sloȝe : of þat foule maynee,
& þe remanant hem wiþ-droȝe : & for drede tornde aȝee.

and slay more
than 500,
and put the
rest to flight.

þus barons toke þan way ful riȝt : aȝenward to þe tour ;
Ate ȝeate fond hy þat burde briȝt : þat let hem in wyþ honour : 3408

þe ȝeate þanne þay made faste : þe draȝtbrigge vp droȝ sche.

þe Sarazyns þay habbeþ sore agaste : & þay buþ in sauete.

¹ **N**ow buþ þus barouns of honour y-come azen in-to þe tour ;
 Flo[rippe] þay gunne calle, 3412
 To hure þay by-toke Aspayllarde, And prayede hure kep him
 in syker warde For þyng þat miȝt be-falle.
 To þe soper þan wente þay alle þen, þe lordes, & eke þe ientail wymen,
 And made hem murie þat niȝt. 3416
 A-morwe wanne þe sonne hure schon, To-gadre þay assemblede hem
 euerechon, Lordes and burdes² briȝt.
 ¶ þanne spak Richard of Normaundy To þe barons þat stode hym by :
 "Herkenyaþ for ȝour honour ; 3420
 Wel ȝe wyteþ we buþ her enclos, Hard by-seged wyþ our foes,
 & wyth strengþe & gret vygour."³
 of o þyng lordes⁴ beo ous sure, Her mowe we noȝt longe dure,
 Bot ous come socour. 3424
 Sende we þer-for to þe Emperer, þat he come with his power
 & delyuery ous of þe tour."
 ¶ Naymes ansuerede in his avys : "Hit nere bote folye, be seynt Dynys,
 A Messager til him to schape, 3428
 For al þe contre wyþ-uten lys So ful by-gon wyþ enymys,
 þat non ne schold hem scape.
 [leaf 45, back] þer nys non her ich vndertake, þat þilke Message ne wil for-sake
 þat of ys lyf ys fayne, 3432
 & ho-so nolde a dude folye ; For neuere we ne scholde him sen wiþ ye
 Til ous come azayne."
 ¶ Til hymen þanne þat mayde sede : "Of ȝour enymys haue ȝe no drede,
 þys tour ys strong & god ; 3436
 And ȝe han her boþ day & nyȝt, Fiftene damesels fayr & briȝt,
 And comen of kynges blod ;
 Euerech of ȝow chuse his owe, And lyue we our lyf on murȝe aþrowe,
 Wyle we buþ her enclos." 3440
 þanne saide Roland to þat fry : "Damesele, þow spekest ful cortesly,
 Maugree habbe alle our fos !"

Aspayllard is
given in
charge to
Floripas.

Richard
advises to
send to
Charles,
but Naymes
thinks it is
impossible.

Floripas
recommends
them to enjoy
themselves,

and Roland
agrees with
her.

¹ In the MS. the lines are arranged thus :

Now buþ þus barouns of honour	} Flo[rippe] þay gunne calle.
Y-come azen in-to þe tour	
To hure þay by-toke Aspayllarde	
And prayede hure kep him in syker warde	} For þyng þat miȝt be-falle.

² [among þys] burdes. ³ & wyth[-uten] any socour. ⁴ [Ac] of o þyng.

- ¶ Roland of hure gan asky þan, Of wat kynde was comen þat ilke man
þat on hure warde was, 3444
Wham þay toke þe niȝt before & wat done (?) man þat a wore,
To telle hym þat cas.
- ¶ "Sire," quap sche, "y wil þe telle : Neȝ sibbe is he to þe Amyrelle, Floripas proposes to put Aspaylard to death,
Ys soster sone he ys ; 3448
ȝif ȝe my fader willeþ greue ariȝt, Al to-heweþ hym on ys siȝt,
& þan lest he ys blys."
- ¶ "Nay, noȝt so" : þan saide Nymoun, "So ne schal it noȝt be don, but Naymes says to keep him as a hostage,
no profyt to ous it nere : 3452
He schal be kept, by swete iesous, For to a-quytte on of ous,
If he wer take there."
- ¶ þanne sayde þe¹ duk Terry : "To ligge þus her ys gret anuy,
& þe-seged as we bene ; 3456
Sende we þer-for, ich ȝow rede, To Charlis ase Rychard sede,
To help ous out of þis tene."
- ¶ þanne sayde Ogier þe Deneys : "Hit nys bote truifle þat þou seys,
So god me mote auauunce, 3460
For among ous alle her ys non, þat in þat message now darste gon
for al þat gold of fraunce."
- ¶ "ȝus," quap Roland, "y wil it do, If ȝe rewardieþ it shal be so, Roland is willing to venture on message to Charles.
& take my way or none. 3464
Y nel spare for no fere þat y ne schal þat erant bere
& make hym come sone."
- ¶ þan spak Naymes and sayde, "nay, Certis, syre, þov noȝt : ne may [leaf 46]
Gon out of oure ferede : 3468
And þe Sarazynȝ wern² y-ware þat þov were fro henne afare
þey wolde ous noȝt adrede."
- ¶ þanne saide þe Scot Gwylmer : "y wolde fayn, by seynt Rycheer, Gwylmer says he will go,
Wende on þat vyage." 3472
"Nay," quap Berard, "verement, But leteþ me fare be ȝour assent, and then Berard.
& do þat ylke message."
- ¶ þanne hymen bad þe duk Gyoun þat he moste wende to Charloun
And beo hure messagere. 3476
Flo[rippe] aunswerede þar-to anon, "nay : leteþ anoþer þat message don, Floripas refuses to let Guy go
¹ þe [olde]. ² wern [þar-of].

For he schal leue here."

Richard says
he will go
himself,
as he is of
little use,

¶ And þan spak Richard of Normandie, & sayde þus to þe compaigne :

"Sirs, 3e knoweþ wel 3480

þat y am sumdel stryken on age, And haue a sone of my parage
þat is boþe wys & fal :

þoȝ þe Sarazynȝ smyte of myn hed, He ys myn ayr after my ded

To broke myn heritage. 3484

& þerfor yf 3e assentiap to, At al perils wil y go

To Charlis in 3our message.

and, besides,
Charles

¶ þer ys al-so anoþer thyng War-for y scholde do þis doying

By-fore a-nother man : 3488

had promised þe furste tyme þat Charlȝs kyng Made me to hymward beo leuyng,

Charlȝs be-het me þan,

to rescue him
if he should
be taken.

þat if me happede þow any cas þat y wer prisoned in any plas,

wyle ich wyþ him were, 3492

A sholde delyuery me out of prisoun Wyþ strengþe of hand ouþer
raunsoun,

Coste hit noȝt so dere.

And therfor am y bold ynow, By þis two skyles þat y say 3ow,

To faren on 3oure message : 3496

For þoȝ y be taken he schel me 3elde, And eke my sone ys neȝ of Elde

To fonge myn herytage."

They all
agree,

¶ Of Richardis skyles þay toke reward, & alle þanne assentede at

nessche & hard, þat Richard scholde wende, 3500

Supþe he hadde desyr þer-to ; No man betere miȝte it do,

for he was triwe & hende.

To him þanne saide Duk Roland : " Supþen þow wilt þus take an hand,

þyn op þow schalt ous¹ make, 3504

þat þou ne schalt spare nyȝt ne day Til þow ha don þy iornay,

Bot þow be ded or take."

[leaf 46, bk]

¶ Richard hit graunteþ with-oute let, And sone þe relyques wern y-fet,

& Ri[chard] swer his op.² 3508

and consult
how he is to
get away
unseen.

þan þay be-speken how he myȝt Sleȝlych a-scape out of þe syȝt,

þat þe Sarsyns ne dud him loþ.³

¶ Richard hym-self sayde þan : " þe beste red ys þat y can,

þat we be on armes diȝte, 3512

¹ schalt[her]

² [& he swor at hure deys].

³ [of hure enmys].

& to-morze on þe spryng¹ of þe day Euene to þe pauyllouns take þe way

As we wolde fizte,

& wanne we comeþ among hem þare, 3ee scholleþ 3eue hem strokes sare,

& sodeynlych falle hem on. 3516

þe wyle þay entendiþ to 3owward Y schal take out to anoper pard

& prykie fro hem² anon :

And þe wile 3e fizteþ with þat host y schal ben a-passed al þat cost,

& al out of hure sizte ; 3529

& þan schal y holde my iornee, þe wayes y knowe of þe contra,

boþe be day and nizte.

And so þat god me graunty grace, þe brigge of Mantrible saf to pace,

Wher-of ys most my drede,³ 3524

þan schulle 3e be wel certayn þat y schel brynge 3ov Charlemayn,

To socurry 3ow on þys nede."

¶ For pyte þan wepte 3ong & olde, þe wyle þat Ric[hard] ya tale tolde,

of hem þay wern wel fayne. 3528

To ihesu crist þay gunne to praye Scholde sped hym wel on his iornaye,

An send him saf a3ayne.

þan Ri[chard] araid hem al þat day, On þe morzenyng to wende is way,

Wanne þe day hym sprunge.⁴ 3532

¶ Duk Roland & Erld Olyuer, þilke nizt kepte þe wacche þer

Til þe larke sunge.⁴

By þat wern þay alle y-dyzt, And wel araid in armis bryzt,

To horce þan wente þay bolde. 3536

Bot wan þay wiste how it stod, Clene þanne þay turnde hure mod,

hure purpos þay myzt nozt holde.

For þe Amyral was y-come with-oute And had be-set þe brigge aboute

With strengþe and with gynne ; 3540

And had ordeynt him þer to lyn Wiþ .xxx^u. þousant of Sarazyn

To holde hymen þo with-inne.

¶ Wan þay knewe al þat cas, Sory ynow hure euerech was,

þan nyste þay wat do more ; 3544

Bote stablede hure stedes vp a3eyn, And in-to þe paleys þan tornde ageyn

& kepte hem-selue þore.

¹ & [erlich in] þe spryng[gyng].

² [hwyh ys wel muche to drede].

³ [a-way fram hymen].

⁴—⁴ [sprunge] & [songe].

Richard suggests that the others should make an attack on the Saracens,

and mean-while he will steal off in the other direction.

In the morning they prepare to sally out,

but And the bridge beset with 30,000 Saracens.

[leaf 40]

þanne dude þus barouns of honour Holde hem so wyþ-inne þe tour,
Y-armed as þai were. 3548

They are kept
in the tower
8 weeks.

Viiij. wykes boþe nyȝt & day þat host by-fore þe ȝeate lay,
& kept hem with-inne þere.

One day the
Emir goes
hawking,

¶ þan fel þar-after as it be scholde, Oppon a fair day þat þe A[myral]
wolde To þe ryuer an haukyng fare ; 3552

He takeþ wiþ him his grete barouns, þat host he lefte ate pauyllouns
þe assege to kepe thare.

He made him murie al þilke day, For videntyne he fond ynow & play
On ryuer and on lake. 3556

To ys host a droȝ hym aȝen þe nyȝt, Glad in herte, & murye, and lyȝt,
for þe game he haþ y-take.

so that no
watch is set.

þat nyȝt as it ful by cas, þe brigge-warde for-ȝete was,
þorw¹ murȝþe of ys play. 3560

The French
seeing this,

þys barons were ful sone i-dȝt, & out ate ȝeate þey rydeþ ryȝt,
In þe sprynggyng of þe day ;

By þat þe Amyrel was aryse, And cryede faste to alle hyse,
þat þay scholde hem diȝte, 3564

& let hem spede for his honour, & go to þe briggewarde of þe tour
þat was for-ȝyte þat niȝte.

¶ Sone þer-after with-inne a þrowe, þe Sarazyns by-gunne hornes
blowe, & dude on hur armes faste ; 3568

attack the
Saracens
who are
unprepared,

Ac er þay wern oȝt helf y-dȝt, þus barons come oppon hem ryȝt,
& hymen ascryede an haste.

On hymen þay gunne to falle anon, And delte strokes ful god won,
Wyþ swerdes sherpe ygronde. 3572

and kill
300.

Wel iij. hundred þay habbeþ a-slawe, & y-broȝt of lyues dawe
of sarsyns wyþ-inne a stonde.

¶ Sone þar come aȝen hem route xxx. þousant of Sarasyns proute,
Araid þo for to fiȝte. 3576

þe frensche þanne hem droȝe apart, And made a bekenynge to Richard,
To take ys way forþ riȝte.

[leaf 47, bk.]
Richard
seizes the
opportunity
and starts.

¶ Ri[chard] tok leue & rod a-way. Now god him helpe þat best may !
þay by-tok him god almyȝte. 3580

& sone þer-after þay gunne with-draȝe, Lytel & lytel as þay mawe

¹ [þorȝ].

Of Rychard haue a sizte.

þe Sarzynes comeþ after repe¹, Al so harde as þay mowe lepe,
To alen hem þey wolde be fayn. 3584

Ac a litel by-fore þe castel zeate, Wel neþ þe brigge þat lay þer-ate,
þys lordes tornde azayn ;

& þan þay by-gunne azen hem fizte, With sherpe swerdes y-bornsched
brizte, & mad hem many a wonde, 3588

& layde hem an . boþe bak & syde, & with strengþe of strokes þat
wer ourride þay slowe hem down to gronde.

þar hadde þe Sarazyns yule grace, For of dede men lay fuld þe place,
& þopre² by-gunne to fle. 3592

þan were þe zeates y-opened wyde, þe fransche men hadde þe betre syde, The French
re-enter the
castle and
shut the gate,
& tornd hem to þe tour aze.

þe zeates schutte Duk Naymoun, & Ogier let þe brigge adoun ;
& wan al was faste y-sperde, 3596

An heþ þan wente þus barouns stout, And at þe wyndowe lokod out
By Richard how it ferde. and watch
Richard from
the castle.

¶ þan sezen alle þys barouns þat he was passed þe pauyllons,
By a fer contraye. 3600

þerne þan prayed hy to god Al on, þat day to kepe him fram ys fon
& spede hym in is waye.

¶ Wan Ri[chard] was so fer a-past, þan was he nobyng agast
Of þat host be-hynde, 3604

Ac sone þer-after, as y schal rede, Sykerly wende he to han be dede,
nad he non oþer mynde.

¶ Richard prykede forþ an haste, Ase harde as he may þraste,
nowar he ne abideþ ; 3608 He rides as
fast as he
can,

Bot euere he prykeþ on ys way, Ne spareþ he mounteyne ne valay,
Bot prykyng forþ³ he rydeþ.

¶ As he was prykyng ouer an hul A wykked cas þer him byful,
ys sted wax al ateynte : 3612 but his horse
breaks down.

Wan þe duk y-saw þat cas, A wrong his⁴ handes & said, "alas !"
& to god he made is pleynte.

"Ihesu lord," þan saide he, "þat syttest on þy maieste, [leaf 46r]
And seest boþe fer & hende ; 3616

¹ rape altered to repe. ² & oþre. ³ Bot [rennyng so]. ⁴ MS. is his.

FERUMBRAS.

1

Saue me ȝif þy wille be, þat no Sarazyn haue poste
þys day me to schende.

As wys as y noþyng her ne craue, Bote fayne y wolde my felawe saue,
After our commun deuys. 3620

As y am to hem treuþe yplizt Char[les] to brynge pider rizt,
To distruye þyn enymys."

Wyþ ys rizt hond a blessid him þan, And prykeþ ys stede & forþ he
nam Agayn þe hulle an heȝe. 3624

By this time
the sun is
shining, By þat þe Sonne hure briȝte schon, & Richard was noȝt so ferred ys fon,
pat hy hym þo ne seȝe.

and Bruyl-
lant spies
him. ¶ Bruyllant, þe kyng of mountmyrre, Toward þe montaynes lokede he,
& aparceuede hym sone þas. 3628

To kyng Claryoun þat stod him by, hwyȝ was þe Amerel ys cosyn ny,
þanne he tolde þat cas :

"Sire," said he, "be seynt Mahoun, ȝonder out rydeþ a bold baroun ;
To Char[les] he ys y-sent 3632

by þys maufesours of þe tour hem to fette to hure socour,
þar for ys he went."

¶ Wanne þe kyng hym vnderstod, His herte wax angry & ful of mod,
& was ful heghe y-pyzt : 3636

Claryon arms
himself, His armes he askede anon with cry, & hy were broȝt wel hastely,
& sone þan was he dyzt :

& þan him was broȝt ys gode stede, þe beste fole þan man miȝt fede,
& sone he him be-strod ; 3640

On hym miȝt he on somers day Prikea an hundred myle of way,
Rennyng euery fot.

and pursues
Richard Ys scheld þan heng he aboute ys swyre, And forþ he prykede with
gret yre After duk Rychard. 3644

with 20,000
Saracens. After hym folwede & schoke bost xxxⁱⁱ þowsant on an host,
y-Armed with scherp & hard.

God of heuene Rychard kepe ! After him prykeþ al þe hepe,
To slen him þay han hem tyzt. 3648

Ac þe kyng hem passede with-inne a wyle, Forn hem þe mountance
of two myle, So heȝe is herte was piȝt.

Richard ¶ Ri[chard] forthward prikede vaste Al the wyle þat hors miȝt laste,
Ne spareþ he him no þyng. 3652

- ¶ Ac a torndem *with-inne* a tyde, And þanne y-saw he. war com ride [leaf 48, bk] sees the Saracens pursuing him,
 Claryoun þe sturne kyng,
 & fer after hym þe grete route þat heledede þe contre al aboute,
 So huge was þat meygny. 3656
- Ac þe. A[merel] cosyn, Clarioun þe kyng, Comeþ by-fore faste brochyng, Clarion in front,
 On ys stede of Araby.
 Of quente entaille was is stede, Al y-fraclad wyþ whit & rede, on a piebald steed,
 ys tayl was blak so cole; 3660
 ne saw he neuere be-fore þat day Hert ne hare so renne a-way, as speedy as a deer.
 So dude þat iantail fole.
 þe sadel þat þo was him oppon With gold was fret & pretious ston, His accoutrements are adorned with gold.
 & þe harneys was of golde. 3664
- Brydel & paytrel & al þe gere Wiþ fyn gold y-harneyssed were,
 Purtreyd riȝt ase he wolde.
 ¶ þe Sarasyn þat opon him set After Richard prikede ket,
 Sittyng on þat stede; 3668
 þat hors was swyft & ran awaye, and faste gan neye and loude braye,
 Al-gate ase a ȝede :
 And noȝt for þat a goþ so fast þat Richard ys a-take ate last,
 & þe kyng him gan ascrye, 3672
 And saide—"abid & torn to me, Ferþer-more schalt þou noȝt fle, He calls on Richard to turn.
 her riȝt schalt þow dye.
 What wendest þou, false feloun, Bere þy message to Charloun,
 Socour of hym to hane? 3676
 y make auow to seynt Mahoun, þou bryngest neuer eft til him resoun,
 Me self schal be þy bane."
- ¶ Wan Richard þe Sarazyn vnderstod, þow-out ys body sturedede ys blod, Richard pretends to be afraid of him.
 & to him gan he saye : 3680
 "y praye þe, Sire, chaunge thy mod, y ne dude þe neuere herm ne god,
 let me noȝt of my waye.
 Lef now, syre, as þow art free, And let me han non harm of þe,
 & eft it schel be ȝolde." 3684
 "By Mahoun," saide þe kyng aȝee, "y nolde þe lete lyues bee
 for a þousend pound of golde."
 A rideþ to Richard wyþ a spere, & þynkeþ him þorȝ þat body bere,
 & on þe scheld hym smot; 3688

Clarion
cuts through
his shield,

þorȝ-out ys scheld & is habreioun, Plates, & iakke & ioupoun,
þorȝ-out al it ȝot.

[leaf 69]
grazing his
side.

By-Twene ys scherte & is syde Passeȝ þe dent of þat sper oun-ryde,
Of ys skyn a litel hit nam. 3692

Richard gan grope to þat gerse, And wan he felede hit was no werse,
god he þankede þan.

¶ Ac wan þe duk y-seȝ ys blod, Egre he wax & heȝ of mod,
& til þe kyng a wond, 3696

Richard
smites
Clarion on
the helmet.

& smot hym on þe helm above, & þoȝt is hed han to-clove
Wyȝ ys gode brond ;

Ac þe helm was so hard y-wroȝt, þat he miȝt entamy him noȝt,
Wyȝ no dynt of swerde. 3700

Ac wan Ric[h]ard þat vnderstent, Sone aȝaf hym anoȝer dent,
And on þe nekke him gurde,

He severs his
head from his
shoulders,

And smot hem þan with such an yre, þat helm & heued wyȝ al þe atyre
In-to þe feld it fleȝ. 3704

dismounts,
and takes his
horse, letting
his own go.

þat body a putte a-doun god speȝe, & lefte his hors and tok þat stede,
& lepeȝ on him an heȝ.

¶ Now ne dar he noȝyng drede Of þat hyndere falurede,
þat comeȝ after gon ; 3708

for conquered he haueȝ a stede, Ne saw he neuere no such at nede,
To saue him fram ys fon.

þan lokede he on hym þat was hys, For þat stede ful wo hym ys,
and saide þanne on is speche : 3712

“ now Hauē gode . my gode morel, On many a stour þou hast seruid
me wel, Crist ich þe by-teche !

And god ȝut, if þy wille beo, Send me grace þat y mote þe seo,
On crysten mannes welde.” 3716

With þat he prykeȝ forȝ on ys way, & þat host compȝ after with gret
effray, To encombry hem on þe felde.

The Saracens
find the body
of their
leader.

¶ Ac as þes Sarsyns prykede faste þay founde hure lord þar ate laste ;
His hed lay on a forwe, 3720

ys body was tornd ouer-thwart þe way, Fro þat heued ten vet fram hyt
lay ; þan made þay muche sorwe.

They lament
over him.

Wan þay seȝen hym so by-stad Alle þay waxen sore of-drad,
An[d] gunne him sore be-mene. 3724

Ferrer ne draste pay noȝt for fere, Bote a-lizte & wronge hure handes þere,
And saide, "alas !" for tene.

"Alas," þay sayde, "why wolde he so Hym-self allone þus fonde ys fo,
With-oute ous þat with hym were?"

Richardis stede þanne þay saye Renningge a-streyey þar on þe waye, They try to catch Richard's steed,
To take him þan þoȝte þay þere.

¶ þan þay be-trappede hym alle aboute, Ac for non hem with-oute doute [leaf 49, back]
ne wil he noȝt be cauȝte : 3732

Wan any of hem þat hors cam neȝ, A caste be-hynde & arered an heȝ,
And fulde al þat a rauȝte.

Fyfty stedes a-doun a fulde, & ten þer-of to depe a kulde, but he kills ten of their steeds, and escapes.
On þat same out-rage. 3736

þe stede þan tornde him as he cam To þe tour of Egrymoygne þan
way a nam, Maugre hure vysage.

¶ Wanne a cam þe paulyons neȝ, þe Amyrel wel sone him of-seȝ, Balan seeing him, thinks Richard has been killed.
& sayde þan on his sawe, 3740

& swer til hem þat stode him by, þat Clarioun his cosyn sykerly
þe messenger had a-slawe :

"Wel certeyn am y þar-of," he sede, "Lo ! whar ȝond comeȝ ys stede ;
Let take hym ich ȝow praye." 3744

þanne Sarsyns ruȝne aboute him faste, Ac wan þay seȝe how he gan¹
caste, pay let hym gon ys waye ;

þorw-out þat host þe stede him ran Al riȝt to þe tour þat he com fram, The horse comes to the gate of the castle.
& at þe ȝeate a stente. 3748

þe lordes þat on þe toure were Wan þay seȝe hym þay hadden fere,
& sone a-doun þay wente :

þe brigge² was sone y-lete adoun, þe ȝate openede duk Neymoun, Naymes lets him in.
Ogier tok in þe stede. 3752

& wan þay had mad fast aboute & y-stablyd þe stede, þan al þe route
Sore þay gunne hem drede,

For ech of hem wende on is part þe Sarsyns had sleyn duk Richart. The French fear that Richard has been slain.
þey swere by Peter & paule : 3756

þat by hys stede þay knewe þat cas, Warfor þay prayde god kyng of gras
haue mercy of is saule.

¶ Wan þat Flo[rippe] y-saw hem wepe, Gy, hure lemman, & al þe hepe,

¹ gan [to] ; *the to inserted, but crossed through.* ² þe [ȝeate draȝt] brigge.

- In herte hur gan to greue. 3760
 of wepyng ne miȝt sche abstene hur' noȝt, Til euerech fayre sche þan
 by-soȝt, þat nycete for to leue :
- Floripas tries "Lordes," sche saide, "leueþ al þys, Ther is non of ȝow þat wot to
 to cheer them. wys. Wather he ys quyke or ded.¹ 3764
 þer-for leteþ al ȝour mornynge For ȝe hyre betere tydyng,
 & þer-to y leye myn hed."²
- ¶ þus Floripe, þat mayde of gret honour, Confortede þe barouns on þe tour
 With hure wordes gode : 3768
- [leaf 50] Hure wordes lekedem euerechon, & fro þanne þay buþ an-heȝ agon
 & to a wyndowe þan þay ȝeode ;
- From a window they see the Saracens ¶ As þay were thar & loked out, þay sawe þanne come at o rout
 þe Sarsyns faste ride, 3772
 þat hadde y-chaced Richard doun, Wan he aslow kyng Claryoun,
 þat was so ful of pryde.
- bearing the body of Clarion þat body þay broȝte among hem þo, & Sarȝyns wente to & fro,
 And made a wonder deel. 3776
- to Balan's tent. þat body forþ þai bryngeþ so, & euene³ to þe pauyllouns þay gunne go,
 & meteþ with þ^e Amyrel.
- ¶ "What how now," saide he þan, "Haþ Clarioun my cosyn aslawe
 þ^e man ? þe messenger ys he ded ?" 3780
- "Nay," quap on, "þe deuel him drawe, For he haþ my lord a-slawe,
 lo, her ys body and hed !"
- Wan þe Amyral hym ded y-seȝ, Sorwe ȝede ys herte neȝ,
 & angry ynow he was : 3784
- The Emir swoole four times, Four sithes he ful a-doun y-sowe, & opre dules made ynowe,
 & ofte cryede, "Alas !"
- "Alas," said he, "my cosyn dere, Al my confort for-soþ þow were,
 Wo ys me for þy sake ! 3788
- For þow were euere god & kende, Y praye to Mahoun, as he ys hende,
 þat he þy saule take."
- þe Sarȝyns þat þanne aboute hym were A gret dul þay made there,
 For þat kyngis deþ. 3792

¹ Wather he ys ded [or quyke].² [Tellen more sykerke]. (About 20 other lines in this page have been rewritten.)³ MS. eueuene.

þan stode þus barouns of honour, & lokede þyderward out of þe tour,
 & al þys hyreþ & seeþ.

¶ Rolond askede þan ful riȝt, Of þat burde fair & briȝt, and Rolond
asks Florippe
 Yf sche couþe hym telle, 3796

Whar-for was mad þat gret mornynȝ Amonges þe Sarazȝyns olde & ȝyng, what it
means,
 As hy þar herden alle.

¶ Florippe ansuerede & sayde, “ȝys, Y can ȝow sayn wel why it ys, She tells him.
 war-for y am wel fawe : 3800

Certys al ys for Clarioun kyng, þat was my fadres owe derlyng,
 þat Rychard haueþ a-slawe.

He was a noble werreour, Of al hepenisse was he flour,
 Me nyste nowar ys pere. 3804

Certis now waxeþ ȝour honour, He was my fadres beste socour,
 & ys cosyn dere.

¶ Whar-for now buþ alle glad, Ri[chard] ys lyues, buþ noȝt a-drad, [leaf 50, back]
 And haþ y-don þys dede ; 3808

Conquerid haþ he of kyng Claryoun, An hors þat is worþ many a toun,
 No-war nys such a stede.”

Wanne sche haueþ hure tale y-tolde, þan gunne þaye alle waxe bolde,
 þat wern þo on þe tour. 3812

Olyuer sayde to þe company : “ Now mowe we beo þ^e more hardy
 To byden her socour.”

And alle þan þankede god almyȝt, þat Rychard was þat day so wyȝt, They all
thank God.
 þat doȝty kyng to slee, 3816

And prayede god, þe heȝe iustys, Scholde scheld him fram ys enymys,
 & send hym saf Aȝee.

Rychard hym prykeþ on ys way, Ne spareþ he hulle ne valay,
 Bot al-way ryȝd prikyng. 3820
 Conquered had he such a stede, þat of ys trauayl ne doþ he
 drede How fer a-go rennyng.

þe Ameral þanne ful angry was, He clepede til hym Malyngryas, Balan orders
Malyngryas,
his mes-
senger, to go
 þat was ys Messenger, 3824

And saide to hym, “ beo wys & snel, And tak þe dromodarye þat goþ wel,
 & grayþe þe on þy ger ;

To Mantrible anon most þou fare, Quikly loke þat þou be þare, at once to
Mantrible,
 As swyþe as he may gon. 3828

pyn spores loke þat þou ne spare, þe dromedary ys swifter þan þe hare,
He bryngeþ þe þar anon.

and caution
Agolafre, the
keeper of the
bridge,

& go to Agolafre, þe Briggeward, And aske of hym on my part,
Why he dude so ille, 3832

To lete passye þe Messagers þat holdeþ my tour & my doȝtre fers,
Al agayn my wille.

If y may lyue, by myn heued, Hym schel beo betre han y-leued,
for þat was folye gret. 3836

Tel hym al-so al þat cas Of Clarioun þat my neuewe was,
In wat manere he is ded,

& how A Messenger hap hym slayn þat ¹wendeþ to fecche ¹Charlemayn,
if he may pasye there; 3840

²& ys y-sent by þus glotouns Charlis to fecche & his barouns,
To schende ous alle here.

[leaf 51] For if he þe Messenger ³leteþ pace, ³Charlis ⁴wol me of londe chace, ⁴
& brynge ous alle ful lowe. 3844

not to let any
stranger pass
the bridge.

Thar-for say him þat he be-war, And lete noman pacye thar,
bote if he be knowe.

⁵And ⁵if þar comeþ any ounknowned ⁶man, Sone þat he ben take þan, ⁷
& hyder to me y-send. ⁸ 3848

Say hym on payne of ys heued, þat þys þyng beo noȝt be-leued,
As he ne wil be y-schend."

¶ "Syre," sayde þe Messenger, "Sone certis y wil be ther,
& speke wiþ agolofre, 3852

The mes-
senger say
he can run
faster than
ride.

& ȝour erand to hym ⁹abeode: Ac ride wil y noȝt in thys neode,
y þank ȝow of ȝour profre.

To renne an .C. myle on my fete, Ne schal noman y-se me swete,
On hulle ne in valay. 3856

¹ [wende oute now to.]

² Added in the margin below:—

To socoury þys glotouns on my tour þat habep y-don me deshonor
& ous to schende here.

³ over 'thar pase may.'

⁴ over 'schal come on ous sum day.'

⁵ altered to (?) 'if þat.'

⁶ over 'stronge.'

⁷ over 'War-for in myn half hat hym þan.'

⁸ Over this line, crossed through, is 'þat he be sone y-take,' and under-
neath is 'to passe þat passage.'

⁹ & [to hym] ȝour erand [wel].

Or þe dromedarye scholde be diȝt, Y schal gon on my fote ryȝt,

Wel neȝ half þe way."

¶ þe Messenger ys sone forþ afare, & renneþ swyfter þan þe hare ;

He starts and soon over-takes Richard,

Rychard he haȝ of-take.

3860

Malyngryas him drow a-part, & þus ascryede þar duk Richard,

"þow schelt noȝt ous a-scape."

& forþ he renneþ al so swyft, As foul þat fleþ on þe lift,

passes him,

Mantrib[1]e til he cam to.

3864

& þan to þe brigge tok he ys pas, Straȝt to þe brigge-ward þar a was,

On þ^e brigge stondynge þo.

¶ Wanne he afforn him was y-come, Ys erande abed he al & some,

and delivers his message to Agolafre.

Riȝt as y schal þow saye¹.

3868

"þe Ameral me hauȝ to þe y-sent, To wyte what was þyn entent

To don hym such affraye,²

þe messagers for to leten þ^e brigge pace,³ þat Charlys sente by manace,⁴

⁵Hyderward hym⁶ to scape ;

3872

þat han with strengthe conquerd is tour, And holdeþ ys doȝtere wiȝ

deshonour,

& hermyeþ hem late & rathe.

¶ And now compþ on of hem prykyng, Fram þe othre y-sent to

Charlis kyng,

& ys by-stole awaye.

3876

By Mahoun, pautener, þe tyd abigge,⁶ For⁷ pay passede so þe brigge⁸ :

He sent þe so to saye.

For Clarioun⁹ þe kyng⁹ he hauȝ a-slawe And y-take ys stede aȝen

þe lawe,¹⁰

hys better nys nowar non.

3880

Toward Char[les] wolde he wende, And bryng hym hider my lord to [leaf 51, back]

schende,

And to distruye ous ecchon.

Wharfor þe Ameral ys wonder wroȝ, & by Ma[houn] haȝ sworn ys oȝ,

& þow him lete pace,

3884

Whar þow beo founde, fer or neȝ, þat þow schalt be an-honged heȝ,

þe tyȝd non oȝer grace."

¶ Wan Agolafre haȝ herd hym speke, Forangre þat he nedrast him wreke,

Agolafre is furious at the message,

A skuntede als a bore :—

3888

¹ over 'sigge'.

² over 'To kepe betere þus brigge.'

³ & whan þou letest pace' over.

⁴ over 'Charlis messagers with yule grace.'

⁵ 'þus þonder day' over.

⁶ over 'ful wo.'

⁷ For [þou].

⁸ over 'for þou let hem pacy so.'

⁹ 'hys newew' over.

¹⁰ Other lines added, but are too indistinct to make out.

"Go out of my sizt," to him he sede, "How dost þow, harlot, þyn erand
bede? & seo þou me no more.

and threatens By Mahoun, my lord, þat sit in trone, Bute þou þe rathere ben agone,
Malyngryus. Myn axe þou schalt y-knowe." 3892

Agolafre sone þo¹ tok an horn, & quiklich in-to a tour he orn
& loude þan gan he blowe.

By þat he hauede y-blowe a blaste, On þe toun² þay bute tabours faste,
& made noyse horryble. 3896

20,000
Saracens
assemble.

To armes³ Sarsyns runne an haste, & xx. þousant sone⁴ þer paste
of þe Citee of Mantrible.

¶ þe draȝtbrigge was wel sone arered, Many a Sarzyn þar was a-stered,
þat Ry[chard] wente aȝene.⁵ 3900

Now god of heuene helpe Rycharð! þar mot he pace þorw þe hard,
for he not wyder fleene.

Richard from
a hill sees the
Saracens.

As Ri[chard] hym comeþ on an hulle an-heȝ, þat host of Sarasyns he
of-seȝ, Houynge on a mede, 3904

In armes brizte & sykere wedes, Sittyng vechone on faire stedes,
& þan hym gan a-drede.

He is in
doubt what
to do.

"Lord," he saide, "for þy god-hed, What ys now my beste red?
of bliasse y am al bare: 3908

If y come among þys fered, Wel y wot y lese myn hed;
Wyder-ward may y fare?

And if y me take to þe ryuer ward⁶ þe strem ys so stil & hard,⁷
þat⁸ þer me tyd adrenche: 3912

& if y to þe tour now torne agayn,⁹ þe sarazyns me wollep sle certayn,
y not now¹⁰ wyder blenche.

Ihesu, my lord ful of myȝt, þat al þyng canst boþe dele & diȝt,
pyte of me þou haue¹¹! 3916

[leaf 52r] Al þat þou dudest on me make, ¹²In-to þyn hondes ich her¹² by-take
Fram combryment þou me saue!"

¹ MS. þas, with þo over it.

² [In þe toun].

³ 'armes [panne].'

⁴ [of hem] sone.

⁵ þat [come] Ry[chard] aȝene.

⁶ And y me take to þe [wilde] ryuer.

[Schamlich tyd me dye ther.]

⁸ [for] þat.

⁹ & if to þe tour [wolde] torne agayn.

¹⁰ noȝt corrected to now.

¹¹ Here follow 2 long and 2 short lines, almost illegible.

¹²⁻¹³ over 'body & saule ich þe.'

- ¶ þan tornde him Richard al so hot, Toward þe Ryuer þat hiȝt Flagot, He turns towards the river;
 & þyderward prikeþ faste. 3920
- þe Sarazynȝ of hym hadde siȝt, And ryde after as foul on fiȝt, the Saracens ride after him,
 to taken hym þay þoȝt an haste.¹
- Ac furst and afforeward alle Prykede a cosyn of þe Amyralle, headed by Mandysee,
 Me calde Mandysee; 3924
- Hys hors was lyȝt & faste ȝed², And bar a sterre on his for-hed²,
 A noble sted was hea.
- ¶ þe Sarsyn þat³ was ryche & prout, By-fore alle othere he prykeþ out,
 & ⁴haueþ of take Richard,⁴ 3928
- & het hym abide & gan to crye, "Claryoun ys deþ þov schalt aby, who calls on Richard to turn and fight.
 Torn to me coward."⁵
- Richard tornde til hym anon, & adrow ys swerd, þat briȝte schon, Richard cleaves Mandysee's skull,
 & gurde him on þe heued; 3932
- Such a strok þat dupe wod, þorw-out helm, heued & hod,
 Al he haþ for-cleued.
- þe Sarsyn sone ful doun ded, & Ryc[hard] By þe rayne tok þat sted,
 To haue him was hym lef. 3936
- Til þe ryuer prikede Richarde, And þe Sarȝyns come prykyng after and hastens towards the river,
 harde, Cryyng—"tak þe þef!"⁶ pursued by the Saracens.
- ¶ Now y-come ys he to þe ryuere, By-syde a treo & a stod him þere,
 þat water to by-holde, 3940
- & saw þe ryuer was dup & brod, And ran a-way as he were wod,
 ys herte gan waxe colde.
- ¶ Richard tok herte & þenche gan, þat nedelich a most entrye þan He determines to swim the river,
 In & passe þat ryuere, 3944
- Ouper he moste turn aȝee, And fiȝte agayn al þat maygne,
 þat after him come there.
- To ihesu þanne he bad a bone:—"Lord, þat madest sunne, mone,
 Lond & water cler, 3948
- Kep me þys day fram my fone, & if y þys ryuer potte me one, and commends himself to god.
 þat y ne a-drenche her :
- & such grace þow me sende, þat y may saf to Charlis wende,
 & telle hym my porpos, 3952

¹ [& þan gan Richard haste.] ² ȝede and hede marked for correction.
³ [for] þat. ⁴ [& a take Richardoun.] ⁵ [felous.]
⁶ [with gret effray] (the line riming with this, altered.)

[leaf 52, back] So þat he may come wyþ socour, And delyuery ys barons of honour,
þat liggeþ among þy fos."

A milk-white ¶ Nad he noȝt þat word ful speke, Er þat þar cam an hert forþ reke,
doe appears, As wyt ase melkys fom. 3956

and swims Ryȝt euene by-fore duk Rychard þat best¹ hym wente to watre-ward,
across, & fayre by-fore hym swom.

Wanne þe duk þat wonder y-seȝ, & þe sarsyns þat þe wer come wel neȝ,
With boȝt & noyse gret, 3960

Richard Wyþ is riȝt hond þan blessede he hym, And þoȝ þe ryuere were styf
takes & grym, Wyþ boþ² hors in a schet ;
courage, Ys stede was an hors of prys, & bar þe kniȝt at al dyuys,
and leaps into the river, Swymmynge with ys felawe. 3964

the deer þe hert þat was so fair of siȝt Ouer þe Ryuer swam ful riȝt,
leading him, & Ry[chard] doþ after-drawe.
¶ Ys fon hym folȝede to þe water cler, Ac wan þay come to þe dupe
Ryuere, þat wilde was & thro, 3968

The Saracens Entrye þanne ne darst hy noȝt, For þe ryuer him ran so toȝt ;
are afraid, Sory men were þay þo.

and turn to To þe Citee þanne þey prikede aȝeyn, & fyndeþ mandisee þat was
cross by the a-sleyn, As ȝe hurde of are. 3972
bridge. þat body þay lefte stille ligge, & prykede ȝerne ouer þe brigge,
To mete with Ry[chard] þare.

¶ Agolafre wax wonder wroþ, To þe drauȝtbrigge before² he goþ,
& quyclich let hur down : 3976

"Barouns," quaf he, "now prikeaf faste, þe Messenger þat ȝe hadde an
haste, & sleþ þat foul feloun."

They hurry þan miȝte men many Sarsynȝ seen Ouer þe brigge an-horce fleen,
over the prikyng as þay wer wod ; 3980
bridge.

By þat was Richard þe ryuer past, And prykeþ hym fram ys fon an
hast, As ys nede by-stod.

Nad he noȝt priked of þat contray, Fro þe ryuere a myle way,
Er he a-liȝte a-down. 3984

Richard sees þan saw he comyng on o valay þat host of Sarazynȝ þe hol aray
them coming, To take hem³ were þay boun.

¹ [þe hert.] ² hȝ altered to hē
³ [sone.]

Hastelich aȝen on ys stede he wond, þe starrede he takeþ on ys hond,
& leteþ hem boþe renne. 3988

He prykeþ hem forþ wyþ such an eyr, þat at enery stape sprong out [leaf ss]
þat fyr, þat þay made þanne.

þe Sarazyns prykede after faste, Ac al hure traual a-way þay caste, but is soon
For he passede hure sizt. 3992 out of sight,

& wan þay seȝe it nolde noȝt be, Wroþ & sory þay tornde aȝee,
As þay come ful rȝt.

L Forþ þanne rideþ Rychardoun, Stouteliche as a bold baroun,
ne douteþ he for no man, 3996

Prykyng euer hulle & pleyn, Til he cam to Charlemeyn, and never
neuere ne astente he þan. comes to
Charle-
mayne.

Ete we Richard of Normaundy Prykye forthward on ys wey,
& of Char[li]s y wol ȝov telle, 4000
þat lyþ at Morymond with ys barons, Wel y-logged ther on
pauyllouns; now lysteþ to þis spelle.

Muche hym awondreþ Charliys kyng þat he ne hureþ no tydyng
of his barouns hende, 4004
hwyche he had to þe Ameral sent; For hymen ys he in gret torment, knights;
Sorwe hym gan betrende.

¶ Charliys clypede ys barouns, And scheweþ til hyman ys resons
On þis manere & sede: 4008
and calls a
council.

"Lordes," said he, "me ys ful wo þat my doppepers buþ þus a-go,
y drede lest þay be dede.

If þay lyuede¹ y wot to wysse Of hem y scholde ha hard or þyssa,
& now y ha lost hem so. 4012

Alas þat euere y saw þis day! þe flour of chyualrye ys away,
& my worschip is a-go!

fayne y wakke þe aroune op-ȝelde, Her byfore ȝow on thys felde,
ne kep y hure bere nomare." 4016

Wyþ þat A wepte wyþ is eȝen, & wan þe frensche hit herde & seȝen, They all
lament for
the knights

Wel sory ys frendes ware.
¶ Gweynes ys traytour þat þar was þo, Wanne he herde hym speke so save Gwenty-
lon, the
traitor, 4020
On herte him leked þat cas :

¹ If þay [were lyued].

Of ys sorwe a was ful fayn, And of þe barouns þat scholde be slayn,
Glad ynow a was.

who advises Charles to Affore þe kyng i-come ys he & sayde, "Charlis,¹ now herkne me,
& do by my saying: 4024

[leaf 53, back] þyn host liþ her ful yuele araid, And holdeþ hym ful yule apaid
Of þy longe bydyng.

retire to France Let awarnye þyn barouns þat þay don vp hure pauyllounz,
Euerech on ys side, 4028

because the Saracens are preparing to avenge Ferumbras, And trussyam þis day & aredy make, & to-morwe let ous our iorne
take, Hamward azen to ryde.

¶ þe Ameral haueþ y-gadred ys host In tal heþenys by euery cost,
And þenkeþ ryde on þe; 4032

For ys sone, sir Fyrumbras, þat among ous her conquered was,
He þenkeþ Auenged be.

þow ne hast no power now an-honde, His grete assemble to wiþ-stonde,
Wan þay comeþ to fize. 4036

And þoþ þow woldest azen hym fonde, þay buþ on hure owene londe,
þow gost to grounde rizte.

and Roland and the others are dead. And namliche suppe þat þay buþ dede þat scholde ben our help at nede,
Hardy ys he & feer, 4040

And wol come hider & on ous falle, þe to slen & eke ous alle,
þat he may fynde her.

þer-for, sire, do by my rede, To-morwe erly a wel god spede
Ham-ward let ous drawe. 4044

And þenk eft-sones to auenged be of þe Amyral þat haþ y-wrepped þe,
& þyne men a-slawe."

Charles cannot answer him for grief, ¶ Wan he haþ told ys resoun Char[li]s caste his heued adoun,
& haþ al tornd ys mod; 4048

So wo hym was on is þoþt þat he ne mygt hem answerie noþt,
for al þe worlde god.

Gret deal hit was hym to seen, How he gan þo to wepe azen,
þat noble conquerour. 4052

Wan he by-gan to with-drawe ys mod, To him-self said he þar a stod—
"now falleþ al myn honour,

¹ & sayde [to] Charlis.

þe whyle y hauede me aboute Myne doppepers bold & stoute,
 Olyuer & Rolond, 4056 but laments
over his
knights.

In tal þe worlde men dude me doute : Whar þat y come wyþ my route,
 y hadde þe heghere hond :

þanne me dradde me fer & ner,¹ And was ycleped conquerer,
 In tal þe worlde aboute. 4060

And now buþ hy fro me gon, Whar-for waxeþ² bold my fon,
 þat arst dude me doute : [leaf 54]

And yf y þuse viage leue þus, Men willeþ seyn, by swete iesus,
 My myzt ys me bereued ; 4064

þan haue ich y-lost al my renoun : As lef me were her stope adoun,
 & lete gurd of myn heued."

¶ þe Emperour stod & hym by-þohte, How þat he answerye mozte,
 & þus he sayde þo : 4068

"What sigge ȝe, lordes of renoun, By þe conseyl of Gweneloun ?
 Wat rede ȝe for-to do ? Charles asks
the advice of
his nobles.

If y me thus turne in-to fraunce, Wyp-oute takynge of vengeance,
 Hit is to me gret schame. 4072

Men wolleþ sayn þat buþ wyse þat it ys al my feyntyse
 & putte on me þe blame."

¶ þan hadde þe traytour cosyns thare, Geffroun, Dautefuelle and Gwenylon's
friends
support him.
 Malkare, Hardree and Alorys, 4076

Gerard, Hugoun and Gwylmare, And mo þan hundred othre þat ware
 ys cosyns oper alyes,

& alle were traytours to Charlemayn ; þay come forþ & gunne to sayn
 Afforn hym þar a stod : 4080

"Leue Syr kyng, as þow art free, Do now as Gweynes redeþ þee,
 for it ys for þy god.

Gweneloun ys boþe god & wys, And hap y-rad the at oure deuys,
 As it wil best auayle. 4084

þer buþ .xx. þousent among ous her þat willeþ no ferþer wyþ þ^e þis ȝer
 Putte hem to trauayle,

And þat ys for þov hast y-lost þylke þat scholde help ous most,
 Ro[land] and Olyueer, 4088

¹ [boþe] fer & ner.

² MS. waxex.

And þyne oþre barouns stoute, To wham alle we wern woned aloute,
for þay were so feer."

¶ "By dure god," saide Charlys þan, "ȝe loueþ me lytel euery man,
þat redeþ me in þis maner. 4092

If y þus schamlich schal torne agayn, Luuere me were be ded certayn
On þys felde her."

Rayner
warns him
not to trust
them.

¶ þe erld of Genyue, syre Rayner, Sayde þanne to þe Emperer :

"Syre, be my liegance, 4096

[leaf 54, back]

þou ne dost noȝt ase þe wys If þow y-lyuest sir Alorys,
oþer any of his lyaunce.

Ys consail dude þe neuere god, Ne non þat y knowe of al is blod ;
haue it wel in mynde. 4100

Hy buþ fals in dede & þoȝt, Hure consail to þ' nas neuere noȝt,
& þat þou schal wel vynde."

Alorys
threatens

¶ þan hym spak sir alorys : "Rayner, þou spekest al amys,
By god omnipotent ; 4104

And þat þow scholdest a-bigge sare, If þe kyng hem-self ne ware
Her now in present.

and abuses
Rayner.

What þow art ful wel we knowe ; Y-come þow art of kunne lowe,
And Garyn þy fader also : 4108

In þe world nad he lond ne rente, Saf þat þat he wiþ falshed hente,
& dude men þer-for wo.

Neuere ne was he with-oute strif, Bot ay wykke[d]liche lyuede ys lyf,
On þefþe & robberye : 4112

And al ys lygnage in euery syde, For robbours þai were y-kud as wyde
As any man myȝte a-spye."

Rayner is
enraged,
and knocks
him down.

¶ þe duk þan wax al ful of grame, Wanne he spak of is fader schame,
And strok til hym with yre ; 4116

& on þechekegurd hym with ys hond, þat wyþ þe strok to gronde a wond,
And tomblede on þe myre.

"þow lvest, rybaud," saide he þan, "My fader was kud a trewe man ;
god ȝyue þe yule chaunce ! 4120

And alle þat buþ of ys blode Trewe men þai ben i-holde & gode,
þoȝt-out þe realme of france."

Gwenylon's
friends cry

¶ Wan ys pruntekyn y-sawe þat cas, Hautefuelle, hardre, & Sir Malcras,
& oþre þousent nez ; 4124

What of alyauce, wat of blod, þan þay ascryede hym as þay were wod, out for
revenge.
 "Asarmes!" swyþe an-heȝ.

þat kun was wykkede on him-selue & armede hymen blyue on eche helue,
 boþe ȝonge & olde. 4128

And so he dude eke þ^e duk Rayner, And al is frendes þat he had ther,
 þat þoȝte *with* hym to holde.

Mykel was þe noyse þat þan aras: Ac Gweynes partye þe more was, Gwenylon's
party is
the larger,
 & miȝtyer of power. 4132

Ac wan þat hol host y-saw þat cas, Hit ful to þe duk Rayner þorw gras, but all the
soldiers join
Rayner.
 For loue of Olyuer.

¶ þan þay þoȝte to-gadre han set, ne hauede Fyrumbras hymen y-let, [leaf 55]
Ferumbras
and Charles
interfere.
 þat hymen wente betwene; 4136

& þe kyng among hem went, & hoten hem by commaundymēt,
 þat þay lete it bene.

¶ Wan þys noyse al cessed was þe kyng stod vp in the plas,
 & clypeþ til hym Rayner, 4140

Gweneloun, hardree & Alorys, And othre mo of þys partyes
 & sayde in þys maner:

"ȝe doþ me, lordes, wel muche ounriȝt, þat buþ hardy her on my siȝt, Charles
 Do me þe vylonye, 4144

Her on my presence to profry fiȝt. Bote it be amended, by god almiȝt,
 ȝour summe it schal abyē.

¶ Alorys," said he, "þys was þy werke, Cast of hasteliche þyn hauberke, orders Alorys
to disarm and
 & þyn helm of þe þou take, 4148

And by-fore Rayner sete þe on kne, And on hys mercye pote þou þe, apologize
to Rayner.
 and is amendes make."

¶ "Syre," quap Gweynes, "it schal be do, Sippe ȝe hotep þat hit
 beo so, We wollaþ make ys pays." 4152

"ȝea, be god," quap hautefuelle, "Do now Alorys wiþ-oute duelle,
 Riȝt as þe kyng him says."

¶ Alorys ounarmed him þanne an haste, And on is knes andressede Alorys does
so,
 him vaste, Be-fore þe duk Rayner; 4156

þe amendes a profrede him for-to make, At heȝ & low what he wold take, and they are
reconciled.
 & so þay acorded ther.

¶ þe kyng gan asky aȝenward þo, Whaþer þay hym radde a-byde or go
 Aȝenward in-to fraunce. 4160

"Ac wel y may wyte¹ if y do so y potte me-selue in sorwe & wo
& to gret greuance."

Hauteville
advises him
to follow the
counsel of
Gwenylon,

¶ Hautefuelle hym answerede agayn : "Herkne, sire, what y schal sayn,
y wil 3ou noȝt be-swyke. 4164

Ful wel 3e know þys ech del þat euere y haue iloued 3ow wel,
& Gweynes my sone doþ yke.

Ho-so consaile 3ow her to abide, He loueþ 3ow litel at þys tyde :

þenchesoun y wol 3ow say. 4168

þy puple ys her enpayned stronge, For þay han y-laye her þus longe,
y-armed boþe niȝt & day :

[leaf 55, back] Al our bodyes waxeþ sore, So longe we habbeþ armes bore,

And buþ so heuy so led. 4172

Do² as Gweynes redeþ þe, And faire let ous turne aȝe,

þys ys þe beste red.

And wan we comeþ in-to oure helue,³ þan mowe we þar reste ous selue,

An ten 3er ate leste. 4176

and take time
to recruit his
army.

By þat willeþ hy þat now buþ 3onge Be ful waxe & be bold & stronge,
To helpe þe in þe beste :

Then he can
return

& þan miȝt þou gadry a-ȝen þyn host, And come ageyn in-to þys cost,
With nobleȝe & bobaunce, 4180

& do wreche for duk Rolond, & for þyn oþre barouns strong,
& take þy vengeance ;

and recover
the sacred
relics.

& eke þyn relyques wyne aȝe, þe crowne of thorn & þe nailes three,
þat buþ away i-bore ; 4184

& þe oþre relyques al & some, Hwȝche þay habbeþ þe be-nome,
þat we buþ trauaild fore."

¶ þan was Char[li]s enchanted so With þees traytour, and othre mo,
Gweneloun & hardree, 4188

Charles gives
orders for a
return to
France.

þat he hem graunteþ þat same daye To trossy hur harneys & hem
araye, To torn hem hom aȝe.

þo were þys traytours glad & blyþe, In tal þat host þay wente swyþe,
And warnede mest & leste, 4192

Euery man to make hym ȝare, & trussye his harneys hom to fare,
After þe kynges heste.

¹ 'knowe' over 'may wyte.'

³ 'contre' over 'helue.'

² Do [now].

- ¶ þan waxe sory þe gode barouns, þat þay scholde don op hure
 pauillo[u]ns, By þe conseil of losengers: 4196
 & namliche þe gode duk Rayner Muche bemenep . ys sone Olyuer,
 & alle þe doþþepers :
 Nopeles supþe þat it was so, After þe kyng þay moste do,
 & gunne to trussye vaste. 4200
 þay fulde sakkis, & trossede males, To Charyotes þay drowen þe
 grete bales, & þykke hem in þam caste.
 ¶ Wan þay were araid al & some, And an-horse wern þe grete gome, All are ready to start
 And þ^e kyng an-horse was, 4204
 þanne he be-þoȝt hym al aboute, & how he sente ys barouns stoute ;
 ofte he sayde, " Alas ! "
 & " Alas ! " said he, by-forn hem þar, " þat² y euere y ȝut croune bar, Charles laments over the loss of his knights. [leaf 56]
 þis is ³a deeful þyng³ ! 4208
 þat supþen myn barouns buþ þus y-slayn, & y thus⁴ wrecchedly schal
 torne a-gayn, Wiþ-oute ⁵wrech takyng⁵ :
 þar as y ha be arst mykel of tolde, For a coward y worþ y-holde,
 boþe in tour and bour⁶. 4212
 Alas ! alas ! cold ys my red ; Why lybbe y now þat þay buþ ded,
 þat huld vp myn honour ?
 Alas ! for Roland, my Cosyn dere ; Were he lyues wiþ me here,
 A wolde noȝt suffry þys, 4216
 þat y thus scholde me torne aȝene, Wiþ-oute ve[n]iaunce of my tene,
 Hit farþ now al a-mys :
 For now y haue hym for-go, And myn oþre barons al-so,
 þorw ⁷my folye dede⁷. 4220
 Whar-for certis me ys wo." Wiþ þat word sowenede he þo, He swoons and nearly falls from his horse.
 As he sat on ys stede ;
 Of is hors had he falle adoun, Nadde y-ben þe socour of his baroun,
 þat vp þer gunne him holde 4224
 ys trewe baronye be-mend him sore, & Ro[land], & Olyuer wel mychele
 more, & þe oþre barouns bolde,
 ¶ Wan þe kyng of Sowenyng awoke, þe way to france þan he toke, They start.
 As he lay forþ riȝt. 4228

¹ & [þan.] ² [Alas] þat. ³⁻³ [a foule meschance.] ⁴ y[now].
⁵⁻⁵ [any vengeance.] ⁶ MS. tour. ⁷⁻⁷ [myn oȝe fol dede.]

Richard
appears
galloping up
at full speed,

þe kyng gan loke þanne a-syde, & saw whar Ric[hard] com ¹þat tyde,¹

Prikyng by-fore his syzt,

And sat on þat noble stede, þat al so swyftlyche þanne zede,

So swolwe doþ on flyzt. 4232

þe sterrede on ys hand he ladde, þat he of Mandyse wā & hadde,

þat² he hym slow in fyzt,

with his
sword drawn.

& bar a naked swerd an honde. þe kyng made ys stede a-sonde,

And by-huld hym faste ; 4236

Hym semede þan it was a knyzt, þat was y-come out of fyzt,

And sumdel was agaste.

¶ þan . clypede he hemen þat were most Worthiest barons of al ys

host, of Ienyue³ þe duk Reyner, 4240

Charles
orders a halt.

Raol Mountferant, & duk howelle, And bad him a-wyle with him

duelle, & þat host a-reste ther :

“For y seo ȝunder comeþ a knyzt, Prykyng so doþ þe foul on flyzt,

On a ful iolif stede ; 4244

[leaf 56, back] Lord þe stede þat he goþ lyzt, Another a lede þan honde riȝt,

þat semeþ god at nede.

He recognizes Richard. By ys rydyng it⁴ semeþ me, Richard of Normandye it miȝte be,

þat berþ þat swerd an hand. 4248

Now ihesu, þat ert heuene kyng, þys day sende me god tydyng

Of my neuwe Roland,

And of Olyuer, my derlyng, þat þay mote be ȝute lyuyng,

& my othre barouns wyȝte.” 4252

By þat þat host arested was, Rychard cam prykande neȝ þe plas

& by-fore hym þanne aliȝte.

Richard rides
up to Charles.

¶ Anon, riȝt as þe kyng hym sez, Quylich þanne a rod hym neȝ,

& sayde til hym ⁵ful ȝare⁵ : 4256

who asks
him about
the other
knights.

“Iantail knyzt, comen of kynde free, Of Roland my neuwe tel þou me,

How ys it by⁶ hym afare ;

& of Gy of Borgoygne, & of Olyuer, And of al myn othre doþþeper,

buth ȝut⁷ on lyue.” 4260

“ȝea, sire, wyþ-inne þis þridde day y lefte hymen murye & in god aray,”

Said Ri[hard], so y thryue ;

¹⁻³ [prikyng] þat tyde. ² [Wan.] ³ ‘Alre furst’ over ‘[&] of Ienyue.’
⁴ [as] it. ⁵⁻⁶ [ȝare.] ⁶ [of.] ⁷ [War þay beo.]

On þe stronge tour of Egremount, þar buþ þyn barouns alle hol & sond, Richard tells him how they are besieged by Balan, and
 Saf Basyn þat is aslaye¹: 4264
 þe Ameral be-segeþ hymen þer-yn Wyþ an hundred þousant Saraþyn,
 Be niþtes & be daye².
 þe Amyrel haþ sworn by ternagan þat neuere ne wil he departie þan,
 for nozt þat may betyde, 4268
 Til þay be-take in dispyt of þe, And an-honged heþe on þe galwetre,
 euerech by oþres syde.
 þar ys with-ynne wyþ hymen there, Flo[rippe] þe Amyralis doztre dere, how Floripas has the relics under her charge,
 A burde on boure brizt: 4272
 Sche haueþ þe relyqes on hure warde, For whyche þou hast y-trauaild
 harde, longe tyme day & nizt.
 ¶ þyn barons þat buþ of gret honour, þat so buþ be-seged on þat tour,
 þey sendeþ þe word by me, 4276
 þat þow scholdest come with þyn host And ³delyuery hem out of þat
 cost, As þou art hende & fre;
 & if þou wolt so: as god me saue, Al þyn relyqes þow myzt haue, [leaf 57] which Charles can have.
 þat y spak of eere: 4280
 And discourfitye þow schalt þan Amyrel, And al ys Saraþyns, y wot
 ful wel, þat now buþ with him þere.
 And wan þou hauest so y-done, Conquere þou schalt after sone
 þ^e reame of heþene Spayne." 4284
 þan was glad Charlis kyng, Ne herde he neuere no tydyng
 War-for he was so fayne. Charles is delighted at the news,
Now ys Charlis glad & blythe, And þonkeþ god an .C. sythe thanks God
 Of þat gode tydyng. 4288
 By seynt Dynys a swor ys oþ, þat Gweynes & hyse scholde be wroþ, and vows vengeance on Gwentyllon.
 for hure compassynge:
 "Hit ys no þyng on hymen ylong þat y ne hadde y-lost Rolond,
 & myn barons⁴ hende. 4292
 þay buþ wel ful of felonye, & þat þay schullen eft-sone abyen,
 bote þay hemen⁵ amende.
 y þanke þe, Ri[chard]," quæþ Char[is] kyng, "For certis þow hauest
 wiþ þy tydyng y-brozt myn herte of care. 4296
¹ [aslawe.] ² [dawe.] ³ And [wiþ strengþe.]
⁴ 'oþre barouns' written over. ⁵ bot [if] þay.

He determines in the morning to start to Egremont.

Al nigt we wolleþ reste ous her, And to-morwe, wan þe day ys cler,
 þyderward wille we fare,
 And y make auow to my lord seynt Ion, If y may lyue til moneday
 non, lyuerance wil y make; 4300
 And þe Amerel schal lese ys hed, & al his sarsyns schulle be ded,
 þat y may of-take."

Richard says the Saracens cover 12 square miles,

¶ "Sire," quath Richard, "he ys ful strong, & haþ be-set þe contre long,
 Wyþ Sarsynz al aboute: 4304
 four myle in lengþe spredreþ is host, And thre on brede by euery cost,
 With-inne & wyþ-oute.

and that he will have to cross the bridge at Mantrible,

And a thys syde Egrymoygne a iornee þar is a brigge of gret fertee,
 A Citee ¹ys set þer-bye¹: 4308
 Mantrible þe Citee ys y-called, Wyþ marbre fyn ys he walled,
 & abatayld with toures hye.

Vnder þe brigge þan flet flagot, On him ne may durye schip ne bot,
 So sterneliche he him renneþ: 4312

Of brede ys he a gret boze-schot, & thre spere-schaftes dep ech grot,
 As many man it wel kenneþ.

[leaf 57, back]

A þys syde þ^e toun þat ryuer rend,² & þe brigge ³þar ouer³ stent,
 Whar forþ we moste pace. 4316

Oþer passage ne ys þar non bote by þat brigge y-mad of ston,
 nys þer non oþer grace.

amydde þe brigge þar stent a tour y-buld aboze wyþ gret honour,
 Wyþ brytaskes many & fale: 4320

which is kept by a giant,

In þar on dwelleþ þe briggeward, A geant ys he of an yuel part,
 Many man he bryngþ on bale.

Vnder þe tour buþ zeates two, Whar þorþ men mote nedes go,
 þat wolleþ pacye þere: 4324

þar stondeþ algate an hundred kniztes, þat passage to kepe by dayes
 & nyztes, With þ^e geant þat ys portere:

Agolafre the bridge-ward.

Agolafre hatte þe proute geant, Fro hennes in-to Cyuyle grant,
 nys þar anoþer swych. 4328

¹—*written over* 'by-þonde þer stonde' and *under* 'nas neuere Cyte strengre walled ymad with manniss honde.'

² *over* 'þe ryuer ys red & raply rend.'

³—*over* 'ys peryllous þat.'

He ys ¹a Sarsyn of wonder gret strengþe,¹ xv. fet he ²haueþ in lengþe,²
 & ys as blak so pych :

Ne saw y neuere non hym lyke, He semeþ ful wel þe deuels chyke,
 y-sprong of þ^e pyt of helle. 4332

Alwey he haueþ · on ys baylye x. þousant knyȝtes ful hardye,
 To don al at ys wille. Under him
are 10,000
knights.

Ac of o þyng, sire, by-þenk þe,³ þou passest noȝt thar wyþ no
 strengþe, Bote sleȝþe helpe þar-to. 4336 Charles must
use some
stratagem to
pass the
bridge.

For non assaut helpeþ noȝt, þe brigge-warde ys so strong y-wroȝt,
 Hit were noȝt worþ a slo.

If we schullen pasye that ryuer, ȝe mote leue with ȝoure power
 On a-buchement as y schal sigge : 4340

In a wode þat ys þer faste by, Half a myle it ys ful ny,
 by-twene him & þ^e brigge :

And y schal take þe wey forþ riȝtes, And haue wyþ me of ȝour knyȝtes
 .V. hundred gode y-kudde. 4344

Ryȝt as marchantz wille we ryde, Wel y-armed an-vnder our gonels
 wyde, & swardes sherpe y-hudde. Richard
proposes a
plan,

þe somers schulleþ by-forn ous gon, Wyþ grete pakkes euerechon,
 As it were marchaundyse ; 4348

And we wollep fayre after ryde, As marchauns scholde with litel pryde,
 And pacye in þis gyse.

& wan we buþ wyþ such a gynne þe brigge-ȝates al wyþ-ynne,
 þan wol y blowe myn horn ; 4352

þan come ȝe with ȝour company, And takeþ þe brigge with maystry, [leaf 58]
 & þe Citee þat stent afforn."

¶ "A ! lord," sayde Charlys þan, "þat Richard ys a noble man,
 god ȝyue hym gode chaunce ! 4356

Ho miȝte our passage betere araye ? No man for-soþ at my paye,
 by-twyne þis & fraunce.

Of ys counsayl am y apayd : Hit schal be don as he haþ sayd,
 Be dere god almyȝte." 4360 with which
Charles is
pleased.

þan he het on : blowe an horn, And þat host abod be-hynde & forn,
 & logede hem þar alnyȝte.

¹— over 'myche is wonder strong.'

²— over 'ys long.'

³ [now] by-þenk þe.

The army
halts for the
night at
Morymond.

O Ppon þe val of Morymond Abydeþ þat host hol & sond,
Fayre oppon a grene. 4364
A-morwe wan þ^e day was liȝt, Charlys comandeþ þat euery wiȝt
Sone beo y-armed clene.

In the morn-
ing Richard
picks out 500
men.

Wan þay wer y-armed alle at riȝtes, Charles het Richard chuse his
knyȝtes þat he wolde lede ; 4368
And Richard dude as Char[li]s saide & ches .v. hundred, & hem a-raide
On gonels oppon hur wede.

Their arms
are hidden,
and they
appear as
merchants.

Hyre sarplers dud he *with* hay be fild, & bonde hem to hure sadels
gyld, To keuery hure¹ ryche araye. 4372
Hure swerdes durnely so ben y-hid, & ase Marchans þat wern ouⁿkyd,
So þey wentte hure waye.

Charlis takeþ wyþ hym his host, And folȝeþ after² wiþ-oute bost
to mantrible-ward ful riȝt. 4376
þat day ȝaf Richard or a ȝede To duk Rayner þe sterrede stede,
þat was so god & liȝt.

Richard rides
in front

¶ Rychard ryȝd forþ wyþ ys knyȝtes þat warn arayd after hure ryȝtes,
Riȝt as marchans scholde. 4380

By-fore þe kyng ³þay prykede þere,³ Y wol ȝow telle now what þay
were, þe gretteste of þay bolde.

with Duke
Howel, Duke
Rayner, and
Raoul of
Amlens.

þe furste was Richard of wham y tel, þe secunde of Nautes þe duk
Howel, Duk Rayner þ^e þridde was ; 4384
þe furþe was Raol of Mans : þ^e stronge ; To seche al fraunce brod &
longe, A betre knyȝt þer nas.

þuse prykeap faste forþ by-fore, V. hundred knyȝtis in al þay wore,
Hure somers lefte þay noȝt. 4388

[leaf 58, back]

[þat þay ne dryue by-forn hem euerechon]⁴

Each drives
a packhorse
laden.

þat ech of hem ne drof forþ on, *With* pakkes y-charged euerechon,
Wyþ harneys y-fillid toȝte :

Now Agolafre beo hym wel y-war, Bote he kepe him þe betre þar,
At þe entree of þ^e brigge. 4392

For þe trew þat he wol craue, An yuel torn tyd þe haue,
Myn hed þer-to y legge.

¶ þys knyȝtes prikeap forþ on hure way, þe somers þei dryue be-forn
hem ay, & vaste forþ þay wente, 4396

¹ To keuery [þat].
² [þan] prykede [þay] þere.

³ after [hem].
⁴ Crossed through.

And beren þ^e pakkes on hure rig, Til þay come euene to þe bryg,
nowar þay ne astente.

And Charlis ys to þe wode y-come, And enbuschedem¹ þar with ys
trome, An hundred þousant knyhtes. 4400

Charles
places 100,000
men in
ambush.

þe opre were ate brigge þan & by-hulde how þ^e ryuer ran,
And opre ferly syztes.

¶ And wan þay hadden al be-holde, þe sturne Ryuer, & þe brigge
bolde, & þe toures þat stode oppon : 4404

þey sayde þat terme of al hur age, ne hurde þay neuere of no passage,
So grysly to lokye on.

Some are
frightened at
the river and
the bridge,

Saide Richard—"þat is soþ, Ac loke on þ^e medwe war Sarsynz goþ,
A þousant ²þer buþ³ & mo, 4408

Wel y-armed on þe beste assyse, Hure purpos y can nozt deuyse,
Ne wat þay þenkþ do."

¶ þan saide howel—"þys ys hard, Parfay ich am ful sore affard,
god of heuene ous lede!" 4412

"Lordes," quap Ry[chard], "buþ nozt agast, Ac holdeþ forþ þour way
an hast, & boldelich doþ þour dede :

but are
frightened at
the river and
the bridge,

And wan we comeþ to þe brigge-gate, Hwat so þay beo þat buþ þer-ate,
Doþ as y schal sayne. 4416

Holdeþ þow stille, and spekeþ nozt, but leteþ me telle as y ha þoþt,
What so þay speke agayne.

who tells
them
to keep still
and leave
everything to
him.

And 3if we mowe pacye so, þe draȝt-brigge & þe zeates two,
þan ys tyme to flyte. 4420

þan Casteþ þour gonels³ of anon, & drawe we to our wepnys euerechon,
& let se ho can smyte."

¶ Raol Delamans sayde þan : "Muche maugre mote he han,
þat any of hem spare." 4424

With þat þay gunne⁴ hem for-to haste, And dryue forth þe somers faste
Ouer þe brygge thare.

[leaf 59]
They arrive
at the bridge.

¶ Agalofre, þe voule gome, Ful wel of-seȝ þus knyhtes come,
Wyþ hure somers fayre. 4428

Out of þe tour þan cam he doun, And set hym on an heyȝ peroun,
y-mad as a chayre.

Agolafre
descends
from the
tower.

¹ enbuscheden [hem].

² Casteþ þour gonels [þanne].

³⁻⁴ [Sarsyns.]

⁴ MS. gunne.

An Axe had he þan an-honde, A shrewedere¹ wepene for-to fonde,
 Was neuere non yfounde. 4432

Three fet of brede was þe blad, Of style y-tempred ful wel y-mad,
 þe hylue wyþ yre y-bounde.

He is a hideous man þe Sarsyn was an hudous man, By-twyne ys to browen was a span
 largeliche of brede ; 4436

with great eyebrows and deep-set eyes. Ys browes were hoþe rowe and grete, & ys nose cammus, ys ezene
 depe, & glystryd as þ^e glede.

Supþe þe werlde furst by-gan, Nas neuer ȝut so lodly man,
 y-mad of flehs & felle. 4440

He seems a devil come straight from hell. Was he noȝt a godes half² þe deuēl he semede al hym-self,
 y come þo riȝt of helle.

þe Amyral hadde y-loued hym long, For he was so wonderly strong,
 And doȝty þer-to of dede. 4444

Constable he mad him of ys lond, And tok hym þe briggewarde an
 hond,
 For al men schold hym drede.

¶ God saue þe crystene company ! Wan þay come þe Sarsyn ny
 Ry[chard] rod by-fore : 4448

þan Agolafre stert vp-on ys fet, And askede of Ry[chard] al so ket,
 Wyder-ward þat þay³ wore :

Agolafre demands their business. “ & weþen art þou : þov ladde prout ? And wyderward schal þis grete
 rout of Somers wiþ þ^e ware ? 4452

And wanne buþ þaye þat comeþ her ryde, On heȝe stedes & gonels
 wyde ? Tel me what þay are.”

Richard tells him they are cloth merchants, on their way to the Emir, ¶ Ry[chard] ansuerede þe proute Sarsyn, On Arragounneys speche god
 & fyn, And saide, “ we buþ Marchaund ; 4456

Of drapreȝ we ledeþ gret fuyssoun, And wollep þer-wyþ to Agremoun,
 to þ^e Amyral of þis laund.

He þenkþ hold an huge ryot, Of Mahoun, & iubiter, & Margot,
 Wyp-inne þis fortenizt. 4460

[leaf 59, back] And cloþȝe he þenkeþ ys barouns fre, For þe loue of oure godes thre,
 þat buþ ful myche of myȝte.

And we han her scarletes & grene, & cloþes of tarse, & of sulk ful
 schene, & cloþes eke of golde. 4464

¹ MS. shrewedere.² a godes [of godes] helf.³ ward [he].

On al paynee buþ rycchere non þan we han her & þat god won,
bygge hem he so wolde.
Of such chaffar as we haue, So þat we mowe come saue,
fro henne to þe Amyrel, 4468
þanne schal he on þe beste chuse, And þoȝ we a-boute hym schullen
luse, he schal haue ys del.
Tel me, sire,¹ þerfor now, Of þys passage what ys þe trow,
And how we moȝe ous quyte." 4472 and asks
what toll has
to be paid.
Agolofre ansuerede hym agayn :—" Of þys brigge y am wardayn,
& receuour of myche & lyte :
Ac her passede wyþ-inne a wyle, Crystene men þat² dude me gyle, Agolofre says
he has been
cheated once
by some
Christians 4476
þat come fram Char[liis] kyng ;
To þe Amyral þay wente . on god aray, My trew þay sayde þay wolde
pay At hure aȝen comyng.
þay schulleþ beo an-honge³ on helle, For þay be-trayede þan Amerelle,
& dryuen him of ys tour ; 4480
And holdeþ hym ȝute aȝen þe riȝt, & ys doȝtre eke, a burde bryȝt,
And doþ him deshonour.
And now hap þe A[meral] by-leyn hem þer, With an hundred þousand who are now
besieged by
the Emir, 4484
of Sarȝyns fier, Sherpe men at nede :
Ac on of hem þys ȝunder day, Ase a þef her be stal away, but one had
escaped.
Oppon a noble stede.
My Cosyn a-slow, a man of mod, And tok ys stede sur & god,
And passede þ^e ryuere. 4488
þe deucl him halp þat he nas dreynt ! By-for þat was neuere non so Devil take
him !
queynt, þat passeden on þat manere.
Wolde it, Mahoun and ternagan, þat he were her þe same man !
ys blod scholde sone a-kele : 4492
Wiþ myn axe y wolde : ȝyue him on, And to-cleue hym þoȝ flechs [leaf 60]
& bon, Doun riȝt to þe hele.
And now is þe A[myral] sore afryȝt, For þe doynge of þilke knyȝt,
þat passed þo þes ende, 4496
Leste he go to þe Emperour, & brynge hym hyder to socour,
Hym & hys to schende.

¹ me [luue] sire.² men [æuene] þat.³ an-honge [ȝute].

- And the Emir
has given
orders to let
no stranger
pass,
Whar-for he sente me er þan, þat y ne lete her no man
Pacy þys passage, 4500
Were he erld oper baroun, Bote if y seze ys facioun,
Oper knewe him by vysage :
- and therefore
Richard must
show his face.
'Willingly,'
says Richard.
& þar-for schawe me þyn anon." "Gladly," quap Richard, "so mot y
gon, haue þou none doute. 4504
What do 3e felawes? comeþ neer & 3our vysages schewyep heer,
euerechone aboute."
- With þat Richard preynthe ys eze, Oppon ys feleschip þat was him
neze, Hure purpos to by-gynne. 4508
þe gate Ri[chard] hym neyzeþ neer, So dude Howel, Roal, and Reyner
þ^e draȝtbrigge ride with-ynne.
- He with
Howel, Raoul
and Rayner
ride on to the
bridge.
¶ Wan Ago[lafre] hit sez he sayde with cry : "Drawep 3ow abak, 3e
doþ foly, oper 3e schullaþ a-bigge. 4512
Y wil noȝt þer passye her no mo." Sone to þe cheyne sterte he þo,
& vp adrow þ^e brigge.
- Agolafre
raises the
drawbridge,
¶ Now buþ þay foure with-inne ther; With-uten houede þe somer,
& al hure¹ companee. 4516
Agolafre com forþ wiþ ys hache : "Ribaux," saide he, "ich 3ow attache,
Aȝeld 3ow anon to me.
- and calls on
them to
surrender.
Ho made 3ow so hardy men, þe draȝtbrigge for-to come wyþ-yn,
& þe 3eates bothe, 4520
Bot it were at myn assent? þer-for to prysoun 3e schulle be send,
Ne beo 3ow noȝt so lope.
- & þay wyþ-oute schulle be dede; For 3our folye þat ys hure mede,
Or ich euere reste. 4524
- [leaf 60, back] And on þe morwenyng y wil 3ov² sende To Amyral balan þat ys my
frende, to don with 3ou is beste.
- Doþ of 3our govnes ech man a-sonder, & y wil se 3our wede an vnder,
As Ma[houn] me helpe & rede. 4528
Me semeþ 3e buþ wel ful of wyles, And habbeþ by-þoȝt 3ow of sum
gyles, to do sum wikked dede."
- He seizes
Howel.
To howel he sterte him þan with mod, & tok hym faste by³ þe hod,
þer nas non oper bote; 4532

¹ & [þat oper].² [morȝnyng y schal 3ow.]³ faste [þanne].

Bote thre syþes a bar hym þanne aboute And al is hod to-taar to cloute,
 & cast hym to ys fote.

¶ “Certis,” quap Roald, “y soffry to long, To se my cosyn haue þys
 wrong, So mot y þe & pryue!” 4536

Hasteliche he adrow ys sward, And agolofre on þe heued a gerd,
 As harde as he may dryue : Raoul
smites him
on the head.

Ac for þat strok had he non hoze For he was þanne to-be-toze
 body & heued y-same 4540

With an hard crested serpentis fel, On which non eged tol ne may
 no del With no strok entame.

¶ Hure gonels þey cast of þan ecchon, & adrewe hure swerdes with
 þat anon raplych at o route : 4544 They all
throw off
their cloaks

And þan þay laid on þat foule wyzt Sturne strokes with al hure myzt, and attack
Agolafre.
 In tal ys body aboute.

Ac al hure strokes ne greuede him nozt, þe serpente skyn was so harde
 y-wrozt, þat no man myzt hit pers. 4548

[þan hadde þay þerof wonder gret¹]

& þan² þay awondrede of him ecchon, þat for al þe strokes þat þay
 gerde on, þat hym nas nozt þ³ wers.

¶ Agolafre ful egre gan³ to waxe, & wel anhez he heuede ys axe,⁴ Agolafre aims
at Raoul with
his axe, but
 & ⁵to Roal a smot with⁵ mayne : 4552

Ac he failede of ys stroke, & þe axe ful on a stilp of oke,
 þat bar ⁶vp ther a chayne⁶; misses him,

þe strok was so herd yset, þat þorw þat treo & þe cheyne gret,
 vj. fold y-layd a-boute, 4556 and cuts
through one
of the rhains
of the bridge.

As liztliche as hit had ibeo wax, ran þe strok þanne. of ys ax
 Chayne & tre þorjoute.⁷

¶ “A lord,” sayde Reyner þan, “þys ys a deuyl and no man, [leaf 61]
 Certis as y leue : 4560

Ho scholde a-stonde ys sory strok, Wan he smyt her þorj an ok,
 & no strok may him greue!”

¹ crossed through. ² [Greteliche]. ³ [þan] gan.
⁴ over ‘to Ro[al] agerte with ys axe.’ ⁵ over ‘stroke with al ys.’
⁶ over ‘an yre chayn.’

⁷ Added in the margin:

With þis on ys opre side he say A gret bar of yre.

With þat ¹be-huld he faste bye,¹ A gret barre of yre saȝ he lye,²
 nez hym þar be-syde.³ 4564

Rayner seizes
 a great bar of
 iron Reyner þo ⁴putte vp⁴ hys brond, And tok vp þe barre with boþen
 ys⁵ hond, & wente til hym þat tyde

and knocks
 him down. & gerd hym þer-Wyþ⁶ on þe molde, þat ys legges gunne to volde,
 & bursten euene atwo. 4568

The bridge
 quakes with
 his fall. þat deablet ful with þat strok⁷ So harde þat al þe brigge schok,⁸
 And þ⁹ ryuer dude al-so.

¶ Wel sone ⁹was þys y-knowned wyde,⁹ ¹⁰& þe Sarȝyns armede hem
 on euery syde,¹⁰ Boþe with scharp & hard¹¹; 4572

More than
 10,000
 Saracens
 assemble. & wyþinne a wyle þer wer y-dyzt, Mo þan ten þousant ¹²of Sarȝyns
 wyzt,¹² & drowe hem pyderward.

Richard
 sounds the
 signal for
 Charles,
 whose men
 break out of
 the ambush. ¶ Rychard tok þanne ys horn & blew, & Char[liis] y-hurd hit & wel
 y-knew þ⁹ auenture þat was befallē: 4576

Of ys enbuschymēt þan brak he out, And cryede "montioye!" al
 aloud, & sone þai come out alle.

Sone was ech man on ys stede, And prykede vaste to þat nede,
 þe riȝt way as þay nome. 4580

Richard lets
 down the
 bridge. Ri[chard] þe brigge let falle þan adoun,¹³ And hys falawes ¹⁴beþ entrede
 euerech one,¹⁴ or þat gret host hym come.

¶ þan come þe Sarȝyns of þe Citee route, And þozte wyþ force
 dryuen hem oute, & þe brigge aȝen vp-drawe: 4584

Ac þay wyþ-stode hem al wyþ strengþe, And reculede hem þar an
 acres lengþe, & many þay habbeþ aalawe.

¶ Wan¹⁵ Charlys to þe brigge ys¹⁶ come, Wyþ ys hol host al and
 some, þe brigge þay toke a-rank. 4588

þat day Gweynes bar hym wel, And ys kynnesmen, swykel and fel,
¹⁷Of Char[liis]¹⁷ to gete hem þanke.

þay were þe furste men of myzt, þat potte þe Sarȝyns to þe flyzt,
 Al þoz þay kome late.¹⁸ 4592

¹⁻¹ over 'lokede he vp a-syde þaar.'

² over ' & saw þar liggeng an yre wroȝte (?) bar.' ³ over 'a gret on & ourryde.'

⁴⁻⁴ over 'dude yn.' ⁵ ys added.

⁶ [Wyþ þe barre a smot him.]

⁷ ful [doun at þat draȝte].

⁸ brigge [quazte].

⁹⁻⁹ over 'þe tydyng gan to sprynge.' ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ over 'In-to Cyte of þys doynge.

¹¹ over 'Touchyng þe briggward.'

¹²⁻¹² [in armys bryȝt.]

¹³ [By þat let Ry[chard] þe brigge falle.]

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ [entrede euery manes buȝ alle.]

¹⁵ [By þat], and [Now ys].

¹⁶ [y].

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ [for].

¹⁸ crossed 'So harde þay gunne sayle.'

To þe Cite ȝeate þey chacedem riȝt, Ac þer¹ þey tornde &¹ ȝaf hym fyȝt, The Saracens
make a stand
in front of
the gate.
A litel by-fore þe ȝeate.

[Ryȝt to þe draȝt-brigge þat lay þar-ate²]

¶ Charlys³ gan fiȝte þo³ wyȝ egre mod, And Gweynes al-so þat bi [leaf 61, bk]
him stod, And sloȝe þe⁴ Sarsyns keta. 4596

þat day schewede þat traytour To Char[lys] ys lord ful mucche honour,
for neuere a nolde hym lete.

¶ Char[lys] lokedom be-hynde ys bak, And saw dele þar many a knak, Charles finds
that Agolafre
has re-
covered,
& myche noyse make. 4600

To þat doynge þan tornde he, What yt was he wolde y-se,
& þyderward he gan take.

þan was Agolafre noȝt ded þe ȝet, Ac on his knes he hadde him set,
For his legges nere noȝt soȝde, 4604

& had⁵ wyȝ ys axe a-slawe An hep of frenschemen þat leye arawe, and with his
axe has killed
a number of
the French.
Afforn hym on þe gronde.

¶ Char[lys] was wroȝ and angry so⁶, Wan he seȝ what he had do,
& þoȝte on þis manere : 4608

“Myȝte þys fend aryse and go, Mucche sorwe wolde he do
Among⁷ my mayne here⁷ ;”

With þat Char[lys]⁸ to hym wond, And gurd him a strok wyȝ ys He strikes
him with his
sword,
brond, & on þe heued him sette. 4612

Ac for þat strok had he no dere, For no strok myȝt hym Percy þere, but cannot
wound him :
⁹þat sory skyn⁹ dude him lette :

¶ And þan was Char[lys] wonder grym, And aȝeyn hym renneȝ, & then he stabe
him between
the eyes, and
stokeȝ hym By-twene ys browes rowe : 4616

þan ran þat swerd in-to ys brayn, And whan he haueȝ him so a-slayn throws him
into the
river.
to þe ryuer was he þrowe.

¶ Now ys Agolafre¹⁰ ded, & Char[lys] turneȝ aȝe þe hed,
& ȝede þar he was aar. 4620

Alle þe Sarȝyns þat he wyȝ mette, Bytere & sore he hym grette,
& þoȝ thar¹¹ body hem bar.

þe paynymes þat were oppon þ^e brigge, þar me miȝte y-sen hem lygge,
bledynge at an hepe ; 4624

¹⁻¹ [þe Sarȝyns.]

² crossed through.

³⁻³ [faulȝ þanne.]

⁴ MS. sloȝe þe sloȝe þe.

⁵ & had [he].

⁶ bo (?) Altered from bo to so?

⁷⁻⁷ [ous þat buȝ here.]

⁸ Char[lys] [þanne.]

⁹⁻⁹ [þe serpente].

¹⁰ Agolafre [þe wardeyn].

¹¹ þoȝ [out] hur.

- Summe were cloue in-to þe tonge, And somme were styked þorȝ lyure
& longe, And many wer ouer y-lepe :
- The Saracens
fly into the
city. Sone was voydede þe brigge þere Of alle þe oþre þat lyues were,
to þ^e citee þaye gunne fle : 4628
- þe ȝeates wern opened aȝen hem wyde, & þay floȝe in : & nold noȝt
a-byde, & speredede he[m] faste aȝee.
- [leaf 62] [Boþe brigge and baly in-to þe toun-ȝeate, Now buþ þay comen alle
þer-ate¹]
- Charles
besieges the
city for two
days. ¶ Charlȝ þe Citee þo gan asayle, Two dawes hole wyþ-oute fayle,
Wyþ al ȝs grete route : 4632
- And þay wyþ-inne defended hem wel, Wyþ schutyng & castyng of
stones fel, Many þay slowe with-oute.
- ¶ Sone . was . al þe contree war, xl. Myle² aboute thar,
þat Mantrible be-seged was, 4636
- Saracens
flock thither. & þe brygge conquered þat was stout : Sarȝynȝ þyder-ward þan gunne
rout, to helpe hem in þat cas.
- Ere to dawes ful ended ware Fyfty þousant Sarȝynȝ³ come thare,
And entrede in þat Citee. 4640
- Bot if god helpe now Charlemoun, Wel late passeþ he þorȝ þat toun,
To helpe ȝs barouns fre.
- Round the
city the rocks
are 100 yards
high. And nowar myȝte he passe be-syde, For þe roche was heȝ an hundred
stryde, Stondyng by þ^e reuer, 4644
- And anclosed þat side so stronge & heȝe, þat bute it were for þe foul
þat fleȝe, Passage was non saf þer.
- [¶ þe Sarȝynen power gan waxe gret⁴]
- And þe walles were of Marbreston, Wyþ pykes of ȝre y-set þer-on,
oppon þe crest ful þykke. 4648
- Muche was þe noise & þat cry þat þo was maked in þat Cyty,
Among þe Sarȝynȝ wykke.
- A great giant
named
Enfachoun
comes out,
armed with a
mallet ¶ þan was þar a geant ful of pryde, And openede þe water-gate wyde,
ȝs name was enfachoun : 4652
- A mayl of Ire he bar an honde, Ther-wyþ þoȝte he þanne to fonde
The frensche to dyngre adoun.
- 8 feet long. þat heued þer-offen was wonder gret, & þe hilues lengþe was viij fet
of þat sturne staue. 4656

¹ crossed through.² mile [amyle].
⁴ crossed through.³ [þer] come thare.

Ys wyf was lyggynge on chylbedde For two chyl dren þat sche þo hedde His 2 children,

Wyp-inne þer-on a kauē.

þey were noȝt þe ȝut four mo[n]þes old, [A]c seuē fet of lengþe hur not 4 months old, are 7 feet 3 inches high.

ayþer was told, & þre enchen more : 4660

& twey large fet wyp-oute drede, Wel y-mete & more on brede,

boþe þe childrene wore.

Amyote hure damme, a geauntesse, Had y-kept hem wiþ busynesse, [leaf 62, bk]

Algate in-to þat day : 4664

A lodluker damme þan sche was on, of hide & hywe, of fleche & bon,
neuere no man ne y-say.

¶ Enfachoun ys to þe ȝeate y-come, And haueþ þat mayl an-honde
y-nome, & at þe barers he hym sette : 4668

And sayde, "Char[li]s, þou olde wrecche, Woldest þov oure relyqes Enfachoun
threatens
Charles.
fecche ? By Mohoun y wol þ^e lette :

And bote þou þe rathere beo agon, þou schelt beo ded & þat Anon,

Her riȝt þou schalt baslawe. 4672

And if Fyrumbras may beo taan, þat ilke false reneyed man,

He worþ honged & drawe."

¶ þan laid he on wyþ myȝt & mayn, And slow al þat hym com agayn,
With þat mayl quarree. 4676

Or Charli[s] tok oȝt myche kepe, Of frenschemen had he slawe an hepe,
þat tilde vp til ys knee :

þanne come þe Sarȝynȝ out And defendede þ^e barres al about,
& smyte strokes ourryde, 4680

& ȝyue þe frensche hard batail Ful many þar were with-oute fail ;

A-slawe on ayþer syde.

¶ Charlys þanne of ys stede alizte, & ioȝous ys swerd out he twyȝte, Charles
dismounts,
& to þe geant sterte, 4684

And smot hym an-heȝ on þe pan, þat wiþ þe dynt þat swerd him ran and cleaves
the giant's
skull.

Doun ryȝt þorȝ ys herte ;

þe geant fel to grounde an haste, þan were þe Sarȝynȝ sore agaste
& lefte þe barrers clene, 4688

& to þe ȝeate þan þay wende, And hure ȝeate gunne defende,

Wyp launces & gleues kene.

The Saracens
retreat.

¶ þe power of hem enpayrede faste, & þ^e frensche to þam shute¹ & [1 a word
erased here.]
caste, & rebuked hem foule with-ynne. 4692

FERUMBRAS.

L

þan cryede þe kyng wel an heȝ : " now helpeþ lordes, for we buþ neȝ,
our purpos her to wynne."

Four French
knights drive
them from
the gate,

¶ Wanne kyng Char[li]s had y-cryed so, Rychard and Reyner &
tweyne mo, Roald was on þer-ate, 4696

& þe furthe was þ^e duk Howelle, þat þo reculede þe Sarsyns fella,
A gret way fro þe ȝeate.

but are
themselves
shut in

¶ Now habbeþ þai y-dryue hem in wyþ strengþe Wyþ-inne þe ȝeate
an acres lengþe, þ^e kyng & þys barons foure. 4700

bot god now helpe þis lordes fyue In gret drede buþ pay of hure lyue,
þis lordes of honoure ;

[leaf 63]
and sur-
rounded.

For pay were be-set a-boute¹ With thre þousant at o route,
fyȝtyng men ful gode² ; 4704

And an hundred to þ^e ȝeate þan were y-diȝt To schutten it faste bote
pay ne myȝt, So hard þ^e frenche with-stode.³

Ful myche was þanne to done þere or pay moȝte þe barre arere,
þe ȝate to make faste. 4708

Ac Ate laste⁴ wyþ myche wo, þe ȝeate pay ⁵closede & barred hit þo,⁵
& þan Char[li]s wax agaste.

Charles is
almost in
despair,

¶ To god kyng Char[li]s prayde þo, Scholde hym saue . & his felawes
al-so fram combryment of þo felouns, 4712

& sende hym grace fayre to ascape, To do þe viage þat [he] haþ schape
On helpynge of his barons.

but Richard
cheers him.

¶ Wan duk Rychard y-herde hys fare : " Sir Emperour," said he, " lef
þy care, & tak þyn herte to þe : 4716

We buþ now her foule be-sterre, Bote if we ben þe betere of⁶ herte,
We buþ bot ded for soþe.

¶ Teche we now wat men we ben, For wel ȝe seeþ we moȝe noȝt fleȝn ;
ȝeld ous we mote or fiȝte. 4720

& ho-so þis day let take him quycke, In helle hadde he pynes wycke,
Ay þer to brenne liȝte."

Charles fights
fiercely.

¶ þat confort dude Charlis god, & gan to fiȝte as he were wod,
& sone haþ sleyn a hundred. 4724

So dude þe foure as men of mod, Nas no Sarsyn þat hymen a-stod,
þat nas to-hewe asounder.

¹ [al] a-boute.

² [þat schute til hymen & caste].

³ [it þrauste].

⁴ Ate laste [noȝeles].

⁵ 'barrede & wente þer fro.'

⁶ ben [of] þe betere.

¶ "Montioye!" þan Charlis gan to crye With ys voys wel an hye, He utters his
warcry,
þat al men miȝte yt here. 4728

Gweynes with-oute y-herde þat cry, And of ys lord þan tok pyty, which
Gwenylon
hears,

Ys treytour þoȝ a were,
& hasteliche heȝede he him to þe ȝeate; Ys kynrede him folȝede &
stode þer-ate, A þousand ate leste; 4732

Wel harde þat ȝat þay gunne assayle, And þay wiþ-inne with-oute and attacks
the gate.
fayle, defended¹ hem in þ^e beste,

And cast out trees & stones wikke, & þay fulle on hur heuedes
pikke², & dust hem to þe erþe adoun. 4736

Wan Alorys þe traytour þat y-seeȝ Anger ȝeode ys herte neȝ,
And sayde to Gweneþoun :

"Cosyn we doȝ gret folye her, To lete ous slen in þys maner, [leaf 68, bk.]
A-mong our fon ounwreste; 4740

¶ And þer-for y rede go we hen, & tak we wyþ ous our kynnesmen, Alorys pro-
poses to
retire,
& let þe oþre don hur beste.

Our kyng ys now with-inne þe walle, And Reyner of genyue, þat and leave
Charles to
his fate.
yuel him falle! & al þat³ falerede. 4744

Now schulle we of hymen haue vengeance, Ne comeþ þay neuere no
more in fraunce, bote þar þay schulle be dede.

& beo we delyuerd of hymen þus, y wot ful wel, be swete iesus,
of þe oþre we buȝ awreke, 4748

þat liggeþ at Egremoyne on þe tour; for sorwe her-of and dolour
hure hertes wollep breke;

& þan mowe we wyþ-oute distaunce Habben al þe realme of fraunce
At oure comaundyment." 4752

"Godes for-bode," Gweynes sede, "þat ich assentede to such a dede, 'God forbid,'
says
Gwenlon.
To don hym such traysement;

for þanne wer y wers þan any qued, If ich assentede to oure kynges
ded, Whar þat y miȝt hym sauē.⁴ 4756

for Of hym we holdeþ al our fees, We mote hym helpe in werre &
pees, ⁵With þe power þat we haue.⁵"

¶ "Certis," said Alorys, "þow dost noȝ[t] wel, Bote if þou do as y þe A'orys tries
to persuade
him,
tal, & herkne þenchesoun: 4760

¹ [&] defended. ² MS. pilke. ³ over 'pay.' ⁴ [þat ys my lord in lond].

⁵ [On al þyng þat]

If Char[li]s ¹be now par¹ a-slawe, þe othre þanne y-worþe be don of
dawe, þat liggeþ at Egrymoun ;
& þanne buþ our enymys ²alle dede² : & þar-for lef þys assaut y-rede,
& turne we aȝen to fraunce," 4764
but Gwey- "y wil noȝt," quap Gweynes, "be seynt Rycher, y wol hym helpe by
lon refuses. my power, As god me ȝyue god chaunce.
As lef me were my hed for-go, As in þys cas to fondye hym fro,
to wham we buþ y-swore." 4768
Alorys ys³ herte nez brak atwo Wanne Gueneloun had ansuerede
him so, So wo him was þarfore.
þe kynnerede of hem to-gadres goþ, And euerech to oþerward waxeþ
wroþ, & made disturbaunce. 4772
The French Wanne þe frensche y-seȝe þys, þe seȝe þey leste al clene y-wys
fall back. þorȝ hure fol distaunce.
¶ Wan sir Fyrumbras y saw þat cas

(A leaf being lost here from the Ashmole MS. the missing lines
are supplied as before from the original French, ll. 5006—5068.)

[Atant es Fierabras, qui fu moult bien armés ; 4776
Ferumbras A hautes vois escrie : 'Où est Karles alés ?'
with reproaches Et respont Aloris : 'Jamais ne le venrés ;
raillies the Enclos est Karlemaines entre ces grans fossés.'
French, Et respont Fierabras : 'Et vous ci c'atendés ?' 4780
C'est moult grant mauvaisté que vous nel secourez ;
Encore en porés estre de traison retés.'
Il escria : 'Monjoie ! baron, or i venés.'
and they Quant François l'entendirent, e les ravigorés, 4784
force their way into the Entresci au berfroï ne se sont arestés :
city. Là troevent Guenelon, qui moult estoit navrés.
Fierabras fu moult liés quant li pons n'est levés.
A l'asalir s'est bien il et Guenes prouvés, 4788
Et li autre François que il i ot menés.
As haces et as mans ont les portaus fremez ;
E les vous en Mantrible par vive poetés.
Then the Quant li traïtor voient que prise est la cités, 4792
traitors join them. ¹⁻¹ [wyþ-inne now ys]. ²⁻² [ded ecchoñ]. ³ ys [his].

Aprés aus s'en entrerent, les gonfanons levés ;
 Communaument i fierent o les brans acerés.
 Du sanc qui ist des cors i est moult grans li guéa.

Païen crient et braient et ullent par ces prés,
 Lors maisonz ont guerpies et lor rices cités.
 En plus de .C. parties fu Mahom reclamés,
 Et l'amirans Balans huciés et regretés :

'Sire, c'or venés tost, et si nous secourés !'

.I. Sarrazins s'en est de .i. grant estour enblés :

Desci à Aigremore n'est ses regnes tirés :

A l'Amirant sera cis affaires contés.

Humais orés chançon, s'entendre le volés.

4796

4800

Mantrible
is taken.

4804

A messenger
takes the
news to
Balau.

Au prendre de Mantrible fu moult grans la mellée ;
 Maint cop i ot donné et de lance et d'espée.

Quant Amiète oï le cri et la merlée,

Ki gist de .ii. enfans sous une cheminée,

(Ce est une gaiande plus noire que pevrée ;

Grant ot la fourcœur, et la geule avoit lée,

Et si avoit de haut une lance levée,

Les ex avoit plus rouges que n'est flambe alumée ;

Moult est de tout en tout laide et deffigurée).

De ses enfans se crient, dout ele est effraée ;

Se gesine avoit faite, nouvele ert relevée.

Uns Sarrazins li a la nouvelle contée,

Que ses sires ert mors, qui l'avoit espousée,

Et li fiers Karlemaines a la ville peuplée.

Quant Amiète l'ot, si est d'ire embrasée ;

Ele saut de son lit trestoute escevelée ;

Sa crigne li couvroit trestoute l'esquinée.

Devant lui esgarda, s'a une fauc trouvée.

Ja, taut com ele ert vive, n'est prinse cele entrée ;

De la gent qu'ele ocist a fait grant aünée.

'He ! Diex, dist Karlemaines, sainte Virge honuerée,

Là voi une diable plus noire que pevrée.

De mes hommes ocist et fait grant lapidée ;

4808

Amyote,
the giantess,

4812

4816

hearing of
her husband's
death,

4820

seizes a
scythe,
and kills
several of the
French.

4824

Charles with
a bolt from a
cross-bow
kills her.

Grant damage i arai se longues a durée. 4828

Ki a nule arbalestre, tost me soit aportée.¹

Li dus Hoel de Nantes l'en a une livrée

Et Karles l'a tendue, si l'a bien avisée ;

Entre les .ii. sourcis a feru la dervée, 4832

Que parmi la ceruele en est la fleke entrée.

La gaiande versa, la fleke est tronchonnée ;

Par la geule geta merveilleuse fumée.

Et François ont desus mainte pierre getée.

4836

The French
enter the
city.

Ains puis n'i ot pasage ne porte devée,

Ains s'en entra dedens la compaignie honnerée.¹

[leaf 64]

Now haþ Char[liſ] ²þe citee y-take² & sleyn echon³ boþ whit &
blake⁴, þat ⁵noble was & fear.⁵ 4840

Charles
remains in
the city two
days.

To dawes soiourned he & two nyȝte, þe Citee ⁶for to araye & dyȝte⁶,
After ys owe maner.

Alle þay habbeþ þar-yinne aslawe⁷ þat lyued on þe heþene lawe⁸,

þat þay moȝte of-take⁹ : 4844

In it he finde
a large
treasure,

Muche was þe tresour þat þay founde þan, of gold & syluer & ryche
stan,

& monaye whyt & blake.

¶ A tour þar was of a gret Array, In whych þe Amyral ys tresour lay,
Gold wyþ-oute nombre. 4848

which he
divides
amongst his
knights.

Char[liſ] hit delede wyth ys hond Among ys barons al þat a fond,
Aboȝen erthe and vndre.

¹⁰To alle men he delde¹⁰ ynow plentee ¹¹to euery man after hys degre¹¹

¹²On þe toun and there¹². 4852

¹³& þanne þay soȝte þe toun¹³ aboute, þay¹⁴ founde þe Caue ¹⁵þar-
without¹⁵ þar þe childrene were,

¹ On the top crossed through is:—

In-to ryuer ful þo þat qued þe remaynant of þe Sarȝyns ded
Delyured of gret & smal.

²⁻³ originally 'ytake þat Citee.'

³ [& dryuen out alle].

⁴ [Wyþ þe hilpe of ys baronee] 'þanne reate he þer & to refresschie his
baroun.'⁵⁻⁵ over 'erst were yn þe toun.'

⁶⁻⁶ over 'to riȝte in his maner.'

⁷ over 'þan Charliſ het to hys route.'

⁸ over 'þe Citee to pyle al aboute.'

⁹ over '& þe pylage to hem take.'

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ [Al þay hadde].

¹¹⁻¹¹ ['Of þe tresour þat founden hee.']

¹²⁻¹² over 'In-to þe leste' aknam(?).

¹³⁻¹³ [þan as þay wente þat tour].

¹⁴ [And].

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ with-oute [doute].

•—• [he laſte noȝt].

Whyche þat oȝte þe geauntesse, þat Char[li]s aalow in distresse,
 & schet hure þorȝ þ^e molde. 4856

þe chyldren þat were boþe gret & touȝt, By-fore þe kynges þay were
 y-broȝt, to don with hem what a wolde. They bring
the giant's
children
to Charles.

¶ Wan þay come to Charlis syȝt, A blessedde hym-selue anon ryȝt,
 As he to batail scholde; 4860

& sayde þanne on ys sawe, He nolde noȝt þay were a-slawe,
 for a somers charg[e] of golde :

þe kyng het anon riȝt þan, To an archebisschop þat hiȝt Herman, They are
baptised,
 y-folled þat þay were. 4864

þe Archebysschop fullede boþe anon, & Roland þanne he het þat on,
 & þat other Olyuere. under the
names
of Roland
and Oliver.

¶ þys was don on þe moneth of May, Wan þe foules syngeþ on þe spray,
 & erbes waxeþ grene : 4868 All this
happened on

after þe ȝer . þat our lord was bore, Nyȝen hondred & four score,
 þe twentyþe day y wene. the 20th of
May, A.D. 950.

þat þe touȝ of Mantrible conquerid was, And þe brigge ¹y-wonne
 þorwe his¹ gras. & þanne þe þridde day, 4872

After þe kyng had take ys reste,² Of ys barons clepede he þe beste, [leaf 64, back]
 & þus til hem gan say :

¶ "Lordes, & frendes, what redeþ ȝee ? Wham schal y leue³ þys Citee
 to kepe : of al myn host, 4876 On the third
day Charles
proposes to

þe whyle y wende on my vyage To socoury myn othre baronage,
 þat lȝþ on þe ȝondre cost ?"

"Sire," quap Richard, "be seynt Ion, þay buȝ rewarded riȝt anon,
 Hy þat schullap duelle. 4880

Roald Delamans þat on schal bee, And howel of Nauntes anoþer ys he, leave Raoul
and Howel at
Mantrible
 Certys by my wylle."

¶ Char[li]s sayde, "by god almyȝt, þow it hauest dyuysed ariȝt,
 After myn owe lykyng. 4884

þus barouns buȝ gode and suffysaunt For-to take such þyng an hant,
 god ȝyue þ^e his blessing !"

Sayde þay þanne to þe kyng : "If we her schulleþ beo leuyng,
 more folk moste we haue, 4888

¹-¹ [al-so þorw godes]. ² 14 lines added very indistinctly in the margin.
³ leue [in].

of 3our baronage & 3our gret power For-to leue wiþ ous hoer,
þe Cite for-to saue."

with 700
knights and

"3e schul haue," quaf Charlemayn. Vij. C. he¹ delyuerede to hem
payn, Til hem wiþ-ynne a-sonde.² 4892

all the
wounded.

And eke þe wondede men also, To soicourny there wyþ hem tho,
Til ³pay were hol & sounde.³

¶ þe Emperour þanne het an haste⁴ þat ys host were arayd faste⁵.

To ⁶wende on ys iornee⁶. 4896

þan were þe tabours faste y-bete,⁷ As þat host him lay in euery strete⁸
of þat faire Citee⁹.

The army
prepares to
start; they

Hure harneys þay gunne to trossye þan¹⁰, Baroun, & knyzt, & euery
man¹¹: bote nozt with hem þay nadde¹² 4900

take pro-
visions, but

Bot bred, & wyn, & flechs, and oten, þer-of þay toke as þay wer hoten,
god plente þer-of þay ladde.

no baggage.

Ac al hure harneys leuede þay þer, Cloþys, & paulyouns, and oþer ger,
And armedem¹³ on hure wede.¹³ 4904

And fayre þay ryde out of þe toun: Oppon blanchard rod¹⁴ Charloun,
¹⁵þat was ful god at nede.¹⁵

¶ þan Char[li]s gan to loke aboute, And be-holdeþ al ys fayre route,
þat spradde þo al þat cost: 4908

On ys herte god¹⁶ þankeþ hee, þat sent hym on erthe such postee,
To gouerny such an host.

"Glad," hym þozte, "may ich bee, Suppen y haue al þys barnee,
At my commandymment." 4912

[leaf 65] ¹⁷þan þankeþ he god eft of ys sond, & croycede ys fysage with ys hond,
& rod forþ in þat entent.

Balan has
gathered over
100,000 men
from 15
different
countries.

NOW haþ þe Amyral gadrid ys host On fyftene londes of dyuers
cost, To C. þousant and mo.¹⁸ 4916

¹ vij. C. [knyztes].

² over 'til hem of knyztys gode & kene.'

³⁻⁵ over 'he come aȝene.'

⁴ over 'Charlis het blowe hys bugle þen.'

⁵ over 'forto awarny þer-wyþ ys men.'

⁶⁻⁸ over 'remuwe þan an haste.'

⁷ over 'Sone þan were his hornes blowe,' ⁸ over '... puple heze & lowe.'

⁹ under 'guane to diȝt hem faste' over [Araid hem forþward faste].

¹⁰ over 'Forþ ward þay diȝt hem þo with he a.'

¹¹ over 'In hure viage smale and gret,' ¹² [ladde]. ¹²⁻¹³ [hymen at riȝtes].

¹⁴ [ys stede] and [þe stede]. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ [Amidde-ward alle ys knyztys].

¹⁶ [þane] god. ¹⁷ over '& euer he þewede to blowe bost, and [þan by-gan he].

Til he hadde tydyng.'

¹⁸ over 'to husedred þousant *of Sarȝyns wel fytȝng' and ('*of dyuerse cost*').

And Charlys wyþ þe hore berde An hundred þousant hadde on herde, And Charles has 100,000 men.
 þanne with hym to go.

Duk Richard þe Auawntwarde ladde, And Reyner of Genyue þat oþer
 hadde, As þ^e kyng it wolde. 4920

Richard þe contree y-knew ech del, þat host he ledeþ & gyeþ hit wel,
 þyderward þat þay scholde

¶ ¹A Sarazyn þer was & to þe Amerel¹ ys he come & telleþ² þys
 doynge al & some, & saide on his rescoun,³ 4924

In Mantryble how Charlys haþ by gunne Agolafre aslawe and wiþ
 strengþe y-wonne þe brygge & eke þe toun.

¶ Wan þe Amyral y-herde of þat cas Almost for sorwe wod a was, Balan, in a rage at the capture of Mantrible,
 & wep & gan to crye, 4928

And sayde, "Mahoun, þow art myswent, for now am y vndon and
 schent, þou art noȝt worþ a flye.

Wyckede god, þou dost amys, Supþe þow wilt suffrye þys,
 My worschip to wyþdrawe. 4932

Fyrumbras my sone dude ful wel Wan he for-sok þe euery del,
 þer-of may he beo fawe.

þow schalt abyge, so mot y go, For þow woldest consentye to
 to do me þat vylonye." 4936

An axe a sez afforn hym stonde And tok hur anon on ys honde, smashes his idols.
 And goþ to þe Maumerye :

þe ymage of Mahoun y-mad of golde Wiþ þe axe smot he oppon þe
 molde, þat al þat heued to-flente. 4940

Sortybran of Combles com wyþ þaat, "Let of," sayd he, "þou oundost
 þy stat ;" & of hym þe Axe he hente.

¶ "Sire," he said, "þow dost folye, To do Mahoun such vylonye Sortibrant stoops and reproaches him.
 Ase þou darest here ; 4944

For þou hauest y-schent ys face, Do make hym betere þan a wace,
 & amendem in þat manere."

Saide þe Amyrel, "me þenkeþ ille þat he suffreþ my worschip spille
 in tal þys countre wyde, 4948

& suffrede Char[li]s þe brigge to pace, Mantrible to take & myn men
 to chace, & to slen hem be euery syde."

¹— over [þan to hym þer cam]. ² [at] tolde [hym].

³ & saide [hym] on his [sawe].

[leaf 65, back] ¶ Sortybran sayde to þe Ameral þan : " Hastelyche, syre, let sende a
Sortibrant
advices Balan
to send a spy
to find out if
the news is
true :
man þat soþe for-to aspye, 4952
þat or þay nezȝ to nez þys cost þat þow mowe come wyþ þyn host,
& fize with hem an-hya.

þan schal þow þy worschip gete aȝe, And alen þe beste of þat meygne,
& take þe Emperour, 4956
& lete don hym þanne an-honge,¹ & wyþ hym þus þeues stronge
þat lyggeþ on þy tour.

And yf Fyrumbras may be take, þat haþ ys fayþ & ous for-sake,
let hym þat hed for-gon. 4960
& Florippe þy doȝtre þat ys ounkynde, To a stake þan let hure bynde,
And bren hure þanne anon."

¶ þan þe Amyral hym vnderstod þat ilke consayl poȝt hym god,
& saide it scholde be don. 4964
Toward Mahoun he humbled him þan, And after þe conseil of
Sortybran An aspye he sent anon.

and after to
make another
attempt on
the tower.
To þe A[myral] Sortibrant þo cam & sede "Let assembly þyn host, y rede,
3ond be-fore þe tour ; 4968
& we schul fonde wyþ strengþe & gyne, If we mowe þe tour y-wynne,
or þaym come socour.

And if hit² falleþ so by cas, þorȝ Ma[houns] help . & ys gras³,
þat we mowe him wyne : 4972

Or þe comyng of Charlemayn þe traytours þer schulle be aleyn,
& we be-leue with-ynne.

And beo þow on þy tour aȝee Of Char[li]s schalt þow noȝt ȝyue a stre,
for noȝt þat he may do." 4976

"By Ma[houn]," saide he, "þou sayst ful wel, And by þy counsail do
y schal, How so it euere go."

Balan orders
another
general
assault.
¶ þe Ameral het his hornes blowe,⁴ & þanne wente to armes heȝe &
lowe, Sarsynȝ & persaunt ; 4980
& þyder þan fette þe grete engyns Wel two hundred of Sarsyns,
by heste of þe Amerant.

A gret saut þay⁵ gunne to make, Summe þar schute wyþ boȝes of
brake, & summe wyþ gunnes grete ; 4984

¹ [h. ȝ.] an-honge.² [yt] hit.³ [þorȝ þe help of Ma[houn] & þorȝ ys gras].⁴ [þanne] blowe.⁵ [þanne] þay.

& with pengyns summe caste stones, Mo þan twenty sūm tyme at ones
 floze out at one hepe.
 So harde þay þrewe aȝen þe wal þat þe stones percede þorȝ-out al,
 forty with-inne a stonde, 4988 The Saracens
make a
brech in the
wall.
 And succh a gappe þay made þer-on þat a cart onlade myȝt yn gon, [leaf 66]
 had it beo neeȝ þ^e grounde.
 ¶ Ate þe wyndewes þanne stod Rolond & ys felawes by-syde him on The French
begin to fear
for their
safety.
 eyþer hond, Wel y-armed at o rout; 4992
 & þay seȝe Sa[r]ȝyns myne þe wal, Wyþ pykoyes & howes gret & smal,
 & wern al-most þorȝ-out.
 þus barouns by-gunne hym þanne to doute, And casten to-gadre al
 aboute, To kepe hem wyle þay moun. 4996
¹Stones & trees þan out þay caste & þe Sarsyns þer-wyþ quelledede vaste,
 & made hem tumblye adoun
 ¶ þe Ameral gan to crye þan: "Help now, Mahoun & Ternagan,
 þat buþ my godes of myȝte! 5000
 And lordes," a sayde, "now helpeþ ȝee, And sone we shulleþ han god
 entree, As ȝe schul sen wyþ siȝte. Balan cheers
on his men to
the assault.
 ȝyf we mowe now þe tour conquere ȝour worschip ȝe wynneþ & me
²for ere To be ȝour frend at nede. 5004
 & þay þat doþ me þys deshounoure Hy schulleþ be an-honged or dajes
 four, & þat schal be hire mede."
 ¶ þay assailedede hem þanne wyþ many a gynne, & wyþ strengþe þay
 þoȝte þe tour y-wynne, of castynge & mynyng eke. 5008
 And þaye þat þarto hardy were Laddres to þe walle bere,
 for al þe dupe deke, Some place
ladders
against the
walls.
 And sette þe laddres vp by þe walle þat was so broken & to-falle,
 As ich ȝou rapier tolde, 5012
 Wyþ þe dyntes of þe stones: & þar þay gunne gon op at ones
 Two hundred of hem y-tolde;
 Ac þus lordes defendede hem welle, And huld hem out with strokes
 felle, y-ȝyue with sward & launce. 5016
 þan nyst þay noȝt what ys þe best for þ^e Sarsyns wer eue^{re} y-lyche
 prest, to doun hem al greuance.

¹ [And caste out stones & heuy trees], *crossed through*.

² [& my loue].

Oliver pro-
poses that
they shall
make a sally.

¶ "What wille we don, my gode felawes?" Said Olyuer panne on ys
sawes, "We buþ on grete drede: 5020

We buþ her felawes tens, þat buþ doȝty men & kene,
to don al mannes dede.

Wende we out of þys clos,¹ & go we fiȝte wyþ our foos,
ȝonder out on þ^e felde. 5024

[leaf 66, back] More worschip ous ys to daye þare, þan her by-twene þis walles bare
With deshounour ous aȝelde."

200 Saracens
scale the
walls,

¶ By þat were stoȝen vp wyþ vygour An hundred Sarsyns oppon þe
tour, þat þay ne miȝte noȝt flitte. 5028

þar þe wal was broke þay stode affrounte, And laide to frensche strokes
rounde, þat hure haberkes ritte.

Ac þis barons hymen gunne mete, Wyþ scharpe swerdes & axes grete,
& ȝeuen hem deþes wonde; 5032

but are
thrown down
by the
knights,

þer was non of hemen alle þat sone nas fulled doun of þe walle,
Ded riȝt to þe gronde.

¶ Florippe, þat fayre mayde of prys, Clepede Neymes for he was wys,
And Geffray of Laungeuyne, 5036

And Terry of Ardane sche dude also, & to hymen sayde þat burde þo:
"Herkenyaþ, frendes myne:

Floripas
advises them
to appeal to
the Sacred
Relics,

Wolle ȝe lordes," sayde sche, "þe ryche relyqes eft-sones y-se,
þat y ȝow schewede ones. 5040

þe betere y hope ȝow may spede, & þe sykerer ben on al ȝour dede,
Hab ȝe hem seȝe eft-sones."

¶ "ȝea, for gode," sayde þay þan, "Faire þe falle for alle wymman
For þy gode profre!" 5044

and fetches
the casket

þanne hure tornde þat mayde bryȝt þar as þat schryn hym was ful riȝt,
& tok it out of a cofre:

and shows
them to the
knights,

y-come sche ys aȝen wel sone, & afforn hem þer sche hit haþ oundone,
& schewed hymen Aparenly. 5048

They kneel
to them and
pray for help.

Wan þe barouns had y-seȝen hem alle, On hure knees þay duden falle,
& cryde god mercy.

¶ þat burde bryȝt þanne tok hem out, & knelyng þay kussede alle about
þ^e relyques with gret honour; 5052

¹ [peryllous] clos.

& prayede god þorw vertue of hem Schold sauve hem thar fro heþ¹
men,¹ & sende hem sone socour.

¶ And y-herde hure orysouns : þ^e wyle þay were on deuociouns,
Sarezyns wer vp a-styze, 5056

Wel two . C. at o trome, & an-heȝ to þ^e wyndowes wer y-come,
& in y-lepe wel nyȝe : Some 200
Saracens
scale the
walls up to
the windows,
þ^e tour þay hauede y-take þo Nadde duk Naymes y-lope hem to,
As hit ful þorw grace, 5060

With þe releques þat he þo bar Riȝt to wyndowes [þ]er þay war,
& schewede hem on hur face.

þorw þ^e vertue of þat syȝt þe Sarsyns þanne gunne waxe affriȝt,
þat abide þay ne durste, 5064 [leaf 67]
but
at sight of
the relics
they fall
headlong and
are dashed to
pieces.
Bote fullen a-doun of þe walle, & so heȝe þay fullen alle,
þat hure bodies al to-burste.

"Lordlynges," quap neymes, "now mowe we knowe, þat þys buȝ
crystes relyques owe, by þis myracle here : 5068
þat day we seep þys tresour fyn ne dar ous adrede of no Sarsyn
to don ous any dera."

¶ þys lordes were þanne confortet² wel, ne dradde þay noȝyng þan
Amerel ne non of al þe hepe ; 5072

For þe relyques þat þay haue Hem þoȝte þay were þan al saue,
Hem-selue fram hem to kepe.

Duk naymys þys relyques custe aȝene, & bitok hem þat mayde [briȝt]³
& schene, & sche hem gan vp volde 5076 Naymes
returns the
relics to
Floripas,

On a clop of tarse, ryche & fyn, & suȝe sche polte hem on þe schryn,
& bar hem vp an-holde ; who replaces
them in the
casket.

And þan sche turnd aȝe ful ryȝt, Y-cloped in golde þat schon ful briȝt,
To þus lordes cam sche there, 5080

And Gyoun tok sche by þe myddel þan, & cust hym, & saide, "my
dure lemman, beo now of gode chere."

¶ At þe wyndowes as þay lokede out,⁴ þe Amyral þat stod among his
rout.⁵ be-hulde hire⁶ þat mayde fel. 5084

Wan he hur saw wel sore hym nuyde,⁷ And sone þyderward⁸ þus he
cryde,⁸ "Doȝtre, y-se þe wel ; Balan sees
Floripas at

¹ MS. for heȝemen men.

² MS. confortet.

³ crossed through.

⁴ [þanne lokede þay].

⁵ [& by-hulde þan Amyral and al ys rout].

⁶ [So duden].

⁷ [Wan þe Ameral hure seȝ hym gan annuye].

⁸ [he cryde anhye].

Certys y dude gret folye, Wan ich me dude on þe affye

To kepe my prysouns. 5088

the window
and threatens
her.

þe loue By-twene 3ou ! schal y breke, And of þe y schal beo a-wreke
& of alle þ^e 3ond glotons :

For þy dede þou schalt beo brent, And þay traytours schulleþ be schent,
Demembred lyme & lyþ." 5092

Floripas
abuses him
and shakes a
staff at him.

Florippe a staf on hur hond sche tok, & hym aȝen hure fader schoke,
þywyng hym þan þar-wyþ.

¶ þe Amyral hys hornes let blowe þan, And þe assaut al nywe by-gan,
Sherply þanne an-haste. 5096

Eyȝte & fourty Sarazȝyns Made he go þo to þengȝyns,
Stones þer-wyth to caste.

Aȝen þ^e tour þay þrewe stones, Mo þan twenty floȝe out at ones
of þen-gȝyns as we rede : 5100

[leaf 67, back]
The Saracens
make a
breach 24 feet
square.

Wyþ such an ayr fulle þay þan þat of þ^e tour þay affulde a pan
four feþeme on lengþ^e & brede.

¶ þe barouns þanne gunne waxe a-gaste, To þ^e maumerye Ro[land]
wende an-haste, And Olyuer, and Ogeer, 5104

& to þe mamettes þay buþ a-gon, Of golde y-maked and ryche ston,
þat was briȝt & cler ;

The French
throw the
Saracen idols
amongst their
enemies.

With þe ymages grete & þykke Slen þay þenkeþ þ^e Sarȝyns wykke :
Ro[land] tok vp Mahoun, 5108

And Olyuer tok vp ternagan, & Ogier Margot tok vp þan,
& bere hem to caste adoun.

¶ To hure defense þay buþ a-gon, & euerech him dressede to caste anon,
& eymede parto ymone : 5112

On þe þyckeste presse þat þanne was þere, þay cast out þe mamettes
alle yfere, & a-filde þer-wyþ hure fone.

The Emir
faints at the
sight.

¶ Wan þe A[myral] y-saw ys godes to-flend, For sorwe was he ful
neȝ y-schend, Sykynges a made ynowe : 5116

And sowȝnede, & wep, & ys hondes wrong, "Alas !" & "welaway !"
was ys song, & ful a-doun ofte y-sowe.

¶ Sortybrant¹ confortede him þan,² And bad hym stonde vp as
a man, & lete of care and wo. 5120

¹ Sortybrant [of Combles].

² *under, partly crossed through* ; 'þan hym confortede kyng Sortibran.'

Tho¹ was þe assaut y-leuyd clene, for þe Amyral was so fol of tene, The assaut
ceases.
And ne miȝt noȝt tendy þer-to.

“Ay! Mahoun,” quap þe A[myral] “whar ys þy myȝt? Why wolt
þou suffry þys ounriȝt, þat þay doþ þe þis² day? 5124
þyne fon me schendeþ & þe al-so, And þou ne takest no kepe þer-to,
þy miȝte ys al away.”

¶ þan hym spak syre Sortybrant: “Wyt þat þe selue, syr Amyrant,
y schal þe saye why: 5128

Bred & wyn, & corn plentee, & gold, & syluer haþ he send³ þe,
lordlyche to lyue þar-by;

Ac þou hym hauest foule myssayd, Whar-for he ne ys noȝt wel apayd, Sortybrant
declares
Mahoun is
angry.
of⁴ þyng þat he þ⁵ zaȝ. 5132

And ȝut nast þou noȝt amended his harm, Of þat þat þou breke him
heued & arm ȝesterday wyþ a staf:

Suffre þar-fore til ate laste, þat ys malencolye ben apaste,
þat he berþ to þe.⁵ 5136

¶ þan schal þou⁶ haue al þy wille Of hymen þat haueþ i-don þe ille,
& þat þou schalt wel see.⁷”

¶ þe whyle þay speke of þys matere, Com þe deuel amonges hem there, [leaf 68]
The devil, in
the form of
Mahoun, tells
On lyknyse of Mahoun þere⁸; 5140
& sayde þanne⁹ to þe Amerel⁹ Wordes þat wern¹⁰ y-her[d] ful wel¹⁰
to alle þat¹¹ þar were¹²

¶ “Balaan, beo now glad & blythe, & tak þyn host to the swythe, Balan to lead
his men agyn
to the assaut.
& assayle aȝen þe tour; 5144

For þay wyþ-inne buþ neȝ of-praste: þe tour þou schalt y-wynne an-
haste, & come to þyn honour.”

þan wax he glad & dude al-so¹³ & his hornes het he blowe þo¹⁴ Balan does so.
And so þay dude anon. 5148

An hard assaut þo by-gan, non scherpere y-saw þer neuere man,
y-mad of flesche & bon.

¶ Hure grete engyns þan þay bende, And grete stones þar-wyþ þay sende
to þe heȝe tour: 5152

¹ [þan]. ² þe [nyȝt &]. ³ [y-]send. ⁴ of [al] þyng.

⁵ [& þan schalt þou wel see]. ⁶⁻⁸ [þat þow schalt].

⁷ [What so þay euere be].

⁸ [þe] lyknyse of Mahoun.

⁹⁻⁹ [al aloud].

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ [y-lust about].

¹¹ MS. to alle þat al þat.

¹² [to þe A[merel] in his rescoun]. ¹³ [þan wax Balant glad ynowe].

¹⁴ [& het me scholde ys hornes blowe].

þe¹ walles to-breke, & al to-crusschede, Oueral þar þe stones dusschede,
comynge with vygour :

Some try to
mine the
walls; others
bring up
ladders.

Mynours² Jude & mynede þe wal, þe³ heze tour to maky hym fal,
& summe laddres bere, 5156

& aboute þe wal þe laddres lede. God of heuene þe barouns spede !
In gret peril þan þay were.

¶ þe assaut was huge and perillous, And þe cry oryble and hydous,
þat þe Sarzynes made. 5160

Sixtene pieces⁴ wer fulled to ground Of þe walles þat er were sond⁴
Wyp stones & slabbes⁵ sade.

Some 200
Saracens
scale the
walls, but

Sarzynes on laddres⁶ gunne vp steze,⁶ Wel thre hundred⁷ þan an heze,⁷
To þe⁸ gappes buþ þay⁸ come, 5164

& castem to entry in-to þe tour. Ac þys barons of gret honour
Aþeyn hem buþ ynome ;

With swerdes & axes scherp y-grounde þay affuldem⁹ with deþes
wonde, þar-to were þay boun¹⁰ : 5168

are thrown
down and
dashed to
pieces.

Ech on oþer þan gan doun falle, & breke hure nekkes to peces smalle,
So dupe þay fulle adoun.

¶ "Lordes," sayde þanne þe gode Ogyer, "We ne buþ bot ten¹¹ al-
oue heer, to defendye al þis flette : 5172

Ac of al fraunce her ys þe flour, Do we þat no man in deshonour
of cowardyse ous moze¹² arette.

By-holdeþ þys tour, þat er strong was, To-broken ys now in twenty plas,
wyp gonne & cast of gynne.¹³ 5176

[leaf 68, back] Ac by hym þat flechs of Marie tok, þe wyle þat lyf syt on my bok,
ne comeþ þer none with-inne :

þe whyle y may wylde with myn hond Corteyn my swerd, þat gode
brond, so Sarsyns¹⁴ schal y¹⁴ so cloute, 5180

þat a cartful y schal sle me-self ; And doþ 3e al-so on þoure be-helf,
& holde we hymen with-oute."

¶ Ro[land] ys swerd þan gan be-holde, And Olyuer hys þat was so bolde,
þat boþe bloody ware. 5184

¹ [þat] þe.

² [And þe] Mynours, &c.

³ [Of] þe.

⁴ [Wyp hure stones]. ⁵ [of þe walle þe engynnours hadde afiled al].

⁶ 'holes were y-.'

⁷ [wern vp a-stoze].

⁸ [oun y-loze].

⁹ affuldem [& 3yue].

¹⁰ over 'þay laid þo on þer helmes rounde.'

¹¹ ne bot ten [men].

¹² [eft].

¹³ [& sone þay þenkeþ hym wyne].

¹⁴ [wol y].

þan was þar non of al þe wacche þat ys herte ne by-gan to cacche,
 & to fiȝte mad hem ȝeare.

By þat were Saraȝyns stoȝen vp al frechs, And wer come inward at
 hard & neychs At a pan þat was broken ; 5188

Ac þys lordes hymen potte a-gayn, And habbeþ hem sone fylled & slayn
 & þat hole aȝayn y-stoken.

¶ "A lord," sayde Florippe þan, "Sone worth ȝeh a lost womman, Floripas
 Wel neȝ þe tour ys take. 5192 lament,

Wo worth þe tyme he was arerd, Of my deth y am afferd,
 Lordes, for ȝour sake."

¶ Gwy of Borgoygne sayde þan : "Ne say þou so no more, lemman, but is com-
 Y pray þe for þyn honour." 5196 forted by Sir
 Guy.

"Syre," sche saide, "y drede stronge For we dwelleþ her so longe,
 & ¹þar comþþ ous no socour.¹

Y hopede lemman, by my lyf, To han y-beo þy weddid wyf,
 & be cristned for þy sake. 5200

þan scholdest þow of al þis lond be kyng, And y þy quene, my swete
 þyng, & þy worldly make."

Tharwyth sche made a long sykyng, And hadde þan y-falle in sowen-
 yng, Nad olyuer hure vp y-take. 5204

þan was non þat mornynge nas Wanne þay hurde þat fayre of fas,
 How dulfly sche spake.

Duk Naymes þo gan loky out,² & saw comyng þ^e grete rout
 of Charl[is] with his host 5208
 Naymes sees
 Charles
 coming with
 his host;

On a mounteyne wyþ gret bobance; þe baner knew³ he ful wel of
 fraunce þat drowe toward þat cost.

¶ "lordlynges," sayde Naymes þan, "blyþe beþ & glade euery man,
 & lustneþ god tydynges:⁴ 5212

þat host of fraunce y seo her come Ful wel y haue it vndernome,
 be þe baner þat y seo brynge. and tells the
 others.

þe baner ys yborn be-fore þe ferde, & þat host hym cometh afterwerde,
 Al armed on armes brizte. 5216

þay spedeth faste on hure maner, Wel fayne þay wolde þat þay wer her, [leaf 60]
 yt semeþ me be syȝte.

¹ orer 'socour cometh þer non.' ² [A8] Duk Naymes þo loky[d] out.

³ [saw].

⁴ [god tydyng i wil ȝow schewe]

Of þat cost al þe feldes þay buþ al feld with spers & scheldes,
And wyþ men of myzte. 5220

þe Sarazyns schulleþ to-morwe haue A carful iornee, as god me saue,
Longe or come þ^e nyzte."

¶ þan hur spak ¹þat made 3yng¹: "y þonke god of þys tydyng²,
& marie þy³ moder dere⁴." 5224

Gwy tok sche be þe middel þan & custe hym⁵: & sayde, "gode lemman,
now am ich hol & fere."

¶ Now buþ þys barons alle blythe, & to þe wyndowes þay wente swythe,
& þyderward gun be-holde. 5228

Char[liis] and ys host come⁵ þay seze, þe⁶ baner of france y-bore
an-heze, þan waxen hy ful bolde.

The spy tells Balan that Charles is coming ¶ To þe A[merel] þe aspye azen ys went, ⁷Of wam y tolde⁷ þat was
y-sent To aspyen how it ware, 5232

And telleþ hym how þat Charlemayn Wyþ ys host hym comeþ agayn
With hym to fize 3eare.⁸

¶ þanne hym askede þe Amerel: "Wyþ how many comeþ þe fauterel
Wyþ þe hore berde?" 5236

with 100,000 mon. "Sir," quap he, "þar buþ y-tolde An hondred þousand of knyztas bolde
Comyng on ys ferde."

Sortibrant says they have twice as many. ¶ Sortybrant sayde, "þer-of no drede, þow hast þe doble on þy ferede,
Ay⁹ tweyne azen hem one, 5240

And þay habbeþ þe wrong & we þe riȝt; To-morwe we schulle wyþ
hym fize, & discomfytye hymen echone."

Charles halts in sight of the Saracen camp. C Harlys rod forth wyþ ys host, Til he cam negh þe cost,
Thar þe Ameral lay; 5244
& wanne a saw ys pauyllouns Abide bad he hys barouns,

No ferþer nolde he þat day.

The nyzt was come, þe day was gon, þe Emperour him liȝt a-doun anon,
Vnder an Aychs y wene, 5248

and they pass the night under arms. þat stod þe same playn oppon, þer þat þe Amerel his¹⁰ host lay on,
y-logged on a grene.

¹ [Florippe þe free].

² [3ea: ihesu god, now þank y thee].

³ [ys].

⁴ [of þys tydyng here].

⁵ [þan] come.

⁶ [And] þe.

⁷⁻⁷ [þat 3e hurde er].

⁸ [þare].

⁹ [eucere].

¹⁰ [&] his.

- ¶ Thar herborghede þe kyng & ys barouns, Wyþ-oute tentes oþer
 pauyllouns, Al þat ilke nyȝte. 5252
- For at Mantrible þay hadde y-laft Tentres, pauyllons, & al þat craft,
 þat þer-to scholde be diȝte.¹
- ¶ Ne dude no man þar of ys gere, Bot al nyȝt leyen y-armed ther [leaf 69, back]
 On armes of god entaile. 5256
- Hure stedes þai fedde with otes & bred, & hym-self dronke whit wyn
 & red, & eten of hure vytaile.
- ¶ On þe morȝnyng wan þe day him sprong, Charlis ȝeode ys host In the morn-
 among, & het þay scholden diȝte, 5260 *ing Charles*
 Boþe man & hors on such aray As þay wende at al asay *orders his*
 beo syker ynow to fiȝte; *men to*
 & þan behuld he aboute þe plas, & clepede til him sire Fyrumbras, *prepare for*
 & þus he spak him tille :— 5264 *battle :*
- “Fyrumbras, y loue þe for-þan þat þou art bycome a criste-man
 by þy gode wille :
- Wolde þy fader cristendom take y Wolde him kepe for þy sake,
 lost-les on euery syde : 5268 *Charles*
 Harm ne schold he haue non, On body ne catel, by seynt ion, *says that*
 for al þe worlde wyde, *if Balan will*
 Notheles he haueþ y-do me wrong, My messagers i-holde in prysoun *become a*
 strong, þat y sent hym yore ; 5272 *Christian his*
 Ro[land] and othere þat buþ me luf ; & þoȝ y now do hym gref, *treatment of*
 Beo noȝt wroþ þerfore.” *the mes-*
 ¶ þanne hym ansuerede Sir Fyrumbras : “Send to my fader in þys *sengers will*
 cas, Ys wille to wyte & knowe, 5276 *be over-*
 If he wolde assenty þar-to ; Leuere me were hit myȝt be so, *looked,*
 þan al þat god y owe.”
- ¶ “Y grante wel,” quap þe Emperer ; With þat he clypede duk
 Reyner, & Rychard of Normaundye, 5280

¹ In a faint hand at the bottom :—

Wan þe Amyral hym haþ y-herd
 Of ys tydynges he wax afferd
 þe assaut he lefte sone.
 & gon aȝen to hir loughyng *
 Til þay hadde† of hym warnyng
 What þay scholde done

* & het ys host go to hure logyng.

† [herde].

And askede of hem wham þay wil rede þat he schold sende on þat
nede, To þe Amerel of nubbye :

and wishes
Gwenylon to
take this
message to
the Emir,

“ If ȝe lordes willeþ assenty þar-to, Gweynes schal myn eraunt do,
for he ys fers and fel ; 5284

At þe takyng of Mantribe toun He bar hym as a bold baroun,
& prouede him þar ful wel.”

¶ Gweynes iherde þe kynges sawe, And sayde a wolde wende fawe,
& perfonye wel þat nede : 5288

to which all
agree.

& þaye¹ assentede on hym ȝeare þat Gwenes schudde to Ameral
fare, þat erand for-to bede.

[leaf 70]

¶ To hym² þanne saide þe kyng of fraunce : “ Arme þe wel for alle
chaunce, þyderward er þou wende ; 5292

Charles gives
Gwenylon his
instructions.

¶ For þoȝ þe³ Amyral⁴ be our fo, Til hym þe message þou most do,
þat y schal þe sende.

Say hym þat he his lay for-sake, & to cristendom him-silue take,
& lyue on god Almiȝte ; 5296

& þat he delyuery me my barouns bolde þat he haþ kept on ys holde,
long tyme aȝe þe riȝte,

And⁵ delyuery me vp on god aray þe Relyqes þat he bar away,
In Rome my Citee gret ; 5300

þe nayles three, & þe croune, þat perschede cryst on ys passyouna,
On hefd, honde, and fet :

And if he wil assenty þar-to, non harm þanne ne wyl y do
To hym ne non of hys. 5304

And yf a wil noȝt : as god me saue, Vengeaunce of hym wil y haue,
& loke þou say hym thys.”

¶ To Charlis þanne saide Gweneloun : “ þy message schal be wel
y-don, Sone with-oute drecche.” 5308

Gwenylon
arms himself,

Ys helm on is hed sone he caste, And let him lacye wel & faste,
& ys swerd me dude hym fecche.

A lep vp þanne on ys hors of werre, And takeþ til hym scheld &
sperre, Strong & god at nede. 5312

and goes on
the message
alone.

Oþer felaschip ne takeþ he non, Bot rydeþ forþ hym-self al-on,
To do þat hardy dede.

¹ [þanne] þaye.

⁴ Amyral [Balan].

² [Gweynes].

³ [To] þe.

⁵ And [al-so].

¶ As Gweynes hym prikede¹ ouer þ^e feldes, He metep² Sarsyns with
 speres & scheldes, þat kepte þ^e wacche þan: 5316
 þay askede of hem þanne an-haste, Why he prykede so wonder faste,
 & wyder he þoȝte gan.
 ¶ "Y am a Messenger," quap Gweneloun, "Y-send to³ þe A[meral]
 by Charloun;" & þanne þay lete hym fare. 5320
 Neuere ne astente he after þan, Bote prykeþ hym forth be-fore Balan,
 yn-to ys pauylloun ȝeare.⁴
 Gweynes was boþe hardy & wys, To þe Ameral spak he his avys, When he
 ne sparede he for no doute. 5324 arrives at
 Balan's tent
 "Balan,"⁵ said he, "to me entende. Charlis kyng to þe me sende, he delivers
 to wham þou most aloute. the message.
 Mahoun he hotep þat þow for-sake, And anon riȝt to folloȝt take,
 & by-lyue on god almiȝte. 5328
 Ys barons als þou scholdist him ȝelde, And þe relyqes þat þou dost [leaf 70, bk]
 helde, Al agayn þe riȝte.
 & if þou assentist to þys sonde, He ne wol no þyng of þy londe,
 bote lete þe in pes & reste; 5332
 & euere he wol the worschip do, & Fyrumbras þy sone wol al-so,
 þe wyle ys lyf wil leste.
 & bot þou her-of make þy fyn, He diffieþ þe and alle þyn,
 for with þe wil he fiȝte, 5336
 & discourmfity þe her & þy ferede, & putte þy body to schentful dede,
 for þy grete onriȝte."
 ¶ Wanne þe Ameral hym vnderstod, A clew ys heued, and riȝte ys Balan stamps
 hod, & starede with ys eȝene wronge, 5340 and fumes
 with rage,
 & prauuncede & blew as he were wod, & miȝt noȝt speke for his heȝe
 mod, or was after longe.
 And þan saide he to Gweneylloun: "How wer þou so hardy, stronge and asks
 feloun, come armed on þy stede, 5344 Gwenyloun
 how he dares
 bring such
 By-fore me her on my pauylloun, & þus vylayn[i]che on þy resoun
 þy message to me abede? a message,
 By Mahoun, on wham my be-lyue ys an, þou ne comest neuere," saide
 Balan, "to Charlemayn aȝene." 5348

¹ prikede [þan].

⁴ [þare].

² metep [wyþ].

⁵ Balan [spak].

³ y-send [be] to.

and orders
his barons to
kill him.

To his barouns þan cride he loud—"To-heweþ þes messenger þat ys
so proud,
Wyþ swerdes scherpe & kene."

¶ Gweynes þanne hym gan to doute, Wanne he saw to hym-ward
route
Saraþyns stronge & smerte; 5352

Gwenylon
draws his
sword,
and slays
Bruyllant,

A drow ys sward & smot Bruyllant, þat was kyng of Mountmyrrant,
euene in-to þe herte;

þe Saraþyn þat was of gret renoun At þe Amyral is fet hym fel adoun;
& Gweynes turnde hym þanne, 5356

and then
gallops away
as fast as he
can,

And rod out of þe pauylloun þorw al þat host with gret rendoun,
As faste as he may renne.

¶ þe Amyral ran after hym on ys fet, And cryde to ys host with herte
gret—
"Takeþ þan þef an-haste." 5360

pursued by
50,000
Saracens.

To horse þanne wente at o trome Fyfty þousant of armede gome,
& after hym prykede vaste.

Naymes sees
all this,

¶ At a wyndowe of þe tour stod¹ Neymoun, And saw how þay
enchacade Gweneloun, To slen him if þay myȝte; 5364

and tells
Roland and
Oliver.

Ro[land] þan clypeþ he & Olyuer: "Sirs," quap Neymes, "comeþ ner,
And seeþ a propre siȝte;

[leaf 71]

Fro þe 3ond pauyllons prykeþ a knyȝt, An-horse, y-armed, & weel
y-dyȝt, Wyþ a drawe sward an-honde; 5368

& hym chacyeþ Saraþyns, by god almiȝt, Wel fifty þousant y-armed
briȝt, To slen him dop þay fonde.

They
recognise
Gwenylon.

Me symeþ it ys a Messagээр, And Gweynes² hit semeþ² be siȝte her,
³þat rideþ þar³ al-one." 5372

"Parfay," quap Ro[land], "þow saist þat soþe, þat knowe⁴ hym wel
& ys stede boþe, god kep hym fram ys fone!"

Alle þay gunne þan god to praye, þat scholde hym coundye on ys
waye, & saflyche aȝen hym sende. 5376

Ac for þay wern for hym in doute, þey by-hulden him ȝerne & lokede
oute, Wyte þay wolde þan ende.

FOrth hym prykeþ sir Gweneloun Opon ys stede Chacebroun,
To-ward ys strengþ⁵ an hye; 5380

And þe Saraþynȝ after him prikede . þanne Ase harde as hure
hors miȝt renne, With noyse & eke with crye,

¹ [lokede out].

²⁻³ [as].

³⁻⁴ [as he ryȝd].

⁴ [seo by.]

Gweynes fleȝ forþ so wynd and rayn Til he cam neȝ amydde þe playn,
 & wigtliche he *turnd him þanne*, 5384 *Gwenylon turns and slays*
 And smot a Sarsyn of Agrymoun, þorȝ ys hed he clef hym down,

In-to ys brest a spanne.

Wyf tenebre he metef & suppe anoper, þat on was cosyn, þat oþer the cousin
was brother To þe Amyral Balanne. 5388 and the brother of
Balan.

Tenebre gurde he þorȝ þe brayn, þat oper in þe herte with miȝt &
mayn, And forþ he prykeþ þanne.

¶ Gweynes was boþ strong and feer, And ofte he tornde hym in þis
maner, & slow al þat he razte. 5392

& eft he prikede on ys way, And wau Ol[yuer] þat al þys cas y-say
Y-saw how wel he faʒte,

To Roland said he þanne ryzt: "How þeynt þe, felawe, be þis knyzt
 þat berþ hym þus wel al-one? 5396

Oliver
 admires
 Gwynion's
 prowess.

Ne saw y neuere o man *with* my syzt, Saf þe' bere hym betere in fyzt,
by god þat sit in trone.

Now wold it god on þys nede, þat y were by hym on my stede, and wishes
Baucyn of Melaunt. 5400 him.

þan schold y make hure sydes blede, An hundred of hem þer scholde
be dede. Of Sarsyns & persaunt."

¶ Of hys¹ doztynisse myche þay speke, Ac euere þe Sarazyns after When the Saracens
hym reke, To slen hym was hure mod : 5404

Ac wan þay þat frensch host of-seyn, þay wern agast & tornde aȝeyn, [fol. 71, bk]
 prykyng as þay were wod : see the French

To þe Amiral þay come sone þas, & tolde þat soþe how it was,
of þ^e Messenger & of þat host; 5408

And þat Char[li]s hadde on his ferede An hundred þousant on² a mede,
þat lay thar neȝ þe cost.

“Let ordeyn þyn host þar-for anon, þat þay beo^s araid euerechon
In armes for-to fiȝte.” 5412

þe Ameral het þanne his hornes blowe, & þat alle wer y-armed in a
throwe, & to batayl y-redy hem dize.

¶ þanne com be-fore þe Amerel ther, Fro ys broþer a Messenger,
 & told hym þys tydynges,

A messenger
telle Balan

5416

¹ Of hys [grete].

2 on [ys]

' [araid] beo.

that his
brother is
coming

þat ys broþer, sir Bruyllaunt, þat was kyng of heȝ persaunt,

Wyþ ys host was comynge,

with 100,000
men.

Wyþ an hondred þousent persauncȝ, To helpe him aȝen þe kyng of

frauncȝ,

And eke aȝeyn ys host.

5420

þan wax þe Amyral glad & blythe, And þankede Mahoun an hundred

syþe,

& gan to blowe bost.

Balan goes
to meet him.

His stede tok he þanne an haste, & aȝen ys broþer wende he faste,

With opre þat he gan banne.

5424

& wan þay were to-gadre y-met, Spillyng of speche þar was gret

y-mad bytwene hem þanne.

For Char[li]s þay saiden scholde be slawe, And Fyrumbras ys sone

an-honged & drawe,

& Flo[rippe] schold be for-brent,

5428

And Char[li]s host discoumyfted & slayn ; Thus þay talkede be-twene

hem tweyn,

As þay to-gadre went.

Their united
armies
amount to
over 300,000.

¶ Wanne hire hostes were to-gadre y-come, þanne was ther an huge

trome,

iiij hundred þousent & mo.

5432

Four dyuers tonges of Saraȝyns, Persans, torkys, and Arrabyns,

And Affrycans al-so :

Ful huge was þanne þassemblee. On thyrty partyes to-delede he

Ys Saraȝyns þe Amerel.

5436

now god to þe cristene take kepe, For þay ne habbeþ on hure hepe,

bote þe þridde del !

Gwenylon
tells the
result of his
mission.

NOw ys Gweynes come aȝeyn, & telleþ¹ ys lord, kyng Charlemeyn,

to-gadre betre & werse,

5440

þat þe Amerel ne dredeþ hym noȝt, Nouþer in dede ne in þoȝt,

þe value of a kerse.

& þat wanne he spak of crystendom, How he spatte & fyede þar-on,

& wolde hym hab y-sleyne.²

5444

[leaf 72]

³ And how he slow kyng Bruyllant, þat was kyng of mount-myrrant

¹ telleþ [to].

² y-slayne *corrected*.

³ *In a faint hand at the bottom:—*

þat host of Saraȝyns þan he beheld

þar þo by-spradde þe large feld,

iiij myle yn lengþe & brede.

Al a-loud said he þen :

" Her ys gret puple of heþene men,

god of heuene ous spede !

Alþoȝ þay beo mo þan we yn numbere,

Hure false fayth schal hem encombre,

& ek hir false dede,

þay haue þe wrong & we þe riȝt,

We schulleþ sle alle hem yn fyȝt,

Haue ȝe none drede.

* & if þou wilt ny . . . þat . . .

Com out þe self y þe pray

.

þanne kepe þe neuere . .

Bote i^a bere body . . .

* at the top of leaf 73.

A-forn ys owen eyne¹:

& þorȝ ys host al how he passede, & how þe Sarazyns hym þanne
chacede, & how he awayward rende; 5448

& how ²ofte he ²turnde aȝeyn, & slow of þe Sarazyns þat chacede
hym þeyn, xxx⁴ as he wende.

¶ Charlis swer by ³Milde marye,³ þat þe A[myral] & hyse ⁴þus Charles vows
scholde abyē,⁴ or þe sonne hure fulle. 5452 vengeance on
the Emir.

& þanne he clepede ys conseyll, And departede his host on .v. batail,
to-Riȝt as y wil ȝow telle :

Richard he takeþ on to lede, Anoper to Reyner, god of rede, He divides
his army
into five
parte.
⁵to G[weneloun] tok he þat þridde⁵; 5456

Geffray Hautefuelle he tok þe furþe, þe fifþe to him-selue þat most
was werþe, ⁶& held hem þar amydde.⁶

¶ þe Amyral þan spak to þat kyng⁷: “ Broþer, said he, þow most do
þyng, þat y schal þe saye. 5460

þow schalt beo þe furste þat schal gon Wyþ þyn host aȝen our fon, Balan tells
his brother
to lead his
force first
against the
French.
Ac o þyng y þe praye :

Ac if þou metest wyþ Charlemayn, Loke for noþyng þat he be slayn,
As þou louest myn honour. 5464

For in-to Aufryke schal he be lad,⁸ Wyþ þe opre ⁹þat me habbeþ
sory mad,⁹ þat liggeþ her on my tour.”

¶ þay ensemeble þanne to-gadre anon, þe Sarsyns blewe hure hornes
ecchon, to batail or þay paste. 5468

¹⁰Ac by-fore alle prikede¹⁰ Bruyllant, For prude & for-to make auant, Bruyllant
Wel a stones caste ;

And þanne he cryde and gan to sayn : “ Whar art þow, Char[is], þow challenges
Charles.
vylayn ? ¹¹Wat dost þov yn þis lond.¹¹ 5472

In yuel tyme duest þow pace Mantribe brigge, & oure men chace,
þou abiest it with myn hond.

þyn host þys day schal beo ded, And þow schal luse þyn hore hed
for þy fol outrage. 5476

¹ A-forn ys eyne [tweyne]. ² [he many tymes].

³ [ys croune of golde].

⁴ [abigge scholde].

⁵ [þe pridge to Gweneloun].

⁶ [þan takeþ Charlemoun].

⁷ [þe Amyral spak to Bruyllant kyng].

⁸ [send].

⁹ over ‘y haue yment [y-send].’

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ [& þanne by-fore alle priked out].

¹¹⁻¹¹ [y chalange al þy lond].

& suppe schulle we with strengþe of hond, Wende in-to fraunce &
 conquere þy lond, & al þyn heritage¹;
 þorȝ-out þy lond schal beo no page þat ys xij ²ȝer y-holde³ of age,
 So Ma[houn] me mote amende, 5480
 þat he ne schel ȝelde til ous truwage, Four floryns of gold of god
 coygnage Euery ȝer to rente."³

[leaf 72, back]
 Charles runs
 him through
 with his
 spear,

¶ Wan Charlis y-herde how he sayd, ⁴He tok (ȝ) as him ful wel arayd,⁴
 Blanchard he made sterte, 5484

And prykede to hym wyþ a spere; & þorw þe scheld & armure he hym
 gan bere, & þorw hys body him gerte.
 þe schaft was god & with-oute lak, And huld forþ styf, and noȝt ne
 brak, & he hit drow out with strengþe: 5488

then charges
 at Justyn,
 King of
 Turkey, and
 slays him,

And rydeþ aȝen þe kyng Iustyn, Of Torkye was he a strong Sarsyn,
 An⁵ huge man of⁶ lengþe;

Scheld ne haberke ne halp hym noȝt þat ys sper ys herte ne⁷ soȝt,
 þorȝ ys body and al: 5492

þe kyng ful ded of ys sadel y-gylt, And with þat strok þat sper was
 spylt, & brak to peces smal.

and after him
 Gargayn.

& þanne drow he ys sward of Steel, & metep wyþ Gargayn & hit
 hym weel On þe nekke with mayn.⁸ 5496

þoȝ ys auentaille were strong & god, He smot þo of boþe hefd & hod,
 þat al ful on þe playn.⁹

Roland hears
 Richard's
 horn blow,

¶ Rychard ys horn ¹⁰þanne herde blew,¹⁰ Roland hyt hurde, þat ¹¹soun
¹²he knew,¹² & gan to busky hym þenne.¹³ 5500

¹ MS. heritate.

²⁻³ [ȝer old].

⁴ At bottom, in a faint hand:—

þan Bruyllant brak him out afforn,
 & To clypy host he blew an horn,
 & þan þay come an-haste.
 "Go we þer-for to þam affront,
 & fȝte we with þo heþene hond,
 & maugre habben þat spare."
 "Amen," saide þay euerechon;
 With þat hert was vp anon
 & layn þay wel be þare.
 þan Char[lis] þat host haþ y-nome
 & esyly rydeþ at o trome
 & aȝen þe Sarsyns . . . of [brede].

⁴⁻⁴ [He ne huld him noȝt þar-of apayd]. ⁵ [ȝ] an. ⁶ of [brede].

⁷ [ground] ne. ⁸ [Al ys] mayne. ⁹ [playne]. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ [gan to blowe].

¹¹ [ȝ] þat. ¹²⁻¹² [gan knowe]. ¹³ [In þe tour þar he was ynne].

Ful wel wiste he by þat soun þat ys vncle kyng Charloun

Ys batayl ¹had by-gunne.¹

Glad was Rolond þanne and blythe, Ys felawes clepede he tyl hym and tells his companions:
swythe, & telleþ hem so² anon. 5504

þan waxe ³þayre hertes lyzte,³ & sone þay buþ yn armes dyzte,⁴ they arm themselves.
Sykyr ynow euerechon.⁵

CHarlys & hyse þat were wyþ-oute þe Sarazyns 3erne þay gunne
to cloute, er þay come of þe tour. 5508

Al þat Charlis wyþ ys swerd arauzte Hit ful doun ded at o drauhte,
So gret was his vygour.

þanne by-gan muche⁶ noyse & cry, ⁷þe frensch-fyhte to-gadre egrely⁷
Alle þat þar were,⁸ 5512

Boþe of Sarsyns and frensche men, Alle þey wende to-gadre þen,
& fozte y-same þere.

¶ þat batayl þo by-gan wonder⁹ fel, Ac¹⁰ þat frenchs host bar hym wel, A fierce battle ensues,
Wyþ speres & swendes y-grounde. 5516

To Sarsyns habbeþ þay 3yue anon¹¹ Of sturne strokes wel god won,
& mad hem grysly wounde.

Gret slaht was þar on hure syde, In¹² þe feld leye þay . with wondes
wyde, þat arst wer prout on pres. 5520

Moche was þe blod þat þar was schad, And many a wydewe þar was [leaf 73] and great slaughter.
mad, And many child faderles.

¶ With þat coms¹³ in a Sarazyn fier, Tenebre, þat was kyng of Byer, Tenebre, King of Byer,
On ys helm he bar þe croun,¹⁴ 5524

& dude þe frensche host gret damage, Why hys puple þat was sauage, makes great havoc amongst the French.
ful many þay¹⁵ fulde adoun.¹⁵

¹⁻¹ [dude þo by-gynne]. ² [þer-of].

³⁻³ [& þan waxe þay glad an sone hem dihte].

⁴ [And in fyn armure araid hem ryhte]. ⁵ [þys lordes] and [wel ynow].

⁶ [boþe]. ⁷⁻⁷ [And þe batailles en-semblede hastily].

⁸ At the bottom, in a faint hand:—

þe tweyn hostis assemblede þan

& ech til oper þan layd an,

& farsly gan to fyhte.

þay þat wern a myle þerfro

Myhte y-hure þe strokes þo,

Y-jouen on helmes bryhte.

⁹ [smert &].

¹⁰ [And].

¹¹ [þanne] anon.

¹² In [tal].

¹³ [smot in (?)].

MS. cons.

¹⁴ [& com forþ with ys fereede].

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ [sloze to dede].

Oure cristen men hadde þay put abak Nadde þay comen þat y of spak,
þe ¹barouns þat wer so preste¹; 5528

Roland and
Oliver and
their com-
panions sally
from the
castle.

Rolond, ²Olyuer and Naymoun,³ ⁴And alle þe doppepers þan come
adoun,⁵ Al y-armed⁶ in þ^o beste;

Stedes ne toke þay wip hem non, For ynowe þay founde⁷ withoute
gon, A-strayey on þe grene. 5532

þan out of þe tour þay goþ echon,⁸ And euech of hem ⁷hap tak⁷ on,
& sone werþ⁸ vp y wene.

Floripas begs
them to take
care of Guy.

¶ To þys barouns of grēt honour Florippe, þat þanne lefte on þe tour,
Cryngē gan to sayne! 5536

“⁹þe lordes of fraunce þat buþ þe flour, Kepeþ wel Gyoun my paramour,
& bryngeþ him me azeine.”

⁹To batayl faste þan⁹ gunne fonde, With scheldes enbraced, & spers
an-honde, ¹⁰þay dude her hors to gone.¹⁰ 5540

¹¹Wan þay ynto þe batayl¹¹ entred were, Sone þus ¹²habbeþ þorw
gon¹² there þ^o scheldtromes of þaire fone:

¹³And alle þe Sarsynþ þat þay gunne mete ¹⁴To gronde þay laid hem
with dentes grete, y-zyuen with spers kene. 5544

þar was non of hure helue þat nadde a-slawe mo þan twelue,
þat leyen þer on the grene.

They make
great slaugh-
ter of the
Saracens.

¶ Wan hure speres by-gunne to faile, Hure swerdes þay drowe of god
entaile, & laid on þan with mayne; 5548

Wyth strokes þat fullen as a foper þay laid doun¹⁵ Sarazyns ech on oþer,
Ded ryzt on þat playne.

þe Sarzynþ flozen hem¹⁶ for hure prow, Suche þat arst were hardy ynow
to abide er þay come: 5552

For hure strokes fulle¹⁷ so sare, þat Alle þat þay razte,¹⁸ lasse & mare,
Hure deþ þan¹⁹ þay nome.

¹⁻¹ over ‘[lordes] rapen yn my spelle.’

²⁻³ over ‘wyþ ys company.’

³⁻³ In the margin ‘þat þyderward come hastily [how] as y schal þow telle.’

⁴ y-armed [alle]. ⁵ [sezen]. ⁶ [anon]. ⁷⁻⁷ [þar-of tok].

⁸ [lup].

⁹⁻⁹ [þus barouns faste forþ].

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ [To þe batayl þanne, þay* goes]. ¹¹⁻¹¹ [And wan þay amonges hem].

¹²⁻¹² [barons þorlede]. * þay above the line.

¹³ under is ‘Sone þay made hem lefe þat swete, of þam alle was þar non
þat nad y-sleyn an hundred fon þan with-ynne wyle.’

¹⁴ This line crossed through. ¹⁵ [adoun]. ¹⁶ [floze hymen].

¹⁷ [were].

¹⁸ [smyte].

¹⁹ [of hem].

¹Al-so floze þe Sarzjyns Rolond¹ Wan þay aparceuede ys heuy hond, The Saracens fly before them.
 So² sperhauk ! doþ þe larke. 5556

For al þat þorw his hondes crep To deþe he dyngede hem doun to heþ, [leaf 73, back]
 With strokes sterne & sterke.

Alle þe feldes þan wern y-fuld Wyþ þe Sarsyns pat³ wern y-kuld
 In þat batayl wykke ; 5560

þorw-out al þe feldes wyde þat blod ran doun in euery syde,
 In stremes grete & þykke.

Discoumyt flowe þe remaynant, & after hem prikede duk Rolant, Roland and Oliver pursue and kill more than 100 of them.
 & Olyuer his felawe ; 5564

Ac or þay afferrede hem ozt myche þen Mo þan an .C. of þe heþemen
 Had hy tweyne a-slawe.

¶ Wan þe Amerel þat cas y-seþ Sorwe ȝeode ys herte neþ,
 To Ma[houn] he gan to mene : 5568

“ Ay : ” saide he, “ syre Mahonet, Lyte loue schewest þou me ȝet,
 þow hast for-ȝete me clene.”

He saw ys folk faste fleoynge, & frensche men after hem faste prykyng,
 þat with swerdes layde hem doun. 5572

Ys sword adrow he anon riȝt þanne, & prikede ys stede ! & he gan Balan charges at Howel,
 renne To howel of seynt Miloun.

þe Sarzjyn, þat was fers & smert, howel oppon þe helm he gert
⁴With his sword with⁴ mayne ; 5576

þorw helm, & coyphe, & bacynet, þe sword goþ forþ wyþ-oute let, and cuts him down,
 & sank in-to ys brayne ;

He ful doun ded þar al-so hot. & to Gauter beaufylþ þanne a smot then cleaves Gauter's skull,
 A strok þat was ys deþ, 5580

Riȝt on þe heued anoneward, & clef ys helm þoþ he war hard,
 & ys hed in-to þe tep.

Geffrey of Parys smot⁵ he als, And gurde his heued fro þe hals, and slays Geoffrey and Fourcheere.
 & Fourcheere sloþ he þanne. 5584

Charlis it sez & wax ful wroþ, & prikede Blaunchard & to him agoþ, Charles charges at him,
 As faste as he may renne.

¶ þan Char[liis] . a strok til hym gan mynte ; Ac hym faylede of ys but his sword glances off Balan's shield,
 dynte, for þat sword hym glente 5588

¹ over ‘Ac by-for al opre þay floze.’
⁴ [A strok with myȝt &].

² So [þe]. ³ þat [þar].
⁵ [þanne] smot.

- By-twene ys scheld & ys for arsoun ; Ac þe sadel & þe stede clef he
al doun, þorw-out al yt wente :
- and cuts his
horse in two þe stede ful doun on peces tweye ; þe Ameral dradde þan to ben a-sleye,
or he aryse myzte, 5592
- [leaf 74] Ac sone sterte he vp of þe forȝ, And Char[li]s stede a gerde þorȝ,
þat was so fair of sizte.
- Charles's
horse is killed þe stede was ded & ful adoun, On fote stert vp þo Charloun,
Raply al on hete, 5596
- & wyþ ys drawe swerd an-honde Alayd on þe Ameral wyþ þat bronde,
& ȝaf hym dyntes grete.
- and they fight
on foot. **O**N fote þanne foȝte þys princes bope, And layde on strokes wilde
& wroþe, With hure swerdes kene. 5600
- þe A[meral] was heȝere þan Charlys was þe amountance of a fotes spas
& sum-wat more y-sene.
- Ac ay faȝt Charlis wyþ herte god, And þe Ameral egerliche him with-
stod, & Foule with hym gan fare ; 5604
- Such strokes Charlis of hym haȝ hent þat scheld & haberke þer-with
was rent, & he was wounded sare.
- ¶ þan Char[li]s by-gan to waxe wroþ, & ful sterneliche til hym agop
& a strok on ys hed a-sett 5608
- Charles cuts
thru' Balan's
helmet, Wyþ ys swerd of¹ style broun : þe cercle on ys helm he bar adoun
þer-wip ! with-oute lette,
- & of ys helm away he bar A quarter ! & of ys cheke a schar
Myche of þat oþer syde, 5612
- & þan on ys schelde ful þe dent, & endelonges he hym to-rent,
ȝut gan he ferþer glyde.
- be ys iambeaus forþ he swarf & ys oþer spore þanne he carf,
Adoun riȝt by the hele ; 5616
- In-to þe erthe a fot and mare Ran þat swerd þat cam so sare,
þat was y-mad of steele.
- and calls on
him to
surrender. ¶ Charlis to þamerel þan gan sayn : “ ȝeld me þe relyqes vp agayn,
þat þou with-halst of myne, 5620
- & beo cristned and þat Anon, Oþer elles þov schalt þyn hefd forgon,
To morwen or y wil dyne.”
- ¶ Wanne þe Ameral hym vnderstod, For teone wax he almost² wod,
¹ [y-mad] of. ² over ' wel neȝ wod.'

- & to hym¹ he sterte, 5624
 And smot to² him a strok with mod With ys swerd ful scherp and god,
 & on þe helm hym gerte.
 Ac fram þe helm þat swerd him glente As þat Char[li]s cornel þar-wyþ Balan smites
Charles on
the helmet,
but to-flente, & þe dynt ful on ys schelde, 5628
 And þe stronge scheld þer-wyþ to-rente; Ac ȝut þe strok ys ferþer
 wente, noþyng þe dynt ne athelde,
 *And ful³ opon ys genyllere, & bar away ys chauceore, [leaf 74, back]
 Of yre & styl y-mad. 5632
 boþe ys spores a-doun he schar In-to þe erthe two fet & mar,
 þe strok þat was so sad.
 Wyþ þe schakyng þat he gan make þo Ys swerd to-brak on peces two, his sword
breaks in
two; & þan gan he to doute. 5636
 Ac al þat was of ys swerd y-leued Caste he þanne aȝe Char[li]s heued,
 & an anlas þo droȝ oute, he draws his
dagger,
 And egerlyche to Charli]s ran And hente hym by þe nekke þan, and seizes
Charles by
the neck.
 & foygnede hym with þat knyf: 5640
 Nad he be y-armed þe betere y wys, & rathe⁴ to him⁴ come socour of hys,
 he had him be-nome ys lyf.
 ¶ Ac⁵ þer komen on companye, Roland & Rychard of Normandye, Roland and
others rescue
him, Olyuer & Ogier, 5644
 And myche⁶ of hys oþer baronye, And departede hymen twye:
 & þan A[mer]al þo toke ther, and take
Balan
prisoner.
 & to þe erthe þanne hem caste; Olyuer wyþ a corde bond him fast,
 Ac arst was mucche ado: 5648
 To Hardree had he a strok y-ȝyue Wyþ ys fuste, and al to⁷-dryue
 Ys chekbon neȝ a-two:
 Nad his auentaile y-beo þat heel, France had þo be delyured weel
 of a ful traytrous man; 5652
 For wyþ þe strok had he beo ded, & þan hadde mucche harm be aled,
 þat ful þo after þan.
 ¶ With þat com prikyng sir Fyrumbras And saw ys fader on⁸ þe Ferumbras
advises his
father to
submit. plas, y-bounde honde & fet: 5656

¹ [æ til hym þan]. ² [til]. ³ [bote sanke].
⁴ [y]. ⁵ [Ac þe laste þanne]. ⁶ [al] þat.
⁷ 'neȝ to' written over. ⁸ [ligge] on.

"Fader," sayd he, "þow dost folye þat þow ne wolt þyn herte abyge
 To Char[li]s þat ys so gret;
 Y rede þow do as he wil saye, & þanne for þe wol y praye
 þat he schal þe kepe & saue. 5660
 & al þy londes & þyn honours, & alle þy castels & alle þy tours,
 Aȝeynward schaltou haue¹."

Balan curses
 and threatens
 him.

¶ "Hold þe stille," sayde he þan, "Art þow bi-come a crystenman?
 Ma[houn] do þe wrake! 5664
 & if y my power rekuere aȝe, Wel heȝe schalt þou an-honged be,
 Whar þou mowe beo y-take."

[leaf 75] ¶ Wanne Fyrum[bras] y-herde how he tolde, For hym ys herte sat ful
 colde, Ac no more ne saide þo²: 5668
 for³ þat ys fader by hym wolde⁴ noȝt, Ne of his counsail noþynge ne
 roȝt, On his herte hym was wo.

The Emir is
 set on a mule,
 and Charles
 leads him

Sone þas was þar a mule y-fet, And þe Amerel was ther-on y-set;
 To Char[li]s was broȝt a stede, 5672
 þe kyng lep on hym fayr & wel, & ledeþ wyþ hym þan Amerel,
 þat dulful was þo for drede;

to Egremont. In-to Egrymoygne he hadde hym þen, Wyþ twenty þousant of frensche
 men, þe remanaunt by-lafte he þare, 5676
 Fyȝtyng oppoun hure enemys, Affrycans, Persantz and tourkys,
 þat sone were broȝt in care.

The Saracens,
 seeing this,
 fly,

¶ Wanne þe Sarsyns y-seȝe þat cas þat þe Amerel yn þe feld y-take
 was, & so y-lad hem fro, 5680
 þay floȝe away on euery syde, þar was non þat þerste abyde,
 Hure song was, "welewo."

but Roland
 and his

Ac Roland and hys companye⁵ Broȝte hym in⁶ aȝen an hye
 & faste þay sloȝe hure fon⁶; 5684

companionous
 pursue and
 slay them
 till night.

Fram was non til þe nyȝte Ne cessede þay neuere for to fiȝte
 bot euere⁷ so layd hem on.⁷

¶ By þat þe nyȝt hym was y-come, þe Sarsyns were slawe al & some,
 þat þay myȝt of take. 5688
 þe frenschemen þanne to hure herburghes wende, And of þe mete and
 drynke þat god hem sende, Murȝe þav dude hem make.

¹ over for hym þan moȝt þou haue. ² [þat he hym ansuerede so].

³ [&] for. ⁴ [do] wolde. ⁵ over a-druwe (?) hym yn.

⁶ [& harde layde hem on]. ⁷⁻⁷ [sloȝe hure fon] and [til þay wer ded ecchon].

ON þe morwe wan þe soune schon, Char[li]s of-sente ys barons Charles distrib-
 ecchon, And among hem departeþ þanne 5692 the treasure,
 Of þat gold & of þat geryzoun þat he fond on þe tour & on þe toun,
 Y-now to euery manne.
 An Archebysschop he oepede after þaat, And bad hym ordeyne an and orders
 huge vaat, Ful of water clere; 5696 the Arch-
 And his orysouns saye oppon, As he wolde fully ther-on bishop to
 þan Amyral þat was þere, prepare a
 þe Bysschop wente aboute sone þe kynges heste for-to done, huge vat,
 for þat hym þoʒte god; 5700 wherein to
 & waz he had al aboute y-soʒt, To a gret holw marbre was he broʒt, baptise
 þat wyþ-ynne þe paleys stod; Balan.
 Whych was wonyd beo fillid wyþ wyn At euerech gret feste of which was
 appolyn, þat þ^e A[meral] holde wolde; 5704 filled with
 Wyth water was fulled þo þat¹ ston, And² þe bysschop hit blessedde wine at the
 anon, as Char[li]s] het he scholde. Emir's feaste,
 ¶ þe Emperour het come his baronage, That þer was þanne wel sauage, is prepared,
 to³ seen þat selcouþ syʒte. 5708
 And suppe of-sente he after þan After þe Ameral, syre Balan,
 be barons threo wel wyʒte,
 Roland, Olyuer, and Ogyer; þilke thre þo fette hym ther,
 & broʒt hym forþ anon, 5712
 by-fore þe emperour þat hym abod And he het anon þar as he stod, and Charles
 Dispoily hym by-fore þe ston. orders Balan
 ¶ Wan þay by-gunne ys cloþys of-do Myche strif made þe Amerel tho, to be un-
 And tornde & wende faste, 5716 dressed.
 Ac Roland and Olyuer hulde hym so, That whather he wolde oþer no, but in vain.
 ys cloþys of thay caste.
 ¶ þe Emperour sayde to hym þan—"þou schalt ben a crysteman,
 & ben y-follýd here; 5720
 And if þou wolt þer-to beo broʒt, Of þyne ne schalt þow lese noʒt, Charles tell-
 þe worthy of a pere: him that if
 Ac arst þou most for-sake Mahone, And be-lyue on gode sone, he will
 þat in marye y-kened was; 5724 become a
 Christian his
 possession
 will be
 restored,

¹ fulled þat [ilke].³ [for] to.² And [þan].

and repeats
to him the
articles of
the Christian
faith.

& suppe of hure body y-bore, Wyp-oute wem & wyp-oute hore,
As sunne goþ þorȝ þ^e glas.

þow most al-so be-lyue thus, þat he suffrede deþ for vs,
To kepe ous fram helle pyne; 5728

& þat he a-ros þe þridde day, And to helle tok þo þe way,
And delyuerede þar is hyne;

And þat he þer-after to heuene steȝ, & syt on ys fader riȝt hond
an-heȝ, & ys in trynnytee: 5732

And suppe sente þe holy gost To ys decyples he louede most,
And het men y-fulled bee:

þou most byleue on holychurche, After hure lawe for-to wurche,
And on for-ȝyft of synne; 5736

And on þe dredful domes-day, Wan ech man schal ryse on such aray
As he¹ dayeþ ynne,

And come be-fore god present, And fonge ther ys iuggymment,
to ioie oþer pyne to wende, 5740

After þat: þat hy doþ heere, Body & saule to dwelle y-fere,
Euere wyp-outen ende,

[leaf 76] ¶ Bylyf þou as y haue þe tauȝt, And on þys water tak fullauȝt,
& þys schal beo þy mede; 5744

þy body and þy catel þan myȝt þou saue, And heuene blisse al-so haue,
If þou dost þat dede."

Balan swears
nothing will
induce him
to be bap-
tised, and
smashes the
vessel.

¶ Wan þe Amerel haþ iherd hym telle, Contenance made he fers &
felle, & fram hym tornde away: 5748

And bytok hym-selue þe deucl of helle, If he wolde euere wyp
folloȝt melle, Terme of ys lyues day;

Ne Mahoun wolde he neuere for-sake, For drede of deþ ne for þe
wrake, to be ded þer for þe riȝte. 5752

For Angre sake þanne he swatte, & þan ston a cracchede & in a
spatte In dispit of god almyȝte.

¶ Wan þe Emperour y-hurd him speke so, Wonderly wroþ þan wax
he þo, Ys swerd þan gan he draȝe; 5756

Ne hadde Fyrumbras ys sone y-ben þat þo wente hem be-twen,
A wold him haue a-slaze.

¹ [hem self].

- ¶ Fyrumbras huld þan Emp[er]our, And prayede him cesse of his
 rauncour, & he wolde eft asaye, 5760
 If he miȝte wyþ any colour Brynge him ȝut of his errour,
 In-to þe betere waye.
- ¶ þanne spak Florippe, þat burde bryȝt—"Syr Emperour, þow dost
 noȝt aryȝt, To tarye þus¹ for ys sake. 5764
 ȝe hadde don wel, by god almyȝt, Had ȝe¹ do alen him ȝesternyȝt,
 Wan þat he was take."
- ¶ þe Emperour huld ys swerd an-honde, And askode aȝen whar he
 wil fonde to lyue on cristes lay, 5768
 And Mahou ys false god for-sake, And crystendom þar by-fore hym
 take Wyþ-oute more delay :
- & if a wolde, þat hit were so, A wolde be ys frend for euere-mo,
 On what lond þat he lende ; 5772
 And þat he nel by-nyme hym lond ne fee, Bot euere scholde² beo
 to hym pryuee, In-to ys lyues ende.
- ¶ þan Fyrum[bras] ys sonne hym sette on knen By-fore ys fader¹ &
 cryede aȝen—"Mercy, fader," he sayde, 5776
 "Swete fader, do hys lykyng, And ne make þer-of no more taryyng,
 for gode loue y pray þe.
- And þan myȝtoun haue al þyn Awe, And libbe þy lyf on godes lawe [leaf 76, bk]
 & kepe þe so fro sore ; 5780
 And þilke þat buþ now þyn fon Wolleþ þe louye euerechon,
 & worschypy þe euere-more."
- ¶ "Y graunte," quath he þan¹ : "haue y-saied How þat þys water ys
 arayed, þat y schal plunгы on." 5784
 þan was Fyrumbras glad & blythe, And þanked god ful many a sythe,
 & broȝte hym to þe ston.
- Charlis þasne hym wax ful glad, And hopede a wolde be *christen* mad,
 So wern þe oþre barouns. 5788
 þe bysschop stod þer¹ þo þat had Y-blessed þe fant, and ouer y-rad
 Alle ys orysouns.
- ¶ þe bysschop sayde to þe Ameral þan—"If þou wilt ben a crysteman,
 Mahoun þou most for-sake, 5792

Ferumbras
offers to try
to persuade
his father to
give way.

Floripas
urges Charles
to slay Balan.

Charles again
asks Balan if
he will be-
come a
Christian.

Ferumbras,
too, on his
knees

implores his
father to
consent.

[leaf 76, bk]

Balan yields.

The Bishop
tells him he
must before
all renounce
Mahomet.

¹ MS. he.

² scholde [he].

Aller-ferst by-fore ous here, And suppe stape in-to þis water clere,
þan schaltou fullozt take."

Balan nearly
breaks his
jaw-bone
with his fist,
þe A[meral] þan wropeliche hym gan beholde, And gurde hym with ys
fuste y-volde, Ageyn ys cheke an-haste, 5796
þat þre tēp sterte out of þe bon, & nadde Ogger þo by-twene hem gon,
He wolde him habbe of-praste.

¶ þanne saide þe Ameral with egre mod—"Wat wenestow, glotoun,
þat ich be wod, Schold y for-sake my drizte, 5800
and then
spits on the
font.
And beo plunged on pys marbre ston?" In dispyt of cryst: þan spat
he þer-on, by-fore hure Aldre syzte.

¶ þo wax Charlys wonder grym, And clepede Fyrum[bras] & spak
to hym, In þ^e maner as y schal sayne:— 5804

"Fyrumbras, as þow art me lef, Ne tak yt nozt to no¹ gref,

þoz y putte hym to is peyne,

Suppe he wil nozt christened be, Bot haþ now in dispyt of me

My bysshop y-bete sore: 5808

And afterward, in þe dyspyt of crysst, Spet on þe fant as þow her
sysst, ne pray þow for hym no more."

Fyrumbras
bays on his
knees for
another
chance.
¶ Wan Fyrumbras herd hym speke so, For ys fader þanne hym was
so wo He nyste wat þo to² done: 5812

Bote by-fore hym on ys knes a cryde þat a wolde ȝut a-byde

Wyþ hym til eft-sonne,

þat he hym hadde eft by-sozt, & bot if he þanne wold take fullozt,

As he hym wolde abette, 5816

[leaf 77] Hys wille wyþ hym do a scholde & gurde of his heued ȝyf a wolde,
No lenger wold he him lette.

Florippe says
it is only a
waste of
time.
¶ To þe Emperour saide florippe þan—"Wy tariest þou so longe wyþ
þat man, þat haþ þe & þyne agreued? 5820
Al ys for nozt! ȝe A-boute goes, ȝe ne bringeþ him neuere to ȝoure
purpos, y leye þer-to myn heued."

Fyrumbras
remonstrates
with her.
¶ Til hure þan saide sir Fyrumbras—"Sustre ne ys he þy fader;
alas! Tak of hym pytee: 5824

He þe gat & forþ þe brozte, Thar-for ert þow mys-byþozte,

To procury hym to slee.

¹ yt [now] nozt to.

² wat [myzt].

- Wyþ wilde hors mot y beo drawe, Bot y wolde her riȝt fawe
A lyme of me for-gon, 5828
- Wyþ þat he y-folled¹ wolde bee On þat water þat² here [3e] see
standyng her on þys ston."
- Wyþ þat he wep & syȝte sore, As he þanne stod hym by-fore,
& þus til hym gan telle— 5832
- "Swete fader, chaunge þy þoȝt, And elles þow worst to deþe y-broȝt, Ferumbras
þan goþ þy saul to helle. with tears
implores
his father
to give way.
- And if þow wolt be y-fulled heer þar-of þanne ert þow . skeer,
& heuene myȝt þou craue. 5836
- And leue lordlich on þyn owe, And habbe at þyn heste heȝe & lowe,
As þou wer woned to haue.
- And ther-for, swete fader myn, [Fo]rsak Mahoun and Appolyn,
þat buþ noȝt worþ a flye; 5840
- And be-lyf on cryst, and cristned be, And þanne schalt þow þryue & þe,
& god lyf schalt þou drye?"
- ¶ "Sone," sayde þe Amerel þan, "By Mahoun þou art a nycy man, But Balan
þat þou dost me rede 5844 says he will
never consent
to believe on
a man who
was crucified
for his own
misdeeds.
- To by-lyue on such a mon þat was on a croys y-don,
for ys owe mysdede.
- Y diffye hym her and alle hyse, By Mahoun y nolde ȝyue a pyse,
for cryst ne al ys myȝte. 5848
- Nel y neuere on hym be-lyue, Ne beo y-fulled on my lyue,
to dye þarfore her riȝte."
- Wan þat Fyrumbras y-knew ys þoȝt, & þat he ne myȝt hym turnne
noȝt, On herte hym lekid ille. 5852
- To kyng Charlys sayde he þan—"Doþ now syre by thys man [leaf 77, bk]
- As it is þy wille;
- Certys y ne haue now no wonder þoȝ ȝe hym do hewe ech lyme on
sonder, þorȝ-out flechs & bon, 5856
- Supþe he wil noȝt for no pray Belyue on god ! & for-sake ys lay
Ne folloȝt take non."
- ¶ þan Char[li]s askede of ys men a-boute, Hwych of hem wolde of al Charles asks
þe route Sle þat heþene hounde. 5860 who will be
executioner
- Ogyer hym ansuerede—"y wil hym slo, For myche tene he haueþ Ogyer says he
me y-do, Her ys his bane y-founde." will;
- ¹ y-volled corrected. ² þat [stent].

Ys swerd a drow þat het corteyn, Wel many a Saraȝyn had he sleyn
thar-with thar by-fore. 5864

and with one
blow cuts off
Balan's head.

Ogier in the nekke thar-wyþ hym gerte, þat þe heued fro þat body
sterste, ys owen lengþe & more.

Roland calls
on Guy to
fulfil his
promise.

1 Wan þe A[meral] Balan was a-slawe Florippe com forþ & was wel
fawe, & [. . asked (?)] kyng Charloun, 5868
& sayde, "syre kyng, as þou art wiȝte, And y haue ben trewe to þyne
kniȝte (?), [Now] graunte to me Gyoun."

"Damesele," quap Roland, "þow sayst ryȝt, þow schalt hym haue by
god almyȝt." þan spak he to þat hende— 5872

"Gy of Borgoygne, do as þow hyȝt, Ant tak þys lady fair & briȝt,
In-to þy lyues ende."

'Willingly,'
says Guy,
'if Charles
will give his
consent.'

"Wel gladlych," saide Gyoun þo, "So þat myn vncle assenty to,
þe Emperour Charlemayn." 5876
þan saide Charlys—"god for-beode þat y anentes þilke neode
+ Any-þyng sayde a-gayne."

Floripas
undresses
herself.

¶ þe Damesele dispoilled hure þanne anon, Hyr skyn was as whyt so
þe melkis fom, fairer was non on molde: 5880
Wyþ eȝene graye, and browes bent, And ȝealwe traces, & fayre y-trent,
Ech her semede of gold.

Hure vysage was fair & tretys, Hure body iantil and pure fetys,
& semblych of stature. 5884

She is so
beautiful

In al þe world ne miȝt be non fayrer wymman of flesch & bon,
þan was þat creature.

that all the
lords full in
love with her.

¶ Wan þys lordes had seyȝen hur naked, In alle manere wyse weel
y-maked, On hure þay toke lekynges. 5888
Was non of hem þat ys flechs ne-raas, Noþer kyng, ne baroun, ne non
þat was, Sche was so fair a þynges.

1 N, crossed through, the rest erased and written over.

+ Ponatur in loco isto ~~¶~~; pointing apparently to some lines on the
opposite page, which is wanting, but probably referring to the following lines
which are added in the margin below:—

"To y pligte my troupe ȝore To haue & holde for euer-more
On wedlak fre
For was do my power To saue þe"

[End of MS.; the missing lines are supplied as before from the
French original.]

- [L'empereres méismes en a .i. ris jeté ;
 Pour tant s'il ot le poil et canu et mellé, 5892
 Si éust il mout tost son courage atorné.
 Ens es fons c'on avoit pour Balant apresté,
 Ont donné la puciele sainte crestienté,
 Et par nom de bautesme ont son cors generé. 5896
 Karlemaines le tint au courage aduré,
 Li dus Tieris d'Ardane, ensi l'ont esgardé,
 Il ne laisierent homme qui de mere fust nés.
 Ne li ont pas son nom cangié ne remué ;
 Après, a la puciele son gent cors conraé.
 Tout droit enmi la plaice en sont avant alé ;
 Iluec a l'arceveques l'un à l'autre donné.
 La couronne Balant a Charles demandé, 5904
 Floripas en couronne et Guion le sené ;
 Puis les a l'arcevesques benéis et sacrés.
 A Guion de Borgoigne rent Karles le rengné,
 A Fierabras en a l'une moitié donné ;
 De Guion le tenra par droite loiauté.
 Lés la tour d'Aigremore ot .i. palais listé ;
 Là sont nostre François à grant joie mené,
 Richement sont servi et à moult grant plenté. 5912
 .VIII. jours trestous entiers ont les noeces duré.
 Karles i a .i. mois et .i. jour sejourné,
 Tant qu'il ot le país auques asseuré.
 Quant Karles ot la tere auques asséurée, 5916
 Le país ont cerkié et toute la contrée.
 La gent paiene en ont tant qu'il pueent menée ;
 Qui ne veut croire en Dieu s'ot la teste caupée.
 Par .i. saint diemence, quant l'aube fu crevée,
 Adont ot l'arcevesques une messe cantée ;
 L'empereres en a Floripas apelée.
 ' Bele, ce dist li rois, je vous ai couronnée,
 Si estes, Dieu merci, bautizie et levée
 Au milleur chevalier estes vous espousée,
 Ki soit jusques Aufrique, outre la mer salée. 5924

Floripas is
baptised,

but her name
is not
changed.

She and Guy
are crowned,

and Spain is
divided be-
tween Guy
and Fierum-
bras.

At the end of
a month
Charles pre-
pares to
return to
France.

He asks
Floripas to
show him the
sacred relic,

as he intends to start the next day.	Et il et Fierabras tenront mais la contrée, .XX. ^m hommes aront de ma gent bien armée ; Bien sera, se Dieu plaist, vers Sarrazins tensée. Demain vaurai mouvoir par boine destinée ; Ne m'avés des reliques encor nule monstrée ; Alés, sel m'aportés sans nule demourée.'	5928
Floripas produces the casket :	'Sire, moult volentiers, puisque il vous agréé.' En la tour d'Aigremore est la bele montée, Venue est à la cambre, si l'a tost deffremée, Vint à l'escrin d'argent, s'en a la casse ostée, Et vint devant Karlon, si li a presentée. Et li rois s'agenelle et si l'a enclinée.	5932 5936
the crown of thorns	Trestout premierement a la couronne ostée, Que Diex ot en son cief enbatue et serrée ; N'estoit d'or ne d'argent ne faite ni ouvrée, Mais d'espines poignans estoit entourtillée, Et d'aspres joins marages de lius en lius bordée.	5940
is exhibited to the barons.	Nos barons les monstra par boine destinée. Ha Diex ! adont i eut mainte larme plourée ; Cascuns s'i agenoulle, s'a sa coupe clamée.	5944
The arch- bishop tests it, by leaving it suspended in the air without any support.	L'arcevesques fu sages, si l'a bien esprouvée : En haut desus le paille l'a contremont levée, Puis a retrait son brac, s'en a sa main ostée, Et la sainte couronne s'est en l'air arestée. Et dist li arcevesques, 'Je l'ai bien esprouvée, Que ce est la couronne que Dix ot espiné.'	5948 5952
A delicious odour comes from it.	L'arcevesques l'a prinse, si l'a jus avalée, Par de desus le paille l'a assise et posée. Plus flaire doucement que canele alumée ; La flairour qui en ist ne puet estre contée.	5956
The arch- bishop takes out the nails.	Environ la couronne fu moult grans li barnez ; Moult i avoit candelles et cierges embrasés, D'or estoit li palais, de soie encourtinés. L'arcevesque a les claus fors de la casse ostés, Puis i avoit sa bouce et ses ex adesés.	5960

Et Karles les baisa et li autres barnés.

L'arcevesques fu sages, sils a bien esprouvés :

Par deseure le paille, qui d'or est painturés,

Les a en contremont et dreciés et levés,

Puis les baisa tous cois, s'en a ses mains ostés ;

Et li cleu sont tout coi, n'en est uns escapés.

Adont i ot grant joie, c'est fines verités.

'Signeur, dist l'arcevesques, pour Dui, or m'entendés ;

Je vous di vraiment, se croire me volés,

Que ce sont li clau Dieu, qui ques ait aportés.'

Quant François l'ont veu, si les ont encliné.

'Ha Dix ! dist Karlemaines, tu soies aourés !

Moult par puis estre liés quant consenti m'avés

La couronne à avoir dont fustes couronnés,

Et les saintismes claus que tant ai desirés ;

Or en ert mes païs, se Dieu plaist, acuités.'

L'arcevesques les prinst, sils a jus avalés,

A nos François en a les ciés envolepés,

D'encoste la couronne les a mis et posés.

Puis a trait fors le signe, qui bien estoit dorés ;

Plus flaire doucement que bames embrasés.

Quant François l'ont veu, e les vous enclinés,

De pité et de joie fu cascuns esplourés.

L'arcevesques le prinst, qui bien fu apens's,

Puis le mist sur le paille, qui fu à or ouvrés,

O les autres reliques, dout il i ot assés.

L'emperere de France fist forment à loer ;

Il a fait une table sor .ii. trastes poser,

Et pardesus .i. paille, qui fu fais outre mer.

Ses fist li emperere partir et desevrer ;

Puis a fait les reliques moult bien envoleper,

Dedens son maistre coffre les a fait enserer.

Toutes ices reliques en vaura enporter.

Les petis espinons qu'il en fist esgrinner

De la sainte couronne qu'il ot fait desevrer,

5964 The arch-
bishop tests
the nails,

5968 and declares
them to be
the real
relics.

5972

5976

5980 Then he
draws out the
inscription,
which he
shows, and
lays on a
cloth beside
the other
relics.

5984

5988 The relics are
carefully
wrapped up
and placed in
the king's
coffer.

5992

5996 Charles places

- the fragments
of the thorns
in his gloves,
which re-
mains sus-
pended in the
air for over
an hour.
- Trestous les conquelli l'emperere au vis cler,
Et les mist en son gant, canqu'il en puet trover.
.l. chevalier le tent, qu'i vit lés lui ester,
Mais il nel rechut mie qui ne l'oï parler 6000
Et Dix a fait le gant enmi l'air arester
Tant que une liue péust .i. hom aler ;
Ailleurs ot à entendre, ne l'en pot ramenbrer.
Karles a demandé de l'aigue pour digner ; 6004
De son gant li souvint quant il devoit laver,
Mais il ne sot à qui le bailla à garder :
Par de desus la gent le vit en l'air ester.
L'arcevesques le monstre à tout l'autre barné ; 6008
Ce fu moult grant merveille, bien en doit on parler.
Karles a prins son gant, si se sist au digné.
- Charles and
his barons go
to dinner.
- Challes nostre emperere est assis au mengier,
Jouste lui Floripas la bele au cors legier, 6012
Et d'autre part Guion, qui l'ot prinse à moullier.
Fierabras tint la coupe, devant le roi, d'ormier ;
Moult furent bien servi, n'en estuet pas plaidier.
Quant il eurent digné, les napes font sacier ; 6016
Cascuns sor son cheval s'ala esbanoier.
Karlemaines a fait la quintaine drecier ;
Tout le jour behourderent desi à l'anuitier.
Quant il virent le vespre, mis sont au repairier, 6020
As osteus se repairent, si se vont aaisier ;
Quant assés sont deduit, si sont alé coucier,
L'emperere se dort ens un palais plenier,
Et a songié .i. songe mirabillous et fier, 6024
Que à Ais la Capele se devoit hanbergier.
De la tere d'Espaigne ot une vois hucier,
Que il alast la tere et les païs aidier,
Et de paiene gent nostre Signeur vengier. 6028
Tout le monde véoit de grifons esragier ;
De sa gent li faisoient merveilleus encombrer :
A .i. seul jour en furent mort plus de .xx.^m
- The arch-
bishop points
out this great
miracle.
- The revelry
lasts till
nightfall,
when they
separate.
- Charles
dreams that
he is at Aix-
la-Chapelle,
and a voice
bids him
return to
Spain, to
help Guy.

En sa court à Paris avoit .i. *henier*
 Qui li voloit du *ventre* tous les boiaus sacier ;
 N'avoit *baron* en France qui l'osast aprocier.
 Pour le songe se print Karles à esvillier,
 De Damediu de gloire se prinst à sinier.
 Taut soufri Karlemaines qu'i prinst à eclairier ;
 Devant lui fait venir Namle son consillier,
 Le songe li conta qui l'ot fait esvillier.
 'Sire, ce dist li dus, vous irés ostoier
 Ains le cief de .iiii. ans sor la gent l'avensier.
 Tel homme avés nourri qui point ne vous a cier ;
 Damedieu nous en gart, qui tout a à jugier !'

6032 And thrt a
 favourite
 Honess tries
 to tear him to
 pieces.

6036

6040 Naymee
 explains the
 meaning of
 the dream.

L'emperere de France s'est levés par matin
 La messe a escoutée ens ou palais marbrin,
 Puis, quant il l'ot oïe, si se mist au cemin,
 Lors oïssiés grant noise et mervilleus hustin ;
 Li os est aroutée, ne prist cesse ne fin.
 Damedieu le gandise, qui de l'iauve fist vin,
 Le jour qu'il sist as noeces le saint Arcedeclin.
 Challes est d'Aigremore partis et desevrés ;
 Floripas la rouine le convoia assés.
 'Bele, ce dist li rois, ariere retornés.'
 'Sire, dist Floripas, si com vous commandés ;
 Diex soit garde de vous, qui de virge fu nés !'
 Floripas le baisa par moult grant amistés ;
 Plourant s'en departirent, e les vous desevrés.
 Mais Guis et Fierabras ne sont pas retournez ;
 Ains convoient Karlon et son rice barné
 Jusque au pont de Mantribe, la rice fremeté.
 Et Raous et Jehans lor sont encontre alé.
 François se sont logié tout contreval les prés ;
 Karlemaines n'i est c'une nuit ostelés.
 Li rois Guis est de Karle partis et desevrés,
 Et Fierabras o lui, li vasseaus adurés.
 Au departir des .ii. i fu grans deus menés ;

6044 Next morn-
 ing after
 mass the
 army starts.

6048

6052 Floripas
 accompanes
 them a short
 distance.

6056

6060 Guy and
 Ferumbras
 go as far as
 Mantribe,

6064 where Charles
 stays one
 night.

Mais li rois Karlemaines les a reconfortés.

- Guy and Ferumbras take leave of Charles. De Guion de Borgoigne s'est Karles departis, 6068
Et il et Fierabras, qu'est chevaliers gentis.
Moult les a l'emperere baisiés et conjoïs
Si lor a commandé que l'uns soit l'autré amis,
Et s'ost s'est aroutée par puis et par larris. 6072
Taut vont par lor journées, si com dit li escriis,
Que à l'uitisme jour sont venu à Paris.
On the eighth day the French arrive at Paris. Cascuns s'en va ou regne dont il estoit nouris ; 6076
Karlemaines s'en va au moustier Saint Denis.
Là manda arcevesques, evesques benéis,
Les reliques lor monstre Damedieu Jhesu Cris.
Charles goes to St Denis and exhibits the sacred relics, Cal jour ot .x. evesques ensamble revestis, 6080
Si i ot arcevesques et abés .xxxvi. ;
Li barnages i fu d'Orliens et de Paris.
- Au baron Saint Denis fu grans li assablée ;
Au peron du lendi fu la messe cantée.
which he distributes: part of the crown and one nail he gives to St Denis: Illuec fu la couronne partie et devisée : 6084
Une partie en fu à Saint Denis donnée,
Et .i. cleu ensement, c'est verités prouvée.
De la couronne fu partie et desevrée ;
the inscription to Compiègne. A Compiègne est li signes à l'eglise honnerée. 6088
Des saintimes reliques fu la le desevrée ;
Maint present en fist Karles par France la loée :
He establishes in their honour the fair of 'Lendit.' En l'onor Dieu en fu mainte eglise honnerée. 6092
La foire du lendi fu par ce estorée,
Que ja n'i devroit estre cens ne taille donnée.
- Within three years came the treachery of Gwelon and the death of Roland. Ne tarda que .iii. ans qu' Espaigne fu gastée ;
Là fu la traïsons de Rollant pourparlée ;
Guenelon le vendi à la gent desfaée, 6096
Puis en fu à cevaus sa car detraïnée.
Pinabiaus en fu mors sous Loon en la prée ;
Là le tua Tierris au trencant de l'espée,

Puis fu pendus armés par la geule baée.
 Tous jours vont traïtours à male destinée ;
 U en près ou en loing, ja n'i aront durée.

6100 *Gwenelon is
torn in pieces.*

A Dieu vous comman je, ma canchons est finée.
 De cest roumant est boine et la fin et l'entrée,
 Et enmi et partout, qui bien l'a escoutée ;
 Ki cest roumant escrist il ait boine durée.

*My tale is
done,
6104 God bless you
all!*
•

Explicit Li Rommans de Fierabras d'Alixandre.]

NOTES.

p. 1, l. 4. So in the *Soudone of Babyloyne*, ll. 25—29 :

“As it is wryten in Romaunce
And founden in bokes of Antiquyte, At Seinte Denyse Abbey in Fraunce.”

p. 1, l. 11. In the *Soudone* we are told that Charles distributed the sacred relics as follows :—

“At our lady of Parys, He offred the Crosse so fre ;
The Crowne he offred at seynte Denyse, At Boloynes the nayles thre.”

which differs slightly from the account in *Fierabras* (see l. 6085).

p. 2, l. 56. “Poille.” In the Fr. “Coloigne.” In the side-note read “Apulia” instead of “Poland.”

p. 3, l. 65. “tolde ȝow of eer.” See p. 1, ll. 8—12. In the Fr. “les dignes reliques que je ne sai nommer.” The number of the nails used at the Crucifixion is a disputed point. The question has been fully discussed in *N. and Q.*, Series III., vol. iii. pp. 315, 392, whence I extract the following :—

“St. Gregory Nazianzen says of the taking down from the cross—

Γυμνὸν τρισήλῳ κείμενον ἑὺλῳ λαβών.

Clearly intimating that our Saviour was fixed to the cross with three nails only.

“Nonnus, the Greek poet, in the fifth century, describes the sacred feet of our Lord as placed one over the other, and fastened down with a single large nail.

“On the other hand, St. Cyprian, St. Augustine, St. Gregory of Tours, and Pope Innocent III., as also Rufinus and Theodoret,¹ reckon four nails. The earliest known representation of the Crucifixion is, I presume, that found in the cemetery of St. Julius Pope, or of St. Valentine, in *Via Flaminia* ; in which our Saviour is clothed in a long robe, without sleeves, reaching from the shoulders to the ankles ; and his feet are separate, and each one fastened by a nail to a piece of wood projecting from the cross.”

¹ This seems to be a mistake, for Calvin in his work referred to below says—“Si vera enarrant antiqui scriptores, ac præsertim *Theodoretus*, veteris Ecclesiæ historicus, Helena ~~uana~~ filii sui galeæ inseri, *reliques duos* equi freno aptari iussit,” p. 206, col. 2.

In the *Ancren Riwele*, p. 390, we find *three* nails referred to:—"þis scheld þet wreih his Godhed was his leoue licome þet was ispred o rode, brod ase scheld buuen in his i-streihlt earmes, and neruh bineoðen, ase þe on uot, efter þet me weneð, sete upon þe oðer note."

See also *Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, pp. xix, xx.

It is curious that the author of the Eng. version invariably omits all mention of one of the relics so frequently referred to in the French version, *le signe honneré*, the "title," which was placed over our Lord's head.

In I. Calvin's *Admonitio de Reliquiis*, ed. of 1667, will be found a very full and interesting account of the distribution of the sacred relics. It would occupy too much space to give his account in full, but I may briefly summarise the results of his investigations so far as they refer to the relics here mentioned. Of the nails he found no fewer than *fourteen* preserved in various churches and monasteries: of which *four* were in Italy; *two* in Germany; *one* each at Cologne and Treves; and *six* in France (p. 206, col. 2). In addition to these the monks of Glastonbury Abbey claimed to possess one. See *An History of the Abbey of Glastonbury*, Warner, p. lxii.

As to the crown of thorns, Calvin, p. 207, col. 1, gives a long list of places claiming to possess one or more of the thorns, and here again Glastonbury must be added. In the *Annales ordinis S. Benedicti*, III. pp. 699, 700, we read that Azan, a prefect of Jerusalem, presented to Charlemagne, "*Spinea corona, que caput amabile Redemptoris nostri complexa est*," and "*unus de clavis qui delectabiles Christi articulos configebant*." The Abbey of Glastonbury appears to have been especially rich in relics, for, in addition to the above, and others of minor importance, it possessed the spear of Longinus, presented by Audulphus, Count of Boulogne, to Athelstane, some of the milk of the Virgin, and some of the hairs of St. Peter's beard. See Knyghton's Chronicle in *Historia Anglicana Scriptores decem*, London, 1652, col. 2321, l. 28, and Warner's *History of the Abbey of Glastonbury*, Bath, 1826, p. lxii.

p. 3, l. 91. So in the *Coventry Mysteries*, ed. Halliwell, 183, "bragge or blowe."

p. 4, l. 101. Perhaps we should read, "[To] such þre," &c., i. e. "to three such men I would not give way."

p. 4, l. 102. "twelue." The Fr. is more moderate—"Ja n'en refuserai, par Mahom, jusqu'à vi.," with which the *Soudons of Babyloyn* agrees.

p. 4, l. 120. "y knowe him wel to wisse;" I know for certain. In this phrase *wisse* appears to be an adj. (A.S. *gewis*, Old Sax. *iwiss*, certain).

"I-wis, þenne seide william, i wot wel to wisse."

William of Palerne, ed. Skeat, 3397.

p. 4, l. 124. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiv. 239.

p. 4, l. 128. "none kynnes þynge." See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, C. xi. 128.

p. 5, l. 144. "so most he þe;" so might he prosper. A common expression, for examples of which see Stratmann. One of the, if not the latest use of the verb to *the* (A.S. *þeon*) is in Tusser's *Five Hundred Points of Good Husbandrie*, 1580 (Eng. Dial. Soc., ed. Herrtage), p. 19, stanza 8.

p. 6, l. 161. Know that this is thine own fault.

p. 6, l. 167. See M. Gaston Paris' remarks on this incident, and the different causes assigned for it in various poems. *Histoire Poétique*, p. 263.

p. 6, l. 173. "Makes no account of me."

p. 6, l. 197. "doppeper." This spelling is most remarkable. Were it not for the fact that the original draught and the corrected copy are in the same handwriting, one would be led to suspect that the word had been dictated by some person who lisped. But in the original draught we find the word correctly spelt *dozopers* (see l. 423, and note to l. 259). A similar instance of *p* for *z* occurs at l. 1462, where we find *dopeyne* for *dozeyne*. At l. 2036 curiously enough the word is spelt correctly.

The various forms under which we find this word are very curious. In *Otuel* (Ellis. *Metr. Romances*, ii. 367) we have "*dussypere*," and "*duzze pieres*"; in the *Sowdone of Babyloyn*, "*dosiper*" and "*dosyperys*"; in *Rouland & Vernagu* (Abbotsford Club) "*dussepers*"; in *Barbours's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 440, "*dukperis*" and "*Dutchpeeres*"; in *Wyntown*, v. 4350, "*dowch-sperys*." It is worthy of notice how entirely the original meaning of the word has been lost by the English poets; thus at the end of *Otuel* we read, "Here endeth Otuel, Roland, and Olyuere / and of the twelve dussypere." So too in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1853:—

"Ther come in a daunse IX. doseperus of Fraunce;"

and we frequently find a single knight (as in the present instance) called "*a dozeper*."

p. 6, l. 199. "to tristyng to." A corruption of the old gerundial form. Thus in the *Tale of Beryn* (Chaucer Soc., ed. Furnivall), l. 347, we find, "This nyzte that is to *comyng*;" and again in *P. Plowman*, C. xviii. 313, "Hopen þat he be to *comynge*." In the Wyclifite version of Rev. xii. 4 we read: "And the dragoun stood before the woman that was to *beringe* child," and in the next verse, "*to reulinge* alle folkes." Caxton, *Descr. of Britain*, 1485, has "Candred is to menyng a contrey that conteyneth a hondred tounes," p. 20. Cf. "Eart þu ȝe to *cummene* eart?" Luke vii. 20.

p. 7, l. 209. "ofte sekede amonge;" sighed at frequent intervals, frequently. Compare the following from Mr. Wright's *Carols and Songs* (Percy Society):—

"Thys endys myȝth

I saw a syȝth

A stare as bryȝt as day;

And ever amonge

A maiden songe

Lallay, by by lullay."

Compare also Mod. Eng. *all the while*.

p. 7, l. 213. "his mantel of say." In the Fr. "*son bliaut de sole*." Halliwell defines *say* as "a delicate serge or woollen cloth," quoting from Palsgrave—"Saye clothe, *serge*." See Du Cange, *Glossar.* s. v. *Seta*.

p. 7, l. 219. "þat toched mannes dede;" that was the part or duty of a man; compare l. 1435.

p. 8, ll. 234, &c. The process of arming is not so minutely described here as in *Sir Gawayne*, l. 567, *et seq.*, on which see Sir F. Madden's note in his edition for the Bannatyne Club, 1839, p. 314.

p. 8, ll. 246-7. In the Fr. version Oliver is more definite as to the reward he purposes to give Garyn:—

"Ferrant, dist Oliviers, bien ait qui te garda !
Si je vis longuement, moult grant preu i ara,
A Pasques, en avril, chevalier en sera."

p. 8, l. 241. "hys styrop trepede he noȝt ;" that is, he did not place his foot in the stirrup, but vaulted into the saddle.

p. 8, l. 253. "K'au plus fier Sarrazin encui se combatr
Qui ains fust en cest sieucle, ne jamais i ssera !"

p. 8, l. 256. "blessed him ;" signed himself with the sign of the cross ; in Caxton's version "blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of the crosse ;" compare—"blesce þe al abuten mid te eadie rode tocene." *Ancren Riwele*, p. 290. The act of making the sign of the cross is still called, "blessing one's-self" by Catholics. See Myrc's *Instructions for Parish Priests* (E. E. T. S., ed. Peacock), p. 9, l. 280.

"And blesse [hem] feyre as þey conne
Whenne gloria tibi ys by-gonne."

p. 8, l. 258. On the cover the following lines corresponding with ll. 258—261 of the corrected copy are legible :—

"A s Charlys stod by chance at conseil with his feris,
Whiche þat wern of france his oȝene doȝepers.
Roland he had"
& þan him for-þoȝte

p. 8, l. 259. "doȝeperen." On this curious form see remarks on l. 197, above.

The names of the *douzeperes* are variously given in the MSS. Thus the present Romance gives them as—Roland, Oliver, Terry, Geoffrey, Ogier, Basyn, Naymes, Richard of Normandy, Berard, Aubrey, Gwylmer, and Guy of Burgundy

The Lansdowne MS. gives—Roland, Oliver, Geryn, Gerer, Berenger, Otto, Samson, Engeller, Ivon, Ivoire, Anseis, and Girard¹; while in *Otuel* and *Roland & Vernagu* (ed. for the Abbotsford Club, from the Auchinleck MS. in 1836) no regular lists are given. Caxton, following the prose *Fierabras*, says "the barons of themperour Charles and pyeres of Fraunce ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiiij . . . But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiiij after that I fynde" (sign. B viii, col. 1). He then gives the following names, *sixteen* in number :—Roland, Earl of Cenonia, Oliver, Richard, Garyn, Geoffrey, Hoel, Ogier, Naymes, Thierry, Basyn, Guy, Caudeboy, Ganellon, Sampson, Alorys, and Gwylmer.

In the *Soudone of Babyloyns* also the *douzepairs* are *sixteen* in number :—Roland, Oliver, Regnier, Richard of Normandy, Garyn of Lorraine, Geoffrey, Hoel, Ogier, Lambert of Brussels, Naymes, Thierry (Terry), Basyn, Guy of Burgundy, Gaudeboys, Ganellon, Sanson of Burgundy. But at ll. 1680—1722, we find other names mentioned which do not appear in the foregoing list. Thus we have, Bery, Baliane, Aleroyse, Miron, Turpin, Bernard of Prussia, Bryere, and Naymes.

¹ Although Ogier is not included in the *Chanson de Roland* amongst the *douzeperes*, yet he is the most important personage after Roland.

M. Gaston Paris in his *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, Paris, 1865, p. 507, gives the names as found in the French versions. See also his remarks, *ibid.* pp. 416—418.

- p. 8, l. 267. The following portion of the original draft corresponding with ll. 267-9 is legible on the cover :—

“Many was þe knyȝt þat him beheld : was he spak his resoun.
He said to þe kyng þer as he wes . ‘ y haue þe serued ȝore,
. . . . in werre & in lond of pes, wel vij ȝer & more’ .”

- p. 9, l. 276. “neuere ous two to-sterre ;” we two have never been separated.
p. 9, l. 286. “lome.” Generally found in combination as “oft and lome.” For examples see Stratmann. The comparative *lommere* occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. xxiii. 238, where it is glossed by the scribe *sepius*.
p. 9, l. 302. “Gweneloun.” It is one of the signs of the popularity of the Charlemagne Romances, that this name should have become synonymous with the basest treachery. Thus Chaucer, *Monks Tale*, 3579, uses it as an epithet, when he speaks of “Genylon Olyuer, corrupt for mede ;” and again, *Boke of the Duchess*, 1121 :—

“Or the false Geniloun
He that purchased the trayson
Of Rouland and of Olivere.”

See also *Gesta Romanorum*, Tale lxxviii, p. 396.

- p. 10, l. 304. From this line we learn the date of the action of the Romance. See the Introduction, p. xvi, and note.
p. 10, l. 307. “As the law decreed in the case of traitors.”
p. 10, l. 311. “Rewardet,” agreed, determined : cf. l. 3452. “Tweyre ;” A. S. *twægra*, gen. of *twegen*, two. There are not many instances of its occurrence. In *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, ii. 312, ll. 17568-9, we have—

“þat hii wolde al þis lond : fette in hire *twæire* hond,”

and ll. 21436, “fette in ȝoure *twæire* hond.” See also *Ancren Riwele*, p. 406, “i þisse *twæire* monglunge.” The meaning of the line is—That that which is agreed upon by the consent of any two, any third person, upon whom they may fix, shall be bound to perform. Caxton's version is, “ye haue ordeyneed that it whyche by ij of vs is juged ought to be holden.” The French version runs—

“Que ce que li doi jugent, puis k'i l'ont afframé,
Aler estuet le tiero, ensi l'ont creanté.
Nous jujon Olivier, si l'avons esgardé,
Qu'il fera la bataille au païen defaé.”

- p. 10, l. 322. “Puis dist entre ses dens ; ‘Diex li doit courte vie.’”
p. 10, l. 324. “dere herte.” Compare *Gesta Romanorum* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Herbage, 1879), p. 181 : “yf þou do welle, þow shalte be myn owne *dere harte* ;” and *Troilus and Creseide*, iii. 988 : “Lo ! *herte mine*,” and in the next stanza, “my *dere herte*.”
p. 10, l. 325. “Qwhylles he es qwykkeand in *qwerre* vnquellyde with handis.”

Morte Arthure, ed. Brock, l. 3810.

See also note in *Cathol. Anglicum*, s.v.v. *Inquarte* and *Quarte*.

- p. 10, l. 326. “Were it not for thy grievous wound, I am sure thou wouldst fare well.”

- p. 10, l. 328-9. "Duk Reyner Olyuers fader." So we find in all the authors with the exception of one passage in David Aubert (chapt. 39): "Comment le roy Fourré fu occis contre le gré de l'empereur par Olivier de Viane, qui vengea la mort de son père *Gerier* que Fourré avoit occis," &c., but as the same author elsewhere gives the names correctly, this is doubtless, as pointed out by M. Gaston Paris, a slip on the part of the writer or the copier. (*Hist. Poét.*, pp. 263-4.)
- p. 10, l. 331. Here begins the legible portion of the original draught, which for convenience of comparison has been printed parallel to the corrected version.
- p. 11, ll. 334—337. These lines are an addition of the English translator: at least they do not occur in the surviving MSS. of *Fierabras*. As to the meaning of l. 335, I cannot offer any suggestion.
- p. 11, l. 351. Here the draught follows the original French more closely than the corrected copy:—

"Là ù voit Fierabras, si l'a araisonné:
'Sarrasins, d'ont es tu, tant nous as apelé?'"

The four following lines, 352—355, are not in the original French.

- p. 13, l. 381. "alre." See note on l. 2342.
- p. 13, l. 384. "raply;" quickly, hastily. For examples see Stratmann, to which add—"He ros vp *raply*:" *Arthur*, ed. Furnivall (E. E. T. Soc., 1864), l. 87; *P. Plowman*, C. vii. 383, and *Richard the Redeles* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), prol. 13.
- p. 14, l. 400. "ladde (harlot) on þy fote." In the Fr.—
"Fui t'ent fors de la tere, mar enmerras destrier,
A ton col .i. grant pel, à loi de *pautonnier*."

The word *pautener* occurs hereafter, l. 859, which see.

- p. 14, l. 404. "letest so lite of me." Cf. *Richard the Redeles* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), iii. 284, and *P. Plowman*, B. vi. 170, "leest list of þe lawe."
- p. 15, l. 408. "stondeþ aye." An old phrase meaning to stand in awe of, to fear. Thus in *Barbour's Bruce* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), iii. 62, we have "*stand awe*," and in *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, l. 277:

"Al engelond of him *stod awe*,
All engelond was of him *adrad*,"

where the prep. *in* has been incorrectly and unnecessarily inserted before *awe*. See also *The Wallace*, v. 929, vi. 878, &c.

- p. 15, l. 423. Notice that while in the original draught we have the ordinary form *dojepers*, in the corrected copy we have *dohþeper*.
- p. 16, l. 433. "þe sonne hure sette." On the gender of the word *Sun* see Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 256, and my note to *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 12, l. 14.
- p. 16, l. 437. "Hym dredeþ noþyng," &c. In the original French—
"Tant fu fers et oribles et de grant cruautés
Ne prisa Olivier .ii. deniers monnaés,"
- p. 16, l. 444. "Perigot." French, "Pieregort."
- p. 17, 447. "the kynges styward." French "Fius à un vavasour, c'avoit nom Ysorés."

p. 17, l. 456. "Ogeroun þe wiȝte." The whole life of this celebrated hero is in the Royal MS. 15, E vi. 4. *Ogier le Danois, duc de Dannemarche*, was printed at Paris about 1498. His old Gothic Sword, Spatha, and Iron Shield are still preserved in a monastery in the north. Bartholinus, *Antiq. Domic.* ii. 13, pp. 578-9. For further notices see M. Michel's edition of *Charlemagne* from the Royal MS. 16, E viii. 7, written in the 12th century (Paris, 1836); and Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, ii. 137-8.

"Who more couragious then *Renaldo*? who more invincible then *Roldan*? who more comely or more courteous then *Rogero*? from whom the dukes of *Ferrara* at this day are descended (according to *Turpin* in his *Cosmographie*). All these knights, and many more, Master Vicar, that I could tell you, were knights errant, the very light and glorie of knighthood."—*Don Quixote*, ed. Shelton, 1652, Part 2, chapt. 1, p. 139.

p. 17, l. 458. "Spelie." For examples of this rare word see Strattmann, to whose references add *P. Plowman*, C. vii. 432.

p. 18, l. 473. "cors of werre;" as distinct from a "cors of pees," or a jousting match, which was usually conducted with spears without heads of iron. Thus in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1215, we read:—

"Thou shalt be servid, or I sess,
Bothe of werre and of pees,
Of ayther cours thre;"

and again, l. 1261, we find mentioned "sperus of pese," which were the jousting weapons above alluded to. See Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, ed. Hone, p. 141, and Meyrick, *Antient Armour*, Glossary. In MS. Lansdowne 285, leaf 10, are rules for the proper conduct of "justes of pees."

p. 18, l. 476. The horse of the vanquished became the property of the conqueror. There are numerous allusions to this custom. See, for instance, *Sir Degrevant*, ll. 1112, and 1119: "Syxty stedus he wan."

p. 19, l. 498. "Et voit le sanc vermel à la tere couler,
Car l'ahans du ceval li ot fait escrever."

p. 20, l. 507. "þou blerest noȝt so myn eȝe." A common expression for *blind*, *deceive*, *delude*. Thus Chaucer, *Reeve's Tale* (*Cant. Tales*, A. 4049): "By my þrift ȝit schal i blere here ie;" and in *Ly Beaus Disconus*, l. 1432:—

"Wyth fantasme and fayrre
Thus sche blerede hys yye."

See also *P. Plowman*, C. i. 72; *Seven Sages*, ed. Wright, 2952, &c.

p. 20, l. 510. "Myddel": *sic* in MS., but probably we should read "my sadel", as in the draught. Caxton's version has, "two flagons hangyng on the sadil of my hors." "a costrel." French "voila .ij. barils."

p. 20, l. 511. This balm is thus referred to in *Don Quixote*, ed. Shelton, 1652:—
"Be not grieved, friend Sancho, replyed the knight; for I will now compound the precious *Balsamum* which will cure us in the twinkling of an eye." The ingredients of this *Balsamum* were Rosemary, Oil, Wine, and Salt, mixed together in an old tin pot, and over it were said "eighty paternosters and as many *Aves*, *Salves* and *Creeds* . . . [he] did easily persuade himself that hee had hapned on the right manner of compounding the *Balsamum* of *Fierabras*; and that having that medicuine, hee might boldly from henceforth, undertake any

ruines, batailles, conflicts or adventures, how dangerous soever.”—Lib. I, Pt iii, chap. 3, pp. 31-2.

p. 20, l. 521. “by þis liȝte.” A proverbial expression equivalent to “during this life.” We have the same idea in different words at l. 1744, where we find, “by þys leem.”

p. 21, l. 525. “Rolandre.” A form apparently invented *metri gratia*; compare the reading of the original draught.

p. 21, l. 528. “fer & ner.” A phrase of common occurrence, and equivalent to, “all over, thoroughly.”

p. 22, l. 544. The translator has here omitted a few lines in the original French:—

“Et respont Fierabras : ‘trop me viels ore haster.
Par foi, se tu me vois deseur mes piés ester,
N’a si fier homme el siecle ne me doie douter.’
‘Certes, dist Olivier, trop t’ai oi vanter.
Miex vaut mesure à dire que ne fait sorparler ;
A bon droit te devroit de ton cors meserrer.’ ”

p. 22, l. 545. “bente hym brymly as a bor.” A common simile in early poetry. Thus in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, Camden Society, 1844, l. 1240, we read—

“The eorl hoked and by held
Brem as a bare,”

and in Shelton, *Works*, i. 187:—

“Your bragyng boȝt, your roial aray,
Your beard so brym as bore at bay.”

p. 22, l. 548. “Had he ben,” &c. French:—

“Se il vausist créir le digne roi Ihesu,
N’eust tel chevalier dusques à Montagu.”

I-volled occurs in *Robert of Gloucester*.

p. 23, l. 580. Here the translator has passed over several lines descriptive of Ferumbras's arms, &c., and particularly of his three swords, Florance, Baptism, and Garbain, the whole pedigree of which is given. In fact the whole account of the combat is considerably altered in the present English version.¹ The author of the latter omits the incident of Oliver's assisting Ferumbras to arm, and the long harangue of Oliver made in the hope of converting the Saracen to Christianity.² The French writer represents Ferumbras as then again offering the balm to Oliver, and its refusal.

The French knights who are witnesses of the combat are alarmed for their champion's safety, and Charles, covering his head with his cloak, hurries to his chapel to pray for his success. Roland is anxious to join Oliver, but is prevented by the king, who reminds him of his refusal to accept the challenge. Both the combatants are wounded, and Ferumbras proposes, as he sees Oliver is pale from loss of blood, to leave off for a time, but the latter refuses. The prayer of Charlemagne to the Virgin then follows—a curious specimen, since in it he declares that if Oliver is conquered, he will destroy all the altars and

¹ The account as given in the *Sordane* follows the French text exactly.

² Compare the very amusing description of the duel between Magog the Saracen and Rauf Coilgear, ed. Murray, pp. 29—32.

crucifixes, words for which Naymes reproaches him. Then comes a long prayer of Oliver, who is again wounded, but refuses the balm which Ferumbras offers him with the assurance that it will make him as lively as a swallow in May. The Saracen is then wounded, but having drunk some of the balm, is quickly restored. Oliver with a stroke of his sword cuts away the two bottles containing the balm, which fall to the ground (l. 742, English version). He leaps off his horse, seizes one of the bottles, drinks its contents, by which he is restored to strength, and then throws both into the river. The weight of the gold with which they are set causes them to sink, but on the feast of St. John they rise to the surface. Ferumbras in a rage slays Oliver's horse (l. 591, English version). The French wish to assist their countrymen, but Charles insists on fair-play to Ferumbras. The latter offers Oliver his own horse, and as the offer is refused, he himself dismounts. Charles utters another prayer, and an angel appears to him, and tells him that Oliver will be the conqueror, but not without severe wounds.

Meanwhile the combat continues, and Ferumbras disarms Oliver: and advises him to renounce Christianity, offering him his sister Floripas in marriage. Oliver rejects the offer, and also refuses to accept his own sword back, but by a sudden spring seizes one of Ferumbras' swords, Baptism, with which he continues the combat. At length Ferumbras is seriously wounded and asks for mercy.

Here the two versions again correspond.

- p. 24, l. 583. in draught, "pylke": *sic* in MS., read "pykke", as in the corrected copy.
- p. 25, l. 601. "hir eyþer." See note on l. 677.
- p. 26, l. 623. "cercele." This is not the padded wreath worn from the time of Richard II. to Henry IV. on the bacinet, but the more splendid band of goldsmiths' work enriched with jewels. It is called *bordoure* in the *Aventyrs of Arthure*, xxx. 4, and said to be "alle of brynte golde"; and in the present poem, l. 5627, it is termed the "cornel". See Roquesfort, *Glossaire, Supplément v. Helme*, Planche's *Hist. of Costume*, p. 160, &c.
- p. 26, l. 631. Compare l. 727.
- p. 26, l. 636. In the French version this incident occurs before the fight begins.
- p. 27, l. 652. "Y am Charlis Eemys sone." This would mean, "I am the son of Charlis' uncle," but I do not find that Reynér is in any other passage called the uncle of Charles.
- p. 27, l. 661. "beyne," both. This is the O. E. *begen*, which we find as *beizen*, *beien*, *beine*, *beyne*, in Lazamon. In the Vernon MS. we read—
 "Well þou mǣiht ȝif þou wolt, taken ensaumpel of *beyne*,
 Bothe two in heor elde children heo beore."
- p. 27, l. 677. "Vnder hure bopen fete:" under the feet of both of them. So we find, "*her neither may henten oþer*," *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 81: "*her none*," *ibid.* B. xiv. 239. Compare l. 601, "hir eyþer," and l. 4146, "*ȝour summe*."
- p. 28, l. 679. Apparently the line means, in the excitement and thrusting of the moment, to the Saracen, &c. Cotgrave gives "*Entrelas*, m. A knot hard to be loosed, and intricate businesse, a work much entangled. *Entrelasement*, m. A setting, putting or thrusting in, between or among."

p. 28, l. 681. "to donde." This form occurs in "A Prayer to Our Lady," pr. (from the Addit. MS. 27,909) in *An old Eng. Miscellany*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, p. 123, l. 15—"to donde sunne awei fram him." It is a corrupt form of the infinitive arising from a confusion of the gerundial form *-nne*, corrupted into *-ing* (see l. 199), with the participial ending *-ende*. Thus in *O. E. Homilies*, ed. Morris, ii. 57, we read: "the rihtwise [man fasteth] for to witiende his rihtwisnesse."

It is worth noticing that in the French version the positions of the two combatants are reversed, so far as this incident is concerned.

p. 29, l. 697. "many a schoure." We still speak of a "shower of arrows, or darts," and the word was frequently used in that sense; cf. *flana scuras*, showers of arrows, in the A.S. fragment of Judith. Compare ll. 771, 841.

p. 30, l. 719. I know of no other instances of the forms *sot* or *soot* for the past tense of the verb to sweat. Chaucer uses *swot*.

p. 31, l. 727. Compare l. 631.

p. 31, l. 750. The following lines, corresponding with ll. 750-1 of the corrected copy, are at the back of the Fragment:—

"Of herte was F[erumbras] boþe hol & sond : & plenyde him no þyng,
[Ac] ful him dou* knelyng on þe ground, & þankede heuene kyng."

There are also a few other lines partly legible, running round the margins, and some, but for the most part illegible, on the other cover.

p. 32, l. 753. "for Marie sone þat mayde:" that is, "for the love of the Son of Mary that Virgin." Compare l. 1270, "We buþ Charlis men þe Emperere." The construction, though singular-looking, is not at all uncommon in Old English: thus in *P. Plowman* we find several examples, e. g. "For marie loue þy moder," i. e. for the love of Mary thy mother; C-text, viii. 149; "Peers pardon þe ploughman," i. e. the pardon of Piers the Plowman; C-text, xxii. 187, 392; "For Peers loue þe ploughman;" i. e. for the love of Piers the Plowman; C. xvi. 131, xxiii. 77, &c. So again in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 5437, "Themperours moder william," i. e. the mother of the Emperor William. See also Chaucer, *Boke of the Duchesse*, l. 282; *Squieres Tale*, 209, &c.

p. 32, l. 756. "Are not worth thinking of."

p. 33, 766. "y-core." So in *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, 20971:—

"Alle hii wereþ i-core : and heþe men i-bore."

p. 33, l. 771. "Went him." See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. Prologue l. 7.

p. 33, l. 774. "Goffanoun." *Gonfanon*, m. A little square flag, or Penon at the end of a Launce; or (more particularly) an old-fashioned Banner, or square Standard, borne on the top of a Launce; such as, even to this day, is used in the warres made by the Pope." Cotgrave. See also Meyrick, *Antient Armour*, Glossary. The French version reads:—"Du pan de son bliaut li a les flans bendés."

p. 34, l. 800. "v þousant of opre and mo." This gives a total of 15,000, but the French text has "L^m." The "mo" in the English version seems to mean 3; cf. l. 815.

p. 34, l. 813. "Mantreeblee." There appears to be some doubt as to the correct

spelling of this name. In the *Sowdone of Babylon* it is printed as "Moun-trible," and in the *Complaint of Scotland*, ed. Dr. Murray, p. 63, we have, "the tail of the brig of the mantribil." The same spelling appears in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 455, where we find "Mantrybill." Shelton also refers to "Mantryble the bryge," *Poems against Gamesche*, ed. Dyce, i. 117, l. 22; and so it appears also in Caxton's *Lyf of Charles the Grete*, 1485, which follows the original French prose *Fierabras*; and in Shelton's translation of *Don Quixote*, Bk I, part iv, cap. xxii, p. 130, ed. 1675, where in the original Spanish the reference is to "*Fierabras*, con la puente de *Mantible*" (*sic*), part I. cap. xlix.

On the other hand, the editors of the French version of *Fierabras* and of *La Destruction de Rome* print the name as "Mautrible," and so it seems sometimes to be in the Ashmole MS. Considering, however, the slight difference between *u* and *n* in MSS., I have followed the reading which appears to have the weight of evidence in its favour.

- p. 34, l. 819. "Hure commune horn," &c. In the French text—"Es très et as herberges ont olifans sonnés."

- p. 34, l. 825. "þe woundede man þan he set adoun." In the original French this is done at Ferumbras' own desire, and Oliver, we are told,—

"Belement le couca desous le ramé pin;
Ses espées li baille, li rois l'en fist enclin."

The latter part of this line is repeated at l. 838, below.

- p. 34, l. 827. "iornay." The use of this word in the sense of *combat* is not uncommon; compare *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, xiii. 480:—

"Him war levar that *Journeys* wer
Wndone, than he swa ded had bene; "

and again, xx. 494—

"He come nocht to the *Journee*,
For his Arme was brokyne in twa."

We still use the expression "to win, or lose, the *day*."

- p. 35, l. 833. "at arst;" i. e. "then for the first time." So in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 1028:

"Þanne alisaundrine *at arst* þan antresse him tille."

- p. 35, l. 855. "Escaped from him by flight as best they might."

- p. 35, l. 859. "pantener", read "pautener." This word occurs twice in *Barbour's Bruce*, i. 462, and ii. 194. Cotgrave gives "*Pautonnier*. A lewd stubborn or saucy knave;" and Burguy, "*Paltonier, pautonier*, homme sans profession ni demeure fixé; homme de mauvaise vie, méchant, hautain, misérable, queux, coquin." Halliwell quotes from *Guy of Warwike*, p. 113, "a feloun *pautener*." See l. 400, above. The word occurs again, p. 121, l. 3877.

- p. 36, l. 876. "plate & maille." Plate armour was, as its name implies, formed of *plates* of steel or iron, while *mail* armour was composed of small *rings* or links. "*Maille*. Maile, or a linke of maile (wherof coats of mail be made); also a Hauther, or any little ring of mettall resembling a link of maile." Cotgrave.

- p. 37, l. 928. "schake." So in *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, 13,246:—"Nes þer nan biscop þat forð on his weei ne *scoc*."

- p. 38, l. 940. "Cornybourgh." French text, "Corsuble."

- p. 38, l. 941. "persched." "To perche, *vbi* to Thirle," *Cuthol. Anglicum*. For other instances of this and similar forms of the word, see my *Gesta Romanorum* (E. E. T. Soc.), p. 47, l. 28, and note thereon.
- p. 38, l. 953. "vewa." One of the instances of *v* used for *f*.
- p. 38, l. 955. "chacyeþ forþ;" i. e. hurry along with them. See instances in Stratmann.
- p. 38, l. 956. "rizdt:" for *rideth*; a very singular form.
- p. 38, l. 966. "falsarȝ:" hand-bills, in the French *fausart*.

In the Chronicle MS. *Bertrand du Guesclin* we read:—"D'espees et de faussars ot sur lui plus de cent," and again—"Gettent dars et faussars, moult en vout ociant."

John, the Monk of Mairemontier, i. *Hist. Gauf. Duc Normand* says—"Imposita est capiti ejus cassis multo lapide pretioso relucens, quæ talis temperaturæ erat, ut nullius ensis acumine incidi vel falsificari valeret." Robert de Bourron, *Hist. Arthur et Merlin*, has, "Li haubert sunt si fort et si tenant qu'il ne puent maille fausser." Meyrick, *Antient Armour*.

- p. 38, l. 969. "wel thre score & mo." French text, "plus de xlvii."
- p. 38, l. 971. "wel an akers lengþe." I know of no other instance of the use of the word *acre* as expressing a measure of distance. See notes to ll. 2270 and 3040. A somewhat similar expression occurs in the amusing description of the fight between Rauf Coilȝear and Magog, the Saracen, where the latter strikes the former so hard that—

"The lenth of ane rude braid he gart him remufe."

Ed. Murray, p. 30, l. 864.

The expression occurs again, l. 4699.

- p. 39, l. 977. "supþen y-set alle an horce." French text:—"Sur bons chevaus les montent, n'i ot onques roncis."
- p. 39, l. 984. "At aualyng of a hulle;" i. e. at the descent from a hill, &c. French text:—"A l'avalier d'un tertre ont paiens consivia."
- p. 39, l. 988. "þat schon so siluer briȝt;" that shone as bright as silver. French text—"dont li poins est burnis."

In the poems of Pulci and Boyardo the name of Roland's celebrated sword appears as *Durindana* and *Durlindana*. The possession of this sword was so coveted that Gradasso, a powerful Eastern king, invaded France with 150,000 men, in order to secure it and Rinaldo's horse.

We find this sword referred to in the *Roman de Horn* (12th Century), MS. Harl. 527, leaf 61, back, col. 2, v. 40.

"Unkes mielȝ ne trenchat Cürtein ne *Durendal*."

One of the earliest authors who speaks of it is Rodolphus Tortarius, who lived at the end of the 11th century, between 1096 and 1145:—

"Ingreditur patrium gressu properante cubiculum,
Diripit a clavo clamque patris gladium;
Rullandi fuit iste, viri virtute potentis,
Quem patruus magnus Karolus huic dederat.
Et Rullandus eo semper pugnare solebat,
Millia pagani multa necans populi."

Histoire de l'Academie Royale des inscriptions, &c., vol. xxi. 4^o. p. 141.

All the celebrated warriors of romance appear to have given names to their swords: thus we find Charles' own sword termed *Joieuse* (see below, l. 4683, *Chanson de Roland*, ed. M. Michel, st. 179, ll. 6, 13); Turpin's *Almace* (*ibid.* st. 153, l. 7); Baligant's *Mallet* (*ibid.* st. 227, l. 15); Richard of Normandy's *Escalidars* (Romance of *Ogier le Danois*, ed. Adenez); Oliver's *Hautecler*; Ogier's *Cortine*, and others. Ferumbras in the French version has three swords, Florance, Baptisme, and Garbain.

The following account of *Durendal* is from *Le Premier Livre de la plaisante et delectable histoire de Gerileon d'Angleterre*, by Estienne de Maisonneuve Bordo-lois, Paris, 1572, 8°. leaf 47, back:—"Après cela elle (la fée Oziris) tira du dit cabinet vne espee large, belle et bien trenchante au possible, le fourreau de laquelle estoit de la peau d'un grand serpent, qui fut occis par Hercule lors qu'il estoit encore bien jeune, laquelle estoit si proprement mouchetée qu'encore qu'elle n'eust esté garnie et conuerte de plusieurs diamans, rubis, et autres pierres precieuses, ayant esté mise a l'opposite du Soleil, elle eust rendu plus grand lueur et clarté que le mesme or s'appeloit *Duransarde*, que ledit Nabot auoit conqueise sur le merueilleux et epouuantable Geant Scarafarab, qui estoit de la race d'Ancelede, vn de ceux qui voulant jadis monter au ciel furent foudroyez par Jupiter." In a work published at Paris in 1555, by Pierre Belon du Mans, entitled, *Observations de plusieurs singularitez et choses memorables, trouuées en Grece, Asie, &c.*, Bk. III. chapt. 42, leaf 204, we are told that, "La grand espée de Roland pend encore pour l'heure presente à la porte du chasteau de Bourco. Les Turcs la gardent chere comme quelque reliquaie; car ils pensent que Roland estoit Turc, au moins s'il peut estre vray ce que le vulgaire en pense." In the French *Fierabras Durendal* is said to have been made by Munificans, one of three brothers who forged nine celebrated swords, three of which I have already mentioned as belonging to Ferumbras, the others being *Musagine*, *Courtain* (Ogier's) *Floberge*, *Hauteclere*, and *Ioieuse*.

Roland's dying address to his sword, in which he fully describes it, will be found in the *Chanson de Roland*, ed. Michel, st. 169, p. 90; and in Turpin's *Vita Caroli Magni*, Florence, 1822, chapt. xxiii. pp. 66-7. In this latter work will be also found, p. 147, a long and interesting account of an ancient sword corresponding in almost every particular with *Durendal*, as described by Roland himself.

- p. 39, l. 996. "on ys yre," i. e. on his ear. The form *ieare* occurs in the *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, ed. Morris, 211; and *iare* in *An English Miscellany*, ed. Morris, p. 36.
- p. 39, l. 1000. "prysouns," prisoners, as frequently found in early writers. Similarly we have *message*, for a messenger, Chaucer, *Man of Lawe's Tale*, 333. See the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, ed. Morris, l. 2044; *P. Plowman*, C. x. 72; xxi. 59, &c.
- p. 39, l. 1001. "with rendouns;" i. e. at full speed. Cotgrave gives, "*Aller à grand randon*. To go very fast, or with a great and forced pace." So in *Bevis of Hampton*, p. 139, "He rod to him *with gret randoun*."
- p. 39, l. 1003. "putte an aueuture;" risked, ventured. The *Catholicon Anglicum*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Herrtage, gives "to In Awntyrr. *In eventū ponere*."
- p. 40, l. 1034. "sechyng on þe playne." French, "le camp ont recerquié."

p. 40, l. 1070. In the French text it is Roland and Ogier who disarm Ferumbras.

p. 40, l. 1071. "sengle." Apparently the meaning is *undressed*; the French text reads—"Li rois est remens *sengles* on bliaut gironné."

p. 40, l. 1072. Compare l. 1942. In the French text Ferumbras is thus described—

Gros fu par les espaules, grailles par le baudré
Et ample ot le viaire, gentement figuré,
Les ex vairs en la teste comme faucons mué."

p. 41, l. 1082. "an archebisschop." In the French text—

"Il apela Milon et Turpin l'alosés,
Deus rices arcevesques de moult grand saintete.

p. 42, l. 1087. It was the custom for persons converted to Christianity to change their names.

p. 42, l. 1094. "taste is wounde," i. e. examine by touch, probe. In a similar way we find the expression "to fste a savour." The translator has literally rendered the French original, which has—"Ils sont venus au roi, les flans li ont tastés." Cotgrave gives—"Taster. To taste; or take an essay of; also to handle, feele, touch, or grope for." The same expression occurs in *Horn Childe* and *Maiden Rimnild* (pr. in Ritson's *Met. Rom.*, p. 309):—

"The maiden *tast* Hornes *wounde*
The kinges douhter in that stounde.

See also *P. Plowman*, B. xviii, 84. Caxton's version reads "sercheden his woundes."

p. 42, l. 1104. "atte frome:" at first. The expression occurs in the *Owl and Nightingale*, ed. Stratmann, 1513. Compare also the *Custel off Loue*, ed. Weymouth, 595:—

"Herkenep now forpere *atte frome*
How vr Saueor wolde come;"

and in the Anglo-Saxon Gospel of St. John i. 1,—"*On fruman* was word," &c.

p. 42, l. 1109. This celebrated bridge is thus referred to in Don Quixote, ed. Shelton, 1675: "See what wit is there in the world so profound, that can induce another to beleve that the History of *Guy of Burgundie*, and the Princes *Floripes* was not true? Nor that of *Fierabras*, with the Bridg of *Mantible*, which befell in *Charlemaines* time, and is I swear, as true, as that it is day at this instant? And if it be a Lie so must it be also that ever there was an *Hector*, *Achilles*, or the War of *Troy*; *The twelve Peeres of France*, or King *Arthur* of *Britaine*, who goes yet about the world in the shape of a Crow, and is euery foote expected in his kingdome . . . and in *Roncesuals* there yet hangs *Rowlands* horne, which is as big as a very great joyst."—Lib. I, Part iv, chapt. xxii, p. 130.

p. 42, l. 1112. "prisouns." See note to l. 883, above.

p. 42, l. 1115. "Carful;" full of care, wretched. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiii. 103, and see Luke xiv. 13, and l. 5221, below.

p. 42, l. 1118. "Amerel". The following are the various forms under which this word appears in the romances. In *Fierabras* we have *Amirans* and *Amirant*; in the Provençal version, *Almiran*; in the Sowdone *Admyrall*, *Amiral*; in Caxton *Admyral*.

- p. 43, l. 1146. "þes moste man;" this the tallest man, &c.
 p. 44, l. 1159. "broȝt of lyues dawē;" killed: a common expression. Compare l. 1588:

"Mani a bold burn was sone *brouȝt of dawē*."

William of Palerne, ed. Skeat, 3817.

and

"Mani a bold burne sone *brouȝt of liue*."—*ibid.* 1159.

- p. 44, l. 1176. "noȝt for þat;" nevertheless. Compare the modern expression *for all that*. At l. 5265 we have the form *for—þan*.
 p. 44, l. 1186. "stokkes of trow;" in wooden stocks, pillories. French text—"En ma cartre profonde en *estroit* les metés."
 p. 45, l. 1201. "Sche was a mayde fair & swet." Floripas is described as follows in the French text:—

"Moult par ot gent le cors, escevi et molé,
 Le car ot tenre et blanche comme flours en este,
 La face vermetlette comme rose de pré
 La bouce petitete, et li dent sont seré,
 Ki plus estoient blanc k'ivoire replané.
 Les levres ot grossetes, dou rouge it ot assés,
 Le nés ot bien séant, le front bel et plané,
 Les ex vairs et rians plus d'un faucon mué."

- p. 45, l. 1206. "on & on;" one and one, that is of this one and that one, of everyone. Compare our expression "of one and another," and see l. 1193.
 p. 45, l. 1211. "in baile;" in custody, confinement. "*Bail*. A wardship, tuition, government." Cotgrave. See *Kyng Alisaunder*, ed. Weber, 7532, &c.
 p. 46, l. 1238. "preynte." According to Prof. Skeat from an A.S. verb *prinken*, to wink, of which, however, we find but slight traces. In Halliwell we have "*Prink*, to look at, gaze upon. *West*." The word occurs in *P. Plowman*, B. xiii. 112:—

þanne conscience curteisliche . a contenance he made,
 And *preynte* vpon pacience . to preie me to be stille."

It occurs again in the present poem, ll. 1365, and 4507.

- p. 47, l. 1264. Note the change in the tenses.
 p. 47, l. 1270. See note to l. 753.
 p. 47, l. 1284. "at þy paye;" at thy pleasure, to please thee.
 p. 47, l. 1289. "Doggedlich;" i. e. *dogtelich*, doughtily, valiantly.
 p. 47, l. 1290. "helue." See l. 103
 p. 47, l. 1291. "by hur selue;" with herself.
 p. 47, l. 1294. "Moult vaut miex boins taisirs que solement parler."
 p. 48, l. 1304. In the French text—

"Je quit o'as pucieles sivés moult bien juer,
 En cambre sons cortine baisier et acoler.'
 Dist Guillemers l'Escos: 'Biens sapes deviner,
 Juqu'en Jherusalem ne trouveriés son per.'"

Caxton's version has, "I byleue verlyly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in somme chaumbre vnder curteynes, & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner."

- p. 48, l. 1307. In the French text Floripas sends *Marmucet* (*Maumecet*) not for

a sledge-hammer, anvil, &c., but for a long rope with which she pulls the knights up from the dungeon ; and so in Caxton's version.

p. 48, l. 1311. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiii. 117—

“Euery man help oþer, for hennes shulleþ we alle.”

p. 48, l. 1316. “zeate.” This pronunciation of *gate* still survives in Devonshire. The line is literally translated from the French—

“Par une gaste porte de viel antequité.”

p. 48, l. 1324—1331. This description of the chamber of Floripas differs altogether from that in the French text, in which only the ceiling is described as follows :—

“Desus la maistre vaute avoit par art posé
Le ciel et les estoiles, et yver et esté,
La lune et li solaus, qui nous donne clarté,
Forers, teres et puis, i est tout painturé,
Li oisiel et les bestes et li serpent cresté.”

The author then tells us that the chamber was built by king Methuselah, who he assures us (“*ce dist on par verté*”) died of grief because king Naaman desired to have it. Surely an extraordinary jumble of personages. The garden is then described, amongst the plants growing in which is the Mandrake, which will cure any wound or disease.

With the description of Floripas's room as here given compare that in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, ll. 1425—1500 (where amongst the wall-paintings we find one of “Grete Charlus with the crounne”), and the following from *Early English Miscellanies*, Warton Club, 1855, ed. Halliwell, p. 4 :—

“The towres shal be of every, Clene corven by and by,
The dore of whallus bone;
The cowpuls alle of galyngalle, The bemus alle of ryoche coralle,
Ryally begone ;
The dosers alle of camaca, The bankers alle of taffaca,
The quyschyns alle of velvet ;
The wyndows alle of jasper stone, The pelows of coralle everychone,
With joye joyned in gete,” &c.

p. 48, l. 1325. So in *Sir Guy*,

“The walls therof were of cristall,
And the sommers of corrall.”

p. 50, l. 1329. Compare *Lazamon*, 24,598 ; “mid golde bi-gon.”

p. 50, l. 1341. “sente.” Probably *sendal*, a species of rich thin silken stuff, highly esteemed. See *Strutt*, II. 3 ; *Guy of Warwick*, p. 421, &c. Or it may mean that the bedsteads were of *Sendal-wood*. “*Sendal*. Sandal, sendail ; Bois rouge des Indes.” Roquefort.

p. 50, l. 1359. “Or y ha told þy fader fore ;” before I have informed thy father. The *fore* appears to be superfluous.

p. 50, l. 1360. “chaunged was al hure blee.” In the French text—

“si a le sanc mué ;

Son pere moult redoute et sa grant cruauté.”

p. 50, l. 1365. “preynta.” See note to l. 1238.

p. 50, l. 1368. “hur cast ;” French, *sa volente*.

p. 51, l. 1370. “þat olde trate ;” that old woman. An expression of contempt.

Halliwell curiously enough quotes the word from the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 150, misspelling it *crate*, and corrects Ritson for spelling it correctly. (See Halliwell *s.v.* *Crate*.) In the present instance the first letter of the word in the MS. is certainly more like *c* than *t*, but these are letters between which it is at times almost impossible to distinguish.

- p. 51, l. 1386. "Sche fet him a drench." In the French text Floripas gives Oliver a small bit of the Mandrake already referred to as growing in the garden, but the effect is the same.
- p. 51, l. 1387. "sone þas;" at once. See Introduction, p. xxvii.
- p. 51, l. 1388. "gropede;" felt. So Hampole, *Pricks of Conscience*, 6556, tells us that in Hell the darkness will be such "þat it may be *graped*, swa thik it es."
- p. 51, l. 1391. "tauzte þat sche was free;" showed that she had learnt politeness and courtesy.
- p. 51, l. 1407. "by is power;" according to his power.
- p. 52, l. 1450. "Myn herte me jifþ." Compare the modern expression—my heart misgives me.
- p. 52, l. 1463. "to don him sle ther;" to cause him to be slain there. See Introduction, p. xxiii.
- p. 54, l. 1512. "Vij." French text "xv."
- p. 54, l. 1525. "Myne amendes make;" that is, make amends, satisfaction to me. The expression occurs several times in the present poem. *Amenes* is singular, as in Pecoock's *Repressor* (Rolls Series, ed. Babington, p. 110), where we read, "a sufficient *amendes*," and in the *Catholicon Anglicum* we have, "an *Amenes*. *Emenda, emendacio, correccio*." See hereafter, ll. 1724, 1768.
- p. 54, l. 1527. "in fee;" that is as a knight held his land from his sovereign, or a vassal from his lord. Spelman defines *Fee* as "the right which the vassal has in land, or some immoveable thing of his lord's, to use the same, and take the profits of it hereditarily, rendering to his lord such feudal duties and services as belong to military tenure; the meer propriety of the soil remaining always vested in the lord."
- p. 55, l. 1579. See note to l. 197 above.
- p. 55, l. 1580. French text reads—
 "Tels .x. en materoie ains soleil esooné;
 Mais envoie jouter .l. legier baceler,
 Car trop avés cel chief et canu et mellé."
- p. 56, l. 1595. "þe hedes on þe tre by-lafte;" the heads remaining on the shafts.
- p. 56, l. 1602. "What halt it;" of what use is it to make a long story of it, to delay us in our tale?
- p. 57, l. 1621. "requilled hem alle;" drove together. In the French text:—
 "Et aquellent Francois environ de tous lea."
- Requilled* represents the Latin *recolligere* as *Aquellent* represents *accolligere*. "*Aqueillir*. Associer. *Accolligere*," Roquefort.
- p. 57, l. 1633. "seuen glotouns." French—"vii gloutons." We have already had the word as used by Charles to Roland on his refusal to accept Ferumbras' challenge: see l. 164.

- p. 57, l. 1638. "Hure wyle miȝt þow now wel ȝylde;" thou canst now well requite their treachery.
- p. 57, l. 1639. "Al quike y rede þan let hem hylde;" I recommend that thou cause them to be skinned alive.
- p. 57, l. 1653. "stent;" for *standeth*: as we say, How matters *stand*. See l. 2035.
- p. 58, l. 1666. "Al so mot y waxe;" so may I thrive, prosper.
- p. 58, l. 1667. "prensenty." French *prensenter*.
- p. 58, l. 1671. "vassalage;" conduct becoming to a knight. "*Vasselage, vasselaige*: Courage, valeur, action de valeur, action courageouse, prouesse, force de corps." Roquesfort.
- p. 58, l. 1672. "an hed." In the French text, "Cascuns saisi .ii. testes."
- p. 58, l. 1674. "aferrom;" far off, from afar. So in *Morte Arthure* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Brock), 856:—

"We folowede o *ferrome* moo thene fyfe hundrethe."

- p. 58, l. 1678. "Richard;" in the French—Ogier li danois.
- p. 58, l. 1680. "þef." Sic in MS. Read *þes*. Compare l. 4315, below.
- p. 58, l. 1682. "Sixty pers." French "*xxx. ars*."
- p. 58, l. 1684. French text—

"X breteques y a, chascune sor piler,
Et peut bien sur cascune .x. chevaliers ester."

- p. 58, l. 1687. We are told afterwards in the French text that the river was 12 feet deep, and the lowest pier 30 yards high.
- p. 58, l. 1700. "Who, to look at, seems a fiend."
- p. 59, l. 1701. "Hache." French "*mace*."
- p. 59, l. 1705. Compare note on l. 1042.
- p. 59, l. 1708. "ther by-gynneþ luþer hanel;" that is—here is a bad beginning. *Hansel* is literally "the first money taken for the sale of any commodity, or taken the first in the morning."—*Bailey*.
- p. 59, l. 1711. "I will try to find out his intentions, and delay him a while, till you shall all have passed over."
- p. 59, l. 1715. "it miȝte be dure aboȝt." French text reads:—"Viels tu donner .i. cop pour .xv. recouvrer?"
- p. 60, l. 1729. It is singular that the author of the English version should omit here four lines in which Naymes accounts to Alagolofure for the heads which each knight carries at his saddle-bow, a point on which the Bridge-ward would naturally demand an explanation:

"XV. larrons trouvames là val enmi oes prés,
Si nous varent tolir no destriers sejournés.
Mais, merci Diu de gloire, i l'ont cier comperé;
Véés ici les testes, se vous ne m'en créés."

which, it will be seen, correspond with Roland's statement to the Emir, at ll. 1683—1687.

- p. 60, l. 1734. "It is not easy to get." Literally from the French, "*n'est legiers à trouver*."
- p. 60, l. 1736. "an hundred." French, "*vii^e*."
- p. 60, l. 1739. French text gives:—

"Et .M. palefrois fors, .M. destriers sejournés,
Et du pié du ceval .M. mars d'or esmerés,
Après d'or et d'argent .iiii. sonniers trouseés."

p. 60, l. 1741. "nemaþ gome;" take heed, notice.

"Son he seide, tak good *gome*,
zyven þou hast þin owne dome."

Cursor Mundi, ed. Morris, l. 7937.

p. 60, l. 1748. "harneys;" baggage, *impedimenta*. The author follows the French text literally:—"Ci vient nostre harnois." "*Harnas*, Arnure complète, ornement; meubles et ustensiles de ménage; bagage, outils; en bas lat. *harnesium*." Roquefort.

p. 60, l. 1750. "hertes of gresse;" fat harts; already, l. 1619, called "hertes refet at al." *Grease* or *greese* is the fat of a hare, boar, wolf, deer, &c.; and the season for killing harts and bucks was called *grease-time*, because they were then fattest. See *Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, l. 658 and 1101.

p. 60, l. 1773. "on a grene erber." In the French text:—"Siet sous cel arbre ramé." O.Fr. *herbier*, Lat. *herbarium*, a garden. The spelling *erber* occurs in some MSS. of *P. Plowman*, B. text, xvi. 15, and in *P. Plowman's Crede*, l. 166, we find the plural *erberes*. The word was afterwards confounded with *harbour* (*herberwe*), and, still later, was misspelt *arbour* from an erroneous idea that it was connected with Lat. *arbor*, a tree. See Dr. Murray's note on *Thomas of Ercildoune* (E. E. T. Soc.), l. 177.

p. 60, l. 1793. "Roland." In the French text it is Naymes who speaks first, but the words and actions used are the same, and are certainly more appropriate to the reckless Roland than to the quiet Naymes.

p. 60, l. 1808. "By ous sente he þe to sayn;" by us he sent the message to deliver to thee. So in Lonelich's *Holy Grail*, ed. Furnivall, xiii. 48, "And thus the sente to seyne Ech del;" and xii. 187, "And therefore the sente to sein be me." See also below, p. 121, l. 1866.

p. 63, l. 1841. "his amendes." See note on l. 1525, and compare ll. 1885 and 4150.

p. 63, l. 1844. "abust;" tellest; a shortened form for *abeodest*. Wrongly explained in Halliwell.

p. 63, l. 1860. "Cil qui m'ocist Corsuble et mon oncle Mautrie.

p. 63, l. 1861. See note to l. 521.

p. 64, l. 1872. "þea, trupt!" an exclamation of contempt. It occurs in a poem on the reign of Edward I., printed in Mr. Wright's *Political Songs* (Camden Society, 1839), p. 223. "*Tprot*, Scot, for thi strif!" on which the Editor remarks—"The word *tprot* appears to be a mere exclamation of contempt. In a poem on 'The Propertees of the Shyres of Engeland,' printed by Hearne in the Introduction to the fifth volume of Leland's *Itinerary*, we find it used, as here, against the Scots:—

'Northumbrelond hasty and hoot;
Westmerlond *tprut* Scotte.'

In Sir Thomas de la More's *Chronicle*, it is applied to King Edward II:—"Tprut! Sire King!" It seems to be taken from the French: in Jean Bodel's *Jeu de S. Nicolas* (*Théâtre Français au Moyen-Age*, ed. MM. Moumerqué and

Michel) it is put into the mouths of the common gamblers in a public-house :—

'*Tproupt ! tproupt !* bevons hardiement :
Ne faisons si le coc emplat' (p. 183).

And again, immediately after (p. 184) :—

'*Tproupt ! tproupt !* où que soit passé, Diex !'

It seems to be a word coined for the purpose of expressing visibly the sound made with the lips in uttering an ejaculation of contempt.

p. 64, l. 1890. I cannot explain this line.

p. 64, l. 1893. "how he let his lif;" how he spends (*ledeth*) his life.

p. 64, ll. 1895—1898. Are additions of the English translator.

p. 65, l. 1907. "pis day 3at or none." Fr. "ains l'eure de complie," which is a very different thing, bring the time for the last prayers of the day.

p. 65, l. 1913. "wipoute more distaunce;" without any further contest."

p. 66, l. 1942. "sengle." Compare l. 1071: French text :—

"En la pure cemise soit li tiens cors remés,
Sor ton col une selle d'un destrier sejourné."

p. 66, l. 1953. "lete don of dawe;" caused to be put to death. Compare l. 1159.

p. 67, l. 1976. Note the two forms "heo" and "sche" in this line.

p. 67, l. 1992. "let hewen hem flesch & bon." French text :—

"Or leur faites les piés et les membres cauper,
Et ardoir en .l. fu par dehors la cité."

p. 67, l. 2007. "a-sotid." French text, *assoté*.

p. 68, l. 2008. "duke Myloun." French text :—

"Du rice duc Milon vous devoit ramenbrer,
Qui tant nori Girart, qu'il ot fait adoubier;
Puis li tolli sa fille, Galiene au vis cler,
L'enfant Garsilium en fist destreter."

p. 68, l. 2016. "þow gadelyng horesone." French text :—

"Fils à putain, fait elle, leclierres parjurés."

p. 68, l. 2019. "y wol þe teche," &c. French text :—

"Je te donroie ja tel de mon puing ou nés
Que très parmi la goule te sauroit li sans clers."

p. 68, l. 2021. "prysouns." See note on l. 883.

p. 68, l. 2027. The rime requires that we should read "het schitte the dore *faste*." The line is written over another erased.

p. 68, l. 2032. "aspye;" enquire.

p. 68, l. 2034. "may him gayme;" that may amuse him. Lines 2031 to 2036 are an addition of the English translator.

p. 68, l. 2035. "stent." See note to l. 1653.

p. 68, l. 2036. "do3opers." It is strange that here the author should spell this word correctly, while elsewhere we find "doppopers." See note to l. 197.

p. 69, l. 2053. "þou madest an hard vyage." French text :—

"He Diex ! dist Floripas, or est Karles irés."

p. 69, l. 2059. "Corsible of Mantrie." In the French version these two names appear as representing two distinct persons :—

FERUMBRAS,

P

"Tu m'ocesis Corsuble et mon oncle Matrie," as in l. 1860.

p. 69, l. 2065. "Roland my name is callid rîzt." French text:—

"Fix sui Milon d'Engler,
Et si ai nom Rollans, ensi sui apelés."

p. 69, l. 2076. "Wan þat my fader," &c. Compare before, ll. 1412—1425.

p. 70, l. 2085. "his;" probably an error for "he."

p. 70, l. 2092. "vi. fet." French text, "deus iiii pies mesurée."

p. 71, l. 2140. "þus wyle;" the while, while.

p. 71, l. 2142. "a wykkeder man," &c. French text:—"N'ot tant felon païen
jusc'à la rouge mer."

p. 72, l. 2174. "he put him seluen on a cas;" he risked himself in an situation,
from which he met with trouble.

p. 73, l. 2187. "heþenis;" heathendom, l. 121, "heþenisse."

p. 73, l. 2191. "Lyues;" the genitive sing. of the noun used adverbially. So in
Ancren Riwele, p. 390: "Nu, þeonne, biseche ich þe . . . þet tu lūuie me efter
þen ilke dead deaþe, Hwon þou noldest *liues*;" and *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, 509: "Y
if y late him *liues* go." Compare l. 2483.

p. 73, l. 2207. "olde cherld." French text, *viellars*.

p. 73, l. 2211. "barons in fee;" barons holding their land direct from the king.
See note to l. 1527.

p. 74, l. 2221. "to ryuere;" go hawking at the river-side after water-fowl. So
in the *Life of St. Alexius* (E. E. T. S., ed. Furnivall, 1878, p. 65) we read how
the Saint was set

"To lernen chivalrie,
Of hunting & of *Ryuere*
Of chesse pleieng & of tablers."

p. 74, l. 2224. "pleyep to þe eschekkere;" play at chess or at tables (back
gammon). See an account of the old game of chess in the notes to the *Gesta
Romanorum*, chapt. xxi. p. 70.

p. 74, l. 2225. "iew-de-dame;" draughts. "*Dames*. The play on the outside
of a pair of Tables, called draughts." Cotgrave. See Strutt, *Sports and
Pastimes*, 1810, p. 278, and Jamieson, *s. v.* Dams.

p. 74, l. 2227. "sckyrme alay." I do not know the meaning of these words;
most probably there is some error in the text.

p. 74, l. 2229. "All these are not worth a straw."

p. 74, 2232. "chymenay;" hearth, fireplace. This was the original meaning of
the word from Lat. *caminus*. So in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1375—

"Damesel, loke ther be A ffuyre in the *chymene*."

See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. x. 94.

Compare also the corresponding passage in the *Sowdowe of Babyloyn*:—

"To the *Chymene* forth he goth
And caught a bronde him withe to smyte" (l. 2009).

But in the same poem, l. 2351, the word appears to bear the modern meaning,
for we are told that Mapyne the thief,—

"Even in to Floripas bour, By a *chemney* he wente inne."

This is a very early instance of this use, as *chimnies* in the present sense of the
word were not common before the time of Elizabeth.

- p. 74, l. 2240. "with oute zede," &c. This seems to mean that Naymes moved so that Lucifer was between him and the fire, which is corroborated by the fact that when Naymes strikes the Saracen, the latter falls "doun amidde þe fyre."
- p. 74, l. 2242. "onde." Icel. *önd, öndi*, breath. "An Ande; *anelitus*." *Cath. Anglicum*. See *Prompt. Parv.* s. v. *Onde*.
- p. 74, l. 2244. "falachoun." "A falchion: perhaps the sword was first so called when the inner edge was sharpened, in resemblance of the hand-bill, and afterwards the name was applied generally to any sword. The Statuta Ecclesie Agnensis say:—*Statutum fuit quod nullus canonicus, nullus clericus portare audeat cuttellum armorum, falchionem pennatam, elavam ensem, aut alia arma*." See Meyrick's *Antient Armour*, 1824, iii. Glossary.
- p. 74, l. 2253. "faire hure falle þat ilke hond:" fair befall it, that hand.
- p. 75, l. 2256. "let hym enchaufye ynne." French text:—"or le laisiés causer." In the *Soudone of Babyloyne*, Naymes, we are told, "With a fyre-forke he helde him doune," while Floripas "bade him warine him wale" (l. 2018).
- p. 76, l. 2291. "Coudryn." French text, Cordroé.
- p. 76, l. 2303. "an hundred." French text, "M."
- p. 77, l. 2336. "þat so on þe fenne," &c.; that was so covered with mud. On *by-gan* see note to l. 1329.
- p. 77, l. 2342. "alre most;" most of all. *Alre* is the genitive pl. of the adjective, which we find under the various forms, *alre, aller, alder, aldre, alther*. See numerous examples in Stratmann and Halliwell. *Aldre* occurs in the present poem at l. 2541, p. 83.
- p. 78, l. 2376. "to 3er." French text, *jusque à viii. ans*.
- p. 78, l. 2377. "vj. mylen." French text, *iv lieues*.
- p. 79, l. 2392. "an hundred pound." French text, *une grant caretée*.
- p. 79, l. 2399. "myster;" craft, skill; l. 2425, "maystries."
- p. 79, l. 2413. "attendep;" lights. French text:—
 "Une chandelle a prinse, au fu l'a alumée."
 "þat he of þe holi gost so ure heorte utende." *An Early Eng. Miscellany*, ed. Morris, p. 52. A.S. *ontendan*.
- p. 79, l. 2421. "druwerye;" sweetheart, betrothed. In *Arthour and Merlin*, p. 312, the Virgin is styled "Cristes drurie." O.French, *drurie, druerie*, love, passion, from *drut*, a lover; O.H. Ger. *trüt*, Ger. *traut*, dear. See *Rime of Sir Thopas*, 2085. "þe zute;" compare our expression, *all the while*, and see l. 2140.
- p. 80, l. 2429. "whit as wales bone;" that is, as white as ivory (the bone or tooth of the walrus). So in *Sir Eglamour*, ed. Halliwell, 801,—
 "A man-chylde had Crystysabelle,
 As whyte as whallys boon."

The expression is not uncommon in the old poets; thus in the *Squyr of Lowe Degre*, l. 537, we find—

"Lady, as whyte as whales bone,
 There are thyrtý agaynst me one;"

Compare also *Love's Labour Lost*, v. 2:—

"This is the flower that smiles on every one,
 To show his teeth as white as whales bone."

See also the description of the house in *Early Eng. Miscellanies*, ed. Halliwell, from the Porkington MS. (Warton Club, 1855), p. 4, l. 8, where we are told that—

“The towres shal be of every
Clene corven by and by,
Thé dore of whallus bone.”

p. 81, l. 2475. “wan þe sounre hure schon.” See note to l. 433.

p. 81, l. 2483. “lyues man.” See above, l. 2191.

p. 82, l. 2524. “clynge & drie;” pine away through thirst. So in *P. Plowman*, B. xiv. 50: “whan þou clomsest for colde, or *clyngeſt for drye* ;” and *Metrical Homilies*, ed. Small, p. 88:—

“For þal and *clungen* was his chek,
His skin was *klungen* to þe bane.”

Hampole, in describing the signs of man's approaching death, says—

“His pouce es stille, with-outen styringes,
His fete waxes calde, his bely *clyngeſ*.”

Pricke of Conscience, 822.

Shakspeare, *Macbeth*, v. 5, 40, has “Till famine *cling* thee,” i. e. pine, shrivel thee up.

p. 83, l. 2534. “maumerye.” From the false idea that the Mahometans were idolaters—a belief very general in the middle ages—arose the O.French *mahomet*, an idol; *mahumerie*, idolatry, or an idolatrous temple, as here. Chaucer, *Persones Tale* (De Avaritia), says:—“an idolastre peraventure ne hath not but o *maumet* or two, and the avaricious man hath many; for certes, every florein in his coffre is his *maumet*.” See *Mawmet* in Wedgwood's Etymological Dictionary.

p. 83, l. 2538. “Sir Ternagan,” &c. French text:—

“Là estoit Tervagana, et Apolins levés,
Et Margos, et Jupins, et des autres assés.”

p. 83, l. 2541. “aldre.” See above, l. 2342.

p. 83, l. 2543. “y-poudred;” interspersed. “A garment *poudered* with purple studdes.” Hollyband's *Dict.* 1593.

p. 83, l. 2558. “þat god schold ben on apayd;” that God should be pleased with.

p. 84, l. 2603. “our purchase for to make.” Fr. *pourchasser*, to hunt after, chase; thence, to catch, seize, rob; thence, to obtain generally; and finally, to acquire in exchange for money. In old writers the word had the meaning of acquiring in any way, whether by force or not. We see it in its transition state in Shakspeare, *Henry V*, iii. 2:—“They will steal anything and call it *purchase*.” Spenser uses the word in its original sense, *Faery Queens*, I. iii. 16:—

“On his backe a heavy load he bare
Of nightly steltha, and pillage severall,
Which he had got abroad by *purchase* criminall.”

p. 84, l. 2614. The cuirass called broigne. The word occurs in documents of the time of Charlemagne. The Anglo-Saxons termed it *byrne* and *byrnan*; the Normans *broigne*. Thus the *Roman de Garin*:—

“L'escu li perce, s'a la *broigne* fausée.”

Again :—

“ En son dos vest une *broigne* trestice.”

In *Le Roman de Ron* :—

“ Des haubers et des *broignes* mainte male faussée.”

And the *Roman de Roncevaux* :—

“ La veist-on tante *broigne* saffrée.”

From Meyrick's *Antient Armour*, 1824.

The *Brynye* was of *mail*, as appears from *King Horn*, 2740 :—“ Of his brinie ringes mo.”

“ And caste a *brinie* up-on his rig.”

Havelok, ed. Skeat, 177:

- p. 85, l. 2623. “ her schal leue ; ” shall remain here. So in *P. Plowman*, A. iii. 190 : “ þer I *laſte* wiþ my lord,” and *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Hertridge, p. 401, “ he *leſte* still alone in the kyrke.”
- p. 85, l. 2629. “ our on ; ” one of us. Compare “ hure boþen,” l. 677, and the note.
- p. 86, l. 2647. “ *lätoun*.” A kind of mixed metal, resembling brass both in nature and colour. We find it used for helmets (*Rime of Sir Thopas*, 2067) ; sepulchral monuments (*Way in Prompt*) ; spoons (*Nares, Glossary*) ; lavers (*P. Plowman's Crede*, 196), &c.
- p. 86, l. 2648. “ *blas* ; ” blast. So in the *Ancren Riwele*, p. 82, we have “ þes deofles *bles*,” and in *An Early English Miscellany* (E. E. T. S., ed. Morris), p. 93 : “ *windes bles*.”
- p. 86, l. 2654. “ *boþe bok & bil*.” French text, “ les flans et les *costés*.” Here the meaning appears to be, “ back & front.”
- p. 87, l. 2684. “ forsake he þys myster ; ” let him give up this profession (of a soldier).
- p. 87, l. 2692. “ *xxiiij of faire somers*.” French text, “ ix *soumiers*.”
- p. 87, l. 2695. “ *capouns*.” French text, “ *boins paons lardés*.”
- p. 87, l. 2706. “ *xxx. pousant*.” French text, “ plus de *xx^m. armés*.”
- p. 88, l. 2719. “ *þat art*.” The change of person is curious.
- p. 88, l. 2728. “ *dartes y-feþered wiþ bras*.” Compare l. 966.
- p. 89, l. 2752. “ *wel-a-Fyn* ; ” well, perfectly, to good purpose. Compare Tusser, *Five Hundred Points* (E. Dial. Soc., 1878), p. 210, l. 5.
- p. 89, l. 2753. “ *þou syngest an ydel songe*.” French text, “ *pour noient regretés*.”
- p. 89, l. 2762. “ *Hete* ; ” time.
- p. 89, l. 2770. “ *an aker lengþe*.” See note to l. 971. French text, “ plus d'une grant *ruée*.” Compare l. 3040.
- p. 90, l. 2782. “ *agon ys al myn hiȝt* ; ” all my promised pleasure.
- p. 90, l. 2784. “ *Hit ne may beo no consail* ; ” there can be no concealment about it.
- p. 90, l. 2792. “ *þe þridde day*.” French text, “ Je rendrai ceste tour ains demains *l'ajornée*.”
- p. 90, l. 2804. “ *tomorwe or niȝt þat þe cok hym graide* ; ” before the cock crows to-morrow night. French text, “ *demain ains l'avesprée*.” “ *Avesprer*. To drawe towards evening to growe neare night.” Cotgrave.

- p. 90, l. 2808. "pat we ete;" since we have eaten.
- p. 91, l. 2822. "teynt." French text, "il est estains et pailles."
- p. 91, l. 2832. "Hit is twel month and more apaste." French text, "plus de v. mois." From this line and ll. 304-5 it would appear that Charlemagne's stay in Spain extended over four years, but the *Song of Roland* states that he was in Spain seven years,¹ while in *Otuel* this is still further increased to twenty-seven years.² See *Otinel, Chanson de Geste*, ed. MM. Guessard and Michelant, pp. vi, vii, and Gaston Paris, *Histoire Poétique*, p. 268.
- p. 91, l. 2829. "he is myn vncler rízt." French text adds:—
"Et fils d'une des filles au duc Millon d'Aingler."
- p. 91, l. 2830. "Cosyn . . Germain." "*Germanus*, de eodem germine vel eadem genetrice manantes."—Dulange. "*Germain*. Germaine: come of the same stock, bred of the same kind, neare of kinne, of all-one race." Cotgrave. "For certis ye ne han no child but a doughter, ne ye han no brethere ne *cosines germains*." Chaucer, *Tale of Melibeus*.
- p. 91, l. 2834. "mored;" rooted, fixed. A.S. *more*, a root, which occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 250; xviii. 21; xxii. 340. See *Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, p. 28.
- p. 92, l. 2854. And yet we are not told that he had been freed from the bonds with which he had been "harde & uaste y-bounde."
- p. 92, l. 2860. "dede hym kulle." We cannot take *kulle* here literally, but as meaning "tried to kill." Caxton's reading is—"they al to-bete hym in suche wyse that he knewe not where he was."
- p. 92, l. 2872. "wyp-oute any where;" without any doubt.
- p. 93, l. 2919. "amounty;" amount to, signify.
- p. 94, l. 2946. "euene him selue;" equally with himself. So in *P. Plowman*, B. xvii. 134:—

"I hote þat þow louye

Thyn euene crystene euermore, euene forth with þi-self."

and Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, 2235: "emforth (= even forth) my might." See also *King Solomon's Book of Wisdom*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Furnivall, p. 83, l. 33.

- p. 95, l. 2963. "blessede;" made the sign of the cross. See l. 256.
- p. 95, l. 2969. "douce France." The Editor of the Roxburghe Club edition of the *Soudone of Babyloine* makes a curious suggestion arising from the epithet here applied to France. After remarking on the fact that *sixteen*, if not more, are enumerated as amongst the "douzepairs," he says:—"a reference to l. 170 will show that the epithet *douze* is applied to France: it may, therefore, have been given to the twelve peers, much in the sense of gentle in the English word gentleman, *homo gentilis*." Introduction, p. vi.
- p. 95, l. 2976. "polte." So in *Robert of Gloucester*, 479, 7, "Hii pulte hem vorp bivore þe opere," and in *Lazamon*, l. 321, l. 7527:—"And Nemnius pulte vp his scelde."

¹ "Set anz plains que en espaigne venimes:

Jo vos cunquis e Noples e Commibles,

Pris ai Valterne e la terre de Pine

E Balasqued e Tuele e Sezilie."—ed. Michel, p. 8, st. xiv.

² And so in *Gui de Bourgogne*, l. 59:—

"Il a .xxvii. anz qu'en Espaigne venimesa,"

- p. 96, l. 2986. "Hur brede was y-bake." Compare l. 577.
- p. 96, l. 3019. "loude & stille." One of those proverbial phrases, with the meaning of "in every way, at all times," which so frequently occur in the old poets. Compare "oft and lome;" "hard & neychs" (l. 5187); "high and low;" "fer and hende;" "al and some;" "late and rathe;" &c.
- p. 96, l. 3020. "schille;" shrilly, loudly. Not a mistake for *schrille*, as might be thought, but the true form of the word, from A.S. *scyll*. It occurs not infrequently; see, for instance, *William of Palerne*, ll. 37, 213; *Sir Eglamour*, 300, &c.
- p. 96, l. 3021. "our men." The pronoun here comes in curiously, this being the only instance in which the author identifies himself with either side.
- p. 97, l. 3037. "be-vapid." This may either be the same word as *by-fraped*, l. 2987, or, as Prof. Skeat suggests, it may = *be-wappid*, thoroughly *whopped* or beaten. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Wap. Halliwell also gives "Waped, stupified (A.S.)," but I cannot find the word in Stratmann, though Bosworth has "*Wapian*, to waver, to be astonished."
- p. 97, l. 3039. "hymme." Sic in MS. We should doubtless read *hymen*, the mark of contraction being misplaced.
- p. 97, l. 3040. "More þan a boze-drazte;" French text, "plus d'un arpent de tere," which we have literally translated in ll. 971 and 2770.
- p. 97, l. 3053. "Roland." In the French text "Guy."
- p. 98, l. 3061. "ounþank hadde þat spare;" shame to him who keeps back, spares himself. French text, "dehait ait cui en caut."
- p. 98, l. 3063—3175. An addition of the English translator.
- p. 98, l. 3072. "is takyngge þanne aboȝte;" suffered for having captured him (Guy).
- p. 98, l. 3083. "in þy donger." French text, "en vo dangier." Here we have the original meaning of *danger*, i. e. jurisdiction, the power which a feudal lord possessed over his vassals. "Dawnger: *domigerum, regnum.*" *Cath. Anglicum*. Chaucer says of the Sompnour,—

"In *daunger* hadde he at his owne gise
The ȝonge gurlis of the diocles."—Prol. C. T. 663.

See further illustrations in my note to the word in the *Catholicon Anglicum*.

- p. 99, l. 3126. "duden hem for to gone;" set themselves to get away.
- p. 99, l. 3131. "y-vewdid;" voided, cleared. "*Vuider*. To void, evacuate, empty," &c. Cotgrave. The original prose *Fierabras* reads "qilz vuiderent la place," and Caxton, "made them to voyde the place."
- p. 100, l. 3136. "Two & pyrtȝ grete somers." French text, "xv soumiers."
- p. 100, l. 3155. "iornee;" a day's work.
- p. 100, l. 3157. "monþes thre." French text, "Enfresi c'à .ii. mois n'aront mais povreté."
- p. 101, l. 3170. "Barbygan;" rampart. "Barbican by-fore a castelle. *Antemurale.*" *Prompt. Parv.* See Dr. Weymouth's note *s. v.* in Glossary to the *Castel off Loue*.
- p. 101, l. 3170. "þy castel of tre." French text, *beffroi*. In the *Cath. Anglicum* we have "A Barsepay (Barfray); *fustibulum*," on which see my note.

p. 101, l. 3184. "of al france þay bereþ þat flour." French text, "La flors i est de Franche, tout le plus alosé."

p. 101, l. 3190. French text—

"I. viellart, i. cenu de moult grant cruanté,
Qui plus de .M. hommes mordris et estranlés.
En la forest d'Ardane, où il a conversé."

p. 101, l. 3194. "chel;" perhaps for *chol*, jaw. The French text has *cief*.

p. 102, l. 3202. "By oure;" on what is ours they live. French text, "Et vivent tout du nostre."

p. 102, l. 3222. "heþenene." A relic of the old genitive plural ending in *-ene*: so in *P. Plowman* we have *kingenen*, of kings.

p. 102, l. 3227. In the French text the engineer is named Mahon.

p. 102, l. 3228. "Foule verde with þe tour;" it fared ill with those in the tower.

p. 102, l. 3233. "armedem in syker wede." French text:—

"Chascune avoit vestu .i. hauberc fremillon,
Et lacié en son cief .i. vert elme réom."

p. 103, l. 3263. "boþes of brake." Bows with a rack or winch, cross-bows of the largest size and strongest tension.

"With alblastis also [thai] atlet to shote,
With big bowes of brake byrkit full hard."

Troy Book, ed. Panton and Donaldson, 5728.

See the meaning of the term fully discussed in Prof. Skeat's note on *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 293:—

"Setteth bowes of brake, and brasene gonnes."

A *gunne* was a machine for casting stones, a catapult.

p. 103, l. 3267. "wilde fyr;" a combustible mixture, otherwise termed Greek fire. In *Richard Cœur de Lion*, 2463, we read of a vessel laden "with wyld fyr and other vytayle;" and at l. 5229, of the besiegers of a castle blowing "wyld fyr in trumpes of gynne." "Wyyld Fyrr. *Spartus: ignis Pelasgus, vel ignis Grecus*." Prompt. Parv., on which see Mr. Way's note.

p. 104, ll. 3280, 3281. Notice the different genders of the pronouns, *he*, *hit*.

p. 104, l. 3282. "schaly;" to peel off, drop off like scales.

p. 104, l. 3286. Soon it will be our lot (it will betide) to be burnt to ashes.

p. 104, l. 3289. "Melk of þe camele," &c. Caxton in his *Mirroure of the world*, pt. II. cap. 21, speaking of "grekyssh fyre," says that "it can not be quenched with water, but with *ayssel*, vryne, or with sonde only. The Sarasyns selle this water right dere and derrer than they doo good wyne."

p. 104, l. 3295. "þy doþter dede." So we find "suster sone; moder half," &c. See Introduction, and l. 3448.

p. 105, l. 3310. "Springold;" or springal, an ancient military engine for hurling stones, arrows, &c.

"And sum þai went to þe wal

With bowes and with *springal*."—*Bowes of Hamtoun*, p. 159.

A deed of Edward II, dated 1325, in Rymer's *Fœdera*, mentions "Springaldos, balistas, arcus, sagittas, ingenia, et alias hujusmodi armaturas pro munitione

castrorum et villarum." See Meyrick's *Antient Armour*. Cotgrave gives "*Espringalle*. An ancient engin of warre, whereon stones, pieces of iron, and great arrowes were shot at the wals of a beleagured Towne, and the defenders thereof: (now out of use.)"

p. 105, l. 3323. "y wot rízt wel to wisse." See note to l. 120

p. 105, l. 3324. "wold." So in *Sir Perceval*, ed. Halliwell, 2006—

"The geant stode in his holde,
That *had* those londis in *wolde*."

p. 106, l. 3345. Here in the French text Balan begins to curse Mahomet and all his gods, but is rebuked by Sortybrant. In the *Sowdone* Balan seizes the image of Mahoun and smashes it, whereat all the priests and bishops fall on their knees and cry—"Mahoun thyn ore," which the editor has curiously explained as "thy golden image!"

p. 106, l. 3352. "be-trend;" involved. See note to l. 4006 below.

p. 106, l. 3377. "launce ne kepede he non;" he cared for no lance, did not care to take a lance with him.

p. 107, l. 3385. "for arsouun;" the fore saddle-bow. Each saddle had two *arsouns*, one in front and one behind. "*Arçon*, a saddle-bow," Cotgrave. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Arson.

p. 107, l. 3389. "i-broched;" spitted, transfixed.

p. 109, l. 3448. "ys syster sone." The sign of the genitive case is frequently omitted before words beginning with a sibilant.

p. 109, l. 3450. "& þan leest he ys blys;" and then loseth he all his pleasure.

p. 109, l. 3475. "þanne hymen bad þe duk Gyoun," &c. In the French text Guy offers of his own accord to go, but Floripas will not hear of his doing so.

p. 110, l. 3481. "y am sumdel stryken in age." French text—"je suis de grant aé."

p. 110, l. 3499. "at nessche & hard;" lit. in soft and hard. A proverbial phrase meaning "in every way, in every point." See note to l. 3019.

p. 110, l. 3511. "þe beste red ys þat y can;" the best plan which I know is, &c.

p. 112, l. 3555. "vilentyne." French text, "*Oisiaus et volatisses*." See the Glossary.

p. 113, l. 3600. "By a fer contraye;" by a great distance, a long way.

p. 114, l. 3625. "was nozt so ferred ys fon;" had not got so far from his foes. See also l. 5565 below.

p. 115, l. 3657. "brochyng;" spurring. So in *Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, l. 918: "*Brochez* the baye stede, & to the buske rydez," and *Langtoft*, p. 277: "Ther stedes *broched* thei fast." "*Brocher un cheval des esperons*. To spurre him, to strike him with the spurres; also to spurre him hard, almost to sticke him with spurring," Cotgrave.

p. 115, l. 3659. "Of quente entaille was is stede," &c. French text:—

"Sor .i. destrier d'Arabe, qui plus cort que levriers,
Couvert d'un rice paille, menu est entailliez . . .
L'un costé avoit plus blanc que n'est fiers en pré,
Et l'autre avoit plus roge que charbon alumé,
Le keue paonace, le bu en haut levé."

Plus menu que pietris est li cevaus gietés,
 La cuisse grosse et corte, les piés plas et coupés.
 Et ot droite l'esquine et les crins acemés,
 Petites oreillettes, maigre chief, ample nés.
 Moult ot largue le pis, les ex et vairs et clers ;
 Tout estoit comme pie par devant vaironnés.
 La sele fu d'ivoire dont il fu enelés,
 Et de .iiij. fors chaingles fu li cevaus chainglés ;
 Li estrier furent d'or, rices fu li poitrés ;
 .C. campanetes d'or i pendent de tous lés.
 Quant li cevaus galope, ki tant est abrievés,
 Li sons de campanetes est tans dous et soués,
 N'i vaut lai ne vielle .ii. deniers monnés.
 Li palens l'esperonne par andeus les costés,
 Et li destriers li saut .xxx. piés mesurés,
 Et vait ensi bruiant comme foudre et oré."

- p. 115, l. 3667. "ket;" this word seems here to mean "quickly, furiously." It is a word of rare occurrence, but is found twice in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, ll. 330, 3793, where we also find the adverb *ketli*, *ketly*, ll. 1986, 2105, and 3023. See Professor Skeat's note in the Glossary s. v. where he suggests that possibly it may be another form of the O.E. *skeet*, O.N. *skjótt*, sharp, quick, in the same way as we find the two forms, *moulder* and *smoulder*; *knap* and *snap*, &c. The word occurs also in *P. Plowman*, A. xi. 56, where the meaning seems to be *acute*, *sharp*.
- p. 115, l. 3686. "for a þousend pound of golde." French text, "pour .xliij. cités."
- p. 116, l. 3693. "grobe to þat garse;" felt the wound (*gash*). "A garse: *scara vel scaria*. To garse, *scurificare*," *Cathol. Anglicum*. Palsgrave has "Garsshe in wode or in a knife, *boche*," and Huloet, "Garse or cutte, *incisura*." "A garse or *gash*, *incisura*." *Manip. Vocab*.
- p. 116, l. 3699. "entamy;" make any effect on. French text reads "enpirier," which Cotgrave renders by "impaire, imbase, or make worse."
- p. 116, l. 3704. "In to þe feld it fleȝ." French text:—
 "Le chief li a trencié près du bu, rés à rés ;
 Plus d'une longe toise en est avant salés."
- p. 116, l. 3708. "þat comeþ after gon;" a curious expression, where the *gon* appears superfluous.
- p. 116, l. 3713. "morel;" properly a dark-coloured horse. See *Tourneyley Mysteries*, p. 9. French text reads, *Baugant*. "*Morée*, a kind of murrey, or dark-red colour. *Cheval moreau*, a black horse," Cotgrave.
- p. 116, l. 3721. "ouer-towart:" athwart, across. French text, *en travers*.
- p. 117, l. 3735. "Fyfty stedes." French text, *xliij*.
- p. 118, l. 3763. "wot to wys." See note to l. 120.
- p. 118, l. 3765. "For ȝe hyre," &c. Probably we should read—"For ȝe schal hyre," &c.
- p. 119, l. 3804. "Me nyste nowar ys pere;" nowhere was his equal known.
- p. 119, l. 3820. "ryȝd[t]." Compare l. 956.
- p. 119, l. 3825. "snel;" sharp, careful.

"Teche hem alle to be war and *mel*,
That they conne sey þe wordes wel."

Miro's Instructions for Parish Priests, ed. Peacock, p. 4, l. 121.

- p. 120, l. 3835. "Hym schel beo betre han y-leued;" it will be better for him to have left it (not done so).
- p. 120, l. 3851. "Messenger." French text, "*drugemans*," a dragoman, which Cotgrave gives as "*Drugement*, a Trucheman, or Interpreter."
- p. 121, l. 3863. "As foul þat fleþ on þe lift;" in the air, aloft.
- p. 121, l. 3875. "pautener." See note to l. 859.
- p. 121, l. 3876. "He sent þe so to saye." See note to l. 1808.
- p. 121, l. 3878. "& ys by-stole awaye." The only other instance of this word of which I am aware is in *Lazamon's Brut*, 28,422; "and *bistal* from þau fihþe."
- p. 121, l. 3886. "tyȝd." See l. 1817.
- p. 121, l. 3888. "A skuntede als a bore;" he foamed like a wild boar. In the prose *Fierabras* the reading is—"il commenca à escumer come sil fust vng senglier eschauffe," which Caxton translates—"he began to scumme at the mouthe lyke a bore enchaffed." "*Escumer*, to foame," Cotgrave.
- p. 122, l. 3893. "orn;" ran. A.S. *rinman*, *irnan*, *eornan*. *Orn* occurs in the *Ancren Riwele*, p. 188, and in *Lazamon* we have such forms as *irnen*, *urnen*, *eornen*. See also *P. Plowman*, C. xix. 165, and *Stratmann*, s. v. *Rinnan*.
- p. 124, l. 3956. "wyt ase melkys fom." Compare *Sir Degrevant*, l. 1386: "whyȝth as the seeys fame." The French text reads, "*fu blans comme nois*." See also l. 5879, below.
- p. 124, l. 3968. "thro;" sharp, swift; "hur peinis were so þroo." *Sir Triamour*, l. 405, and *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, 3264; "wiþ þre M. of men þat þro were to fiȝt."
- p. 124, l. 3984. "Er he a-lizte adoun." French text, "*il estoit descendus son ceval recengler*."
- p. 125, l. 3987. "sterrede." See before, l. 3923.
- p. 125, l. 4006. "betrende;" to wind round, involve him. See Chaucer, *Troilus and Cresseide*, 4080, and l. 3352 above, which are the only other instances of the word of which I am aware, although the simple verb *trende* is not so rare.
- p. 125, l. 4015. "fayne y wolde þe croune of — ȝelde." French text:—
"Je vous rent la couronne dont je suis couronnés;
Jamais jour de ma vie n'en tenrai l'ireté."
- p. 126, l. 4031. "þe Ameral haueþ y-gadred," &c. French text:—
"De toute palenime a ses barons mandés."
- Gwenelon here, in the French text, makes the speech which is afterwards, ll. 4163 to 4186, attributed in the English version to Hautefulle.
- p. 127, l. 4075. "Malkare." French text, "*Macaires*."
- p. 128, l. 4109. "lond ne rente." French text:—"n'ot de terre .i. arpent."
- p. 128, l. 4119. "rybaud." French text, "*glous*."
- p. 129, l. 4146. "ȝour summe;" some of you. Compare l. 677.
- p. 129, l. 4157. "þe amendes a profrede him," &c. French text:—
"Au duc Renier de Genes a son gage donné."

- p. 130, l. 4176. "An ten 3er ate leste." French text, "seul .xx. ans."
 p. 130, l. 4187. "enchanted so ;" persuaded, deceived. Literally translated from the French text:—

"Là ont li trāitour Karlemaine encanté."

"*Enchanter* ; to charme, enchant, bewitch ; bleare the eyes, deceive the understanding," Cotgrave.

- p. 132, l. 4241. "Raol Mountferant." French text, "Raoul le Ferrant."
 p. 133, l. 4291. "on hymen ylong ;" through them, by their help. The phrase is still common, though now become vulgar: "it is all along of you," i. e. "it is all through you." Chaucer uses it—

"I can not tell *wheron it was along*,
 But wel I wot gret strif is us among," C. T. 16398.

- p. 134, l. 4327. "Cyuytle grant ;" great Seville.
 p. 135, l. 4338. "Hit were noȝt worþ a slo." So in *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, 2051 : "Of hem ne ȝeue ich nouht a slo." Compare ll. 4930, 4975, 5442, below.
 p. 135, l. 4357. "at my paye ;" to please me, to my mind.
 p. 136, l. 4371. "sarplers ;" sacks, packing-cases. "*Sarpillière*, a sarpliar : a peece of canvas, cloth, or other stuffe to wrap or packe up wares in," Cotgrave. The French text reads—"Es sarpeillieres lient toursiaus d'erbe fenée."
 p. 136, l. 4385. "Raol of Mans." French, "Raoul d'Amiens." Compare l. 4423.
 p. 136, l. 4393. "tyd þe haue." The change of pronoun is curious.
 p. 137, l. 4405. "terme of al hur age ;" in all their life-time.
 p. 137, l. 4423. "Muche maugre mote he han," &c. See note to l. 3061. French text—"Se bien ne m'i combat, recréans sui prouvés."
 p. 137, l. 4435. Compare *Bevis of Hamtoun*, p. 91 :

"His berd was bothe gret and rowe,
 A space of a fot betwene is browe."

- p. 138, l. 4437. "ys nose cammus ;" flat-nosed. So Chaucer says of the Miller, "Round was his face and *camois* was his nose." *Reeve's Tale*, l. 14, and again, l. 54, he describes the Miller's daughter as having "*camoys* nose, and eyghen gray as glas." Cotgrave gives: "*Camus*, flat-nosed. *Camuser*, to flatten, or quash down the nose, to breake the bridge of the nose, to make flat-nosed."
 p. 138, l. 4463. "cloþes of tarse," a species of silken stuff formerly much esteemed.

"In *toges of Tarsse* fulle richelye attyrede."—*Morte Arthure*, 3189.

This cloth was said to derive its name from *Tharsia* adjoining Cathay (China), whence it came. Ducange explains *Tarsicus* as "*panni preciosioris speciei*." See *P. Plowman*, B. xv. 163, and Professor Skeat's note thereon.

- p. 139, l. 4465. "god won ;" good plenty. Cf. l. 3560.
 p. 141, l. 4539. "non hoȝe ;" no fear, alarm. *Hozheful* occurs in the *Ormulum*, 2902, and *hohfulle* in *Lazamon*, 14096. A.S. *hoga*. "be-toȝe ;" dressed, covered.
 p. 141, l. 4553. "stilp of ok ;" a post of oak, *stub*. See Halliwell, s. v. *Stolpe*. The French text has—"un marbre rencontré, Autresi le caupa comme un baston alé."

The Rev. Barton Lodge, in the Introduction to his edition of *Palladius* (E. E. T. Soc.), p. ix, says—"In the Corporation Rolls, preserved amongst the Colchester Records, we find that in the 3rd and 4th Richard II, a sufficient piece of land was granted to place three *stulps* to support a certain vine opposite the house of one Clement, a dyer in North Street; and 'in 4th and 5th Edward II, Hugh de Stowe raised two *stulps* under his vine opposite his tenement in Chero.'"

- p. 142, l. 4588. "a rank;" in a rush, with a charge.
 p. 144, l. 4649. "Muche was þe noise & þat cry," &c. French text—"Moult par fu grans la noise et li hus et li cris;" great was the *hue and cry*.
 p. 144, l. 4652. "Enfachoun." French text, "Effraons."
 p. 145, l. 4663. "Had ykept hem wiþ busynesse;" had nursed them carefully. French text, "les avoit bien nourris."
 p. 145, l. 4664. "Algate." A distinctively Northern adverb. See Introduction.
 p. 145, l. 4668. "barers;" the bar, gate, barrier. Notice the other form of the word in l. 4679:

"The folk that assaljeand wer
 At mary zet, to-hewyn had
 The *barras*, and a fyre had maid."

Barbour's Bruce, ed. Skeat, xvii. 756.

- p. 145, l. 4678. "tilde;" reached. A.S. *teldan*, "telded on lofte," *Alliterative Poems*, ed. Morris, 2. 1342. Compare l. 59.
 p. 146, l. 4707. "to done." The gerundial infinitive: see Introduction.
 p. 146, l. 4721. "Ho-so þis day," &c. French text:—
 "Honis soit li frans hom qui vient au couarder."
 p. 147, l. 4751. "wyp-oute distaunce;" without fighting. "A Distance, *Distancia*, & *cetera*:" vbi Debate," *Cathol. Anglicum*; on which see my note.
 p. 147, l. 4753. "Godes for-bode;" may there be God's prohibition.

"ix. tymes *Goddis forbott*, thou wikkyde worme,
 Thet ever thou make any rystynge."

A charm for the tooth-ache, from the Thornton MS.
 printed in *Reliq. Antiq.* I. 126.

In the Percy Folio MS., ed. Furnivall and Hales, *Robin Hood*, &c., p. 18, l. 59, vol. I. we read—"Now, Marry, *gods forbott*," said the Sheriffe, 'that euer that shold bee.'" The expression also occurs twice in Stafford's *Examination of Abuses*, 1581, New Shakspeare Soc., ed. Furnivall, p. 73, where it is spelt "*God sworbote*."

- p. 150, l. 4846. "& monaye whyt & blake." French text:—

"Fin or et blanc argent et pailles de coulour."

"*Monnoye blanche*, brasse or copper coin silvered over. *Monnoye noire*, brasse, copper, or iron coine, unsilvered," Cotgrave.

- p. 151, l. 4856. "molde;" the suture of the skull. See l. 4557, above.
 p. 151, l. 4862. "for a somers charge of golde;" for a horse-load of money. "A charge; *Onus*," *Cath. Anglicum*.
 p. 151, l. 4869. "After þe 3er þat our lord was bore," &c. This line is an addition of the English translator. See the remarks in the Introduction, where it is shown that the date is almost exactly 200 years late, 980, instead of 775.

- p. 153, l. 4930. "noȝt worþ a flye." French text, "ne valés une alie."
- p. 154, l. 4974. "& we be-leue with-ynne;" and we remain, within. Chaucer uses *bileue* in the same sense, *Squire's Tale*, 583; see other examples in *Stratmann*, and compare ll. 1595 and 2623 above.
- p. 154, l. 4975. "ȝyue a stre;" give, care a straw for. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 93, and Chaucer, C. T., F Group, l. 695.
- p. 154, l. 4983. "saut;" assault. So we have *pele* for *appele*.
- p. 155, l. 4993. "pykoys & howes;" pickaxes and hooks. The modern *pick-axe* is simply a tautological corruption of the French *picois*, a mattock, pickaxe. In the *Paston Letters*, ed. Gairdner, l. 106, we find *pikoys* as here used as a plural, and so in the *Handlyng Synne*, ll. 940-1:
- "Mattok is a pykeys
Or a pyke, as sum men seya."
- "*Forsorium*, a byll or a pykeys," *Medulla Grammaticæ*.
- p. 156, l. 5030. "hure haberkes ritte;" split, out. So in *Sir Tristram*, p. 83:—
- "The breche adoun he threst
He ritt, and gan to right:"
- and in *Havelok*, l. 2495:—
- "Sket cam a ladde with a knif,
And bigan rith at þe to
For to ritte, and for to flo."
- See l. 5339, below.
- p. 157, l. 5057. "Wel two C." French text, "M."
- p. 157, l. 5077. "cloþ of tarse." See note to l. 4463, above.
- p. 158, l. 5087. "Certys y dude gret folye," &c. French text adds:
- "Fols est ki fame croit, on l'a dit grant pieça."
- p. 158, l. 5092. "lyme & lyp;" limb and body. Compare the common expression, "body and bones."
- p. 159, l. 5127. "Wyt þat þe selue;" blame thyself for that.
- p. 159, l. 5133. "breke him heued & arm." French text, "brisastes son néa."
- p. 160, l. 5174. "Of cowardyse ous moȝe arette;" may accuse us of, or attribute to us, cowardice. So in Chaucer, *Knight's Tale*, 1871:—
- "It nas aretted him no vyleinye,
Ther may no man clepe it no cowardye.
- "to Aritte. *Ascribere, deputare, imputare*," *Cath. Anglicum*, on which see my note. Wyclif also uses the word in 2 *Corinth*. v. 19, "not retting to hem her giltia."
- p. 160, l. 5177. "syt on my bok;" lit. sits on my back, i. e. remains with me.
- p. 161, l. 5185. "þat ys herte ne by-gan to cacche;" that did not pluck up courage. French text:—
- "N'i a celui d'aus tous n'ait vertu recouvrée."
- p. 162, l. 5221. "a carful iornee;" a sad day's work, a hard time.
- p. 162, l. 5240. "Ay tweyne aȝen hem one;" quite two against their one.
- p. 163, l. 5265. "for-þan;" for this reason, because. The expression occurs in *Lazamon*, l. 989, and in the *Castel off Loue*, ed. Weymouth, l. 1072: "And he scholde neuer die for þon."
- p. 163, l. 5278. "þan al þat god y owe;" than all the goods, wealth I own.

- p. 164, l. 5301. "perschede." See l. 941, and note thereon.
 p. 164, l. 5313. "felaschip;" companion. The French text has :—
 "Onques n'i vot mener ne per ne compaignon."

See note in *Cath. Anglicum*, s.v. Felischippe.

- p. 165, l. 5335. "make þy fyn;" pay the penalty, make amends.
 p. 165, l. 5339. "A clew ys heued," &c.; he scratched (*clawed*) his head and tore his hood. For *riȝte* see l. 5030, above.
 p. 165, l. 5341. "& prauncede," &c.; and stamped about, and puffed and blew, as if he were mad.
 p. 165, l. 5342. "or was after longe;" lit. before it was long time after, i. e. for a long time.
 p. 166, l. 5353. "Bruyllant, þat was kyng of Mountmyrrant." In the French text no name is given to the Saracen slain by Gwenylon: Bruyllant, who is called Balan's brother, comes on the scene at l. 5417, below. It appears to be an oversight of the translator.
 p. 166, l. 5366. "a propre sizte." The word *proper* is still used in this very phrase with the meaning of *worth seeing*, fine, but it has descended to the level of a slang term.
 p. 168, l. 5425. "spillyng of speche;" great telling of news, great talk. French text, "grant ioie."
 p. 168, l. 5437. "on hure hepe;" in their gathering, army.
 p. 168, l. 5442. "þe value of a kerse;" the value of a rush (cress). This very expression is still kept up: men say a thing is not "worth a curse," but the true meaning of the last word is quite forgotten. *P. Plowman*, C. xii. 14: "*Nat worth a carse*." Compare ll. 124: "he douteþ he kyng ne Emperour, þe *value of a rysshe*;" and ll. 4338, "noȝt worþ a slo;" 5722, "þe worthy of a pere;" and 5847, "y nolde ȝyue a pyse."
 p. 168, l. 5443. "fyede þar-on;" expressed his disgust at it.
 p. 169, l. 5453. "v. batail;" five divisions. In the French text it is *ten*, the second five being entrusted to Alorys, Macaire, Hardres, Amaugis, and Sanses. "*Bataille*, any squadron, battallion, or part of an army," Cotgrave.
 p. 170, l. 5482. "Euery ȝer to rente;" every year as a tax.
 p. 170, l. 5484. "Blanchard." A common name for a *white* horse.
 p. 171, l. 5520. "prout on pres;" bold in battle. A not uncommon expression in alliterative poems.
 p. 171, l. 5526. Here the author of the English version has most unaccountably omitted no less than 125 lines of his original. This may have arisen from one or other of three causes:—

(1) He may have *intentionally* omitted the lines; or (2) he may have turned over two leaves; or (3) the lines may not have been in the MS. from which he made his translation.

As to (1), I do not think it at all probable that the translator would intentionally have omitted the passage: against such a view the strongest argument is the closeness with which he has throughout the remainder of the poem followed his original.

Neither do I think (2) more probable. When we consider the care with which he has revised his poem we can hardly conceive that he would be satis-

fied with only *one* reading of his original, and it is hardly probable that the same accident should have happened more than once.

We are, therefore, reduced to (3), which is not at all impossible.

As, however, the author may have intentionally omitted the passage I give it here instead of in the text.

' Par Mahomet, dist il, tous serés afoié ;
Quant passastes Mautrible, musart fustes prové.
Jamais en douce France ne serés retourné,
Et anuit perdra Karles du miex de son barné.'
Richars de Normendie a le Turo escouté,
Le destrier laisse coure, si a à lui jousté ;
L'escu li a percié et le hauberc saffré,
Parmi le gros du pis li mist le fer quarré,
Si souef l'abat mort qu'il n'a brait ne crié.
' Outre, dist l'empereres, trop vous estes vantés.'
Richars de Normendie trait le branc acéré,
Tost en feri .i. Turo dusque au neu du baudré.
Francois passent à force le grant val Josué ;
Jusque au plain d'Aigremore n'i ot regne tiré.
Là trouverent la force de Balant l'amiré ;
En sa compaignie furent .xxx. roi couronné,
Et .c^m. païen, que Persant, que Escler.
Cil qui viennent fuïant li ont dit et conté
Que ses freres est mors et la gent c'ot mené.
Quant l'entent l'amirans, tout a le sanc mué.
Dont s'ont li estandart li maistre oor sonné.
L'amirans en apele son neveu Tempesté,
Sortinbrant de Connibre, son consillier privé :
' Baron, dist l'amirans, n'i soies oulié ;
Je vous di et commant, s'entendre me volés,
Tant me querés Karlon que vous le me trovés ;
Et se jou ne l'ocis, poi pris ma poetés :
Moi ne caut se je muir, quant je l'arai tué ?
Quant Sortinbras l'entent, s'a de pité plouré.

He threatens
the French.

Richard
charges at
and slays
him.

The French
force their
way to the
valley of
Aigremont,
where the
Emir is with
100,000 men.

Balan la-
ments over
the death of
his brother.

Li amirans cevauce, qui de corage ot fier ;
Ricement fu armés ser le courant destrier.
En toute païenime n'ot .i. si boin coursier,
Si estoit trestous novis com meure de morier.
Toutes ses armes furent ouvrées à ornier.
Large ot la forcéure, le cors grant et plénier ;
Par desus la ventaille fait sa barbe lacier,
Plus est blanche que noif, quant ciet après fevrier,
Contreval li pendoit jusque au neu du braier.
Li amirans commande s'ensaigne à despoier,
Devant les Sarrazins se prent à eslaisier.
Dont sonnerent ensamble .c. graille menuier.
A bataille cevaucent et font lor gent rengier ;
On premier chief devant estoient li arcier,
Pour les nos desconfire as ars turcois mainier.
Adonques véissies .i. estour commencer,
L'un mort par desus l'autre verser et trebuicier ;
Moult i ot grant dolor au traire et au lancier.

Description
of Balan,

He orders his
standart to
be unfurled,

and places
his archers in
front.

A fierce
combat
ensues.

As ars truçois commencent les nos à damagier ;
 Plus menu que gresins font sajetes lancier.
 Atant es vous poignant le preu comte Renier,
 Celui de Genevois, qui fu pere Olivier.
 Sortinbran de Connibre a encontré premier,
 Grant cop li vait donner, nel vaut plus esparnier,
 Ses escus ne li vaut ne maille ne denier,
 La maille a trespasé du blanco hauberc doublier,
 La lance o le penon li fait on cors baignier,
 Des arçons l'abat mort, le cuvert losengier.
 Quant Sortinbrans cai, la hante fist brisier,
 Et Reniers trait l'espée, dont bien se sot aidier
 Paien et Sarrazin commencent à hucier ;
 Ki estui atendra moult ara mal loier.
 .I. Sarrazins s'en torne, l'ainirant va noncier
 Que ' mors est Sortinbras, que tans avies oier.'
 Quant l'amirans l'entent, le sens cuide cangier.
 ' Ha ! dist-il, Sortinbrans, tant vous avoie chier,
 Quant je vous ai perdu, moult m'en doit anuier ;
 Jamais ne moura Turs ki tant faice à priser ;
 De duel erragerai se ne vous puis vengier.'

Renier
 encounters
 Sortibrant,

and slays
 him.

The Saracens
 are panic-
 stricken.

Balan's grief
 at the death
 of Sortibrant.

Moult fu pour Sortinbran l'amirans esmaians.
 Par mautalent s'en torne coureciés et dolens,
 Le morel laise coure, ki sous lui va bruiant,
 Sour l'escu de son col fiert Huon de Milant.
 Trestous est pourfendus, rons est li jaserans ;
 Le fer li a conduit par ambe .ii. les flans,
 Mort l'abat du ceval, ce fu damaige grans.
 Quant la lance brisa, si a trait le nu branc,
 Mort a .xv. Francois et .xliii. Normans,
 Souvent crie: ' Aigremore! vengies ert Sortinbrans !
 Or vous ferai connoistre venus est l'amirans :
 Anoui sera destruis li barnages des Frans,
 Jamais .i. en sa tere ne sera repairans ;
 Karlon enmerrai prins par les grenons ferrans ;
 Avoec lui ert pendus Oliviers et Rollans.'
 A ce mot enforcierent li paien l'amirant ;
 De nostre gent destruire est cascuns desirans.

He charges
 at the French

and slays
 Huon of
 Milan,

and 15
 French and
 14 Norman
 soldiers.

The Saracens
 rally.

Moult fu grant la bataille et li cap e felon.
 Atant es vous poignant le conte Guenelon,
 Hardré et Alori, d'Autefoelle Grifon,
 Et le pere Herviu, Macaire de Lion,
 Et l'orgueilleus barnage brocant à esperon.
 A l'abaisier des lances font tel ocision
 Que plus de mil paien trebuent on sablon.
 Atant es l'amirant sur le noir aragon ;
 Amont parmi son heaume ala ferir Milon.
 Ne li valut li cercles vaillant .i. augueton ;
 Tout l'escu pourfendu enfreesi c'au menton,
 Mais l'espée torna, por tant ot garison.
 Le destrier li copa par devant son archon ;
 Iost trebua à tere par desus le sablon.

Balan throws
 Milo from
 his horse,

Quant il ne l'a ocis ne se prise .i. bouton ;
 L'amirans le saisi à l'aubere fremillon,
 A .ii. mains le leva sur l'auferrant gascon ;
 Ja l'en eüst porté jusque à son pavillon,
 Mais l'orgueilleus lignages li est tous environ.
 Là ot as brans d'acier si faite caplison,
 Ja fust li amirans detenus en prison,
 Mais au secourre vinrent tantost mil Esclavun.
 Là oïssiés grant noise et grande husion ;
 Le feu gregois geterent tout ardant à bandon,
 François menent ferant le trait à .i. boujon.
 Ja fuissent desconfit sans nule raenchon,
 Quant Fierabras i vint, qui moult amoit Karlon.
 Iluec fist de paiens moult grant ocision,
 Tenpesté a ocis, le neveu Rublon,
 Et bien plus de .i. du lignage Mahon.
 Mais de paiens i ot à si très grant fuison,
 Se Damedieus n'en pense, qui souffri passion,
 Ancui iront François à grant destruision.

and tries to
 carry him off
 prisoner,
 but is sur-
 rounded.

1000 Saracens
 come to his
 aid.

The French
 are almost
 defeated,

but Ferum-
 bras comes to
 the rescue.

La bataille fu grans, longuement a duré.
 Ja fuissent no François moult malement mené,
 Quant de la tour sont tuit nostre conte avalé.

- p. 172, l. 5532. "A-strayey on þe grene." See l. 3729.
- p. 172, l. 5542. "þe scheldtromes;" battalions, regiments. Halliwell quotes from *Vegecius*, MS. Douce 291, leaf 5:—"How he schal have for knowynge and wys insyzt of all perellis and harmes that lytliche mowe bifalle in scheltromes or batailes." *Sceld-truma* and *sceld-trome* occur in *Lazamon*. See a'so *Octovian*, Weber's *Metr. Romances*, 1505; *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 294; and Trevisa's description of the *Battle of Hastings*, "ar the scheltroms come to-gedders." A.S. *scýld-truma*, lit. a troop-shield, then an armed company or battalion of soldiers.
- p. 172, l. 5549. "foþer." See before, l. 641, and *Alisaunder*, Weber's *Romances*, 1809.
- p. 173, l. 5565. "afferede hem ozt myche;" got much distance from them. Compare l. 3625, before: "Richard was nozt so ferred ys fon." In the *Ayenbite of Inwyte*, ed. Morris, p. 178, we read—"to cachie and uerri þane dyuel uram him." A.S. *feorrian*.
- p. 173, l. 5579. "also hot;" at once. Compare the phrase *foot-hot*, with all possible speed, in Chaucer, *Man of Lawes Tale*, B. 438, and *ful-hate* in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 418.
- p. 174, l. 5601. "þe amountance of a fotes spas," &c. The original French is more moderate—"Li amirans fu graindres de Karlon demi pié."
- p. 174, l. 5615. "iambeaus." Armour for the legs, covering them both front and rear: in this particular they differed from the *greaves*, which only protected the shins. "*Jambiere*; a greave, leg-harnesse, or, armour for a leg," Cotgrave.
- p. 175, l. 5627. "cornel;" the circle of gold and precious stones round the helmet. See l. 623, above: "To-flente;" flew in pieces. French text:—
 "Grant caup donna Karlon sur l'eame qai vendie.
 Que les flours et les pierres tout contreval en guie."

- p. 175, l. 5630. "athelde;" restrained, kept back. See *Lazamon*, 10,970, 13,825, &c.
- p. 175, l. 5631. "genyllere;" knee-armour. "*Genouilleres*, pully-pieces (armour) for the knees," Cotgrave. "Chauceore;" the same as we have had before, l. 235, called "hosen of mayle." "*Chausseure*, a hosing, or shoing; also, hosen, or shooes," Cotgrave.
- p. 175, l. 5638. "anlas." French text, "une misericorde," of which Meyrick, *Antient Armour, Glossary*, says—"said to have been so named because with this the knights obliged their antagonists to call for mercy."

"An *anlas* and a gipsier al of silk

Heng at his girdel."—Chaucer, *C. T. Prologue*, 357.

- p. 175, l. 5640. "foygnede;" thrust at, tried to stab. So in *Morte Arthure*, l. 1898:—

"Thare faughtte we in faythe, and *foynede* with sperys."

And Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, 796:—

"And after that with scharpe speres stronge

They *foynen* ech at other wonder longe."

- p. 175, l. 5648. "Ac arst was mucche ado." French text:—
"Mais il i ot apchois moult grant tenchonneria."
- p. 176, l. 5665. "Wel heze schalt þou an-longed be." French text:—
"Je te ferai ardoir ens en la poi boulie."
- p. 176, l. 5682. "Al þi song is wailawai." *Owl and Nightingale*, l. 219.
- p. 177, l. 5693. "geryzoun;" treasure. The word occurs in *Lazamon* in the forms *gersume*, *gersume*, and *garsume*. For other instances see Stratumann.
- p. 177, l. 5694. After this line in the original French come the following:—
"Coraible de Valnuble son ceval trestorna,
Desi jusque à la mer onques ne s'aresta,
Au roi de Capadoce les nouveles conta
Que Karles Aigremore et l'amirant prins a;
Sacié's moult ert dolens quant il ice sara.
Plus de .Cm. Furs pour ice rasambla,
Sor Guion de Borgoigne à force les mena,
Sa tere et son país li destruist et gasta.
Plus de .vii. mois entiers li sieges i dura;
D'un roit trencant espiel ens ou cors le navra.
Mais Karles l'emperere, qui Espaigne gasta,
Quant il revint ariere, fierement li aida."
- p. 177, l. 5716. "wende faste;" moved, twisted himself fast.
- p. 177, l. 5722. "þe worthy of a pere;" the value of a pear. Compare *Richard the Redeles*, ed. Skeat, Prol. 73: "It shulde nat apeire hem a *peere*," and *Morte Arthure*, Globe edit. p. 377.
- p. 177, l. 5724. "y-kened;" conceived. Of this word there are not many instances. It occurs in the Anglo-Saxon Version of St. Matthew, i. 20:—"þæt on hyre *acenned* was, hyt ys of þam Halgan Gaste:" in the *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, ed. Morris, p. 12, "he wes *y-kend* of þe holi gost, and y-bore of þe mayde Marie;" and again, p. 263; and in *Lazamon*, 26,128.
- p. 178, l. 5725. "Wyp-oute wem & wyp-oute hore;" without spot or stain. *Hore* may perhaps mean adultery, as Halliwell explains it; probably it does

in the present instance, where the French text reads—"En la sainte Virge puciele s'aombra." Halliwell quotes from a MS. of Caius Coll. Camb. 107 :—

"Syth the tyme that Cryst Ihesu
Thorough his grace and vertu,
Was in this world bore
Of a mayd withoutt hore."

- p. 178, l. 5730. "hyne;" servants, followers. Compare *P. Plowman*, Prol. 39—"Qui turpiloquium loquitur, is luciferus hyne."
- p. 178, l. 5747. "Contenance made he," &c. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xvi. 121: "A contenance he made, And preynte vpon pacience."
- p. 178, l. 5753. "cracchede." French text, *ecraca*. "*Ecraser*, to squash downe, beat flat, crush in pieces with much pressing, or hard leaning on," Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 5761. "colour;" pretext, means. "*Colour*, a fayned matter," Palsgrave.
- p. 179, l. 5763. "panne spak Florippe," &c. In the Provençal version Floripas joins Ferumbras in begging Charles to spare her father's life and in entreating Balan to consent to be baptised. In the *Soudone* there is no mention of either of them interfering either for or against their father.
- p. 179, l. 5772. "on what londre þat he lende;" in whatever country he might settle.
- p. 180, l. 5809. "sysst;" seest. A form invented *metri gratia*. *Syst* occurs in Wright's *Popular Treatises on Science*, p. 134, and in the *Castel of Loue*, l. 8.
- p. 180, l. 5815. "& bot if he þanne wold take fullozt." French text :—
"Et se il ne puet estre à ceste fois matés."
- p. 180, l. 5819. "þat man." French text adds, "Ce est .i. vis diables."
- p. 180, l. 5821. "3e aboute goes;" you are labouring in vain, lit. going in a circle.
- p. 181, l. 5827. "wyp wilde hors;" with savage horses. *Hors* is here plural, as shown by the form of the adjective.
- p. 181, p. 5835. "skeer;" safe, free from. So in Wright's *Religious Songs*, iv. 78: "of blisse 3e beop skere."
- p. 181, l. 5840. "nozt worp a flye." This expression has occurred before, see l. 4930. It also occurs in Chaucer, *Canons Yeomans Tale*, l. 1150: "Or some what else, was nat worth a flye." Compare l. 437. French text :—"Ja ne vaut Mahomet .iii. deniers monnées."
- p. 181, l. 5845. "þat was on a croys y-don." The usual expression for "crucified" in early writers. For examples see *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Hertridge, p. 179: "þey did him vpon the crosse, and spette on his face;" Myrc's *Instructions to Parish Priests*, p. 14, l. 437; Lonelich's *Holy Grail*, ed. Furnivall, xlix. 313, &c. "To do on crosse; *Crucifigere*," *Cuthol. Anglicum*.
- p. 181, l. 5847. "y nolde 3yue a pyse;" I would not give a pea. *Pyse* or *pese* is a perfectly correct singular form (Latin *pisum*): the plurals *pesen*, *peses*, are frequently met with: see, for instance, *P. Plowman*, C. ix. 307: "of benes and of peses." A similar expression to that in the present line occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. ix. 166, "sette peers at a pese," accounted Piers at the value of a pea; i. e. set him at naught. See note to l. 5442.

- p. 181, l. 5849. "on my lyue." Here we have the Northern adverb *on-lyue*, alive, during life. See Introduction.
- p. 181, l. 5857. "for no pray ;" for no entreaty.
- p. 182, l. 5877. "anentes pilke neode ;" with respect to this necessary condition, *i. e.* of his giving his assent.
- p. 182, l. 5879. "þe melkis fom." We have already had this expression at l. 3956.
- p. 182, l. 5881. "ezene graye," &c. In the French text, l. 2014, Floripas is described as having "les ex vairs et rians plus d'un faucon mué," while in the *Destruction of Rome*, l. 256, we read—"Les ves avoit plus noirs que falcon montenier." So Chaucer (?) writes, "His eyen graie as is a faucon," where the original French is *vers. Romaunt of the Rose*, 546. In *Sir Eglamour*, l. 861, we read of "eyen grey as crystalle stone," from which Malone, in his *Shakspeare*, iv. 118, edit. of 1821, conjectured that the term meant what we now call a *blue* eye. Thus in *Venus and Adonis*, l. 482, we have—
 "Her two *blue* windows faintly she upheaveth,"
 while at l. 140 the eyes of Venus are said to be "*grey* and bright." In the present instance there can be no doubt as to the colour intended. "*Oeil verd*, a grey eye." Cotgrave, "browes bent." See note to l. 4435, "*zealwe* traces ;" fair tresses. So Chaucer, *Knight's Tale*, 191 :—
 "Hire *zeilwe* heer was browed in a *tresse*."
 "y-trent ;" perhaps plaited or curled.
- p. 182, l. 5882. "Ech her ;" each (every) part of them, *i. e.* of her tresses.
- p. 182, l. 5883. "tretys ;" slender and long. Cotgrave has : "*Traictif*, *nez traictif*. A pretty long nose, a nose of a graceful length. *Traictis*, *isse*, whence *Traictisses mains* ; long and slender hands." "iantail," "*Gentil*. comely, sightly, pretty, neat, well-fashioned, goodly, faire," Cotgrave. "pure *fetys* ;" perfectly well-proportioned, elegant. "*Faictis*, *isse*, neat, feat, comely, handsome, proper, well-made, well-featured, well set together," Cotgrave.

G L O S S A R Y.

Pr. (or pt.) s. = present (or past) tense, 3 pers. sing.

Pr. (or pt.) pl. = present (or past) tense, 3 pers. pl.

References starred are to the "original draught."

A, 47/1282, *adj.* one.

A, 101/3180, *adj.* all.

A, 134/4307, *prep.* on.

A, *passim.* pron. he.

AAN, 24/594, *adv.* on.

ABATAYLD, 134/4310, *pp.* embattled, fortified.

ABETTE, 180/5816, *vb.* aid, assist.

ABIEST, 169/5474, 2 *pr.* as *fut. s.* shalt suffer for, shalt pay for.

ABIGGET, 41/1063, *vb.* pay, suffer for it.

ABODE, 67/1985, *pt. pl.* delivered, told.

ABOW3, 107/3390. ABO3EDE, 69/2070, *pt. s.* leant, stooped. ABO3E, 95/2972, *pp.*

ABO3T, 19/488, *pp.* bought, paid for.

ABO3TE, 98/3072, *pt. pl.* paid, made a return for. See ABYE.

ABUDE, 63/1833, *vb.* deliver, tell. ABUST, 63/1844, 2 *pr. s.* A.S. *abeodan*.

ABULD, 3/74, *pp.* built, constructed.

A-BYE, 4/107, *vb.* pay for, suffer for.

AC, 2/49, *conj.* but.

ACORDED, 130/4158, *pt. pl.* became reconciled. "To Acorde; *vbi* to make frende." *Cath. Anglicum*.

ACOUPEDE, 56/1594, *pt. pl.* struck, encountered.

ACQUITE, 30/713, *vb.* repay, requite.

A-FERE, 13/387, *vb.* frighten, terrify.

AFFEREST, 30/722, 2 *pr. s.*

AFFERREDE, 173/5565, *pt. pl.* distanced.

AFFERROM, 58/1674, *adv.* from afar, far off.

AFFIER, 32/756, *pt. s.* relied, trusted. Fr. *affier*.

AFFORN, 41/1080, *prep.* before.

AFFROUNT, 59/1689, *adv.* face to face, in line.

AFFULLED, 105/3335, *pp.* killed, felled.

AFONGE, 46/1237, *vb.* receive, meet with.

AFRI3TE, 5/138, *pp.* frightened, afraid.

AFTERWART, 6/63, *adv.* after this, afterwards.

A-GAN, 76/2305, *pt.* gone, past.

AGASTE, 107/3410, *pp.* frightened.

AGRISE, 106/3370, AGRYSE, 54/1541, *vb.* be frightened. A.S. *agrisan*.

A-KELE, 139/4492, *vb.* be cooled. "To Kele; *frigidare, et cetera*; *vbi* to make calde." *Cath. Anglicum*.

AKER, 89/2770, *sb.* acre.

ALACCHE, 99/3098, *vb.* catch.

ALDRE, 180/5802, *adj.* of all. *Hure aldre sy3te*, the sight of them all.

ALED, 175/5653, *pp.* put down, prevented. A.S. *alecgan*.

ALI3T, 55/1548, *pt. pl.* alighted, dismounted.

ALI3TE, 46/1261, *vb.* light.

ALLE AND SOME, 54/1513, one and all, all.

- ALLER-FERST**, 180/5793, *adv.* first of all.
ALMYS, 64/1897, *sb.* alms, deed of charity.
AL-ONE, 7/50, *adj.* alone, singly, by himself.
ALOUTE, 128/4089, *vb.* bow, give place.
***ALRE**, 13/381, *adj.* of all. **ALRE MOST**, 77/2342, most of all. *See also* **ALLER**, and **ALDRE**.
ALS, 18/474, *conj.* as. *Als so harde* = as hard.
ALYES, 127/4078, *sb. pl.* associates, friends.
AMAEDE, 50/1377, *pp.* afraid, dismayed.
AMBLERE, 11/344, *sb.* amble, trot.
AMENDES, 54/1525, *sb.* reparation, amends. *See Note*
AMENDIE, 65/1917, *vb.* make satisfaction.
AMERAUNT, 21/532, *sb.* amiral, emir.
AMONGE, 7/209, *adv.* at times; *ofte amonge*, constantly.
AMORWE, 78/2369, *adv.* in the morning.
AMOUNTANCE, 174/5601, *sb.* amount, length.
AMOUNTY, 93/2919, *vb.* mean, amount to.
ANAN, 4/106, *adv.* at once, soon.
ANBETTYMENT, 78/2364, *sb.* abetting, helping.
ANBUSCHYMEN, 34/812, *sb.* ambush, ambuscade.
AND, 7/200, *conj.* if.
ANDRESSEDE, 130/4155, *pt. s.* set, placed himself.
ANDURIE, 102/3217, *vb.* endure, resist.
ANENTES, 182/5877, *prep.* concerning.
ANGER, 102/3208, *sb.* trouble, misfortune.
ANGRYDE, 89/2766, *pt. pl.* harassed.
ANGWISCHOUSE, 82/2500, *adj.* full of anguish, greatly grieved.
ANGWYS, 41/1080, *sb.* anguish, pain.
ANHEJE, 46/1240, *adv.* in haste, speedily.
ANLAS, 175/5638, *sb.* a kind of knife or dagger, usually worn at the girdle.
ANONEWARD, 26/622, *prep.* upon, along. *See also* **AUNDWARD**.
ANPEYNEDEM, 27/665, *pt. s.* exerted himself. **ANPEYNY**, 94/2947, *imper.*
ANUYE, 106/3352, *sb.* annoyance, grief.
ANUYLT, 48/1308, *sb.* anvil. **A.S. anfilt.**
A-NYED, 12/364, *pp.* harassed, troubled.
APAD, 9/271, *adj.* pleased, satisfied.
APERCEUEDE, 31/739, *pt. s.* perceived. *Fr. apercevoir.*
APERTELY, 106/3359, *adv.* plainly, openly.
APLYT, 27/644. **APLYT**, 50/1898, *adv.* indeed, certainly.
APPON, 21/546. **OPPON**, 22/554, *prep.* upon, on, over.
AQUEYNT, 104/3288, *pp.* extinguished.
ARANK, 142/4588, *adv.* in a line.
ARAS, 2/46, *pt. s.* arose.
ARAUNDOUN, 34/824, *adv.* at full speed.
ARAU3TE, 25/606, *pt. pl.* aimed, struck, *A.S. rācan.*
ARawe, 143/4605, *adv.* in a row, in a line.
ARAY, 7/212, *sb.* condition, state.
ARBELASTE, 101/3174, *sb.* cross-bow.
ARECHE, 35/854, *vb.* reach, touch.
AREDE, 20/508, *vb.* guess, tell, judge.
ARERE, 93/2896, *vb.* rear, raise, erect, **AREED**, 7/210, *pt. s.*
A-RESTE, 132/4242, *vb.* stop, halt.
ARETTE, 160/5174, *vb.* accuse, impute. "To Aritte; *ascribere, imputare.*" *Cuth. Anglicum.*
ARE3TE, 56/1597, *pt. s.* struck. *See* **ARAU3T**.
ARSOUN, 107/3385, *sb.* saddle bow.
ARST, 28/675, *adv.* at first, before.
ASARMES, 94/2933, *interj.* to arms. *Fr. aux armes.*
A-SAYE, 51/1425, *vb.* try, endeavour.
ASCAPE, 146/4713, *vb.* escape.
ASCRIEDE, 30/720, *pt. s.* called to.
ASLAJE, 3/84, *pp.* slain.
ASOTID, 67/2007, *adj.* mad, besotted, "Asotē, sotted, besotted," *Cotgrave*,
A-SPYE, 68/2032, *vb.* enquire.
ASPYE, 154/4966, *sb.* spy.
ASSEGE, 106/3348, *sb.* siege, attack,

- A-STAUICHE, 44/1179, *vb. imp.* restrain, moderate.
- ASTERUE, 97/3058, *vb.* perish, die. A.S. *asteorfan*.
- ASTOZE, 95/2971, *pt.* ascended, mounted. A.S. *astigan*.
- A-STREYEB, 117/3729, *adv.* A-STREYEB, 172/5532, *astray*, wild.
- A-STYINTE, 63/1842, *vb.* stop, cease.
- ASTYJE, 157/5056, *pt.* climbed, scaled. See ASTOZE.
- ATEND, 104/3280, *pt.* set alight.
- ATENED, 4/114, *pt.* annoyed, vexed.
- ATEYNTE, 113/3612, *pt.* exhausted. The corresponding French word in this passage is *estancier*. "*Estainct*, extinguished . . . spent, lost, utterly perished," Cotgrave. See also TEYNT.
- ATTACHE, 140/4517, *vb.* 1 *pr. s.* arrest.
- ATTES, 36/881, at his.
- ATTEYNT, 11/333, *pp.* vanquished. See ATEYNTE.
- A-TWYNNE, 20/522, *adv.* apart.
- AUNDWARD, 59/1694, *adv.* upon, on top of. See also ANONEWARD.
- AUNTRE, 3/89. AUNTURE, 53/1479, *sb.* danger, risk.
- AUALYNG, 39/984, *sb.* descent, slope.
- AUANTAILLE, 26/624, *sb.* See AUENTAILLE.
- *AUAUNCE, 17/448, *vb.* promote.
- AUAUNTED, 2/42, *pt. s.* praised, puffed.
- AUAUNTWARDE, 153/4919, *sb.* van, front.
- AUELDE, 4/101, *sb.* yield.
- AUENTAILLE, 8/238. The moveable front of the helmet covering the face, through which the wearer respired: used also for the whole of the front of the helmet.
- AUENTURE, 39/1003, *sb.* danger, risk.
- AUONGE, 93/2904, *vb.* receive, take.
- AUOW, 62/1818, *sb.* vow.
- AVOWEDED, 67/1983, *pp.* acknowledged, avowed it.
- AUYNDE, 32/757, 1 *pr. s.* find out, discover.
- AUYSE, 7/195, *vb.* consider, reflect: *he wil him betre auyse*, he will think better of it, be more careful.
- AWE, 179/5779, *sb.* worship, respect. O.Icel. *agt*.
- AWOK, 43/1135, recovered, come to his senses.
- AWREKE, 49/1362, *vb.* avenge.
- AYCHS, 162/5248, *sb.* ash-tree.
- AYE, 15/408, *sb.* awe; *stondeþ aye*=stand in awe of. See Note. See AWE.
- AYPER, 145/4659, *pron.* each, either; *hur ayper*, each of them.
- AXETH, 43/1124, *pr. s.* enquires, asks.
- AJE, 27/647. AJEN, 4/100. AJY, 30/724, *adv.* again, against.
- BAD, 123/3947, *pt. s.* begged, asked; *bad u bone*, made a prayer.
- BAILE, 45/1211, *sb.* confinement, prison.
- BAKOUNS, 87/2696, *sb. pl.* pigs, hogs.
- BALAUNSYNG, 103/3243, *sb.* throwing of darts, &c.
- BALE, 36/903, *sb.* captivity.
- BAME, 20/511, *sb.* balm. Fr. *baume*; Lat. *balsamum*.
- BANE, 3/86, *sb.* ruin, destruction.
- BANNE, 168/5424, *vb.* summon together.
- BAR, 17/448, *pt. s.* bore, carried.
- BAR OF, 23/572, *pt. s.* warded off.
- BARERS, 145/4668. BARRERS, 145/4688.
- BARRES, 145/4679, *sb. pl.* barriers, rampart. "A Barras. *Antemurale, vallum.*" Cath. *Anglicum*.
- BARNAGE, 106/3364, *sb.* nobles, barons.
- BARNEE, 50/1373, *sb.* children, men.
- BARNYE, 100/3160. BARONYE, 2/48, *sb.* barons.
- BA-SCLawe, 6/179, *pt.* for *be a-sclawe*, be slain.
- BATAIL, 169/5453, *sb.* battalions, divisions.
- BATEDEDE, 32/749, *pt. s.* abated.
- BAYLYE, 135/4333, *sb.* orders, command.
- BE-BLED, 50/1380, *pt.* covered with blood.
- BEDE, 59/1709, *pt.* bidden, ordered.
- BEER, 3/64, *pt. s.* bore, carried away.
- BEHETE, 50/1402, *pt. s.* promised.
- BELAY, 5/134, *pt. s.* besieged, beset.
- BELEUE, 106/3345, *vb.* to leave off, desist from. A.S. *bileafan*.

- BE-LEUE, 154/4974, 1 *pr. pl.* remain, are left.
- BE-LEUED, 120/3849, *pt.* neglected, left undone.
- BELEYN, 34/805, *pp.* beset, surrounded. *See also* BELAY.
- BELYFþ, 51/1437, *pr. s.* believes.
- BEMENE, 116/3724, *vb.* lament, bemoan. A.S. *bimænan*.
- BE-NOME, 175/5642, *pp.* taken, deprived.
- *BEO, 22/548, *pp.* been.
- BEODE, 62/1825, *pt. pl.* delivered, told. A.S. *beodan*.
- BERD, 23/571, *sb.* beard, chin.
- BERE, 45/1201, *sb.* cry, lamentation. "Who makis sich a bere." *Townley Myst.* 100.
- BERST, 99/3109, *pr. 2 s.* bearest, be-havest.
- BESPEKEN, 110/3509, *pr. pl.* consult, talk over. "3e habbeþ a-mong 3u bispeke þat ilome." — *Martyrdom of Thomas Beket*, ed. Black, 919.
- BESTADE, 90/2800, *pt.* seized, overcome.
- BE-STERTE, 146/4716, *pp.* beset (?).
- BE-SWYKE, 130/4164, *vb.* deceive. A.S. *biwican*.
- BET, 34/830, *adv.* better, faster.
- BETAKE, 33/763, *sb.* hand over to, give up.
- BETAUȝTE, 76/2316, *pt. s.* commended him to.
- BE-TOȝE, 141/4539, *pp.* strongly clad.
- BE-TRAPPEDE, 117/3731, *pt. pl.* surrounded, beset.
- BETRENDE, 125/4006, *vb.* surround, encircle.
- BETREUȝEDE, 70/2105, *pt. s.* betrothed, pledged himself to.
- BE-VAPID, 97/3037, *pp.* thoroughly beaten. *See Note*.
- BEYNE, 27/661, *pron.* both. *See Note*.
- BIL, 86/2654, *sb.* front. *Bok and bil*, back and front.
- BILEUE, 34/829, *sb.* belief, faith.
- BI-TID, 28/679, *pt. s.* befell, happened.
- BITOK, 157/5075, *pt. s.* gave, committed. *See also* BETAKE and BYTOK.
- BLAN, 57/1626, *pt. s.* stopped, halted.
- BLAS, 86/2648, *sb.* sound, blast.
- BLEE, 49/1360, *sb.* countenance, colour. A.S. *bleo*.
- BLENCHE, 122/3914, *sb.* turn aside. A.S. *blencan*.
- BLEREST, 20/507, 2 *pr. s.* blindest, to blear one's eye, to deceive him. *See Note*.
- BLESSED, 8/256, *pt. s.* blessed, signed with the cross.
- BLEYNTE, 35/838, *pt. s.* turned, inclined. *See* BLENCHE.
- *BLIF, 91/2837. BLYF, 39/1002. BLYUE, 70/2087, *adv.* at once, quickly.
- BOBAUNCE, 13/383, *sb.* boasting.
- BOK, 86/2654, *sb.* back.
- BON, 25/617, *sb.* bone. A.S. *bān*.
- BONE, 84/2583, *sb.* prayer.
- BOR, 21/545, *sb.* boar.
- BORGEYS, 16/444, *sb.* burgess, citizen.
- BORWGH, 61/1767, *sb.* town.
- BOSSCHE, 93/2887, *sb.* bush, wood.
- BOT, 24/589, *pt. s.* bit, cut.
- BOT IF, 10/318, unless, except.
- BOTE, 14/401, *sb.* message.
- BOUN, 124/3986, *adj.* bound.
- BOURE, 49/1336, *sb.* chamber.
- Boȝ, 61/1761, *pt. s.* stooped, bent.
- BoȝE-DRAȝTE, 97/3040, *sb.* bow-shot.
- BoȝE-SCHOT, 3/90, *sb.* bow-shot.
- BoȝTEST, 43/1153, 2 *pt. s.* didst redeem, buy.
- BRAID, 70/2099, *pt. s.* started up.
- BRAIDE, 99/3122, *sb.* rush, sally. *See also* BRAYDE.
- BRAKE, 103/3263, *sb.* bozes of brake, cross-bows. *See Note*.
- *BRAND, 23/580, *sb.* sword. *See* BROND.
- BRAYDE, 28/684, *sb.* charge, rush, moment, of time; 68/2008, sudden fate.
- BRED, 4/103, *sb.* bread.
- BREDE, 59/1688, *sb.* breadth.
- BREGGURDEL, 80/2448, *sb.* middle, waist; *lit.* the waist-band; "Brygyrdyll. Lumbare, renale." *Prompt. Parv.*
- BREN, 154/4962, *vb. impr.* burn.
- BRENNYNG, 47/1263, *adj.* burning. BREN-NYNGEST, 74/2236.

- BRENT**, 12/371, *pp.* burnt.
BRESTE, 30/719, *vb.* burst out.
BRIGGEWARD, 59/1700, *sb.* keeper of the bridge; 112/35, watch on the bridge.
BROOCHYNG, 115/3657, *pr. p.* spurring.
BROD, 123/3941, *adj.* broad, wide.
BROKE, 110/3484, *vb.* enjoy, possess. A.S. *brukan*.
BROND, 29/684, *sb.* sword.
BRONDE, 74/2236, *sb.* brand.
BRUSSCHET, 34/800, *sb.* thicket, under-wood. "*Brusc.* Butchers-broome, Pettigree, knee-holme, knee-hulver (a shrub)." Cotgrave.
BRUST-BON, 57/1623, *sb.* breast-bone.
BRUSTES, 41/1072, *sb. pl.* breast, chest.
BRYMLY, 21/545, *adv.* fiercely.
BRYNNE, 85/2614, 96/3024, *sb.* cuirass. See Note.
BRYTASQUES, 105/3315, *sb. pl.* battlements. "*Brelesque*, a port, or portall of defence, in the rampire, or wall of a towne." Cotgrave.
BUCHYMENT, 34/798, *sb.* ambush.
BUDEP, 46/1235, *pr. s.* offers.
BULDE, 78/2377, *vb.* build, erect.
BURDE, 70/2095, *sb.* maiden.
BUSKY, 170/5500, *vb.* get ready, prepare.
BUTE, 122/3895, *pt. pl.* beat.
BUPE, 4/100, *pr. pl.* are.
BYDYNG, 126/4026, *sb.* delay, remaining here.
BY-GO, 68/2013. **BYGONE**, 77/2342, *pp.* ruined, deceived.
BY-GON, 108/3429, *pp.* overrun, covered.
BY-GYNT, 24/602, *pr. s.* begins.
BY-LAFTE, 56/1595, *pt. pl.* remained, were left.
BY-LEYN, 139/4483, *pt.* besieged, beset.
BYLOKE, 71/2127, *vb.* look after, take care of.
BY-NYME, 179/5773, *vb.* take away, deprive.
BY-NYPE, 56/1607, *prep.* below, under.
BY-STOLE, 121/3878, *pt.* stolen, escaped.
BYTOKE, 178/5748, *pt. s.* commended, wished himself with. **BYTOKE**, 108/3413, entrusted, gave in charge.
CACCHE, 161/5185, *vb.* take up, recover.
CALT, 59/1699, *pr. s.* call.
CAMMUS, 138/4437, *adj.* flat. "*Resimus.* That hath a camoyse nose crooked upwards." Cooper, *Thesaurus*, 1584. See Note.
CAN, 110/3511, *pr. 1 s.* know.
CARF, 32/743, *pt. s.* cut.
CARFUL, 42/1115, *adj.* full of care, troubled.
CAS, 28/679, *sb.* chance.
CAST, 49/1368, *sb.* meaning, intention.
CAST, 59/1710, *pp.* determined, settled.
CATEL, 178/5745, *sb.* property, goods.
CAÛTE, 95/2982, *pt. pl.* caught, captured.
CERKE, 80/2449, *sb.* shift, chemise. A.S. *aerce*, *syrc*.
CHAFFAR, 139/4467, *sb.* merchandise, goods.
CHALANGIE, 98/3062, *vb.* claim, seize. "*To Chalenge; vendicare.*" *Cath. Anglicum*.
CHAMBERERE, 46/1238, *sb.* maid, attendant.
CHASTE, 67/1993, *vb. inpr.* chastise, punish.
CHAUCEORE, 175/5631, *sb.* hose of mail.
CHECKE, 25/615, *sb.* cheek.
CHEKBON, 175/5650, *sb.* jawbone, cheekbone.
CHEL, 101/3194, *sb.* throat. A.S. *ceole*; O.Dutch, *kele*.
CHERE, 11/346, *sb.* face; hence eyes.
***CHILLE**, 14/389, for *ich wille* = I will.
CHILUELARIE, 2/46, *sb.* knights.
CHYKE, 25/615, *sb.* cheek.
CHYKE, 135/4331, *sb.* chick, bird.
CHYMENAY, 74/2232, *sb.* fire-place. See Note.
CHYNE, 7/212, *vb.* gape, open. A.S. *cēnan*.
CLEPEDE, 7/216. **CLIPEDE**, 5/142, *pt. s.* called. A.S. *cleopian*.
CLEW, 165/5339, *pt. s.* tore, clawed.
CLOS, 156/5023, *sb.* enclosure.
CLOUE, 6/179, *pt.* cut down.
CLOUT, 37/906, *sb.* piece of cloth.

- CLOUTE**, 171/5507, *vb.* strike, knock about.
CLOWE, 17/463, *vb.* ? cut away, ward off.
CLYNGE, 82/2524, *vb.* pine away. A.S. *clingan*.
CLYPEDE, 32/752, *pt. s.* called. A.S. *cleopian*.
CLYUE, 65/1901, *vb.* cling.
COLBLAK, 34/807, *adj.* coal-black.
COLOUE, 179/5761, *sb.* excuse, argument.
CONSAIL, 90/2784, *sb.* concealment.
CONSAILER, 69/2052, *sb.* councillor.
CONSELYNGGE, 61/1790, *pr. p.* in council, consulting.
COPLES, 48/1328, *sb. pl.* beams, joists.
CORAIOUS, 15/414, *adj.* courageous, brave.
CORNEL, 175/5627, *sb.* circlet of gold round a helmet.
CORS, 18/473, *sb.* course; *cors of werre* = a warlike charge.
CORS, 10/303, *sb.* course.
CORTEYST, 48/1298, *adj.* most courteous.
CORTOYSE, 67/1974, *adj.* gentle.
COSNEDE, 58/1683, *pt. s.* cost.
COST, 55/1552, *sb.* country, region. Compare "they prayed him that he would depart out of their *coasts*." Matt. viii. 34.
COSTREL, 29/510, *sb.* a small wooden bottle. "A Costrelle; *oneferum, et cetera; ubi a flakett*." Cath. Anglicum.
COTE-ARMURE, 22/552, *sb.* an upper garment worn over the armour, and generally ornamented with armorial bearings.
COUNDYE, 166/5375, *vb.* conduct, guide.
COUPES, 76/2297, *sb. pl.* cups.
COUTHE, 79/2403, *pt. s.* knew, understood.
COUYNE, 46/1227, *sb.* design, conspiracy.
COWART, 24/593, *sb.* cowardly fellow.
COYE, 76/2286, *adj.* quiet, still. "*Coy*. Quiet, still, hushet." Cotgrave.
COYNGAGE, 170/5481, *sb.* coinage.
COYPHE, 36/898, *sb.* skull-cap.
CRAOCHEDE, 178/5753, *pt. s.* smashed, broke.
- CRAFT**, 163/5253, *sb.* apparatus, baggage.
CRACK, 85/2604, *vb.* crack, break.
CREAUNCE, 12/358, *sb.* renown, reputation.
CREAUNT, 21/533, *adj.* recreant.
CREP, 173/5557, *pt. pl.* passed.
CRISTENTE, 12/364, *sb.* christendom.
CROLLID, 49/1354, *adj.* curled, curly. "With lokkes *cruille* as they were leyd in presse." Chaucer, C. T. Prologue 81. Dutch *Krolle*, a curl.
CROYCEDE, 152/4913, *pt. s.* crossed, blessed, made the sign of the cross.
CROY3, 13/376, *sb.* cross.
CURE, 55/1548, *sb.* charge, business.
CUSSEDE, 70/2112, *pt. pl.* KUSSEDEN, 71/2032. *CUST*, 157/5081, *pt. s.* kissed.
- DADEST**, 153/4944, 2 *pt. s.* didst, hast done.
DALE, 64/1890, *sb.* ?
DAME, 74/2225, *sb.* draughts. See Note.
DAWES, 144/4631, *sb. pl.* days.
DAYE, 33/777, 1 *pr. s.* die. DAYEþ, 178/5738, *pr. s.* DAIEDE, 194/2928. DAYDE, 84/2581, *pt. s.*
DEABLET, 142/4569, *sb.* ? devil.
DEBAT, 106/3348, *sb.* fighting, quarrelling. "Debate; *contentio, &c.*" Cath. Anglicum.
DEDE, 24/595, *sb.* death.
DEDEYNGNEDE, 11/349, *pt. s.* disdained.
DEEL, 118/3776, *sb.* lamentation. O.Fr. *doel*. See DUL.
DEEL, 28/669. **DEL**, 2/44, *sb.* share, part. A.S. *dæl*.
DEERE, 79/2395, *vb.* hurt, affect. A.S. *derian*.
DEKE, 155/5010, *sb.* ditch, moat.
DELEDE, 150/4849, *pt. s.* divided, shared.
DELFOLLY, 8/232, *adv.* mournfully.
DEMEMBERED, 158/5092, *pt.* dismembered, torn limb from limb.
DEMEYNE, 13/382, *adj.* simple, lowly.
DENTE, 25/617, *sb.* blow, stroke.
DENTEE, 83/2545, *sb.* pleasing smell.
DEPARDIEUX, 98/3061, *exclam.* by God.
DEPARTEDE, 175/5645, *pt. pl.* separated.

- DERE, 157/5070, *sb.* harm, hurt.
 DERE, 63/1852, *adj.* dear, precious, 19/488, *adv.*
 DEEREYNE, 9/265, *vb.* challenge, claim.
 "Dearener. To dereine; to justifie or make good." Cotgrave.
 DERRE, 17/451, 2 *pr. s.* dare.
 DEUYS, 66/1969, *sb.* plan, suggestion.
 DIFFYE, 4/106, 1 *pr. s.* defy, challenge.
 DISCOLOURID, 41/1079, *pp.* without colour.
 DISCOUMFIT, 89/2773, *sb.* defeat.
 DISPOITOUSLY, 67/1985, *adv.* insolently.
 DISPIYTE, 17/457, *sb.* contempt.
 DISPOILLED, 182/5879, *pt. s.* DISPOILY, 177/5714, *vb.* undress, strip.
 DISTAUNCE, 65/1913, *sb.* contention, dispute. See *Gesta Romanorum*, Glossary.
 DISTRYED, 12/365, *pp.* destroyed.
 DIYTE, 4/119, *vb.* prepare, dress, 7/214, *pt. s.* A.S. *dihtan*.
 Do, 7/217, *vb. imp.* cause, see.
 DOGGEDLICH, 47/1289, *adv.* doughtily, bravely. See DOYTILICH.
 DOL, 76/2288, *sb.* part. A.S. *dæl*. See also DEEL and DEL.
 DOLOUR, 72/2175, *sb.* pain, suffering. Lat. *dolorem*.
 DONDE, 28/681, *vb.* be done.
 DOSSERS, 49/1340, *sb. pl.* curtains, hangings. See *Prompt. Parv.*, *s. v.* Docere.
 DOTOUSE, 59/1699, *adj.* dangerous.
 DOUCE, 47/1269, *adj.* sweet, dear.
 DOUTE, 127/4057, *vb.* fear, be afraid of.
 DOUTE, 64/1899, *sb.* danger.
 DOYTILICH, 15/420, *adv.* doughtily, bravely.
 DOYTY, 17/458, *adj.* brave, valiant.
 DOYTYERE, 21/531, *comp.* DOYTYESTE, 52/1448, *Super.* A.S. *dyhtig*.
 DOYTYNISSE, 101/3197, *sb.* bravery, daring.
 DRAPREYE, 138/4457, *sb.* cloth.
 DRAST, 121/3887, *pt. s.* durst, dared.
 DRAUȝT, 107/3392, *sb.* lift.
 DRAUȝTE, 29/703, *sb.* stroke.
 DRAȝT BRIGE, 66/1952, *sb.* draw-bridge.
 DRAȝp, 6/192, *pr. s.* draweth.
 DRECOHE, 67/1997, *vb.* DRECCHEN, 56/1602, delay. A.S. *dreccan*.
 DRECCHYNCE, 15/377, *sb.* delay.
 DRENCH, 50/1386, *sb.* draught, drink.
 DRIE, 82/2524, *vb.* die of thirst.
 DRIȝTE, 2/49, *sb.* Lord, God. A.S. *dryhten*.
 DROGY, 59/1691, *vb.* draw, drag.
 DROPEDE, 42/1103, *pt. s.* grieved.
 DROȝ, 16/446, 1 *pt. s.* drew, betook.
 DRURYMODE, 42/1103, *adv.* drearily, sadly.
 DRUWERYE, 79/2421, *sb.* sweetheart, lover.
 DUDEN, 3163, *pt. s.* did, caused; *duden hem sle*, caused them to be slain.
 DUELLE, 27/648, *sb.* delay, hesitation.
 DUL, 119/3791, *sb.* DULES, 119/3785, *pl.* lamentation. See DEEL.
 DULFUL, 45/1201, *adj.* doleful, grievous.
 DUP, 123/3941, *adj.* DUPE, 46/1257, deep.
 DUPNISSE, 76/2312, *sb.* depth.
 DURE, 21/535, *vb.* last against, stand against.
 DURE, 128/4091, *adj.* dear, precious, 59/1715, *adv.*
 DURNELY, 136/4373, *adv.* secretly, closely. A.S. *derne*, *dyrne*.
 DURYE, 134/4311, *vb.* live.
 DUSSOCHED, 98/3068, *pt. pl.* dashed, knocked. DUST, 35/854, *pt. s.* O.Icel. *dusta*.
 DWEL, 86/2646, *sb.* delay.
 DYNGEN, 4/104, *vb.* dash, pound.
 DYUYS, 58/1663, *sb.* plan, counsel. See also DEUYS.
 DYUYSID, 58/1672, *pp.* proposed.
 EEM, 8/261, *sb.* uncle.
 EER, 3/65, *adv.* before, already.
 EFT, 34/811, *adv.* again.
 EFT-SONES, 156/5039, *adv.* again.
 EGED, 141/4541, *adj.* edged.
 EGRELICH, 19/496, *adv.* closely, eagerly.
 ELDE, 110/3497, *sb.* age, years. Origin-

- ally age simply, but afterwards confined to *old* age.
- EMBROUDED, 22/553, *pp.* embroidered, worked over.
- ENBATAILLD, 58/1684, *pp.* embattled.
- ENCENZ, 83/2545, *sb.* incense.
- ENCHACEDE, 93/2906, *pt. pl.* drove, hurried. *Fr.* *enchasser*.
- ENCHANTED, 130/4187, *pp.* persuaded, overcome.
- ENCHES, 104/3302, *sb. pl.* inches.
- ENCOMBRE, 94/2942, *sb.* cause trouble to, harass.
- ENDELONGES, 19/498, *adv.* all along, down.
- ENFORCE, 33/793, *vb.* exert. ENFORCEDE, 33/782, *pt. s.*
- ENIVGLEP, 66/1959, *imper. pl.* judge, sentence.
- ENPAYNEDE, 26/633, *pt. s.* exerted.
- ENPAYREDE, 145/4691, *vb. pt. s.* became weaker, failed.
- ENSERCHE, 42/1093, *vb.* examine, inspect.
- ENSOYNGNE, 91/2827, *sb.* excusing, prevarication.
- ENTAILLE, 31/730, *sb.* ENTAYLLE, 31/745, workmanship, fashion.
- ENTAMY, 116/3699, *vb.* break, cut through.
- ENTEMPRE, 6/164, *vb. imp.* restrain, moderate.
- ENTENDIAP, 111/3517, *pr. pl.* attend, direct their attention.
- ENTERLAS, 28/679. (?)
- ENTEYNTE, 84/2590, *pp.* affected, weakened.
- ENTREMETRIE, 22/557, *vb.* interfere.
- ENVY, 4/114, *sb.* insolence.
- ERBER, 61/1773, *sb.* garden, arbour.
- ERE, 155/5004, *adv.* ever.
- ERLICH, 2/46, *adv.* early. A.S. *earlice*.
- ESCHEKKERE, 74/2224, *sb.* chess.
- EUERECH, 5/140, *pron.* each, every one.
- EYMEDE, 31/735, *pt. s.* aimed, endeavoured.
- E3ENE, 37/907, *sb. pl.* eyes.
- FACHOUN, 74/2244, *sb.* sword. *See* Note.
- FACOUN, 41/1074, *sb.* falcon, hawk.
- FALE, 34/798, *adj.* many, numerous.
- FALE, 63/1845, *sb.* fellow, companion.
- FALSARJ, 38/966, *sb. pl.* hand-bills. *See* Note.
- FALUREDE, 116/3707, *sb.* company.
- FANDE, 87/2683, *vb.* try.
- FANT, 22/548, *sb.* FANSTON, 42/1083, font.
- FARE, 34/809, *vb.* to go, ride. FARETH, 74/2221, *imper.* A.S. *faran*.
- FASOUN, 41/1075, *sb.* fashion, appearance.
- FAUTEREL, 162/5235, *sb.* villain.
- FAUT, 86/2657, *pt. s.* FA3T, 21/532, fought.
- FAWE, 43/1150, *adj.* happy, satisfied.
- FA3E, 10/308, *adv.* A.S. *faegen*.
- FAYN, 66/1951, *adj.* pleased, happy.
- FEE, 10/305, *sb.* reward; 179/5773, property, money paid by vassals: *in fee*, 54/1527, as a vassal.
- FEER, 12/329, *adj.* FERE, 15/414, proud, fierce.
- FEL, 64/1891, *sb.* skin. A.S. *fel*. Lat. *pellem*.
- FELawe, 5/150, *sb.* companion, associate. O.Icel. *felagi*.
- FELDE, 35, 841, *pt. s.* moved, bent.
- FELLE, 16/428, *adj.* daring, fierce.
- FERD, 34/832. FERDE, 3/85, *sb.* company, followers. A.S. *ferd*, *fyrð*. *See also* FERED, FERED, and FURDE.
- FERDE, 113/3598, *pt. s.* fared, A.S. *faran*.
- FEREN, 8/258, *sb. pl.* companions. A.S. *gefera*.
- FERETE, 75/2254. FERTEE, 134/4307, *sb.* strength, valour. "*Fiereté*. Fiercesse, boldness, stoutnesse, mettle," &c. Cotgrave.
- FERLICH, 35/842, *adv.* fiercely.
- FERLY, 30/716, *adj.* wonderful, fearful.
- FERMYE, 71/2113, *vb.* confirm, strengthen.
- FERRERD, 114/3625, *pp.* distanced, far from.

- FETTE, 46/1260, *vb.* fetch, bring.
 FETYS, 182/5883, *adj.* neat, well-proportioned.
 FEþME, 76/2312, *sb.* fathoms.
 FEYE, 80/2430, *adj.* accursed, cowardly. A.S. *fæge*, which means: (1) doomed, (2) dead, (3) accursed, (4) cowardly. See *Grein*, I. 274.
 FEYNTYSE, 127/4073, *sb.* cowardice.
 FIER, 15/409, *adj.* See FEER.
 FLEAND, 88/2740, *pr. p.* flying. The northern form of the present participle: cf. I. 2736 above.
 FLECHS, 139/4493. FLEHS, 138/4440, *sb.* flesh.
 FLEN, 55/1574, *vb.* FLEO, 14/400, *vb.* flee. FLEOYNG, 88/2736, *pr. p.* fly. A.S. *fleon*.
 FLET, 134/4311, *pr. s.* flows, runs.
 FLETTE, 35/853, *sb.* ground, the flat.
 FLEȝ, 31/731, *pt. s.* flew.
 FLITTE, 156/5028, *vb.* stir, move.
 FLOUR, 101/3184, *sb.* palm, prize.
 FLOWEN, 35/855, *pt. pl.* FLOȝEN, 57/1620, fled.
 FLYTE, 137/4420, *vb.* fight, quarrel.
 FOL, 44/1170, *adv.* full, very.
 FOL, 22/563, *adj.* foolish. Fr. *fol*.
 FOLGHEDE, 61/1761, *pt. s.* followed.
 FOLLOHT, 41/1047, baptism. FOLLOȝT, 14/397, *sb.* A.S. *fulwiht*. See *Reliq. Antig.* II. 243, and *Lazamon*, 36.
 FOLȝYEAȝ, 39/1001, *pr. pl.* follow, pursue.
 FON, 6/184, *sb. pl.* foes, enemies.
 FOND, 150/4849, *pt. s.* found.
 FOND, 11/341, *vb.* venture, try.
 FONGE, 178/5739, *vb.* receive.
 FOR, 174/5589, *adj.* fore, front.
 FORCHURE, 22/551, *sb.* "Fourcheure, f. A forkinesse, or forkednesse; a forke-like division, or cleaving; also that part of the body from whence the thighs doe part; (I thinke wee call it the Twist.)" Cotgrave.
 FORCHYS, 92/2881, *sb. pl.* FOURCHYS, 95/2970, gallows. "Fourche, a Forke, Pitch-forke, or Prong; also, a gibbet, or paire of gallows." Cotgrave.
 FORCLEUE, 21/543, *vb.* cut through, cleave.
 FOR-COMYN, 25/617, *pp.* cut to pieces, cut through.
 FORDRAWE, 62/1796, *vb. subj.* tear in pieces.
 FORFARE, 12/318, *vb.* perish, be ruined.
 FOR-GNAȝE, 43/1149, *vb.* devour.
 FOR-GO, 10/319, *vb.* lose. FORSGONE, 84/2584, *pp.*
 FOR-LETE, 47/1274, *vb.* lose, forego.
 FORSAKE, 18/483, *vb.* fly from, avoid.
 FORT, 71/2146, for to, to.
 FOR-BYNK, 10/319, 2 *pl. pr.* repent, regret.
 FORW, 116/3720, *sb.* furrow.
 FOR-WERIEȝ, 90/2809, *pr. pl.* become worn out, exhausted.
 FORȝ, 174/5593, *sb.* lit. furrow; ground.
 FOR-ȝYFT, 178/5736, *sb.* forgiveness.
 FORȝYT, 89/2774, *pt. s.* forgot.
 FOPER, 26/641, *sb.* a heavy weight.
 FOYGNEDE, 175/5640, *pt. s.* thrust at. O.Fr. *foindre*, *foigner*, to feign, make a feint.
 FOȝT, 43/1127, *pp.* fought.
 FRAYNE, 40/1035, *sb.* ash. "Fresne, an ash tree," Cotgrave. Lat. *frazinus*.
 FRAYNE, 45/1216, *vb.* ask, question. A.S. *frignan*, *pt. t.* *frægn*.
 FRECHS, 86/2664, *adj.* fresh, new. A.S. *feresc*.
 FREE, 17/466, *adj.* noble.
 FREKE, 4/113, *sb.* man. A.S. *frecca*.
 FROME, 42/1104, *sb.* beginning; *atle frome* = at first.
 FREY, 108/3441, *sb.* noble maiden. A.S. *freo*, *frê*.
 FUL, 74/2237, *pt. s.* fell.
 FULD, 107/3390, *pt. s.* folded, clasped.
 FULDE, 117/3734, *pt. s.* felled, knocked down.
 FULLAUȝT, 178/5743, *sb.* baptism. See FOLLOHT.
 FULLY, 177/5697, *vb.* baptise. FULLED, 42/1084, *pp.*
 FUR, 25/605, *sb.* FYR, fire, sparks.

- FURD, 57/1625, *sb.* ford.
- FURDE, 4/95, *sb.* company, host. See FERED, FEREDÉ and FERDE.
- FURDE, 4/113, *pt. s.* conducted, behaved.
- FUSTE, 65/1901, *sb.* fist. A.S. *fæst*.
- FUURE, 4/101, *num.* four.
- FUYBOUN, 138/4457, *sb.* plenty, quantity. Lat. *fusionem* from *fundere*, to pour out.
- FYEDE, 168/5443, *pt. s.* showed contempt.
- FYN, 60/1731, *sb.* payment.
- FYSAGE, 41/1079, *sb.* visage, face.
- GADELYNG, 46/1234, *sb.* vagabond, rascal. A.S. *gædeling*.
- GALE, 64/1889, *sb.* voice.
- GALWETRE, 133/4269, *sb.* gallows.
- GALWYS, 93/2896, *sb.* gallows, gibbet.
- GAN, GUN, *passim*. Used as auxiliaries of tense; thus gan to glyde = did glide.
- GAN, 37/910, *pt. s.* GUN, 34/824.
- GUNNE, 37/938, *pt. pl.* began.
- GARNYMENT, 50/1395, *sb. pl.* dresses, clothes.
- GAS, 67/1975, 71/2145, *pr. s.* goes, walks.
- GAT, 180/5825, *pt. s.* beget.
- GATE, 62/1801, *sb.* way, road. O.Icel. *gata*.
- GEANT, 59/1700, *sb.* giant.
- GENT, 27/646, *adj.* noble.
- GENYLLERE, 175/5631, *sb.* armour for the knees.
- GERDE, 38/947, *pt. pt.* GERTE, 57/1618, *pt. s.* pierced, cut, struck. A.S. *gyrdan*.
- GERSE, 116/3693, *sb.* cut, wound, gash. "A garse; scara uel scaria." Cath. *Anglicum*.
- GERTE, 24/601, *pt. pl.* made, caused.
- GERYBOUN, 177/5693, *sb.* treasure.
- GLAYUES, 88/2728, *sb. pl.* GLEUES, 145/4690. GLEYUES, 38/966. GLYUES, 104/3275, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade at the end of a pike or staff.
- GLEDE, 74/2230, *sb.* a live coal, red-hot, but not blazing.
- GLEENTE, 12/356, *pl. s.* glanced.
- GLOD, 24/590, *pt. s.* glided, glanced.
- GLOTOUNS, 120/3841, *sb. pl.* villains. "Glouton. A knave, rascal, filthy fellow," Cotgrave.
- GOBET, 25/614, *sb.* part, piece.
- GOFFANOUN, 33/774, *sb.* flag, pennon.
- GOME, 14/402, *sb.* 131/4203, *sb. pl.* man, creature.
- GOME, 60/1741, *sb.* care, heed.
- GON, 22/555, *vb.* go, move.
- GONDE, 64/1890. (?)
- GONELS, 135/4345, *sb. pl.* long gowns. "Gonnelle. A whole Petticote; the bodies & skirts being joined together," Cotgrave. "Gonel. Habilement d'homme et de femme, . . . : casaque on longue cote qu'on mettoit sur l'armure, et qui descendoit sur les mollets. Les goneles étoient en soie on en drap, et étoient blasonnées. Geoffroy, fils de Fouiques-le-Bon, Grand Sénéchal de France, eut le surnom de grise-gonelle, parce qu'il portoit ordinairement sa cassaque de couleur grise," Roquefort.
- GOST, 126/4038, *vb.* 2 *pr. s.* goest; *goest* to grounde, wilt be ruined.
- GOST, 21/539, *sb.* spirit.
- GRADDE, 35/858, *pt. pl.* shouted, cried. A.S. *grædan*.
- GRAIDE, 90/2804, *pr. as fut. s.* shall crow.
- GRAME, 44/1182, *sb.* rage.
- GRAME, 29/691, *vb.* be vexed.
- GRAS, 71/2035, *sb.* grace, goodness.
- GRAYPE, 13/385, *vb. imp.* GREYPE, 52/1472, get ready, prepare, put on. O.Icel. *grætta*.
- GREDE, 102/3225, *vb.* shout, cry. A.S. *grædan*.
- GRESSE, 60/1750, *sb.* grease, fat.
- GRETE, 106/3347, *sb.* cry.
- GRETTE, 55/1567, *pt. s.* saluted, cried to.
- GRILLE, 73/2195, *vb.* suffer, be pained.
- 'Nu ich mai singe hwar ich wulle,
Ne dar nie neuer eft mon sgrulle."
Owl and Nightingale, ed. Stralmann, 1110.
- GROPEDE, 50/1388, *pt. s.* felt, touched.
- GROT, 134/4313, *sb.* bit, part.
- GRUTE, 93/2908, *adj.* great, heavy.

GRYMLY, 21/539, *adj.* grim.
 GRYS, 87/2695, *sb. pl.* pigs. O.Icel. *græsa*. "Gris: *porcellus*." Cath. Anglicum.
 GRYSLOH, 7/201, *adj.* fearful, dreadful.
 GURD, 128/4117, *pt. s.* GURT, 74/2248, struck, smote. See GERDE.
 GURDELSTEDE, 59/1707, *sb.* waist, belt.
 GYEP, 153/4921, *pr. s.* guides, leads.
 GYNNE, 135/4351, *sb.* plan, stratagem, device, machinery.
 GYNT, 84/2589, *pr. s.* begins.
 GYRFACOUNS, 60/1738, *sb. pl.* large falcons.
 GYSARMES, 36/895, *sb. pl.* battle-axes.
 GYSE, 54/1540, *sb.* manner, way.
 GYUES, 47/1272, *sb. pl.* gyres, fetters.

 HAB, 156/5042, 2 *pr. pl.* have.
 HABERKE, 8/236. HAUBERKES, 26/632, *sb.* coat of mail.
 HABERIONS, 28/675, *sb. pl.* breastplates, generally of mail or close steel.
 HACHE, 59/1701, *sb.* battle-axe.
 HAKENAY, 37/908, *sb.* hack horse.
 HALBERKE, HAUBERKES, 26/632, *sb. pl.* coats of mail.
 HALP, 17/449, *pt. s.* helped, assisted.
 HALS, 8/249, *sb.* neck.
 HALT, 56/1602, *impers. pr.* for *haldeth*, benefits, is of advantage.
 HALUENDOL, 103/3253, *sb.* half, part.
 HAMWARD, 126/4030, *adv.* homewards.
 HAN, 46/1237, *vb.* have, receive.
 HANNE, 33/795, *adv.* hence.
 HANT, 51/1406, *sb.* hand.
 HAPID, 57/1635, *pp.* happened, befell.
 HARD, 15/423, *adj.* hardy, brave, daring.
 HARD, 122/3901, *sb.* hard work, difficulty.
 HARLOT, 46/1234, *sb.* rascal, low fellow.
 HARNEYS, 60/1748, *sb.* baggage, accoutrements. "Harnois. Armor, harness: also a team, cart or carriage," Cotgrave.
 HARNEYSCHEP, 94/2929, *vb. imper.* arm, equip.

HAUNDE, 86/2658, *sb. pl.* hands.
 HAUNSEL, 59/1708, *sb.* beginning: lit. the first money received.
 HEBBE, 46/1248, *vb.* heave. A.S. *hebban*.
 HEE, 10/303, *pr.* they.
 HEEL, 175/5651, *adj.* sound.
 HEF, 11/340, *pt. s.* raised, lifted.
 HEFD, 164/5302, *sb.* head. A.S. *heafod*.
 HEFPE, 33/791, *sb.* handle, haft.
 HELE, 43/1125, *vb. imper.* hide, conceal, cover. A.S. *helan*, *hılan*. HELEDE, 115/3655, *pt. s.*
 HELF, 4/99, *sb.* HELUE, 5/159, behalf, part.
 "O godes *halfe*." — *Ormulum*, 624.
 A.S. *healf*.
 HELF, 138/4441, *sb.* (?)
 HEN, 147/4741, *adv.* HENNE, 104/3285.
 HENNES, 30/713, hence, from hence.
 HENDE, 113/3616, *adv.* near.
 HENDE, 33/784, *adj.* gentle, kind.
 HENTE, 59/1722, *pt. s.* seized.
 HEO, *passim. pr.* she.
 HER, 49/1354, *sb.* hair.
 HERBORGHED, 163/5251, *pt. pl.* lodged, encamped.
 HERBURGHES, 176/5689, *sb. pl.* resting-place, camp.
 HERM, 17/461, *sb.* HERME, 84/2568, injury, hurt.
 HERMYE, 47/1295, *vb.* injure, damage.
 HERT, 115/3661, *sb.* hart, deer.
 HESTE, 42/1094, *sb.* command, order.
 HET, 41/1067, *pt. s.* ordered; 151/4865, *pt. s.* named. A.S. *hatan*.
 HETE, 89/2762, *sb.* occasion, time.
 HEPEMEN, 41/1053, *sb. pl.* heathens.
 HEPENIS, 73/2187, *sb.* HEPENISSE, 4/121, heathendom, heathen countries.
 HEVED, 14/405, *sb.* head. A.S. *heafod*.
 HEUEDE, 96/3004, *pt. s.* heaved, lifted, raised.
 HEYL, 30/712, *adj.* whole, sound.
 HEZE, 75/2283, *adj.* principal, high.
 HEJEDE, 147/4731, *pt. s.* hurried, hastened, hied.
 HEY, 25/622, *adv.* high, above.

- HILUES, 144/4655, *sb.* handles, hafts.
 HIR EYPER, 24/601, each of them.
 HJȳT, 44/1166, *pt. s.* was called, was named. A.S. *hatan*.
 HJȳT, 47/1262, *pt. s.* ordered, bade.
 HJȳT, 90/2782, *sb.* promised happiness.
 HOD, 165/5339, *sb.* HODE, 35/843, hood.
 HOL, 20/519, *adj.* HOOL, 20/522, whole, sound.
 HOLD, 40/1026, *sb.* prison, captivity.
 HOLDE, 84/2592, *adj.* faithful. A.S. *hold*.
 HOND, 54/1523, *sb.* hound, dog.
 HOPE, 10/326, 1 *pr. s.* expect, believe.
 HORE, 178/5725, *sb.* adultery (?).
 HORE, 5/154, *adj.* white-haired, old.
 HORESONE, 68/2016, *sb.* bastard.
 HOST, 95/2982, *sb.* hasta.
 HOSYN, 66/1941, *sb. pl.* hose: breeches or stockings, or both.
 HOTEȳ, 65/1925, *pr. s.* bids, orders.
 HOTEN, 152/4901, *pp.*
 HOVE, 103/3269, *vb.* remain, stay.
 HOUEDE, 140/4515, *pt. s.* HOUYNGE, 122/3904, *pr. p.*
 HOUTE, 102/3225, *vb.* shout, cry. "Howtyn or cryyn. *Boo*." *Prompt. Parv.*
 HOWES, 155/4993, *sb. pl.* hooks.
 HOȳE, 141/4539, *sb.* hurt, harm. *See Note.*
 HUD, 50/1400, *pp.* hid, hidden.
 HUGENYS, 2/51, *sb.* size.
 HULD, 6/178, *pt. s.* held, kept.
 HULLE, 119/3819, *sb.* hill.
 HUMELICH, 69/2050, *adv.* gently, quietly.
 HURD, 2/47, *pt. s.* heard.
 HURE, 68/2035, *vb.* hear.
 HURE, 7/215, *pron.* her, it.
 HURE, 10/303, *poss. pr.* their.
 HWYCH, 20/511, *pron.* which.
 HYE, 42/1106, *vb.* hasten, hurry.
 HYLDE, 57/1639, *vb.* skin; *let hem hylde*, cause them to be skinned.
 HYLȳ, 102/3208, *sb.* help, assistance.
 HYLUE, 138/4434, *sb.* haft, handle.

FERUMBRAS.

- HYMEN, *passim.* these, they, them.
 HYNE, 178/5730, *sb. pl.* servants.
 HYREȳ, 119/3794, *pr. pl.* hear.
 HYWE, 24/604, *pt. pl.* hewed, slashed.
 HYWE, 145/4665, *sb.* complexion. A.S. *heow, hiw*.
 HYȳT, 182/5873, 2 *pt. s.* didst promise.
 I-BOTENED, 6/166, *pp.* buttoned, fastened.
 I-BROCHED, 107/3389, *pp.* pierced, trans-fixed.
 IN-BUOCHED, 92/2879, *pp.* placed in ambush.
 I-DIȳTE, 55/1577, *pp.* prepared, armed. A.S. *dihtan*.
 IHERID, 42/1100, *pp.* praised. A.S. *herian*.
 I-HOTE, 42/1087, *pp.* named. A.S. *hatan*.
 ILECHE, 77/2336, *adj.* like.
 ILKE, 26/637, *adj.* same, very.
 ILYUE, 62/1804, *vb.* believe, credit.
 I-PAID, 60/1747, *pp.* satisfied, paid.
 I-PLȳT, 83/2543, *pp.* placed, fixed.
 I-SAME, 70/2112, *adv.* together.
 *I-SCHENT, 12/371, *pp.* destroyed.
 I-SWONKE, 5/152, laboured, exerted. A.S. *swincan*.
 LAKE, 116/3689, *sb.* a defensive upper garment quilted with stout leather: a jerkin.
 LAMBEAUS, 174/5615, *sb. pl.* leg-armour which covered both the front and the rear, while greaves only protected the shins.
 IANTAIL, 21/527, *adj.* noble, courteous. *Fr. gentil*.
 IET, 58/1681, *sb.* contrivance, device.
 IEW-DE-DAME, 74/2225, *sb.* draughts.
 IOLIF, 8/251, *adj.* 56/1582, handsome, active.
 IOLYTE, 75/2259, *sb.* mirth. "Ioliet".
 Iollity, jollinesse: jocundnesse, mirth, &c., Cotgrave.
 IOUPOUN, 116/3689, *sb.* a short kind of surcoat introduced in the time of Edward III: often of silk or velvet, and was worn over the armour in the same way as the Cote-armour.

R

IORNAY, 34/827, *sb.* combat.
IORNE, 126/4029, *sb.* journey, way.
IORNEE, 100/3155, 134/4307, day's work, day's march.
IOUSTE, 4/106, *vb.* joust, engage, contend.
IUGGYMENT, 178/5739, *sb.* judgment, sentence.
IUPOUN, 31/745, *sb.* jacket.

KEEM, 8/260, *vb.* *pt. s.* came. **KEMEN**, 99/3130, *pt. pl.*
KENDE, 48/1298, *sb.* race.
KENNEP, 134/4314, *pr. s.* knows.
KEP, 125/4016, *vb.* 1 *pr. s.* care, wish.
KEPEDE, 106/3377, *pt. s.* troubled for.
KERNELS, 102/3234, *sb. pl.* battlements. "*Creneaux, Carneaux*; the battlements of a wall. *Creneler*. To im-battle," *Cotgrave*.
KERSE, 168/5442, *sb.* rush. *See Note*.
KET, 115/3667, *adv.* **KETE**, 143/4596, quickly, fast, fiercely. *See Note*.
KEVERID, 78/2370, *pp.* covered, hid.
KNAK, 143/4599, *sb.* knock, blow.
***KNAL**, 17/463, *sb.* (?knak,) knock, blow. Compare the preceding word.
KNEN, 179/5775, *sb. pl.* knees.
KNOB, 6/174, *pr. s.* knoweth.
KUD, 50/1401, *pp.* known, celebrated, discovered. *A.S. cyðan, cuðian*.
KULDE, 86/2660, *pt. s.* killed.
KUNNE, 14/389, *sb.* kin, race, family.
KUSTE, 68/2030, *pt. s.* kissed, embraced.
KUPE, 4/104, *vb.* **KYPE**, 55/1681, show, make known. *See KUD*.
KYNNE, 4/128, *sb.* kind, manner. *None kynnes*, of no kind.

LACYE, 164/5308, *vb.* lace up.
LAK, 56/1589, *sb.* delay, hesitation; 170/5487, defect.
LANCYNGE, 88/2733, *sb.* shower of lances or darts.
LASSE, 6/187, *adv.* less.
LATOUN, 86/2647, *sb.* a mixed metal resembling brass.

LAUȚTE, 76/2315, *pt. s.* **LAWTE**, 39/995, caught.
LAWE, 3/85, *sb.* faith, creed.
LAWE, 13/386, *vb.* laugh. **LAWYNG**, 60/1757, *pr. p.*
LAY, 14/397, *sb.* religion, faith.
LAY, 56/1602, *sb.* song, story.
LAYKY, 106/3357, *vb.* amuse themselves, play.
 "ȝif him list for to laike, þenne loke we mowen." *P. Plowman, B. Prof.* 172.
LECHES, 42/1062, *sb. pl.* physicians.
LEEM, 63/1861, *sb.* light.
LEES, 15/407, *sb.* lie.
LEF, 19/495, *adj.* willing, desirous.
LEF, 21/541, *sb.* leaf.
LEF, 148/4763, *vb. imper.* leave, retire from, give up.
LEFTE, 172/5535, *pt. s.* was left, remained.
LEGGE, 54/1534, *vb.* lay, set; 136/4394, stake.
LEKEDEM, 118/3769, *pt. pl.* pleased them.
LEKYNGE, 98/3090, *sb.* pleasure. *Hure lekyng*, pleasing to her.
LEL, 61/1770, *adj.* faithful, true.
LENDE, 179/5772, *vb.* landed, settled.
LERE, 77/2354, *vb.* learn, hear.
LET, 93/2896, *pt. s.* ordered, caused. *A.S. lētan*.
LET, 3/93, *vb.* hinder, stop. *A.S. lettan*.
LEUE, 85/2633, *vb.* remain, be left.
LEUERE, 5/145, *adv.* rather, sooner.
LEUES, 48/1327, *sb. pl.* folding-doors.
LEUET, 61/1781, 1 *pr. s.* leave it, give it up.
LEYE, 26/629, *vb.* lie, be deceived.
LIBBE, 179/5779, *vb.* live, pass (one's life).
LIFLODE, 81/2493, *sb.* provisions, means of subsistence.
LIFT, 121/3863, *sb.* sky, air.
LIGGE, 48/1311, *vb.* lie, remain.
LIPPEN, 5/141, *sb. pl.* lips.
LIP, 74/2248, *sb.* nerves, sinews. *A.S. līð*.
LIT, 71/2145, *pt. s.* alighted.
LYȚTE, 20/521, *sb.* light.

LODLUKER, 145/4665, *adj.* more loathsome, hideous.

LOES, 9/273. Los, 4/123, *sb.* praise, fame.

LOME, 9/286, *adv.* often, frequently.

LORDLYNGES, 54/1518, *sb. pl.* LORLYNGES, 97/3049, *sirs*.

LORE, 76/2298, *pt. pl.* lost.

LOSENGERS, 131/4196, *sb. pl.* deceivers, liars. "*Losengier*. A flatterer, cogger, foister, pickthanke, prater, cousener, guller, beguiler, deceiver." Cotgrave.

Lop, 19/4195, *adj.* unwilling, loth.

LOUELOCH, 68/2030. LOUELY, 8/244, *adv.* with love, lovingly.

LOUS, 16/439, *sb.* louse, flea.

LOUTE, 3/67, *vb.* bow, bend.

Low, 12/356, *pt. s.* Low3, 20/524, laughed.

LUP, 8/243, *vb. pt. s.* leaped.

LUSE, 139/4469, *vb.* lose money.

LUST, 17/453, *vb. imper.* listen, hearken. LUSTE, 64/1900.

LUTHER, 59/1708, *adj.* evil, bad. A.S. *lyðer*.

LUUERE, 128/4093, *adv.* rather, more willingly.

LYAUNCE, 51/1409, *sb.* family, descent; 128/4098, party, alliance.

LYBBE, 131/4213, *vb. 1 pr. s.* live.

LYE, 74/2242, *sb.* flame. A.S. *lēg, lȳg*.

"Fostren forth a flaumbe and a feyre lye." P. *Pleowman*, B. XVII. 207.

LYERE, 60/1757, *sb.* liar.

LYKE, 57/1631, *vb.* please.

LYME, 158/5092, *sb.* limb.

LYN, 111/3541, *vb.* lie, beset.

LYN, 3/89, *vb.* to stop, remain. A.S. *linnan*.

LYNEDE, 49/1362, *pt. s.* leaned. LYN-YNGE, 106/3358, *pr. p.*

LYTE, 139/4474, *adj.* little, small; 55/1578, *adv.*

LYTHER, 54/1535, *adj.* dangerous, fierce. A.S. *lyðer*.

LYP, 158/5092, *sb.* limb. See LUP.

LYUAND, 22/549, *adj.* living, alive.

LYUEDE, 3/85, *pt. pl.* believed.

LYUES, 81/2483, *adv.* alive.

LYURE, 42/1095, *sb.* liver.

MA, 91/2828, *imp. pron.* men, they. Fr. *on*. See ME.

MAKE, 51/1422, *sb.* mate, consort.

MALES, 131/4201, *sb. pl.* bags.

MAMETES, 83/2541, *sb. pl.* idols. See Note to l. 2534.

MANACE, 16/432, *sb.* threats, menaces.

MANYON, 36/835, many a one, many.

MARBRE, 177/5701, *sb.* marble-vessel.

MARTYR, 2/55, *vb.* martyr, slay.

MASALYNE, 48/1327, *sb.* some kind of metal: probably brass. Halliwell quotes from MS. Cantab. Ff. II. 38, leaf 122:—

"iiiij. c. cuppys of golde fyne,
And as many of maslyn."

MASTRYE, 65/1904, *sb.* MAYSTRYE, 2/57, power, mastery

MAT, 84/2590. MATE, 82/2506, *adj.* faint, almost dead. "*Mat*. Deaded, mated, amated, quelled, subdued, overcome." Cotgrave.

"Meliors was al mat: sche ne mist no furper." William of Palerne, ed. Skeat, 2441.

MAUFESOURS, 114/3633, *sb. pl.* villains, malefactors.

MAUGRE, 23/567, *prep.* in spite of.

MAUGREE, 10/315, *sb.* misfortune.

MAUMERYE, 83/2534, 153/4938, *sb.* shrine or temple of idols. See Note.

MAWE, 59/1691, *vb.* may, are able. See MOWE.

MAY, 94/2927, *sb.* maid. A.S. *mæg*.

MAYE, 39/978, *vb.* to be troubled. "*S^e Emayer*. To be sad, pensive, careful; to take thought." Cotgrave. Caixton reads—"lose his wits"

MAYGNY, 61/1791, *sb.* MAYNEE, 107/3405, *meynie*. Attendants, retinue. O.Fr. *maisonnée* = *mansionatam*, from *mansionem*, as *household*, from *house*.

MAYL, 144/4653, *sb.* mallet, hammer.

MAYLLE, 26/624, *sb.* ring or link of his mail-armour. See note to l. 876.

MAYSTRES, 49/1349, *sb.* governess.

ME, 3/88, *impers. pron.* men, people; equivalent to the French *on*. See MA.

MEDE, 167/5409, *sb.* meadow, field.
 MELKIS, 182/5879, *sb.* of milk.
 MELLE, 178/5749, *vb.* have anything to do, meddle with.
 MELLEDE, 104/3290, *pt. s.* mixed, mingled.
 MENDE, 84/2584, *sb.* consciousness, mind.
 MENE, 173/5568, *vb.* lament, complain.
 MERUAYLLE, 22/556, *imp. pr.* it surprises, astonishes me, I am astonished.
 MESSENGER, 52/1466, *sb.* MESSAGERE, 53/1483, messenger.
 MEST, 73/2217, *adj.* greatest, principal.
 METE, 2/47, *sb.* a meal.
 METE-LES, 45/1195, *adj.* without food.
 *METENYE, 12/352, *vb.* maintain.
 MEYNE, 22/556, *adj.* low, poor.
 MEYTEYNE, 12/332, *vb.* maintain.
 MICHE, 34/811, *adv.* much.
 MIDDEL, 73/2199, *sb.* waist.
 MIDE, 92/2866, *prep.* with. A.S. *mid*.
 MIXT, 18/474, 2 *pt. s.* mightiest, canst.
 MOD, 5/144, *sb.* temper, feeling, disposition.
 MOLDE, 153/4940, *sb.* the suture of the skull.
 MOLDE, 12/361, *sb.* earth.
 MON, 45/1212, *sb.* MONE, 45/1196, lament, lamentation.
 MONEKYS, 3/60, *sb. pl.* monks.
 MORED, 91/2834, *pp.* fixed, rooted.
 "And i-mored so uaste also þat hi ne miȝte awei be nome."—*Legends of the Holy Eood*, E. E. T. S., ed. Morris, p. 28, l. 128.
 MOREL, 116/3713, *sb.* a name properly applied to a dark-coloured horse.
 "Morel as Moreau. Moreau cheval; a blacke horse." Cotgrave.
 MORNYNG, 77/2338, *sb.* mourning, lamentation.
 MORWE, 42/1114, *sb.* MORWENYNG, 2/46, morning, morrow.
 MORWETYDE, 93/2895, *sb.* morning-time, morning.
 MOST, 5/144, *aux. vb.* might.
 MOT, 10/318, *aux. vb.* may.
 MURȝPE, 68/2034, *sb.* MURȝPE, 2/48, mirth.
 MYNE, 155/4993, *vb.* undermine.

MYNTE, 173/5587, *vb.* aim.
 MYSEDE, 85/2619, *vb.* give disgraceful orders to, speak shamefully.
 MYSBRAYDE, 40/1037, *sb.* abuse.
 MYS-BYȝYTE, 180/5825, *pp.* mistaken, acting wrongly.
 MYSTER, 87/2684, *sb.* trade, profession, art.
 MYSWENT, 66/1963, *pp.* mistaken, gone wrong.
 NAD, 5/141, *pl. s.* for *ne had*, had not.
 NAKE, 88/2744, *adj.* uncovered, bare.
 NAM, 80/2434, for *ne am*, am not.
 NAM, 31/746, *pt. s.* hit, reached; 8/257, took. A.S. *niman*.
 NAMLICH, 62/1823, *adv.* especially.
 NAYM, 13/374. Nain. Compare CAYM = Cain.
 NĀȝT, 61/1779, *adv.* not, nought.
 NAUEL-STEDE, 20/509, *sb.* navel, middle.
 NEDES, 60/1741, *adv.* necessarily.
 NETTE, 5/148, *sb.* night, evening.
 NEL, 23/568, for *ne will*, will not.
 NEMPNE, 101/3196, *pp.* named.
 NEODE, 120/3853, *sb.* affair, business.
 NERE, 10/326, *pt. s.* for *ne were*, were not.
 NERE, 41/1069, *adv.* never.
 NESSCHE, 110/3499, *adj.* NEYCHS, 161/5187, soft; at *nessche* & *hard*, entirely, on every point. A.S. *hnesce*.
 NEȝȝ, 23/575, *adv.* nigh, nearly.
 NEȝED, 6/179, *pt. s.* approached. NEȝEHEDE, 53/1494, drew near. A.S. *neahwian*.
 NEȝENE, 88/2720, *num.* nine.
 NEȝENTENE, 87/2699, *num.* nineteen.
 NEȝY, 154/4953, *pr. pl.* approach, come near. See NEȝED.
 NISTE, 28/681, *pt. s.* for *ne wiste*, did not know.
 NOLDE, 4/127, *pt. s.* for *ne wolde*, would not.
 NOME, 43/1133, *pp.* betaken, taken. A.S. *niman*.
 NONE, 56/1587, *sb.* noon.

- NONES, 48/1324, *for the nones* = for the time (*for than dñes*).
 NOT, 122/3902, *pr. s.* for *ne wot*, does not know.
 NOPELES, 23/573, *conj.* nevertheless, yet.
 NOPEP, 5/147, *conj.* NOUPEP, neither, nor.
 NOWAR, 2/51, *adv.* nowhere. A.S. *nāhwer*.
 NUBBEE, 55/1571, *sb.* Nubia.
 NULLETH, 94/2932, 1 *pr. pl.* for *ne wull-eth*, will not.
 NUYE, 2/49, *vb.* be vexed or grieved.
 NYCY, 181/5843, *adj.* foolish, silly. Lat. *nescius*.
 NYCYTE, 75/2255, *sb.* folly. Fr. "*niceté*: simplicité, or simpleness." Cotgrave.
 NYSTE, 89/2756, *pt. pl.* for *ne wiste*, did not know, were at a loss.
 NYPEMEST, 103/3257, *adj.* lowest.
 NYȝT, 155/5017, *pt. pl.* knew not.

 O, 18/470, *adj.* one.
 OF-SÆȝ, 117/3739, *pt. s.* saw at a distance.
 OF-TAKE, 39/984, *pp.* OF-TOKEN, 39/987, *pt. pl.* overtook.
 OK, 141/4561. OKE, 141/4554, *sb.* oak.
 ONDE, 74/2242, *sb.* breath.
 ONES, 156/5040, *adv.* ONYS, 15/418, once, before.
 ONEPE, 88/2739. ONNEPE, 36/883. OUNNEPE, 85/2631, *adv.* with difficulty, with reluctance. A.S. *Oneaþ* from *eaþ*, easy.
 ONLADE, 155/4989, *adj.* unloaded, empty.
 ONMAWE, 86/2638. OUNMAWE, 89/2766, *adj.* fierce, furious.
 OPEN-HER, 66/1943, *adj.* bare-headed.
 OR, 154/4970, *adv.* before, ere.
 ORN, 122/3893, *pt. s.* ran. A.S. *rinnan*, *irnan*, *cornan*.
 "The children *ornnen* at the bare."
 M.S. Cott. Cleop. D. ix, leaf 156, back.
 OTEN, 152/4901, *sb. pl.* oats, corn.
 *OUN, 20/511. ?
 OUNARAID, 34/821, *adj.* unprepared, unarmed.
 OUNDO, 48/1310, *vb. imper.* undo, release.
 OUNGERTE, 66/1943, *adj.* ungirded.
 OUNHELID, 24/586, *adj.* uncovered. A.S. *helan*, to cover.
 OUNHENDE, 66/1965, *adj.* uncourteous.
 OUNKENDE, 48/1301, *adj.* unkind.
 OUNLEKES, 47/1264, *pr. s.* unlocks.
 OUNLOK, 46/1254, *pt. s.*
 OUNRIDE, 32/747, *adj.* OUNRYDE, 116/3691, fearful.
 OUNRIȝT, 40/1031, *sb.* outrage.
 OUNRIȝT, 5/157, *adv.* unfairly, wrongly.
 OUNȝANK, 98/3061, ill thanks. The same as *maugre*, or *malgre* = *male-gratum*.
 OUNWRASTE, 93/2905, *adj.* OUNWRESTE, 147/4740, wicked, base.
 OUNWRYE, 63/1849, *vb.* unfold, disclose, tell. A.S. *unwrihan*.
 OUT-TAKE, 7/200, *prep.* except, save.
 OUTTRAGE, 58/1669, *sb.* foolish action.
 OUPEP, 3/84, *conj.* or, *ouper* . . . *ouper* = either . . . or.
 OUERAL, 50/1389, *adv.* everywhere, altogether.
 OUEBCASTE, 63/1831, *vb.* be troubled.
 OWAR, 33/767, *adv.* anywhere. A.S. *āhwer*.
 OWE, 157/5068, *adj.* own, true.
 OȝENE, 20/513, *adj.* own.
 OȝT, 54/1535, *sb.* ought, anything.
 OȝTE, 98/3071, *pt. s.* owned, possessed.

 PACE, 111/3523, *vb.* pass, cross.
 PAID, 83/2533, *pp.* pleased.
 PAN, 161/5188, *sb.* piece, portion. "*Pan*. A pane, piece, or pannell of a wall, also a Spanne." Cotgrave. "*Panne* of a howse; *Panna*." Cath. Anglicum.
 PAN, 145/4685, *sb.* skull.
 PARAGE, 58/1668, *sb.* parentage, kindred.
 PARD, 111/3517, *sb.* part, direction.
 PARFAY, 17/457, in faith, faith. Fr. *par foi*.
 PARFORNY, 67/1994, *vb.* perform, carry out.

- PAS, 95/2969, *sb.* course.
 PAST, 89/2763, *sb.* paste. *On past*, in a pie.
 PASTE, 45/1195, *pt. pl.* went away, departed.
 PAUTENER, 35/859, *sb.* villain, rascal. *See Note.*
 PAUYLOUNS, 3/74, *sb. pl.* tents.
 PAYE, 135/4355, *sb.* pleasure, satisfaction. *At my paye* = to please or satisfy me.
 PAYNYE, 4/122, *sb.* PAYENYE, 33/761, heathendom, pagan countries.
 PAYS, 130/4152, *sb.* peace, reconciliation.
 PAYTREL, 115/3665, *sb.* breastplate; the strap that crosses the breast of a horse.
 PENOUN, 55/1555, *sb.* flag, banner.
 PERCY, 143/4613, *vb.* pierce, wound.
 PERE, 15/413, *sb.* equal, match. *Lat. par.*
 PERE, 177/5722, *sb.* pear.
 PEROUN, 137/4429, *sb.* column, pier. "*Perron*. A square base of stone, or metall, some five or six feet high, whereon, in old time, knights errant placed some discourse, challenge, or prooffe, of an adventure." *Cotgrave.*
 PERREE, 48/1327, *sb.* jewels, precious stones. "*Pierrerie*. Jewels or precious stones." *Cotgrave.*
 PERS, 141/4548, *vb.* pierce, cut through.
 PERS, 58/1682, *sb. pl.* piers.
 PERSAUNT, 154/4980, *sb.* Persians.
 PERSCHED, 38/941, *pt. s.* pierced, ran through.
 PEYNYMES, 33/762, *sb. pl.* pagans, paynim.
 PIET, 69/2069, *pp.* fixed, placed.
 PLAT, 48/1330, *pp.* plated.
 PLATE, 36/876, *sb.* plate-armour. *See Note.*
 PLEYNED, 32/750, *pt. s.* complained.
 PLY3TE, 47/1281, *vb.* plight, pledge. *A.S. plihtan.*
 PLY3TE, 97/3029, *pt. s.* snatched, plucked.
 POLASTRE, 48/1327, *sb. ?*
 POLTE, 157/5077, *pt. s.* put, placed.
 PORPOS, 22/560, *sb.* intention, purpose.
 POSTE, 100/3158, *sb.* power, might.
 POT, 73/2213, *pt. s.* POTTE, 39/1003, put, placed.
 POYLE, 12/365, *sb.* Apulia.
 PRAUNCEDE, 165/5341, *pt. s.* stamped about.
 PRAY, 181/5857, *sb.* prayer, entreaty.
 PREF, 43/1150, *sb.* proof, witness.
 PRES, 171/5520, *sb.* charge, struggle.
 PREST, 103/3240, *adj.* ready. *O.Fr. prest. Fr. prêt. Lat. præsto.*
 PREYNTE, 46/1238, *pt. s.* winked. "*Prince eages*, nictus vel ictus oculi." *Lye, A.S. Dict.*
 PROCURY, 180/5826, *vb.* cause, endeavour.
 PROFRYEM, 5/139, *vb.* offer himself, volunteer.
 PROUTELICH, 4/118, *adv.* proudly, haughtily.
 PROW, 12/357, *sb.* good, advantage. *O.Fr. prou.*
 PRUDE, 16/432, *sb.* pride, haughtiness.
 PRUWESSE, 40/1014, *sb.* prowess, daring.
 PRYKIE, 34/824, *vb.* ride.
 PRYME, 62/1800, *sb.* six o'clock, a.m.
 PRYS, 6/173, *sb.* value, account, estimation.
 PRYSOUNS, 39/1000, *sb. pl.* prisoners, captives.
 PRYUEE, 179/5773, *adj.* friendly.
 PULT, 24/594, *pt. s.* put, placed. PULTE, 33/774, pushed.
 PURPLE, 130/4169, *sb.* people, men.
 PURCHAS, 85/2603, *sb.* acquisition.
 PURPOS, 66/1956, *sb.* opinion, proposal.
 PYCH, 135/4330, *sb.* pitch.
 PYKES, 144/4647, *sb. pl.* spikes.
 PYKOVS, 155/4993, *sb.* pickaxes. *See Note.*
 PYNE, 41/1048, *sb.* PYNS, 41/1055, *sb. pl.* grief, pain.
 PYNGE, 80/2430, *vb.* tingle, stir; 46/1248, push.
 PYSE, 181/5847, *sb.* pea. *Lat. pisum.*
 QUARELS, 105/3312, *sb. pl.* bolts from cross-bows. "*Quarreau*. A Quarrell, or boul't for a crossebowe, or an arrow

- with a four-square head." Cotgrave.
- QUARREE, 145/4676, *adj.* square-headed.
- QUAITE, 25/607, *pt. s.* shook, quaked.
- QUED, 16/429, *sb.* wretch. O.Fris. *qudd.*
- QUEDE, 54/1535, *sb.* ill, harm.
- QUELLE, 16/431, *vb.* kill. A.S. *cwellan.*
- QUENTE, 115/3659, *adj.* strange, curious, quaint. See QUEYNTE.
- QUEREL, 28/668, *sb.* quarrel, engagement.
- QUERT, 30/712, *adj.* safe, whole.
- QUEBTE, 10/325, *adj.* safe. In *querte* = in safety. "Querte; Incolumis." Cath. Angl.
- QUEYNTE, 58/1684, *adj.* QUIYNT, 58/1681, 103/3257, curious. "Coint. Quaint, compt, neat, fine, spruce," &c. Cotgrave.
- QUYCLYCH, 60/1742, *adv.* quickly, soon.
- QUYKE, 118/3764, *adj.* alive, living.
- QUYTE, 62/1819, *vb.* requite, repay.
- RAD, 67/1990, *pp.* advised, told.
- RAIED, 76/2295, *pp.* laid out, served.
- RAKE, 72/2177, *pt. s.* hurried. A.S. *recan.*
- RAPLY, 13/384, *adv.* quickly. Cf. Lat. *rapere*, to snatch, to seize hurriedly.
- RATHE, 121/3874, *adv.* early. RAPERRE, 16/426, *comp.*
- RAUT, 26/641, *pp.* RAUT, 38/965, *pt. pl.* reached, struck. See ARAUT.
- RAY, 13/385, *imper. s.* array, prepare.
- RAYNE, 60/1755, *sb.* rein, bridle.
- RECET, 40/1021, *sb.* retirement.
- RECREENT, 12/318, *adj.* recreant.
- RECULEDE, 142/4585, *pt. pl.* drove back, made to recoil.
- RECULE, 38/971, *vb.* recoil, draw back, retreat.
- RECUYNGE, 89/2771, *sb.* retreat, retiring.
- RED, 59/1716, 67/1986, *sb.* advice.
- REDE, 169/5456.
- REDE, 7/218, *vb.* assist, maintain.
- REFET, 60/1736, *pp.* fattened, fat. "*Re-
faict.* Plumpe, fattened, high-fed." Cotgrave.
- REGARD, 47/1297, *sb.* looks, appearance. "*Regard.* A look, view, sight, aspect." Cotgrave.
- REGNEE, 78/2386, *sb.* kingdom.
- REKE, 46/1249, *vb.* run, hurry. A.S. *recan.*
- REKE, 167/5403, *pt. pl.* hastened.
- REKE, 3/61, *adj.* rich. A.S. *rice.*
- RELIEDE, 38/963, *pt. pl.* rallied, recovered.
- RELYGYOUS, 3/62, *adj.* members of any religious order.
- REMYE, 3/77, *vb.* remove, stir.
- RENDE, 74/2242, *pt. s.* ran.
- RENDOUN, 166/5357, *sb.* haste, speed. See ARAUNDOUN.
- RENEYED, 145/4673, *pp.* foresworn, false.
- RENTE, 22/561, *sb.* property.
- REPE, 113/3583, *adv.* speedily, quickly. See also RAPLY.
- REPREUE, 14/404, *sb.* shame, disgrace.
- REQUILLED, 57/1621, *pt. pl.* drove together. See Note.
- RESCOWE, 40/1012. RESCUWE, 39/1008, *vb.* RESCUWY, 39/1003, rescue.
- RESOUN, 126/4047, *sb.* advice, opinion.
- RESTARE, 51/1439, *vb.* restore, give up.
- REUE, 14/405, *vb.* deprive, bereave.
- REWARDIE, 109/3463, *pr. 2 pl.* determine, agree. REWARDED, 10/312.
- REWARDET, 10/311, *pp.*
- REWE, 97/3026, *sb.* row.
- REWPE, 33/784, *sb.* pity.
- REYNOURS, 62/1798, *sb. pl.* thieves, robbers.
- RIBAUX, 140/4517, *sb. pl.* villains, rascals.
- RIDEL, 83/2537, *sb.* curtain, screen. "*Rideau.* A curtain, or cloth-skreen." Cotgrave.
- RIG, 137/4397. RIGGE, 48/1309, *sb.* back. A.S. *hrycg.*
- RIGGES, 55/1565, *sb. pl.* ridges, mounds.
- RITTE, 156/5030, *pt. pl.* cut, tore.
- RJDT, 38/956, *pr. s.* rides.
- RJTES, 135/4343, *adv.* directly, straight.

- ROBBY, 62/1799, *vb.* rob, plunder.
 ROUT, 34/813, *sb.* ROUTE, 34/825, company, followers.
 ROUTE, 49/1343, *vb.* roar. O.Icel. *rauta*.
 ROWE, 48/1300, *vb.* ?perhaps rest, be still. See *The Tale of Beryn*, ed. Furnivall, l. 284.
 ROWE, 66/1954, *adv.* rough, thick. A.S. *ruh*, *ruw*.
 ROYT, 176/5669, *pt. s.* cared, recked. A.S. *rēcan*.
 RYDE, 48/1300, *vb.* ride.
 RYOT, 138/4459, *sb.* assembly, gathering. O.Fr. *riote*.
 RYSE, 42/1114, *pt. pl.* arose, rose.
 RYSSCHE, 4/124, *sb.* rush. A.S. *risce*.
 SAD, 12/353, *adv.* strongly.
 SADE, 103/3235, *adj.* heavy; 105/3340, sharp, severe. "Sad, or hard. *Solidus*." *Prompt. Parv.*
 SAF, 128/4109, *prep.* except, save.
 SAINFAILE, 77/2350, *sb.* certainly, beyond a doubt. Fr. *sans faille*.
 SAKRED, 51/1405, *pp.* taken a solemn oath.
 SARPLERS, 136/4371, *sb. pl.* bags. "*Sarpillère*. A Sarpliar; a peece of canvas, cloth, or other stuffe to wrap or packe up wares in." *Cotgrave*.
 SAUETE, 107/3410, *sb.* safety.
 SAWE, 57/1635, *sb.* tale, account.
 SAY, 7/213, *sb.* serge or woollen cloth. "Saye clothe, *serge*." *Palsgrave*.
 SAY, 34/811. SAYE, 117/3729, *pt. pl.*
 SAYW, 46/1245, *pt. s.* saw, discovered.
 SAYE, 42/1093, *vb.* try, examine.
 SAYNE, 63/1836, *vb.* say, tell.
 SAYSEP, 96/3009, *pr. s.* seizes.
 SCABERKE, 33/771, *sb.* scabbard.
 SCAPYE, 32/759, *vb.* harass, injure.
 SCHAD, 31/743, *pt. s.* spilt.
 SCHAK, 86/2663, *sb.* shock, charge.
 SCHAKE, 37/928, *vb.* hurry, ride.
 SCHAKET, 73/2205, *vb.* shake it.
 SCHALY, 104/3282, *vb.* peel off, fall off (in scales).
 SCHAPE, 146/4713, *pp.* purposed, proposed. A.S. *sceapian*.
 SCHAV, 25/615, *pt. s.* cut, shaved off.
 SCHEF, 50/1369, *pt. s.* pushed, shoved.
 SCHELTOU, 51/1436, shalt thou.
 SCHENE, 138/4463, *adj.* bright, shining.
 SCHENNES, 72/2175, *sb.* ruin, destruction. A.S. *scendnyss*.
 SCHENT, 17/459, *pp.* disgraced, defeated. A.S. *scendan*.
 SCHENTFULE, 67/1973, *adj.* shameful, disgraceful.
 SCHEP, 21/541, *pt. s.* shaped, created. See SCHAPE.
 SCHERTH, 35/837, *pr. s.* cuts, shaves. A.S. *scecan*.
 SCHILDE, 31/727. SCHULDE, 26/631, *pt. pl.* resounded. O.H.Ger. *scellan*. "*bide schillinde stefne*." *Sainte Marharete*, ed. Cockayne, 19.
 SCHILLE, 96/3020, *adv.* shrilly, loudly. A.S. *scyll*. See Note.
 SCHIPPE, 21/542, 2 *pr. s.* prepare, make ready. See SCHAPE.
 SCHON, 66/1941, *sb. pl.* shoes.
 SCHOND, 66/1947, *sb.* ruin, disgrace. A.S. *sceond*.
 SCHOURE, 25/681, *sb.* blow.
 SCHREWE, 62/1828, *sb.* villain, cursed fellow.
 SCHRIDE, 8/234, *vb.* array, dress.
 SCHRIDDE, 35/868, *pt. s.* A.S. *scrýdan*.
 SCHYNDE, 20/523, *vb.* ruin, destroy. A.S. *scendan*.
 SOKYRME, 74/2227, *vb.* fence.
 SCOLLE, 12/353, *sb.* skull, head.
 SCOUTE, 75/2284, *sb.* wretch.
 SEDE, 6/190, *pt. s.* said, cried.
 SEET, 45/1200, *pt. s.* sat.
 SEGE, 72/2183, *sb.* position, place; 78/2358, siege, attack.
 SEKEDE, 7/209, *pt. s.* sighed.
 SELCOUP, 177/5708, *adj.* strange, unusual.
 SELUE, 67/1997, *adj.* same.
 SEMBLY, 35/834, *adj.* fair, handsome.
 SEMBLANT, 37/923, *sb.* face, countenance.
 SEMBLEE, 79/2423, *sb.* assemblage.

- SENGLE, 41/1071, *adj.* simple, hence, unclothed, naked; 66/1942, *adv.* See Note.
- SERVAGE, 2/56, *sb.* subjection.
- SESSOYNGNE, 65/1923, *sb.* Saxony.
- SEST, 70/2108, *pr. t. s.* seest.
- SEST, 40/1017, *pt. pl.* ceased, stopped.
- SET, 64/1872, 1 *pr. s.* reckon, think of consequence.
- SEJ, 31/736, *pt. s.* SEJE, 19/504, *saw.* A.S. *seon*.
- SEJ, 24/589, *pt. s.* ?
- SHET, 124/3962, *pt. s.* shot, plunged. *Set* occurs in *Robert of Gloucester*.
- SHREWEDEBE, 138/4431, *adj.* more villainous-looking.
- SHREWDINESSE, 98/3084, *sb.* villany.
- SHROUT, 106/3358, *sb.* cover, shelter. A.S. *scrūt*.
- SIBBE, 109/3447, *adj.* related.
- SIGGE, 3/87, *vb.* say, tell.
- SIEKERLUKERE, 35/867, *adv.* SYKERLUKER, 37/909, more securely, more safely.
- SIP, 44/1163, *adv.* afterwards, after.
- SIPES, 41/1080, *sb. pl.* times.
- SITE, 40/1023, *pt. s.* sighed.
- SKEER, 181/5835, *adj.* free, safe from.
- SKRYTE, 56/1609, *pt. pl.* shrieked, cried out.
- SKUNTEDE, 121/3888, *pt. s.* foamed. See Note.
- SKYLES, 110/3499, *sb. pl.* reasons, reasoning.
- SLAKE, 84/2595, *vb.* fail, run short.
- SLAUNDRE, 4/132, *sb.* mockery.
- SLAUT, 103/3236, *sb.* SLAJT, 171/5519, slaughter.
- SLEE, 2/55, *vb.* alay. SLEEP, 66/1966, *imper.* A.S. *seon*. See also SLONE and SLOW.
- SLEGGE, 48/1308, *sb.* sledge-hammer.
- SLENT, SLENTE, 28/674, *pt. s.* aimed, struck. See STRATMANN, *s. v.* Slengen.
- SLEJ, 52/1446, *adj.* SLEJE, 46/1239, wise, sensible. O.Icel. *slagr*.
- SLO, 135/4338, *sb.* aloes. See Note.
- SLONE, 16/427, *vb.* SLAY, 66/1958, *pp.* A.S. *seon*.
- SLOW, 3/59, *pt. s.* SLOJ, 3/62, *slew.* A.S. *seon*.
- SMERE, 13/386, *adv.* ? gently. "He *smere* loh." *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, 14961.
- SMYLLER, 83/2546, *pr. s.* smells.
- SNEL, 75/2273, *adv.* quickly, at once. A.S. *snell*, *snel*.
- SO, 3/81, *adv.* as; so . . . so = as . . . as.
- SOCOURE, 45/1192, *sb.* help, assistance.
- SOJOURNED, 150/4841, *pt. s.* halted, remained.
- SOMERS, 87/2692, *sb. pl.* pack-horses, horses of burden. "*Sommier*. A sumpter-horse."—Cotgrave.
- SOND, 14/401. SONDE, 165/5331, *sb.* message.
- SONDE, 23/573, *sb.* sand, ground.
- SOOT, SOT, 30/719, *sb.* sweat. A.S. *swat*.
- SOR, 19/503, *sb.* wound. "Surre; *cicatrix*." Cath. Anglicum.
- SOUNDERLICHE, 67/1990, *adv.* separately.
- SOUNEDE, 41/1080, *pt. s.* SOWENEDE, 131/4221, swooned, fainted.
- SOWENYNG, 43/1134, *sb.* SOJENYNG, 84/2585, swooning, faint.
- SOJTE, 3/71, *vb. pt. t.* sought, came to.
- SPELIE, 13/342, *vb.* spare. "*Spele* and spare." *P. Plowman*, C. XIV. 77.
- SPELLE, 16/429, *sb.* speech, harangue.
- SPERDE, 47/1263, *pt. s.* closed, barred. A.S. *sparrian*.
- SPERHAUK, 87/2680, *sb.* sparrow-hawk.
- SPILLE, 153/4947, *vb.* be lost, ruined, killed. SPILD, 23/569, *pp.*
- SPILLYNG, 168/5425, *sb.* waste, outpouring.
- SPLYTE, 103/3248, *pt. s.* ? directed, bade.
- SPORES, 55/1564, *sb. pl.* spurs.
- SPREYNTE, 104/3291, *pt. s.* sprinkled. A.S. *sprengan*.
- SPRINGOLD, 105/3310, *sb.* a machine of war for casting stone arrows, &c. See Note.
- SPRYNGGYNG, 112/3562, *sb.* dawning, opening.
- STAGES, 103/3255, *sb. pl.* platforms, stories. Fr. *estage*.

- STAP, 11/345, *sb.* *step*.
 STAPE, 180/5793, *vb.* *step*.
 STENT, 58/1663, *pr. s.* *stands*.
 STERK, 103/3241, *adj.* *sharp, stiff*. A.S. *stearc*.
 STERREDE, 132/4233, *adj.* *with a star on his forehead*.
 STEUENE, 99/3111, *sb.* *voice*.
 STEJE, 78/2388, *vb.* *climb*.
 STEJE, 178/5731, *pt. s.* *ascended*. A.S. *stigan*.
 STILLE, 10/322, *adv.* *quietly, in a low tone*.
 STILP, 141/4553, *sb.* *stump, post*. O.Icel. *stolpi*.
 "But iii foote high on stulpes must ther be."
Palladius on Husbandrie, ed. Lodge, 39/1064.
 STOKKES, 44/1186, *sb. pl.* *stocks*.
 STORK, 71/2118, *adj.* *stiff, sharp*. See STERK.
 STOUNDE, 20/518, *sb.* *moment*.
 STOURE, 29/696, *sb.* *battle, contest*.
 STOJEN, 156/5027, *pp.* *climbed*. See STEJE.
 STRAUT, 67/1976, *adv.* STRAJTE, 73/2204, *directly, straight*.
 STRE, 74/2229, *sb.* *straw*.
 STREK, 8/244, *vb. pt. s.* *stroked*.
 STREKES, 47/1265, *pr. s.* *hurries, goes rapidly*.
 STRUYEDE, 3/64, *pt. s.* *destroyed*.
 STURIE, 36/876, *vb.* *exert, busy himself*.
 STYL, 105/3313, *sb.* STYLE, 138/4433, *steel*.
 STYNTE, 3/77, *pt. s.* *stopped, halted*. A.S. *astyntan*.
 STYP, 29/696, *adj.* STYPE, 85/2614, *fierce, strong, sturdy*; 26/631, *adv.* A.S. *stið*.
 SULK, 138/4463, *sb.* *silk*.
 SUNDERLY, 94/2937, *adv.* *separately, individually*.
 SURLOKERE, 20/520, *adv.* *more safely*.
 SUPPE, 27/647, *adv.* *after, afterwards, since*.
 SWARF, 31/743, *pt. s.* *swerved, glanced, passed*. A.S. *swearfan*.
 SWART, 93/2908, *adj.* *black*. A.S. *sweart*.
 SWATTE, 178/5753, *pt. s.* *sweated*.
 SWER, 3/82, *pt. s.* *swore*.
 SWETE, 120/3855, *vb.* *sweat, be exhausted*.
 SWOLWE, 132/4232, *sb.* *swallow*.
 SWOM, 124/3958, *pt. s.* *swam*.
 SWYKEL, 142/4589, *adj.* *traitorous, deceitful*. A.S. *swicol*.
 SWYNKE, 20/517, *vb.* *work, labour*.
 SWYRE, 31/735, *sb.* *neck*. A.S. *swira*.
 SWYPPER, 34/816, *adv.* *more quickly*.
 SYCHE, 65/1935, *vb.* *seek, follow*.
 SYE, 58/1679, *pr. s.* *seest*.
 SYKERLY, 3/62, *adv.* *certainly, assuredly*.
 SYKERY, 47/1281, *vb.* *assure, pledge*. See also SAKRED.
 SYKYNGE, 77/2345, *pr. p.* *sighing*.
 SYMEB, 59/1700, *pr. s.* *seems*.
 SYEST, 180/5809, 2 *pr. s.* *seest*.
 SYJYNG, 40/1040, *sb.* *sighing*.
 TABIDE, 19/500, *for* *to abide, to wait for*.
 TABLERE, 74/2225, *sb.* *backgammon*.
 TABOURA, 122/3895, *sb. pl.* *drums*.
 TAKET, 73/2204, *vb.* *take it, seize it*.
 TAL, 12/363, *for* *to al*; *in tal* = *into all*.
 TALE, 34/799, *sb.* *count, reckoning by tale, in number*.
 TANGE, 48/1308, *sb.* *tonga*.
 TARSE, 138/4463, *sb.* *a kind of silk*. See Note.
 TAST, 59/1700, *vb.* TASTE, 42/1094, *try, examine, touch*.
 TAUJTE, 50/1391, *pt. s.* TAJTE, 56/1603, *showed, proved*.
 TEEN, 39/991, *sb.* TENE, 35/846, *rage, vexation*.
 TELEST, 55/1578, *pr. s.* *countest, reckonest*. TELLEB, 4/117, TELT, 6/173, *pr. s.*
 TEYNTE, 82/2506, *pp.* *pained, affected*. A.S. *teonian, tynan*.
 THE, 5/144, *vb.* *thrive*; *so most he be, so might he prosper*.
 THILKE, 12/364, *pron.* *that one, he*.
 THO, 5/141, *adv.* *then*.
 THRO, 124/3968, *adj.* *swift, threatening*.

- THROWE, 167/5413, *sb.* moment, short time.
- TIDE, 11/350, *sb.* time. A.S. *tīd*.
- TILLE, 3/59, *vb.* reach, come to. TILDE, 145/4678, *pt. s.* A.S. [*ge*]tillan.
- TIȚT, 40/1015, *pt. pl.* turned, directed their course. TIȚTE, 31/729, *pp.* intended, meant.
- TOCHED, 7/219, *pt. s.* appertained to, belonged to.
- TOCHON, 96/3000, *pt. s.* broke in pieces. A.S. *to-cman*. "pe roche tochon." *An Eng. Miscell.*, ed. Morris, p. 92.
- TO-CLATRID, 36/897, *pp.* broken to pieces.
- TO-FALLE, 155/5011, *pp.* knocked to pieces.
- TO-FLENTE, 153/4940, *pt. s.* flew in ieces.
- TO-GADRES, 28/672, *adv.* together.
- TO-HEWE, 28/676, *pp.* cut to pieces.
- TOK, 4/114, *pt. s.* counted, considered.
- TOL, 141/4541, *sb.* tool, weapon.
- TOLD, 145/4659, *pp.* reckoned, measured.
- TO-NIȚT, 5/153, *adv.* this night just past, last night.
- TO-RENTE, 28/675, *pt. pl.* tore, cut to pieces.
- TORKE, 85/2605, *sb.* Turk.
- TO-TAAR, 141/4533, *pt. s.* tore to pieces.
- TOUR, 42/1104, *for* to our.
- TOUȚT, 151/4857, *adj.* strong. See TOȚT.
- TO-WOND, 84/2568, *pt. s.* went, tumbled.
- TOȚT, 124/3969, *adv.* strongly, fiercely. "pe kniȚt so toȚt." *Sir Gawayne*, 1869.
- TOȚT, 59/1716, ?
- TOȚTE, 136/4390, *adv.* tightly, full.
- TRACES, 182/5881, *sb. pl.* tresses, hair.
- TRATE, 50/1370, *sb.* old wretch. See Note.
- TRAYSEMENT, 147/4754, *sb.* treason, treachery.
- TRE, 56/1595, *sb.* TREO, 123/3939, wood, shaft. TREN, 102/3230, *pl.*
- TRECHOUR, 102/3210, *sb.* traitor.
- TRENCHAUNT, 21/537, *adj.* cutting, sharp.
- TREPEDE, 8/241, *vb. pt. s.* stepped on.
- TREȚYS, 182/5883, *adj.* slender. See Note.
- TREU, 133/4393, *sb.* toll. "Treu. The toll or custom paid unto Lords, for salt, and other commodities, or merchandise, carried along by their dominions; and generally, any toll, tax, or imposition."—Cotgrave. See TROW.
- TRIST, 6/191, 1 *pr. s.* trust, rely on.
- TRISTOUR, 78/2373, *sb.* grief, sadness.
- TROME, 78/2372, *sb.* assembly, gathering, heap. A.S. *truma*.
- TROSSY, 130/4189, *vb.* TROSSYE, 58/1663, *imper. s.* TRUSSYE, 130/4193, *vb.* pack, tie. "Trousser. To tucke, packe, bind or girt in." Cotgrave.
- TROSSEDE, 13/4201, *pt. pl.*
- TROW, 44/1186, *sb.* wood.
- TROW, 60/1732, *sb.* toll, fine. See TREU.
- TRUFLE, 109/3459, *sb.* nonsense, folly.
- TRUPT, 64/1872, *interj.* pooh! See Note.
- TRUSSYAM, 126/4029, *vb.* get themselves ready, pack up. See TROSSY.
- TRUWAGE, 60/1731, *sb.* toll. "Truage, A toll, custom, tax, imposition." Cotgrave.
- TURDE, 87/2691, *pt. pl.* turned, from French *tour*; turn being from *tourner*. L. Lat. *tornare*.
- TWELMONTH, 91/2832, *sb.* twelve-months a year.
- TWELPE, 91/2843, *num. adj.* twelfth.
- TWEYRE, 10/311, *num.* of two.
- TWYE, 175/5645, *num.* two.
- TWYȚTE, 56/1596, *pt. pl.* drew hastily. A.S. *twiccan*.
- TYNT, 56/1596, *pp.* lost, destroyed. O.Icel. *týna*.
- TYȚD, 62/1817, *impers. pr. as fut.* it will betide, happen to.
- ȚAR, 2/51, *adv.* where.
- ȚARȚ, 76/2288, *prep.* through.
- ȚE, 181/5841, *vb.* ȚEO, 103/3251, thrive, prosper. A.S. *þeon*.
- ȚEARMES, 38/949, *sb. pl.* bowels. A.S. *þearm*.
- ȚEDE, 73/2207, *sb.* country. A.S. *þeod*.

- PENCHESOUN, 130/4168, *sb.* for *pe enchesoun*, the reason.
- PENGYNS, 155/4985, for *pe engyns*.
- PENNE, 34/803, *adv.* thence.
- PERSTE, 9/291, *vb. pt. s.* dared, ventured.
- "I ne perste do such a fol dede."
Sainte Margarete, ed. Cockayne, 304.
- PEYNT, 167/5395, *?* does it seem to.
- PEY, 18/483, *conj.* though, although.
- PILKE, 23/578, *pron.* that, such. PYLKE, 48/1301, *pl.*
- POLIE, 47/1275, *vb.* suffer, endure. A.S. *polian*.
- PONDER, 26/631, *sb.* thunder.
- POR, 21/544, *adv.* there.
- PORW, 35/843. PORWH, 34/829. POR, *prep.* through, by.
- POPRE, 113/3592, for *pe opre*, the rest, the others.
- PRASTE, 113/3606, *vb.* push on; 36/871, *pt. s.* pressed, pushed.
- PREF, 68/2017, *sb.* fortune, luck, thriving.
- PRETE, 43/1152, *vb.* threaten.
- PRIDDE, 49/1355, *num. adj.* third.
- BROW, 28/679, *sb.* time, moment.
- PUS, 27/660, *pron.* these.
- PYWYNG, 158/5094, *pr. p.* *?* threatening.
- UAKE, 72/2148. *?* awake.
- VCHONE, 102/3207, *pr.* each one, all.
- VNDERFONGE, 7/208, *vb.* undertake.
- VNDERNOME, 7/205, *pp.* abused; 100/3148, *pp.* undertaken; 161/5213, perceived.
- VNDERYTE, 81/2469, *pt. pl.* understood. A.S. *undergitan*.
- VNRIDE, 29/705, *adj.* violent, fierce. See OUNRIDE.
- VNWASTE, 46/1256, *adj.* vile, wretched, worthless. See UNWRAST in *Glossary to Havelock*, ed. Skeat.
- VSAUNCE, 73/2217, *sb.* custom, habit.
- VSAUNT, 104/3296, *adj.* accustomed.
- VAAT, 177/5696, *sb.* vat, vessel.
- VACCHE, 82/2517, *vb.* fetch, procure.
- VAILLE, 36/877, *vb.* avail, be of service to.
- VASSALAGE, 58/1671, *sb.* noble deed, becoming a knight.
- VASTE, 20/509, *adv.* fast by, close by; 83/2565, soundly, fast.
- VAUASOUR, 16/430, *sb.* vassal, an un-knighted person, common soldier.
- VERAMENT, 16/435, *adv.* truly, assuredly.
- VERDE, 102/3228, *impers. pt.* it fared, was.
- VET, 72/2183, *sb. pl.* feet.
- VETRES, 48/1313, *sb. pl.* fetters, chains.
- VEWE, 38/953, *adj.* few.
- Vlage, 34/804, *sb.* journey.
- VILENTYNE, 112/3555, *sb.* birds (wild), fowl. A corruption of *Volatile*, the usual M. E. name for birds in general, Lat. *volatilia*, neuter plural, used as a collective noun singular, much as we say *poultry*, *fowl*. It here = French *volatisses*, which itself is another corruption from the same source.
- VOLDE, 97/3028, *vb.* fold, clasp.
- VORES, 55/1565, *sb. pl.* furrows, vallies. A.S. *furh*.
- VOULE, 137/4427, *adj.* foul, hideous.
- VOYDEDE, 144/4627, *pp.* cleared, emptied. See Y-VEWDID.
- VYLAYNICHE, 165/5345, *adv.* insolently.
- VILENLY, 62/1825, outrageously, shamefully.
- VYLONYE, 75/2254, *sb.* harm, disgraceful treatment.
- VYNDE, 20/522, *vb.* find.
- VYUE, 43/1147, *num. adj.* five.
- WACCHE, 161/5185, *sb.* guard, garrison.
- WACE, 14/389, 2 *pt. s.* WAST, 15/421, *pt. s.* was.
- WALE, 80/2428, *sb.* whale's. See Note.
- WALWE, 84/2585, *vb.* WALWEDE, 77/2328, *pt. s.* rollabout, wallow, flounder. A.S. *wealwian*.
- WAN, 2/47, *adv.* when
- WAN, 20/513, 1 *pt. s.* won, gained.
- WANNYS, 47/1267, *adv.* whence.
- WANYE, 57/1645, *vb.* vanish, disappear.

WAR, 144/4635, *adj.* aware, told.
 WAR, 50/1381, *conj.* whether.
 WAR, 56/1592, *vb. imper.* beware.
 WAR-FOR, 10/505, *conj.* wherefore, for which.
 WARYBOUN, 42/1099, *sb.* reward.
 WAS, 60/1726, *pron.* whose.
 WATHER, 18/486, *conj.* whether.
 WAJES, 49/1343, *sb. pl.* waves.
 WEDEDE, 68/2007, *pt. s.* wedded.
 WEDES, 60/1751, *sb. pl.* clothes, dresses.
 WEL-A-FYN, 89/2752, *adv.* to good purpose, well.
 WELDE, 116/3716, *sb.* power, possession.
 WEM, 178/5725, *sb.* stain. A.S. *wamm*.
 WENDEST, 13/387; *WENIST, 13/387, 2 *pr. s.* thinkest, imaginest.
 WEORE, 5/157, *pt. pl.* WORE, 5/156, were.
 WEP, 153/4928, *pt. s.* wept.
 WEPNE, 6/171, *sb.* a weapon, arms.
 WERE, 35/845, *vb.* defend, protect. A.S. *werian*.
 WERCHE, 54/1545, *vb.* work, act.
 WERRE, 17/450, *sb.* war.
 WES, 45/1194, *pt. s.* was.
 WHERE, 92/2872, *sb.* doubt.
 WHILE, 84/2580, *adv.* once.
 WHYTE, 49/1367, *vb.* know, learn. A.S. *witan*.
 WIKKE, 36/889, *adj.* fierce, violent (men).
 WILLES, 7/221, *adv.* of one's own free will, willingly.
 WILY, 71/2138, *will* I.
 WISSE, 4/120, *adj.* certain. See Note.
 WIT, 84/2584, *sb.* senses.
 WITH-HALST, 174/5620, v. 2 *pr. s.* with-holdest.
 WITTES, 57/1649, *sb. pl.* thoughts, opinions.
 WIXE, 53/1485, *adj.* strong, fit for fighting. O.Icel. *vigr*, battle.
 WYȚE, 17/456, *adj.* active, strong.
 WYȚLICHE, 167/5384, *adv.* bravely, courageously.
 WO, 7/209, *adj.* grieved, vexed.

WOD, 24/591, *pt. s.* went, passed. A.S. *eode*.
 WOD, 31/728, *adj.* mad, furious.
 WOLD, 105/3324, *sb.* power, possession.
 WON, 48/1311, *sb.* dwelling, place.
 WON, 112/3560, *sb.* plenty. "Woone, or grete plente copia," &c.—Prompt. Parv. See *P. Plouman*, C. xxiii. 170.
 WOND, 36/892, *pt. s.* went, turned.
 WONDE, 19/501, *sb.* wound.
 WONDOWE, 49/1361, *sb.* window.
 WONE, 68/2017, *sb.* habit, practice.
 WONED, 78/2390, *pp.* accustomed.
 WORLDY, 161/5202, *adj.* earthly, on earth.
 WORSCHIP, 39/981, *sb.* honour, fame.
 WORST, 34/805, 2 *pr.* as *fut. s.* wilt be.
 WORȚ, 19/488, *pr.* as *fut. s.* will be.
 WOST, 70/2108, *pr.* 2 *s.* knowest.
 WOSTOU, 65/1905, wouldest thou.
 WOT, 26/638, 1 *pr. s.* know.
 WRAKE, 62/1815, *sb.* mischief, destruction.
 WRECHE, 130/4181, *sb.* vengeance.
 WRYTE, 61/1782, *pp.* written.
 WRYȚT, 61/1774, *sb.* writing, letter.
 WYCHE, 38/955, *pron.* which, whom.
 WYCKE, 146/4721, *adj.* hard, painful.
 WYKES, 112/3549, *sb. pl.* weeks. A.S. *wice*.
 WYKKE, 36/882, *adv.* fiercely, mightily.
 WYLDE, 160/5179, *vb.* wield.
 WYMEN, 86/2672, *sb. pl.* women.
 WYS, 118/3763, *adv.* to wys, for certain, of a certainty. See WISSE.
 WYT, 124/3956, *adj.* white.
 WYT, 159/5127, *imper. s.* blame, find fault, charge.
 WYTE, 163/5276, *vb.* know, find out. A.S. *witan*.
 WYȚHERWYNS, 28/672, *sb. pl.* antagonists, enemies. A.S. *wiȚerwinna*.
 WYȚY, 70/2096, *vb.* wife, marry.
 WYȚT, 15/415, *adj.* active, strong.
 WYȚT, 11/342, *sb.* man, person.
 WYȚȚE, 177/5710, *adv.* brave, valiant.

- Y-BATRID, 36/896, *pp.* inlaid.
 Y-BORE, 16/444, *pp.* born.
 Y-BULD, 48/1331, *pp.* built.
 YCH, 161/5191, *pr.* I.
 Y-CORE, 33/766, *pp.* chosen. "Icham coren king." *Guy of Warwike*, p. 428.
 Y-FERE, 11/345, *adv.* together.
 Y-FOLLED, 181/5829, *pp.* Y-FULLED, 181/5835, baptised. *See* Y-VOLLID.
 Y-FRACLED, 115/3659, *adj.* spotted, freckled.
 Y-FULD, 3/74, *pp.* filled.
 Y-GULD, 48/1330, *pp.* gilt.
 Y-HARNEYSSED, 115/3665, *pp.* adorned, ornamented.
 Y-HUDDE, 135/4346, *pp.* hidden, concealed.
 YKE, 130/4166, *adv.* also. A.S. *eac*.
 Y-KENED, 177/5724, *pp.* conceived, A.S. *cennan*.
 Y-LEPE, 144/4626, *pp.* thrown over, made to leap over the bridge.
 Y-LET, 130/4135, *pp.* stopped, prevented.
 Y-LIF, 77/2343, *vb. imper.* believe, trust.
 Y-LONG, 133/4291, *adv.* along of, in consequence of.
 Y-LOȝE, 20/511. ?
 Y-LYUEST, 128/4097, 2 *pr. s.* believest, trustest.
 Y-MACED, 105/3326, *pp.* amassed, collected.
 *Y-MET, 11/335, *pp.* dreamt.
 Y-METE, 70/2092, *pp.* measured.
 Y-MONE, 4/99, *adv.* together. A.S. *gemong*.
 Y-MUWED, 60/1738, *pp.* moulted, changed their plumage.
 Y-MYNT, 23/576, *pp.* meant, intended.
 YNDE, 92/2866, *sb.* end.
 YNEWE, 26/626, *adv.* anew, afresh.
 Y-NOME, 42/1105, *pp.* taken, captured. A.S. *niman*.
 YNOW, 40/1043, *adv.* enough. A.S. *genoh*.
 Y-Peynt, 29/701, *pp.* painted, ornamented: *wyth gold y-peynt* = gilt.
 Y-PILT, 10/316, *pp.* fixed, settled.
 Y-PONDRED, 48/1327, *pp.* strowed.
 Y-PYȝT, 48/1303, *pp.* placed, fixed.
 Y-RAD, 127/4083, *pp.* counselled, advised. A.S. *rædan*.
 Y-RAD, 179/5789, *pp.* read, repeated.
 Y-RAFT, 65/1934, *pp.* stolen, taken.
 YRE, 31/742, *sb.* iron.
 YRE, 114/3643, *sb.* rage, anger.
 Y-SAME, 44/1188, *adv.* together.
 Y-SETE, 2/48, *pp.* set, inclined.
 Y-SHRID, 66/1940, *pp.* clothed, dressed. A.S. *scrȝdan*.
 Y-SLENTE, 105/3313, *pp.* flung, along.
 Y-SOWE, 77/2328, *pp.* exhausted, fainting. A.S. *swogan* (?)
 Y-SPERDE, 113/3596, *pp.* bolted, barred.
 YSSE, 4/125, *pr. s.* is, exists.
 Y-STABLYD, 117/3753, *pp.* stabled, put in the stable.
 Y-STOKEN, 161/5190, *pp.* stopped, blocked.
 Y-STRAWED, 15/421, *pp.* strewn, covered.
 Y-TRENT, 182/5881, *pp.* plaited, curled.
 YUEL, 7/212, *adj.* ill, evil, bad. YULE, 15/417, *adv.*
 Y-UASTE, 91/2822, *pp.* fasted.
 Y-VERE, 47/1269, *adv.* together.
 Y-VEWDID, 99/3131, *pp.* cleared, emptied. *See* Note.
 Y-YOLDE, 180/5796, *pp.* closed, shut.
 Y-VOLLID, 22/548, *pp.* baptised. A.S. *fulwian*.
 Y-WARESCHID, 32/758, *pp.* healed, cured.
 Y-WORȝ, 93/2908, *pt. s.* was, became.
 Y-WORȝE, 148/4761, *pr. as fut. s.* will be.
 Y-WREȝED, 126/4045, *pp.* angered, enraged.
 Y-WYS, 5/139, *adv.* certainly, in truth. A.S. *gewiss*.
 Y-ȝETE, 2/49, *pp.* eaten, finished his meal.
 ȝAF, 46/1243, *pt. s.* gave. A.S. *ȝifan*.
 ȝARE, 130/4193, *adj.* ready, prepared.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>3EARE, 161/5186, eager; 97/3059, <i>adv.</i></p> <p>3EALWE, 182/5881, <i>adj.</i> yellow, fair.</p> <p>3EATE, 59/172, <i>sb.</i> 3ETE, 71/2141, passage, entrance.</p> <p>3EDE, 74/2240, <i>pt. s.</i> 3EODE, 118/3770, <i>pt. pl.</i> 3UTE, 31/729, went, moved. A.S. <i>code.</i></p> <p>3ELDE, 21/533, <i>vb.</i> yield, surrender.</p> <p>3ULDE, 38/963, <i>pt. pl.</i></p> <p>3ERNE, 19/505, <i>adv.</i> 3URNE, 81/2478, hastily, speedily, eagerly.</p> | <p>3EUE, 17/462, 1 <i>pr. s.</i> as <i>fut.</i> shall give. A.S. <i>gifan.</i></p> <p>3YUE, 4/191, 1 <i>pr. s.</i> give, yield.</p> <p>3IFþ, 52/1450, <i>pr. s.</i> assures, tells.</p> <p>3ILPE, 29/694, <i>vb.</i> boast, speak loudly of. A.S. <i>gelpān, gylpān.</i></p> <p>3OLDE, 115/3684, <i>pp.</i> paid back, requited.</p> <p>3OND, 166/5367, <i>adj.</i> yonder.</p> <p>3OT, 116/3690, <i>pt. s.</i> went, cut. A.S. <i>code, ivit.</i></p> <p>3UTE, 32/750, <i>adv.</i> yet.</p> |
|--|--|

CORRECTION.

In Glossary, for GRILLE, 73/2195, read AGRILLE, and transfer to A.

Bungay :

CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS,

NOTES AND ADDITIONS

TC

SIR FERUMBRAS

1. 622. "anoneward" should be "anoneward."
"anowarde þe helm . . . þen oþer he smot."—*R. of Gloucester*, p. 186.
1. 2255. "nytyte," read "nycyte."
1. 4533. "Bote" should, perhaps, be omitted, as having been inserted by attraction from the preceding line. This will much improve the metre of the line.

IN THE NOTES.

1. 209, for "thys endys myȝth," read "thys endys nyȝth."
1. 521. "by þis liȝte." Perhaps this is merely an asseveration.
1. 971. An acre was a definite quantity of land, originally as much as a yoke of oxen could plough in a day, afterwards limited by statutes passed in the 31st years of Edw. III., 5th of Edw. I. and 24th of Henry VIII. c. iv., to a piece 40 poles long by 4 broad, or its equivalent. An "acre's length" is therefore 40 poles or 220 yards. The expression occurs in Wyntoun's *Chronicle*, VII. iv. 132: "large thre akyre leynth of land," and again l. 162, and VIII. iv. 159.
1. 996. The note is all wrong; "on his yre," is simply = in his rage. Compare l. 3703.
1. 1327. "maselyne;" this was a kind of mixed metal (? bronze). Similarly we have *maslin* and *meslin* = mixed corn. See *Mestlyone* in Prompt. and Way's note, and *Sir Thopas*, Cant. Tales, B. 2042, and Prof. Skeat's note in the Glossary.
1. 1872. "truþt." Compare "Ptroþ, skornefulle word, or truþ, *infra*. *Vath*." Prompt. Parv., and Mr. Way's note.
1. 2227, dele the note; *asay* not *alay* was found to be the true reading.
1. 2706. "pousant," read "þousant."
1. 3037. "be-vapid."

Compare: "And he alone *a-whaped* and a-mate,
Comfortles of any creature."

Lydgate, *Chron. of Troy*, Bk. I. ch. 1.

and "Gruffe on the ground in place desolate,
Sole by himself *a-whaped* and a-mate."

Chaucer, *Complaint of Lover's Life*, v. 168.

and Gower: "So *be-whapped* and assoted
Of dronken men."—*C. A.* iii. 4.

The meaning is evidently "thoroughly beaten, disheartened." Mr. H. H. Gibbs suggests a comparison with Shakspeare—*Merry Wives*, I. i. 183, and perhaps also with the phrase "*wapper'd* widow" in *Timon*, IV. iii. 38.

IN THE GLOSSARY.

"Anoneward" should be "anoueward." A similar correction should be made under AUNDWARD.

"Knal," dele the query. Compare *Prompt. Parv.*: "Knokkyn (knollyn). *Pulso*."

"for-werieþ," read "for-werneþ."

"fuure," read "fourē."

"Luste," 64/1900, *sb.* is out of place. It means the edge or lap of the ear. "*Le mol de l'oreille*, the lug or list of th' eare."—Cotgrave. Compare Chaucer's *Wife's Preamble*, l. 634 :

"By god, he smote me onys on the lust."

"nyȝt," read "nyst."

"onneþe," read "ounceþe."

"Reynours," read "reyuours."

"Schay," read "schar."

"Shet," read "schet."

"slay and slone," transpose.

"wast," 15/421, read "wace."

"y-pondred," read "y-poudred."

"ȝute," read "ȝude."

The following references should be corrected, as shown :

Afterwart	for	6/63	read	6/163
Briggewardle	„	112/35	„	112/3559
Drecchyngo	„	15/377	„	19/493
Driȝte	„	2/49	„	3/86
Duden	„	3163	„	3/63
Gome	„	60/1741	„	60/1745
Gras	„	71/2035	„	71/2135
Sleep	„	66/1966	„	66/1961
Spelie	„	13/342	„	17/458
Tast	„	59/1700	„	59/1711
Twelþe	„	91/2843	„	91/2846
War-for	„	10/505	„	10/305
Wedede	„	68/2007	„	68/2012
Won	„	112/3560	„	112/3571
ȝcate	„	59/172	„	59/1720
ȝyue	„	4/191	„	4/101

mad

Pub

"Le
Wife

T

To alle our psonne appoynte for psonne or psonne
 therto after a psonne or psonne beno psonne in gmeratys
 But a sett a gmeratys in alle in mynde of that outys
 that sett be gmeratys to that as a gmeratys psonne
 alle that thys to dore, by a gmeratys of psonne in alle
 By a lareys psonne or a psonne that thys the psonne outys
 be made in the mynde of the after a gmeratys to psonne
 that alle that at that psonne be made to gmeratys
 for a psonne psonne of psonne be made to psonne
 thys psonne and thys psonne in psonne
 So be the psonne and a gmeratys be made out of lande
 a gmeratys psonne a gmeratys psonne in psonne

FROM ADDITIONAL M.S. 31,042 IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM, LEAF 66.

[illegible]

And if you will neglect to improve
yourself by hanging on or by means

Go with the gangster or my men

H. o. dyssio e ho chingyo upoo- + Bom fongpo Salabam

By force of arms & by might of doo

*Do not do p oad time than of too - While one p morns At days
With ye Sadde Ladye A little space*

"THE SEGE OFF MELAYNE"

ADDITIONAL M.S. 91,042, BRITISH MUSEUM, LEAF 66, BACK.

ma

Pu

"L

Wi

"The Sege off Melayne,"
"The Romance of Duke Rowland and Sir
Otnell of Spayne,"

AND A FRAGMENT OF

"The Song of Roland."

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxxv.

1880.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART II.

“The Sege off Melayne”

AND

“The Romance of Duke Rotoland and Sir
Otuell of Spayne,”

NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME PRINTED FROM THE UNIQUE
MS. OF R. THORNTON, IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,
MS. ADDIT. 31,042,

TOGETHER WITH A FRAGMENT OF

“The Song of Roland,”

FROM THE UNIQUE MS. LANED. 383.

EDITED BY

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF “GENTA ROMANORUM,” “SIR PERUKERAS,” ETC.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCLXXX.

Extra Series,
XXXV.

- BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION 	vii
"THE SEGE OFF MELAYNE" 	1
"THE ROMANCE OF DUKE ROWLAND AND OTUELL"	53
FRAGMENT OF "THE SONG OF ROLAND" 	105
NOTES TO "THE SEGE OFF MELAYNE" 	137
NOTES TO "ROWLAND AND OTTUELL" 	147
NOTES TO "THE SONG OF ROLAND"	160
GLOSSARIAL INDEX 	167

INTRODUCTION.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>§ 1. <i>Discovery of the New MS.</i>, p. vii.
 § 2. <i>Description of the Addit. MS.</i> 81,042, p. viii.
 § 3. <i>The Siege of Melayne, source, &c.</i>, of, p. ix.
 § 4. <i>Roland and Otuel, source, &c.</i>, of, p. x.
 § 5. <i>Date and Dialect of the Siege of Melayne and Roland and Otuel</i>, p. xii.
 § 6. <i>Probable date of the events narrated</i>, p. xliii.
 § 7. <i>The name "Otuel,"</i> p. xiv.
 § 8. <i>Metre and rimes of the Siege of Melayne and Roland and Otuel</i>, p. xv.
 § 9. <i>Corrections suggested in Siege of Melayne and Roland and Otuel</i>, p. xvi.
 § 10. <i>On the apparent use of singulars for plurals in Roland and Otuel</i>, p. xvii.
 § 11. <i>The Song of Roland, its source, &c.</i>, p. xviii.</p> | <p>§ 12. <i>Was the Chanson de Roland sung at the battle of Hastings?</i> p. xix.
 § 13. <i>MSS. of the French poem</i>, p. xx.
 § 14. <i>The Pseudo-Turpin's Life of Charles the Great</i>, p. xxi.
 § 15. <i>Works consulted and referred to</i>, p. xxi.
 § 16. <i>Description of MS. Lansdowne</i>, 388, p. xxii.
 § 17. <i>Metre of the Song of Roland</i>, p. xxii.
 § 18. <i>Rimes of the Song of Roland</i>, p. xxiii.
 § 19. <i>Corrections suggested in the Song of Roland</i>, p. xxiv.
 § 20. <i>Dialect grammatical peculiarities, and metre of the poem</i>, p. xxv.
 § 21. <i>Date of the poem</i>, p. xxx.
 <i>Appendix.—Turpin's account of the death of Roland</i>, p. xxxii.
 <i>Sketches of the stories</i>, p. xxxiv.</p> |
|--|--|

§ 1. In my introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xiii., I remarked on the singular fact that all the English Charlemagne Romances known to be in existence at that time were unique. As stated in the additional note, p. xxxi, after my introduction had been printed, a paper MS. of the early part of the 15th century was purchased for the British Museum, containing amongst many other pieces two Charlemagne Romances, which are now here printed for the first time, and which, strange to say, may also be considered unique.

The first poem, the *Siege of Melayne*, is absolutely unique, while the second, *Roland and Otuel*, although a translation of the same French original as the *Sir Otuel* of the Auchinleck MS., as little agrees with it as *Sir Ferumbras* agrees with the *Swordone of Babyloyn*, and is also practically an unique poem.

§ 2. The Addit. MS. 31,042 is a quarto volume, in paper, containing 179 folios, in addition to four leaves¹ of parchment, part of the original binding. It is marked, "Poems and Romances collected by R. Thornton, 15th century," and was purchased July 12th, 1879, by the Museum, from Mr. J. Pearson, to whom it had been sent over for sale from America. Of its previous history nothing is known. That it originally belonged to Robert Thornton, the compiler of the celebrated Thornton MS., is evident from his signature, which appears at the end of two of the poems. In the first case the signature has been partially erased, and in the second a later hand has written another name over it.

The MS. contains a large number of English poems, together with a few short Latin prayers, &c. Some of the pieces are in Thornton's own handwriting, as for example the *Segge of Jerusalem*, fol. 50—66, but the *Sege of Melayne* and *Roland and Otuel* are believed to be in a different hand. To enable the reader to judge for himself on this point, an autotype of a half page of Thornton's writing, signed by him, is given, and also an autotype of the back of the same leaf, showing the beginning of the *Sege of Melayne*.

The first piece in the volume is a long religious poem, imperfect at beginning, divided into two parts, part I. ending on lf. 32, bk. and pt. II. on lf. 50. Of the first part 19 sections remain, headed, "Why that oure lady was spowsed;" "Of the Concepcyon of Iohn þe Baptiste;" "þe Concepcyon of Saynt Johñ of Baptiste;" "How Ihesus was offrede to the temple;" "How the angel warnned þe thre kynges to ga noghte by heraude," &c. At the end of the second part, lf. 50, is the colophon, "Explicit Passio Domini nostri Ihesu Christi." On the same leaf follows the "Segge of Ierusalem off Tytus & Vespasyane," which ends on lf. 66. The *Sege of Melayne* begins on lf. 66, bk., and ends imperfectly on leaf 79, bk., after which

¹ These four leaves, of which there are two at the beginning and two at the end, are now included in the numbering of the folios. This was not so when the copy from which our text is printed was made, and it will consequently be found that all the references to the folios in the sidenotes in the present volume, so far as the *Sege off Melayne* and *Roland and Otuel* are concerned, are 2 short of the true number. Thus, according to our text, the *Sege of Melayne* begins on lf. 64, bk., whereas, according to the new numbering of the folios, it should be 66, bk.

come a Latin prayer and hymn. On lf. 82 follows "þe Romance of Duke Rowlande," and on lf. 94, "Passionis Christi Cantus," followed on lf. 96 by memorial verses on the kings of England, beginning with "Willelmus Conquestor Dux Normannorum," and ending imperfectly in the middle of a verse on Edward I.

On lf. 97 is a morality without title, beginning, "Be noghte hasty nore so daynly vengeable," and on lf. 98 an alliterative poem, also without a title, beginning, "On a morwenynge of Maye." On lf. 102 follows a prayer in verse, most of the verses beginning with a Latin line; on lf. 103 it is called a "psalme;" "Take this psalme," &c.; and on lf. 104 begins a morality, entitled *Moralisacio Sacerdotis tocius apparatus in missa*, to which the "psalme" forms a kind of introduction. At the end the morality is called a "latill tretise." Leaf 110, bk. contains three verses of "A Carolle for Crystmasse: The Rose of Ryse." Next in order is lf. 111 a religious poem, imperfect and without title, followed, on lf. 120, by "a louely Song of Wysdoma." Two songs come next, "A Song How þat Mercy Passeth Rightwisnes," lf. 122, bk., and "A Songe How þat Mercy passeth alle thyng," lf. 123, bk. On lf. 125 begins a long poem, without title, but called in the colophon, lf. 163, "The Romance of kyng Richard þe Conquerere." Following this comes "the Romance of the childhode of Ihesu Criste, þat clerkys callys Ipokrepha," and on lf. 169 an alliterative poem, entitled "The parlement of the thre Ages." The last piece in the volume is "A god Schorte refreyte By-twene Wynnere and Wastoure," an alliterative poem, which ends imperfectly on lf. 181, bk.

§ 3. The *Sege of Melayne* is evidently a translation of a French poem, but no copy of the original is known to exist, nor is there in the other romances even the slightest reference to the events here narrated. The author (or at least the translator) several times refers to "the buke," the "Cronekill" or the "Cronecle," as his authority (see ll. 7, 9, 502 and 522), either meaning some legendary history of Charlemagne, or else hoping by so doing to strengthen the connection of his poem with the other romances. In the hope of gaining some clue to the origin of the poem, or at least discovering some connection between it and the other Carlovingian romances, I con-

sulted M. Gaston Paris, whose elaborate *Histoire Poétique* has practically exhausted the subject. M. Paris very kindly read through the proofs, and informed me that it was the first time he had ever heard of the siege of Milan, and assured me that nothing at all resembling it exists in French. In his opinion, the romance here printed forms a kind of introduction to *Otuel*, in the same way as the *Destruction of Rome* is introductory to *Fierabras*.¹ M. Paris is inclined to think that the *Sege of Melayne* was originally written in Anglo-Norman French, basing this opinion on the popularity of *Otuel* in England. This view, that the *Sege of Melayne* was intended to form an introduction to *Otuel*, is supported by the facts that the scene of action of each poem is laid in Italy, and that in each the same name, Garsie, is given to the Soudan. The connection would, very probably, have been shown much more clearly had not the end of the poem been unluckily lost.

Although we cannot class the *Sege of Melayne* or *Roland and Otuel* amongst first-class romances, and although the absurdness of some of the episodes remind us strongly of *Sir Thopas*, and amply justify Chaucer's ridicule, still neither of the poems can be set down as bad. The lines as a rule run well, the rimes are very correct, and the interest is very fairly kept up.

The episode of the angel delivering the sword to Charles, and enjoining on him the task of avenging the sufferings of his Christian subjects is probably founded on 2 Maccabees xv. 15, 16.

§ 4. The second poem here printed is an English version of the French romance of "Otinél," edited in 1859 for the series of *Les Anciens Poètes de la France*, by MM. Guessard and Michelant, from the same MS. in the Vatican Library, which contains the romance of *Fierabras*. Only one other MS. of the poem is known to be in existence, and is preserved in the library of Sir T. Phillipps, No. 8345. These two versions differ in several minor points, one for instance as to the time of year when Otuel arrives on his message to Charles. The Vatican MS. says, l. 21 :

"Ce fu a Pasques, si comme oi avon,
Tint sa cour kalles à Paris, sa meson."

¹ See Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii.

while the Middlehill MS. has,

"Seignors, ço fu *le jor dunt li Innocent sunt* ;
A Paris est, en France, Charles de Cleremunt,
U tint sa curt pleners."

That the latter is correct is evident from the English version ; see l. 686 below. The Auchinleck *Otuel* was clearly translated from a French MS. of this type, and it is most probable that the version here printed was also taken from a similar MS.

Warton, in his *History of English Poetry*, I. 80, ed. 1840, says that in the library of Peterborough Abbey was a volume with the title *Gesta Otuelis*, which may possibly have been a version of our poem.¹

Warton also mentions that amongst the Sagas in the royal library at Stockholm is one with the title : "Karlagnus-Saga ok Kappa Hans," containing the following : (1) Of Charlemagne's birth and coronation ; and the combat of Carvetus king of Babylon with Addegir the Dane. (2) Of Aglandus king of Africa, and of his son Jatmund, and their wars in Spain with Charlemagne. (3) Of Roland, and his combat with Villaline king of Spain. (4) *Of Ottuel's conversion to Christianity*, and his marriage with Charlemagne's daughter. (5) Of Hugh king of Constantinople, and the memorable exploits of his champions. (6) Of the wars of Ferracuta, king of Spain. (7) Of Charlemagne's achievements in Rouncevalles, and of his death.²

M. Gaston Paris recognizes in *Otuel* a portion of a cyclic poem to which he gives the title of "Charlemagne and Roland." This cyclic poem he divides into four parts : (1) the journey of Charlemagne to the Holy Land, according to the Latin legend ; (2) the beginning of the wars in Spain, according to the early chapters of Turpin's Chronicle, and including the episode of the duel between Roland and Ferragus ; (3) *Otuel*, according to the Auchinleck version as continued in Mr. Fillingham's MS. ;³ (4) the conclusion of Turpin's

¹ The same library also possessed a MS. with the title *Bellum contra Runcivallum*. Gunton's *Peterborough*, p. 108.

² *Hist. English Poetry*, I. xlvi, ed. 1840.

³ I have been entirely unsuccessful in my efforts to ascertain the whereabouts of this MS., of which we know nothing beyond what Ellis tells us in his *Metrical Romances*, II. 813 ; that it is in 6-lined stanzas, and that its style

Chronicle.¹ Of these we have the first two and part of the third. The first and second together make up the poem in the Auchinleck MS. analyzed by Ellis under the title of *Roland and Ferragus*, and printed for the Abbotsford Club, in 1836, under the title of *Rouland and Vernagu*. The poem here printed and the Auchinleck *Otuel* represent the first half of part 3; the second half, as already said, being now unfortunately lost sight of. No English poem corresponding to part 4 is known to exist except the fragmentary *Song of Roland*.

The connection between the so-called *Rouland and Vernagu*—an unfortunate misnomer, by the way, inasmuch as it applies really only to a single episode in the poem—and *Otuel* is clearly shown by the concluding lines of the former :

“ And al the folk of the lond,
For onour of roulond,
Thonked god old & 3ong :
& jede a procesioun,
With croice & gomfaynoun,
& salue miri song,
Bothe widowe & wiif in place,
Thus thonked godes grace
Alle tho that speke with tong,
To *Otuel* also jern,
That was a sarrazin stern,
Ful sone this word sprong.”

The *Sege off Melayne* which also forms a kind of introduction to *Otuel*, must be looked upon as an after-thought of the author, and not as one of the original parts of this cyclic poem. It comes in, as a sort of interlude between *Roland and Vernagu* and *Otuel*.

§ 5. That the *Sege off Melayne* and *Roland and Otuel* were originally written in a northern dialect, and that the copies which have come down to us were made by a southern scribe, is evident,

“is much more languid and feeble [than that of the Auchinleck MS.], resembling pretty nearly the diction of [*Roland and Ferragus*]. It has, however, the merit of completing the story, and of furnishing a paraphrase of Turpin's Chronicle, from the period of the death of Ferragus to the battle of Roncesvalles.” Ellis gives an analysis of a portion of the poem, beginning at the point where *Otuel* leaves off. The romance describes the victory of Charles over Ibrahim king of Seville, the treachery of Ganelon, the battle of Roncesvaux with the death of Roland, the subsequent defeat of the Saracens by Charles, and the punishment of the traitor Ganelon. The poem must have treated the subjects very slightly, as altogether it extended to only 1100 lines.

¹ *Histoire Poétique*, p. 156.

not only from the rimes, but also from the large number of northern words and forms still to be found in them. Thus we have such distinctively northern words as *mase, tase, tane, bus, thethyn, thusgates, imelle, nefe, nife, thire, till, slade, slak, whills, childire, at, that, of, to*, as well as northern imperatives in *slees, assembles, &c.*, and participles in *sittande, doande, rynnande, lukande, &c.* The 3rd pl. of verbs generally ends in *es*, but very frequently the form has been altered by the scribe. The similarity between the *Sege off Melayne* and *Sir Perceval*, both in the language and style generally, and especially in the manner in which the text has been altered by the scribe, is remarkable. In both we find him at times altering half a stanza, and at other times leaving whole stanzas untouched.¹ So great is the similarity, that, coupling with it the fact of both MSS. having been compiled for Robert Thornton, I am inclined to believe that the two poems here printed are by the same hand as *Sir Perceval*.

As to the dates of these two poems it is impossible to decide with any degree of certainty. The loss of the final *e* does not help us. It had long ceased to be of any value either as a number or a case ending in northern and even in some midland dialects, and we cannot therefore base any theory on its omission. The copies which we have, were, in all probability, written about 1430—40, that is to say about the same time as the Thornton MS., but the poems themselves I believe to have been written in the end of the previous century.

§ 6. If we were to assume that the incidents related in the *Sege of Melayne* had any foundation in fact, and that the events were correctly described, we must fix on the years 776 or 777 as the time when they took place. This is clear from the fact that Richard of Normandy, who plays an important part in *Sir Ferumbras*, is killed in it (see l. 329). The date of the latter romance we have already seen is fixed at A.D. 775,² while the treachery of Ganelon and the death of Roland took place in 778. It is true that from l. 138, compared with the French original, l. 92 (see note to l. 137), that the

¹ Compare stanzas 50, 58, 62, 63 of *Perceval* with stanzas 45, 46, 81 and 89 of *Melayne*.

² See Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xvi.

events narrated are supposed to take place nine months after the destruction of Rome, which in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2832, is said to have occurred "twelmonth and more apaste," i. e. in 773 or 774.

To *Roland and Otuel*, on the other hand, it is not so easy to assign any certain date. The names of the *douzeperes* do not help us.

According to the *Chanson de Roland*, Charles passed "set anz tuz plains" in Spain, fighting against the Saracens, while in *Gui de Bourgogne* this period is extended to "xxvii. anz tous plains accomplis et passez."¹

The Vatican MS. of our poem opens by saying that Otuel arrived at Easter-tide at Paris, where Charles was holding his court, but curiously enough it directly afterwards states that the French delayed their expedition against the Soudan during December, January, February, and March, and make their start on the 1st April.²

It is evident, therefore, that our author supposes the French king to have returned to Paris after the capture of Pampeluna.³ This idea of a temporary return to France does not occur in any other of the romances, and we can only explain it by supposing that the author of *Roland and Otuel*, while wishing to associate his poem with those already well-known romances connected with the conquest of Spain, found the ground so fully occupied that he was obliged to shift the scene of his poem elsewhere. But, while doing so, in order to preserve the connection, he supposes Charles to have returned to Paris, temporarily at least. At the same time, with a view of strengthening the connection further, he has introduced into his poem characters already familiar to us, and represents Otuel himself as the nephew of Ferragus, whose duel with Roland is told in *Roland and Vernagu*. Besides this he has given a few slight references to events already past, as in ll. 137-8; see also the French version as quoted in note to l. 798.

§ 7. The name Otuel appears to be simply a diminutive of Otes, in which form it occurs twice in our poem, see ll. 67 and 1127, in the first of which instances it seems to have confused the translator. The Middlehill MS. of the French poem reads plainly "Otuel,"

¹ See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2832.

² The Middlehill MS. corrects the blunder; see note to l. 686.

³ See l. 798.

while the Vatican MS. has "Otinel," which is the form adopted by the French editors. The Auchinleck MS. reads throughout "Otuwel," so that there can be little doubt as to the form which the name took in England. MM. Guessard and Michelant in their Introduction to "Otinel," p. viii, state that they have in English charters of the 13th century come across such names as "Otuel de Bovill," "Otewel de Needham," as well as "Odenell de Unframoill," "Odinellus," "Otynellis," "Otenellus," &c.

§ 8. The *Sege off Melayne* is written in 12-lined stanzas, the rimes of which run as follows:—*aab, ccb, ddb, eeb*. Every third line contains only three feet, the others four each.

Roland and Otuel is also written in 12-lined stanzas, but the scheme of the rimes is rather different, running thus:—*aab, aab, ccb, ccb*. The scheme, however, occasionally breaks down; see, for instance, sts. 59, 83, 125 and 126.

Allowing for the wholesale change of the northern *a* to the southern *o* which the scribe has made in both poems, and a further frequent use of *o* for *u* in *Roland and Otuel*, the rimes are, as a rule, very correct.

The scribe has not been at all consistent in his substitution of southern for northern forms. Thus, for instance, in the *Sege off Melayne*, st. 61, p. 24, we have the original forms *taa, gaa, slaa, pay*, while in the very next stanza we find *soo, foo, goo, woo*. Sometimes, as in st. 81, he alters half a stanza; see also *Roland and Otuel*, sts. 24, 82, 105, 129, &c.¹

Assonances occasionally occur; thus, we find such rimes as, *suerde—erthe*, M. 118, 1087; *went—blenke*, M. 570; *chide—smyte*, O. 198; *avenante—semblande*, O. 790; *fame—tane*, O. 967; *dame—elane*, O. 971; *come—tone* (for *came—tane*), O. 1423. Frequently the vowels in the riming syllables are not alike; as in *frusche—dosche*, M. 470; *Sarazene—pyme*, M. 605 (cf. l. 694); *stirrt—herтт*, M. 1027; *pan—men*, M. 1597; *nyghte—streghte*, M. 1185; *aboffe—luffe*, M. 1384; *Roland—fende*, O. 1015; *hade—nede*, O. 909; *grenne—rynn*, O. 1423; *rynn—wonn*, O. 801; *childe—helde*, O. 486, &c.

Were (pt. t.) generally rimes with *-are*, but occasionally with *-ere*

¹ The same thing occurs in the Thornton Romances throughout.

and *-erre*. Probably it was originally *ware*, see O. 1468. *Were* (war) rimes with *there* in M. 527.

Slayne rimes with *tane* in M. 283 and 340 and O. 1531, and with *-ayne* in M. 355 and 538.

Dy and *dye* were pronounced *dee*; see M. 368, 489, 1155, 1194, 1355, and 1439.

Dry rimes with *I* in M. 755, but was evidently pronounced *dree* in M. 1485, where the scribe has added *-ea*.

Heghe rimes with *-ee* in M. 360, 404, 1012, and 1575, and similarly *eghe* in M. 319. Compare *ne* in M. 1592.

Was rimes with *gase* in M. 1599, with *chase* in M. 1146, *place* in M. 844, O. 314, 439, &c.

Paresche, *Paresshe*, *Pariche* or *Pareyche* has either been altered by the scribe, or was pronounced *Paris*, for we find it riming with *pryce* in M. 208 and O. 1467, with *Denys* in M. 505, and with *wyce* in O. 39 and 1579. Compare the rime *barres—fresche*, in M. 1159.

For *wite* we find the forms *weite* M. 120, *wiete* in M. 749, and *wytt* in M. 369. In the first and last cases it rimes with *-ete*.

Face and *hase* rime in O. 1072.

The rime *dryvede—hede* in M. 328 (compare O. 555 and 1201) ² is noticed in my note. But it is further interesting and important as bearing on the date of the composition of the poem. Although written *hede* the word was evidently pronounced *heued*, and is, in fact, so written in O. 544. I can find no later instance of the full form so pronounced than in *Pierce the Ploughman's Crede*, the date of which is 1394. In fact in the north the word had ceased to be a dissyllable 40 or 50 years before.

§ 9. The general correctness of the rimes enables us with some certainty to detect a few errors of the scribe. Thus, omitting those cases in which *a* has been altered to *o*, of which I have already spoken, we may safely say that in M. 421, 435, 455, and 457, the author of the poem originally wrote *bryn* or *hrinne* (compare O. 95); so in M. 576 the original word was no doubt *brynt* or *brent* (for the rime with *blenke* cf. l. 570).

Again, M. 1229 should doubtless read: "pat es with-In alle heythynesse" (for the rime cf. ll. 142 and 1171).

In M. 985-6, the author probably wrote *fule*—*spuile*, and in M. 378 *nerre* is plainly a mistake for *nee* (cf. ll. 449 and 486).

Drawen in M. 711 is no doubt a mistake for *drayne*¹ (cf. *Sir Degrevant*, l. 1614), and for *tythinges* in M. 773 we must read *tythinge*.

In M. 408 and O. 1155, *lawe* is a mistake for *laye* (cf. O. 219).

In *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1515, we should read *clene* for *clere*; in st. 102, *stane*, *euerichane* and *tane* for *tone*, *stone* and *euerichone* to rime with *Browan*. In M. 500 for *steryn* we should perhaps read *sterne*.

Drew in O. 471 should probably be *droughe* or *droug*.

In O. 455 *ryde* is probably a mistake for *ryue* or *ryfe* (cf. ll. 905, 1361 and 1388).

On the rimes in O. 567, 570-3-6, I have spoken in my note to l. 570.

Bristes in O. 666 is evidently wrong, but I don't see how to correct it.

In O. ll. 1252-3 the author probably wrote *elde* and *welde*.

In O. 1034 *brightes* should undoubtedly be *brighte*: on the word *knyghtis* in the preceding line, and the rime, see next section.

In st. 132, l. 1581 does not rime: I would suggest that this and the preceding line should read:

“Home on paire waye to Pariche,
Full wightly þan þay wente.”

§ 10. There is one most remarkable point in *Roland and Otuel* for which it is difficult to account. If we look at ll. 628, 728, 1028, 1033,² 1383, 1386, 1430, and 1491,³ we find plural forms in *-s* riming with words ending in *-e*. Whether the *-s* is an addition of the copier it is impossible to say. The author, if the forms are his, may not have intended the *-s* to be sounded, though this is at least improbable. More probably the *-s* is an addition of the copier, and the author in each case used the singular, treating the words as nouns of multitude after the analogy of *horse*, &c. It will be noticed that

¹ See a similar case in *Sir Percival* 800, where *drawene* rimes with *slayne* and *agayne*, and again in *Sir Degrevant*, 143.

² For the rime with *brightes* see above.

³ In this case I have wrongly altered the word to *Sqyere*.

with the exception of ll. 1383 and 1386, the words are in every case joined to a number: "thies *seuen hundrethe knyghtis*," "*seuen hundrethe bolde Bacheleres*," &c. The modern use of foot, pound, ton, score, &c., follows the O. English use, and in the present case the author seems to have extended the rule that nouns of weight, measure, &c., did not take a plural form. Compare "an hundred pund," Havelok, 163; "nif hondred pond of gold," Ayenbite, 190; "tene thowsand pounde," Eglamour, 295; "an hundurd pownd or two," *ibid.* 173, &c. The two cases in which no numbers occur, ll. 1383-6, seem even to strengthen this conjecture, for *stede* and *wede* are good plural forms. Compare *Sir Perceval*, l. 1252: "blody are his *wede*." *Knyghte*, too, would be a true plural.

Apparently, therefore, there can be little doubt that our author intended *bachelere*, *knyghte*, *stede*, *wede*, &c., to represent plurals.

§ 11. The third poem in the present volume is a fragment of the only known English version of the celebrated *Chanson de Roland*, the story of the death of the mighty Christian warrior which was translated into perhaps more European languages than any other similar poem,¹ and whose name has been immortalized by Ariosto and Boiardo. The *Chanson de Roland* is in reality the culminating point of a cycle of romances, of which there still survive a large number in French, but of which only a few exist in English.

It is a singular fact that, notwithstanding its exceeding popularity as evidenced by the numerous versions in other languages, there should be so few MSS. of the original French poem, and that it should have remained so long unknown and in MS. Warton evidently was ignorant of its existence. The first to draw attention to the poem was Tyrwhitt in his note to Chaucer, *Tale of Sir Thopas*, C. T. 13,741, where he suggests that probably the Oxford MS. was an older copy of that referred to by Ducange under the title of *Le Roman de Roncevaux*.

The French poem contains nearly 6000, and the fragment here printed 1049 lines. The fragment is now for the first time given in its entirety, but extracts from it with a short description of the poem

¹ See the numerous versions printed in M. Michel's edition, pp. 225—310, and M. Gaston Paris' exhaustive *Histoire Poétique*.

were contributed by the late Mr. T. Wright to M. Michel's edition of the *Chanson*.¹

M. Gaston Paris came to the conclusion from these extracts that the loss of the greater portion of the poem was not a matter greatly to be regretted, and it must be admitted that the principal merit of the piece as it has come down to us lies in its shortness. As I give a succinct sketch of the whole story, as told in the French original,² I will not here refer to it further.

§ 12. To us Englishmen the most interesting point about the *Chanson de Roland* is that it is believed by some to have been the war-chant sung by the Norman Taillefer in the battle of Hastings.³ On this point the authorities are pretty evenly divided. William of Malmesbury in his account of the battle says: "*Tunc cantilena Rollandi inchoata, ut Martium viri exemplum pugnatueros accenderet, inclamatoque Dei auxilio, prætium confectum, bellatumque acriter.*"

Wace in the *Roman de Rollo* is more precise :

Hu

" Taillefer qui moult bien chantoit,
Sus un cheval qui tost alloit,
Devant eus alloit chantant
De l'Allemagne, et de Rollant,
Et d'Olivier, et de Vassaux,
Qui morurent en Rainschevaux."

Modern authorities, on the other hand, incline to the opinion that the war-chant referred to was not that known to us as the *Chanson de Roland*, but one composed by Rollo, first duke of Normandy. In favour of this view M. Michel cites the following passage from MS. Harl. 116, fo. 142; written in the reign of Henry VI :

"In the 3ere of our lord god viij^e lx. xvj. And at that tyme Allurred being the king of Englonde a famouse knyght born in Denmarche, called *Rouland*, And he at that time beyng a paynem vncristend, with his host entred in to Fraunce, and conquered Roone, and al the grownde that now is called Normandie. And be exortaccio of Frankis the Archiebisshoppe of Rone, the said *Rouland* was

¹ Pp. 279—284.

² See p. xxxvi, below.

³ "A Norman called Talliefer spurred his horse in front, and began the song of the exploits of Charlemagne and Rolland, famous throughout Gaul. As he sung, he played with his sword, throwing it up with force in the air, and receiving it again in his right hand. The Normans joined in chorus, or criel, God be our help! God be our help!"—Thierry, *Hist. Conquest of Eng.* l. 295.

cristened and named Robert, and than Charles the kynge of Fraunce for to haue pease with him graunted hym for to wedde his doughter Gilla, and pesibley for to haue vn-to hym and his heires al the grounde of Normandye that he hadde wonne, and so named Normandie.

"This said Robert *Rouland*, Primus Dux, his Duchie of Normandie kepte .xxij. yere, and died in the cristen faith."¹

The late Mr. T. Wright² at first thought it not unlikely that "the circumstance of Taillefer singing in the battle was an invention of the chroniclers, after the battle of Roncevaux had become itself a popular subject of song, and that the ground of the story was his fame as a poet." The purpose of the anecdote he thought was "to show the bold recklessness of the warrior, who could amuse himself with his song-craft in the very face of the enemy."³

Admitting that the point is one not to be easily decided, yet it seems difficult, in the face of the precise words of Wace, to doubt that in the *Chanson de Roland* we have at least a version of the war-chant sung by Taillefer.

§ 13. The best and oldest MS. of the French original is in the Bodleian Library, and is known as Digby MS. 23. It is an octavo volume, on vellum, and is believed to have been written in the 12th century. Another copy is in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge, and numbered R. 3. 32. This is a paper MS. in quarto, and was written in the sixteenth century.

The poem was first edited by M. Francisque Michel⁴ in 1837 from the Digby MS. This edition, which was limited to 200 copies, contains, besides the original text, poems in Latin, Spanish, German, Italian, Icelandic, &c., on the same subject, together with notes and a valuable and very full glossary. From this edition I have quoted the few extracts which appear in the notes.

¹ *Chanson de Roland*, p. 312.

² *Foreign Quarterly Review*, No. xxxi. Octr. 1833, on the French and English "*Chansons de Geste*," p. 128.

³ Mr. Wright afterwards changed his opinion: See the *Gentleman's Magazine*, May 1836, p. 479.

⁴ "La Chanson de Roland, ou de Roncevaux, du xii^e siècle. Publiée pour la première fois d'après le manuscrit de la bibliothèque Bodléienne à Oxford, par Francisque Michel."

§ 14. But the *Chanson de Roland*, at least in the form in which it has come down to us, was not the only source to which the author of the English version was indebted. The incidents mentioned in ll. 28—31, and 68—76, do not occur in any of the French MSS., but are founded on the account given by the Pseudo-Turpin. I have reprinted the passage in the Appendix (see p. xxxi, below). Evidently, therefore, the English translator either was acquainted with Turpin's *Vita Caroli Magni*, as well as with the *Chanson de Roland*, or, as is quite possible, he used a version of the French poem in which incidents from Turpin were incorporated with the original poem.¹

§ 15. To enumerate all the editions of the French poem and the treatises upon it which have appeared since would fill many pages. I have already referred to my great indebtedness to M. Gaston Paris' *Histoire Poétique*, and M. Michel's edition of the *Chanson de Roland*. Beside these there is only one work on the subject to which I need refer. This is a Dissertation by Dr. G. Schleich on taking his degree in the University of Berlin, on May 17th, 1879, and is, so far as I am aware, the only work which deals fully with the English version. In this work, which extends to 46 pages, Dr. Schleich has examined the English poem with great critical acumen, and although on some points I cannot agree with him, it is at the same time impossible not to acknowledge the soundness of the reasoning, and to admire the thoroughness with which he has done his work. As each point will be dealt with in detail, I will not now refer to his book more particularly, but will proceed to give a short description of the MS. from which this poem is printed.²

§ 16. The Lansdowne MS. 388 is a thick quarto volume, of paper, containing 419 folios. The greater part of the MS., which

¹ Such was the opinion of Grimm, *Ruolandes Liet*, Göttingen, 1838, p. xcix.

² One point I must refer to here, and that is that occasionally I find our transcripts do not agree. The differences certainly are slight, but the fact remains. The present edition is printed from a copy made by Mr. Brock, whose name alone would go a long way as a guarantee of its correctness. This copy has since been re-read with the MS. twice, once by myself, and afterwards by Miss Smith. The proofs were read over *twice* with the MS. by Mr. Furnivall, so that it can hardly be said that care enough has not been taken to ensure correctness.

formerly belonged to the antiquarian Strype, is occupied with a life of John Fox, the Martyrologist, by his son, extending to lf. 368.

At lf. 369 is a short poem with the title "Here saythe the vij. zeftes of the Holy Gost," and on lf. 371, a "Boke by Ypocras to knowe all maner evill in manys body," said to have been "sent to Cesare that was Emperour of Rome." This is followed on lf. 372, bk. by "Danyelles Dremys," a short treatise on the interpretation of dreams, omens, &c. A "Ditty on the Resurrection" begins on lf. 373, and ends imperfectly on lf. 380, bk. The fragment of the *Song of Roland* here reprinted follows, and after it, on lf. 396, begins a "Life of William of Wickham." The last English piece in the volume is the "Forme and ceremony of consecrating virgines and nuns," lf. 404. Some of the pieces in the MS. are in rather bad condition. The *Song of Roland* is in a small hand and carelessly written, and in some places the ink has so faded as to make it difficult, if not almost impossible to decipher the words.

§ 17. The metre of the poem is alliterative, but the rules are far from being strictly observed. Thus we find many lines in which there are but two alliterating letters. Of these the following examples will suffice :

"went to his wepon and a sond braid," l. 86.
 "the kinge praid his princis euerychon," l. 169.
 "I haue gone for thi sak wonderfull wais," l. 14.
 "hon they wickidly wrought then be-dene," l. 439, &c.

Many lines again have no alliteration at all, while in a few we find a sort of double alliteration, as in the following :

"Here ridithe Rouland, god be his gid," l. 253.
 "we be fellos and frendis, god be our gid," l. 304.
 "as all the feld wer fyer, yt semyd by the son," l. 711.

Occasionally we find the alliteration running on *v, w ; f, v : f, w ;* *c, or k ; g, as,*

v, w :

"That I wer on them vengid, god it wold," l. 363.
 "dalabern of valern then cum wold," l. 953.

f. v :

"many on folowed, yet it failid nought," l. 348.

f, w :

"And thou wisly wirche, thou failid nought," l. 31.
 "they wend to a-feld the frenche bedene," l. 739.

c, or k, g :

"then lightid gwynylon and com In in fer," l. 2.

"Gwynylon ðæt his gloue bi-for hem all," l. 407.

In one instance we find in the one line *f*, *v*, and *w* :

"as I went with-out folkis valis to seche," l. 360.

Sometimes again the alliteration is on vowels :

"he armyd hym surly in Irne wed," l. 285.

"Ingler and Aubry, and ek all þe oper," l. 516.

§ 18. I now come to the consideration of the rimes in the poem. In this respect the author does not show up at all well ; in fact, we might almost go to the extent of saying that a good and true rime is the exception, not the rule. Several lines occur in which, whether from the fault of the author or his copier, no rime at all is apparent, while in others it is only by shifting the accent that we can obtain even the appearance of a rime.

Assonances abound : such as *son*—*gome*, ll. 35-6, 57-8 ; *myn*—*hym*, ll. 481-2 ; *shyn*—*tym*, ll. 861-2 ; *bank*—*stant*, ll. 326-7, &c. ; besides such rimes as *toun*—*son*, ll. 459-60 ; *hond*—*found*, ll. 328-9 ; *barons* (= *baronis*)—*sondis*, ll. 179-80 ; *dyntis*—*seintis*, ll. 763-4 ; *on-loft*—*sought*, ll. 503-4 ; *found*—*throng*, ll. 713-14 ; *with*—*sight*, ll. 7, 8, &c.

Very frequently in order to get a rime we have to alter the accent of the words : as in *slepithe*—*thinkithe*, ll. 77-8 ; *oper*—*myster*, ll. 320-1 ; *soulis*—*dyntis*, ll. 829-30 ; *many*—*on hie*, ll. 813-4 ; *eye*—*many*, ll. 403-4, &c.¹

With so many inconsistencies, and so little regard to the rules, it is plainly dangerous to venture on any correction of the text founded on the absence of a rime, but in a few cases the rime does enable us to ascertain what was in all probability the original reading. Thus for instance in l. 37, no doubt the author wrote *bryngis* ; in l. 176, *find* ; in l. 233, *thaire* ; in l. 462, *ill* ; in l. 318, *wa* ; in l. 997, *brist* ;² in l. 69, *hap* ; in l. 834, *vois* ; and in l. 881, *por*.

¹ This enables us to correct l. 116, by reading *aspedid* = a *spedid* = have sped for *aspendid*.

² I should be inclined to make the same correction in l. 566, for the improvement of the alliteration.

In ll. 181-2, 388-9, 602-3, 669-70, and probably originally in 775-6, the riming words are alike.

As I have already said, several instances occur in which there is no apparent rime. The following is a list of these: ll. 95-6, 97-8, 344-5, 555-6, 565-6, 692-3, 700-1, 711-2, 815-6, 831-2.

In most, if not in all of these, the fault in all probability lies with the copier. In some we can with some degree of certainty suggest the original reading; thus in ll. 95-6 it seems probable that the author wrote:

"And Fought sore with hym, and hym fendithe,
he tok him by the right arm and hent it of swithe."

In ll. 700-1 we might read the last line:

"And to the erthe at the last fell down" (for the rime of. ll. 459-60).

In ll. 831-2, the syllable *-is* has evidently been omitted by the copier from *wodis*.

In many cases the absence of a rime enables us to detect the omission or loss of one or more lines, as ll. 219, 222, 227, &c. In two instances after ll. 620 and 960 a line appears to be missing, but as the sense is not interrupted, I have hesitated to state as much in the text.

§ 19. In a few cases the swing of the line can be improved by a slight alteration in the order of the words: thus, l. 385,

"Hou A bore bet me and my brond bright"

would read better if we read *me bet*. And in l. 114,

"And the lebard had tak the bore and slayn hym."

I should feel inclined to read *hym slayn*, which would not make the rime any worse than many others in the poem.

Again in l. 94: the rhythm requires us to read,

"A Bore from A bank com wondirly boistous,"

and similarly in l. 312,

"And to the soudan vs sold, as it semyd best."

And l. 610,

"or I go of this ground, and the gost yeld."

In l. 462 I would read :

"lord mahoun the saue, and kep the from ille."

And in l. 371 :

"lordis leuth this sorow ; help it ne shall."

Again in l. 495

"but every pece of his harnes Asonder be rent."

§ 20. The following are the chief grammatical peculiarities of the poem.

NOUNS.

The genitive singular is written with *-is*. In l. 592 we find the vowel omitted.

The plural termination is also *-is*. But here, too, the vowel is frequently omitted : *-os* occurs in ll. 306, 352, 362 and 516. *Cristyn* and *hethyn*, as adjectival nouns, do not take any plural affix, but we find both *Sairsyn* and *Sairsins*. *-es* occurs very rarely : see ll. 308, 420, 79, 307, &c. Only one instance of a plural in *-n* occurs ; *eyne*, l. 630.

As the question of the syllabic pronunciation of the final syllables in the genitive singular and plural is intimately connected with the metre of the poem, I here proceed to consider the latter.

The metre of the poem is tolerably regular, being the same as that of William of Palerne, that is, anapæstic in its character, the scheme being

— — — — — || — — — — —

As in Latin, a spondee frequently takes the place of the anapæst, especially in the third foot. The following lines will show the varieties of the metre :

"with a schy/nyng scheld // on his ahul/der stout."
 "of Sara / gos the ce//te he sent / the þ^e key."
 "to go in / to the for//ward to rest / vs awhile."
 "It is good / to be wise // in ded / and in thought."
 "he that saithe / I am tre//tour, And tok / of þe hethyn."
 "ther had bene / folk to few // to fight/hem agay/nes."
 "and hathe brew/id bale // in this il/kay stound."
 "then he stin/tid his sted // & stod / still sone."

It is not unusual to find a foot consisting of a single long syllable, as in—

- 1. 49. "knygh/tes ther her//nes hom/ward they kest."
- 1. 87. "that the splintis / of the sper // sprong / into heuyn /"
- 1. 270. "lord / he said // to you / will I tell."
- 1. 47. "Yet is frend/chipe and faithe // fair/iste at end."
- 1. 56. "the kinge / lep to horse // stint / he ne wold"

See also l. 196. Occasionally a line is a syllable short, as—

- 1. 368. "ther was we/ping and wail//lmg of knygh/tis."
- 1. 688. "galy dres/sid in gold // and in sto/nys,"

Or a whole foot short, as—

- 1. 480. "And yf en/y man lese // let me lout."
- 1. 542. "Or we flee / from this feld // I wene."
- 1. 439. "Hou they wic/kidly wrought // then be-dene."
- 1. 823. "And his sheld / and his brond // he had."
- 1. 328. "with bright shel/dis and schaf//tis in hond."

See also ll. 316, 824, 854, 877, &c.

A few lines are pure iambics, as—

- 1. 860. "as red / as blod // with-out/on rest."

See also ll. 499, 500-1-2.

The metre being such, it is impossible to say decisively whether the syllabic pronunciation of the terminations of nouns in the genitive singular and the plurals still survived. In many cases the swing of the line seems to require that we should treat these terminations as a separate syllable : see for instance—

- 1. 304. "we be fel/los and fren//dis god / be our gid."
- 1. 279. "ouer hil/lis and hol//tis he has/tid full sone."
- 1. 420. "Your knygh/tis be-hind // haue som bo/res fond."
- 1. 199. "and din/tis to dele // with good / durmidalle."

On the other hand in many cases it is tolerably clear that the affix did not constitute a syllable : as—

- 1. 87. "that the splintis / of the sper // sprong / into heuyn."
- 1. 443. "men myght se / ther ostis // in the fel/dis per."
- 1. 350. "cristis will/is ne wer // in þat il/key stond."
- 1. 918. "and trum/petis and ta//berers sothe / to say."
- 1. 738. "ther com / other folkis // full mygh/ty of mayn."

The balance of evidence, however, is in favour of the *-is* having been pronounced as a separate syllable. At all events it is evident

that, at the time the *Song of Roland* was written, a poet was allowed the licence of treating it as such or not as he pleased, just as was the case in Scotch in the beginning of the sixteenth century,¹ and as it is even now to a great extent in German. As the point has a bearing on the question of the date of the poem, I refer to it again in § 21.

VERBS.

In the present indicative, the termination of the second person singular is sometimes *-is*, as in ll. 31, 155, 637, &c., and sometimes *-ist*, as in ll. 37, 148, 156, 497, &c.

The termination of the third person singular is generally *-is*, occasionally *-ithe*. Thus we have *ridis*, l. 89; *wytis*, l. 90; *lescis*, l. 258; *sais*, l. 255; *leuys*, l. 257; *shakis*, l. 324; *tellis*, ll. 397, 789; *ryves*, l. 755; and also *delithe*, l. 249; *defithe*, l. 165; *biddithe*, l. 483; *slepithe*, l. 77; *thinkithe*, l. 78; *takithe*, l. 283; *gothe*, l. 470, &c.

In the plural we find both *-ithe* and *-en*: as *delithe*, l. 132; *seithe*, l. 630; *hathe*, ll. 256, 565, 1041, &c.; *abiden*, l. 383; *pressen*, l. 635; *crossen*, l. 835; *gone*, l. 58; *han*, l. 196; *criene*, l. 825, &c. Not infrequently the termination is altogether omitted, as in *won*, l. 15; *beteche*, l. 228; *lest*, l. 313; *nylle*, l. 437; *stond*, *hove*, l. 817, &c.

In the past tenses we find that the *-e* in weak verbs had become mute, and that the *-n* in strong verbs had fallen away: ll. 336 and 788 being the only cases where it remains.

The imperative plural has sometimes the termination in—*ithe*, as *listynythe*, l. 806; *herkenyt*, l. 1038. Generally, however, the termination is wanting as in *rid*, l. 543; *mak*, l. 519; *abid*, l. 534; *shon*, l. 560; *hew*, l. 575; *rusche*, l. 589, &c. In l. 187 we have *let we*, and in l. 647, *let vs*. In l. 826, *ledes* is the only instance of a northern imperative.

In the infinitive there are only a few instances in which a final *-n* is found: *sayn*, ll. 99, 737, 802, 886, 971 (but *say* in ll. 391 and 890); *done*, ll. 26, 411, 522; *bene*, l. 42. All these instances occur at the ends of the lines.

The present participle ends in *-ing*; as *suyng*, l. 44; *riding*, l.

¹ See Dr. Murray's *Dialect of the Southern Counties of Scotland*, pp 150—157.

235; *gletering*, l. 295; *saueng*, l. 408; *schynyng*, ll. 297, 445; *standing*, l. 415.

In the past participle three instances occur of the prefix *i-*, *y-*, in ll. 421, 772. Generally, however, the termination is *-en*, as *holdene*, l. 215; *broken*, ll. 10, 561, 924; *to-breston*, l. 773; *spoken*, *doluzyn*, l. 390, &c. Very frequently, however, the termination is omitted, as in *for-lore*, l. 554; *won*, l. 379; *y-brok*, l. 772, &c. *Tak*, in l. 114; and *vntak*, l. 89, are curious and noticeable forms.

The form *a* = have occurs three times, *aspendid* = *a spedid*, l. 116; *arestid*, l. 72; *a had*, l. 920.

In the verb to Be the following forms occur:

Present, 1st pers. sing. *am*, ll. 130, 409, &c., *be*, l. 943.

2nd „ „ *art*, ll. 37, 535, &c.

3rd „ „ *is*, *ys*, *es*.

1st „ plural *ar*, ll. 1041; *be*, ll. 304-5, &c.

2nd „ „ *ar*, l. 395, &c.

3rd „ „ *be*, ll. 123, 126, &c.¹

Past, 3rd pers. sing. *was*.

1st „ plural *wer*, ll. 227, 361, &c.

3rd „ „ *wer*, ll. 72, 73, 208, &c.

Was also occurs in the 3rd pers. pl. when the verb precedes the subject (see ll. 642, 792, 842, 1001, &c.), as in *Shakspere*, &c.

In the pronouns we find *my* and *thy* except in ll. 271, *my noun*; 481, one of *myn*; 638, *thy noun*. In the 3rd pers. plural we find *ther*, *them*, *hem*.

ADVERBS.

The termination is generally *-y*: only once do we find *-iche*, in *truliche*, l. 967. Many have dropped the termination altogether; thus we have *wondirly* in ll. 94 and 335, and *wondur* in l. 331; *sadly* in l. 121, and *sad* in l. 293; *fair*, l. 138; *fully* in l. 521, and *full* in l. 124, &c.

The use of the palatal *ch* for the guttural *k* is very common; see, for instance, *seche*, l. 5; *speche*, ll. 6, 19, 229, 360; *feche*, l. 361; *be-teche*, l. 189; *reche*, l. 190; *riche*, l. 966; *myche*, l. 263; *euery-*

¹ Perhaps *is* in l. 168.

chon, l. 171; *eueryche*, *rechar*, l. 447, &c. At the same time we find also *sek*, l. 803; *work*, l. 416, as well as *wyrche*, ll. 31, 165; *awrek*, ll. 725, 942; *wrek*, l. 628.

We nearly always find the O.E. *ā* replaced by *o*: as *atonye*, *bothe*, *hole*, *stonye*, *bone*, &c., and frequently *ǣ* is also replaced by the same letter, as *strong*, *long*, *thoussond*, *hond*, *from*, &c., though in a few cases the *a* is retained, as in *many*, *bank*, *stant*, *gan*, *hand* (only once, in l. 947), *car*, &c.

Dr. Schleich points out that *-aught* and *-ought* are kept quite distinct, the former being restricted to words where it represents the A.S. *æht*, while the latter is only used to represent A.S. *oht*. Thus we have *raught*, l. 796 = A.S. *geræhte*; *taught*, l. 17 = A.S. *tæhte*; but *brought*, l. 3 = A.S. *brohte*; *sought*, l. 504 = A.S. *sohte*; *doughtur*, l. 29 = A.S. *dohtor*; *nought*, l. 31 = A.S. *noht*; *wrought*, l. 311 = A.S. *geworht*, &c. This distinction is, Dr. Murray tells me, kept up to this day in the pronunciation in Scotland.

A consideration of these peculiarities lead to the conclusion that the poem was written in a South-West Midland dialect.

Dr. Schleich is of opinion that the copy which we have was made by a scribe accustomed to a North-East Midland dialect, basing his opinion on the use of *at* = that, in l. 902, of *is* (plural), in l. 168, and *was* (plural), in ll. 4, 642, 792 and 1001, as well as the terminations *-en* in the present plural, and *-ist* in the second person singular. But these appear to be very slight grounds on which to found such a theory. It is even doubtful whether *is* in l. 168 is plural. The word preceding it is very indistinct in the MS.; it may be "men," but a dissyllable seems to be required. Again the only cases where *was* is used with a plural subject are where the verb *precedes* the subject; in other cases we find *wer*. This use of *is* and *was* with a plural subject following is not at all uncommon in many of our writers. Shakspeare uses it frequently (see Dr. Abbott's *Shakspearian Grammar*, § 335), and it is now a recognised idiom of our spoken language,¹ arising from a want of anticipation on the part of the speaker of the number of the subject.

¹ Compare the French use of *il y a*, *il y avait* followed by plural subjects.

§ 21. I now come to the consideration of the date of the poem, on which point the most widely different views have been expressed. Gaston Paris thought it was probably written in the 13th century.¹ Wright assigned it to the 14th,² and Ten Brink to the beginning of the same century, while Dr. Schleich thinks that it could not have been written before the second half of the 15th century.³ The true date I believe to be about 1400.

Dr. Schleich bases his opinion solely on the non-pronunciation of the final *e*. That the final *e* had ceased to be pronounced when the poem was written is clear not only from the numerous instances in which, while the writer has properly inserted it, it is not required for the metre of the line, as in *faire ladys*, l. 28 ; thou *wirch*, l. 31 ; they *bete*, l. 787 ; *longe*, l. 772 ; we *serue*, l. 812, &c., but also from the many cases where, had the *e* still retained its value, it ought properly to have been added. Thus in l. 164, we have, in my *thought*, for *thoughte* (see also l. 310) ; to *wyn*, l. 113 ; he *sought*, l. 349 ; they *went*, l. 731 ; ye *myght*, l. 261 ; he *hight*, l. 262, &c.

Dr. Schleich argues that as we find in Chaucer the final *e* retaining its value up to the end of the 14th century, this poem written at a time when the *e* had ceased to possess any value, must be assigned to a date considerably later than 1400. But is the loss or retention of the final *e* a certain criterion, or is a comparison with Chaucer's poems a fair one ? Both of these questions must, I think, be answered in the negative. The present poem is written, as we have seen, in a South-West Midland dialect, Chaucer's in a South Midland. The West Midland was influenced by northern dialects to a great extent. Chaucer's poems, on the other hand, are perfectly free from any such influence ; on the contrary, we might rather say that he was influenced by southern speech. Dr. Murray has shown in his article on the English language, in the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, that up to the 14th century there was but little difference between the speech of London and Kent. Moreover, he was a very conservative writer : as he wrote in 1360—70 so he wrote in 1390—1400, though no doubt the change was going on all around.

¹ *Histoire Poétique*, p. 155.

² See M. Michel's edition, p. 279.

³ *Geschichte der Englischen Litteratur*, 1877, vol. I., p. 306.

The West Midland dialect, as I have said, was, to some extent at least, influenced by the Northern. Now the final *e* had disappeared, so far as any value is concerned, in Northern writers long before 1400. The *Cursor Mundi* has not a trace of it: Hampole does not know it. Even in the South, Robert of Brunne, and Lydgate and Occleve have partly lost it. But it is with none of these that I would compare the *Song of Roland*. To form a just and true opinion the comparison should be made with some poem written in as nearly as possible the same dialect. Audelay, in which the *e* is gone, is, perhaps, a little too much North; but in *William of Palerne* we have a poem which almost exactly satisfies the conditions. It is written in the same metre, and in very nearly the same dialect. But even in it the final *e* has lost its value, and yet it was written in 1350, a hundred years before the date assigned by Dr. Schleich to the present poem. There is, too, the same uncertainty as to the pronunciation of the inflexions of the genitives and plurals. Compare the following lines with the *Song of Roland*:

- “þat perles of alle puple is preised ouer alle.” 1. 499.
 “faire floures for to fecche þat he bi-fore him seye.” 1. 26
 “þat briddes & amale bestes wip his bow heuelles.” 1. 179.
 “þong bold barnes þat bestes al-so keped.” 1. 187.
 “þat of horn ne of hound ne miȝt he here sowne.” 1. 210.

Taking all these points into consideration I do not think that the loss or omission of the final *e* is alone a sufficient ground on which to assign a date to the present poem. From the language generally and the style of the composition I consider it to have been written considerably earlier than 1450, and in fixing on 1400 as the probable date, I believe I am, if anything, putting it too late.

I have the pleasant task of acknowledging the kind and freely-given help which I have received in the preparation of this volume from Mr. Furnivall, who, as I have already said, read over twice the proofs of the *Song of Roland* with the MS.; from Dr. Murray, who has assisted me with his invaluable help on numerous points of difficulty; from M. Gaston Paris, and from Miss Marx, by whom the first two Romances were copied.

APPENDIX.

The following is the Pseudo-Turpin's account of the events narrated in the *Song of Roland*.

Caput xxii.

De proditione Ganaloni, et de bello Roncievallis.

Postquam Carolus magnus Imperator et fortissimus totam Hispaniam diebus illis ad Domini et apostoli ejus sancti Jacobi decus acquisivit, rediens ab Hispania, Pampiloniæ cum suis exercitibus hospitatus est, et erant tunc temporis commorantes apud Cæsaream Augustam duo reges saraceni, Marsirius scilicet et Belvigandus pater eius, qui erant erant ab Almirda Babylonis de Perside ad Hispaniam missi, et Caroli imperiis subjacebant, et libenter ei in omnibus serviebant, sed in charitate ficta; quibus Carolus per Ganalonum mandavit, ut baptismum subirent, aut ei tributum mitterent. Tunc miserunt ei xxx equos ornatos auro et argento gazisque hispanicis, et lx equos vino dulcissimo et puro oneratos miserunt pugnatoribus ad potandum, et mille mulieres saracenas formosas ad faciendum stuprum. Ganalono vero viginti equos auro et argento et palliis prætiosis oneratos fraudulenter obtulerunt, ut pugnatores illorum manibus traderet ad interficiendum; qui concessit, et pecuniam illam accepit. Itaque priuato inter se pacto prave traditionis, rediit Ganalonus ad Carolum, et dedit ei gazas, quas reges miserant, dicens quod Marsirius vellet fieri christianus, et præparabat inter suum ut veniret ad Carolum in Gallia, et ibi baptismum acciperet, et totam terram hispanicam amplius pro illa teneret. Maiores vero pugnatores vinum solummodo ab eo acceperunt; mulieres vero nullatenus; sed minores sustulerant. Tunc Carolus verbis Ganaloni credens, disposuit transire portus cisereos, et redire ad Galliam. Inde accepto consilio a Ganalono Carolus præcepit carissimis suis, scilicet Rolando nepoti suo Cenomanensi, et blaviensi comiti, et Olivierio gebenensi comiti, ut cum maioribus pugnatoribus et viginti millibus Christianorum ultimam custodiam in Roncievalle facerent donec ipse Carolus cum aliis exercitibus portus cisereos transiret; itaque factum est. Sed quia præcedentibus noctibus vino saracenco ebrii quidam cum mulieribus paganis et christianis, et fœminis, quas secum milites de Galia adduxerant fornicati sunt, mortem incurrerunt. Quid plura? dum Carolus portus cum xx millibus Christianorum et Ganalono et Turpino transiret, et præfati ultimam custodiam facerent, Marsirius et Belvigandus cum l. millibus Saracenorum summo mane

exierunt de nemoribus et collibus, ubi consilio Ganaloni duobus diebus totidemque noctibus latuerant, et fecerunt duas turmas; unam et xx. millibus, aliam ex xxx. Illa vero qua erat ex viginti primum cæpit post tergum subito percutere nostros; illico nostri reversi sunt contra illos, ad expugnandos eos, et a mane usque ad tertiam omnes occiderunt neque unus quidem e viginti millibus evasit. Statim nostros tanto bello fatigatos et lassos alia triginta millia Saracenorum aggrediuntur, et percusserunt eos a majore usque ad minorem, nec unus quidem ex triginta millibus Christianorum evasit; alii lanceis perforantur, alii spata decollantur, alii securibus abscinduntur, alii sagittis et iaculis perforantur, alii perticis verberando perimuntur, alii cultellis vivi excoriantur, alii igne cremantur, alii arboribus suspenduntur. Ibi interficiuntur omnes pugnatores præter Rolandum et Baldovinum, et Turpinum et Tedericum, et Ganalonum. Baldovinus et Tedericus dispersi per nemora tunc latuerunt et propterea evaserunt. Tunc Saraceni una leuga retro redierunt.

Interrogatio.

Hoc in loco interrogandum est cur illos, qui minime cum mulieribus non sunt fornicati, Dominus mortem incurrrere permisit cum iis, qui ebriati, fornicati sunt?

Responsio.

Ideo profecto illos, qui ebriati et fornicati non sunt, Dominus mortem incurrrere permisit, quia voluit ut ad patriam propriam amplius non redirent, ne forte in aliquibus delictis incurrerent; et etiam voluit eis pro laboribus suis coronam cælestis Regni per passionem impendere. Illos vero, qui fornicati sunt mortem permisit incurrrere, quia per gladii passionem voluit illorum peccata delere. Nec debet dici quod clementissimus Deus non remuneravit transactos labores eorum; scilicet qui in fine nomen ejus confessi sunt, peccata confitentes; licet enim sint fornicati, tamen pro Christi nomine sunt in fine perempti. Igitur pergentibus ad prælium patet, quod perniciosus sit comitatus foeminarum: uxores aut foeminas alias amplius ducere non licet. Quidam terreni principes, Darius scilicet et Antonius olim cum uxorum comitatu perrexerunt ad bellum, et ambo corruerunt; Darius superatus ab Alexandro: Antonius ab Octaviano Augusto. Quapropter nulli licet mulierem in exercitu ducere nec expedit habere mulieres in castris, ubi libido castranda est, quia impedimentum animæ et corporis est.

Allegoria.

Illi qui inebriati et fornicati sunt significant sacerdotes et religiosos viros, contra vitia pugnantes, quibus non licet inebriari et mulieribus coinquinari: quod si fecerint: ab inimicis suis, id est a dæmonibus,

lapse et forte in aliis vitiis, malo fine interfecti, et in Orco capti erunt.

"De Vita Caroli Magni et Rolandi Historia Joanni Turpino, Archiepiscopo Remensi vulga tributa," ed. by A Sebastiano Ciampi, Florence, 1822, pp. 59—63.

SKETCHES OF THE STORIES.

The Sege off Melayne.

The Saracens, under their Sultan Arabas, having harried Rome and Lombardy (p. 1), attack and capture Milan. Sir Alantyne, lord of that city, flies to a neighbouring town for refuge (p. 2). The Saracens promise if he will forsake Christianity to give him all his own again. He asks a day for consideration. During the night an angel appears to him in a dream, and bids him seek for help from Charles (p. 4). On the same night an angel also appears to Charles, and gives him a sword, bidding him to go and avenge Allantyne (p. 5). Allantyne arrives and pleads his case, which is supported by Turpin; but Ganelon persuades the king not to go himself, but to send Roland with an army (p. 7). The French arrive at Milan, but are defeated (p. 9), Richard of Normandy slain (p. 10), and Roland with three others, taken prisoners (p. 13). By a miracle they escape (p. 16), and start for Paris. On their way, at St. Denis, they meet Turpin (p. 18), and Charles (p. 19). Roland tells how only four have escaped, and Turpin calls on Charles to avenge his men (p. 20). A large army is assembled, but Charles, at the instigation of Ganelon, refuses to go (p. 21), and is accordingly cursed by Turpin (p. 23). By the advice of Naymes, Charles gives way (p. 25), and the army starts for Milan (p. 27). Garcy is crowned Sultan (p. 27), and leads out his army to meet Charles (p. 31). Charles and Damadowse fight, and the latter is killed (p. 33). A general battle ensues, Turpin is wounded (p. 36), but the Saracens are put to flight, and take refuge in Milan (p. 37). The next day Charles prepares for an assault on the city (p. 41). Turpin is again wounded (p. 42). Reinforcements come to the Saracens (p. 44), and the Duke of Brittany comes to the help of Charles (p. 47). Part of the French army keep Garcy within

Milan, while the rest attack the reinforcements and defeat them (p. 50). The French prepare for the assault on Milan (p. 52). *End of the MS.*

Roland and Otuel.

While Charles and his douzeperes are enjoying themselves, Otuel, a Saracen knight, arrives with a message from the Sultan to Garcy, calling on Charles to forsake Christianity and become his vassal (p. 57). Directed by Naymes he makes his way into the king's presence (p. 58). He boasts of the success of the Saracens, and of his own prowess (p. 59). Sir Estut, in a rage, tries to kill him, but is himself slain by Otuel (p. 60). By the persuasion of Charles and Roland, the Saracen gives up his sword and delivers his message (p. 61). He afterwards challenges Roland to single combat, which the latter accepts (p. 64). After mass the next morning they arm for the fight (p. 66), Belesant, the daughter of Charles, assisting Otuel (p. 68). The fight is carried on with varied success: Roland tries to convert Otuel, but in vain (p. 71). A dove settles on the Saracen's helmet, and Otuel, looking on it as a sign from heaven, agrees to become Christian (p. 73). He is baptised, and Belesant is betrothed to him (p. 74). Otuel proposes an expedition against his uncle Garcy, which the French agree to (p. 75). On the 1st April the army starts (p. 77), and arrive near Attale (p. 78). Roland, Oliver, and Ogier ride out of the camp, and meet four Saracen kings (p. 80), three of whom they slay: the fourth, Clariell, is taken prisoner (p. 81), but the Saracens coming up, the French knights are obliged to let him go (p. 82). Overpowered by numbers, Roland and Oliver have to fly, but Ogier is taken prisoner (p. 84), and given in charge to Clariell's mistress (p. 86). Otuel meets Roland and Oliver flying. They turn on the Saracens, whom they defeat with great slaughter (p. 90). Otuel and Clariell agree to fight the next day (p. 91). After a fierce fight the Saracen is killed (p. 96). Roland is wounded in a duel with Sir Barlott, but is saved by Otuel (p. 98). A general battle, during which Ogier escapes, ensues, ending in the utter rout of the Saracens (p. 102). Ogier captures Garcy, and the poem ends with the wedding of Otuel and Belesant.

The Song of Roland.

For seven years had Charles been in Spain, fighting against the Saracens. In this time he had utterly defeated them, and had taken every city with the single exception of Saragossa, the stronghold of king Marsile. This king, by the advice of Blancandrin, one of his counsellors, sends ambassadors to Charles with presents to ask the conditions upon which he will be allowed to retain his kingdom in peace. Charles, against the advice of Roland and others of his knights, allows himself to be persuaded by Ganelon, and determines to send a messenger to Marsile, calling on him to deliver up the keys of Saragossa, to embrace Christianity, and to come in person to pay homage as a vassal of the French king. Roland, Naymes, Oliver, and Turpin in turn volunteer for this dangerous duty, but Charles will not risk their lives. At the suggestion of Roland, Ganelon is selected. He accepts the duty, though unwillingly, and accompanies the Saracens back to Saragossa. On the road, Blancandrin discovers Ganelon's hatred of Roland and the other douzeperes, and seeing that it might be turned to advantage, communicates his opinion to Marsile. The Saracen king by means of bribes induces Ganelon to consent to betray Roland and his companions, during their passage of the narrow defiles of Roucesvaux. Having loaded the traitor with presents, he gives him the keys of Saragossa to be handed to Charles, so that no suspicion might arise, and also sends as gifts to the French king a number of Saracen girls, and a large quantity of wine. With these Ganelon returns to the French camp, and delivers his message to Charles (p. 107), declaring that Marsile will himself repair to France within sixteen days, there to do homage to Charles, and to embrace Christianity. Charles is delighted, and gives orders for an immediate return home (p. 108). The army starts, and after marching 10 miles encamps for the night (p. 109). In the night Charles has two dreams, warning him of treachery, which disturb him greatly (p. 109). The next morning he holds a council, and reminding his knights of the dangers of the pass of Roucesvaux, desires them to arrange who shall take command of the rear-guard, the post of danger (p. 110). Ganelon proposes that that duty shall be assigned to Roland, and much against the

king's wish, Roland declares his willingness to accept the post (p. 111). The other douzepères declare they too will go with Roland (p. 112). Leaving them behind, with 20,000 men, Charles and the rest of the army start for France (p. 114), Ganelon commanding the van-guard. The Saracens prepare to attack Roland. He sees them and warns his fellows (p. 115). Sir Gauter is sent forward with 10,000 men to reconnoitre, but is surprised, and every one of his men slain (p. 116). He warns Roland of treachery. Meanwhile Charles is alarmed at the delay of his rear-guard, but is re-assured by Ganelon (p. 119), and goes on to Cardoila. The Saracens appear, and Oliver presses Roland to blow his horn for help, but he refuses (p. 122). At day-break Turpin celebrates mass, after which the fight begins (p. 125). Roland, Oliver, and the others, perform prodigies of valour (p. 129), but in vain, the Saracens are too numerous. A fearful storm comes on (p. 131), after which the Saracens again attack the French (p. 133). Roland proposes to send a messenger after Charles for help (p. 136), but it is too late. [End of our MS.] Overpowered by numbers there soon survive but 60 of the French army. Roland now proposes to blow his horn; Oliver, seeing it is too late, tries to dissuade him. Turpin, however, agrees with Roland, and he accordingly gives three mighty blasts, but in doing so, bursts a blood-vessel. The sound of the horn is heard by Charles and his army, who at once retrace their steps. But, by this time, the uncle of king Marsile has come to his aid, with more than 50,000 men. Oliver is killed, and over his body Roland utters a touching farewell. There are now left but 3 French knights, Roland, Turpin, and Gauter. The last is soon slain, and the Archbishop is mortally wounded. Roland unlaces his helmet, and tends him as best he may, but he is himself exhausted with loss of blood. He then retires to a distance, and drawing his sword Durindal, bids it farewell in a most pathetic speech. Determined that the Saracens shall not have it, he tries to break it by striking it with all his might against a rock. But Durindal cuts through the rock, and is still uninjured. Twice does Roland repeat the blow, but with the same result. The end has now come, and, with a prayer on his lips, the mighty hero dies.

The remainder of the poem is occupied with the vengeance taken

by Charles on the Saracens, whom he utterly exterminates, and the punishment of the traitor Ganelon.

Turpin's version of the latter part of the poem differs slightly from the French. According to it, two of the douzeperes, Baldwin and Thierry, escape from the slaughter, and carry the news to Charles. This version also represents Turpin himself as having gone on with Charles, and having thus escaped the general slaughter. At the moment when Roland is dying, the archbishop, who is celebrating mass, has a vision in which the calamity is revealed to him, and by him told to Charles. The sun is also said to have miraculously stood still for three days, in order to allow Charles time for his vengeance on the Saracens.

The Sege off Melayne

FROM

ADDIT. MS. BRIT. MUS. 31,042.

[Addit. MS. 31042, Brit. Mus., leaf 64, back.]

Here Buggynys the Sege off Melayne.

(1)

A H werthy men that luffes to here
Off cheuallry þat by fore vs were
þat doughty weren of dede,
Off charles of Fraunce, þ^e heghe kinge of alle,
þat ofte sythes made hethyn men for to falle,
þat styffely satte one stede.

Listen all, and I
will tell you a
true story of
Charlemagne.

3

This geste es sothe, wittnes þ^e buke,
þ^e ryghte lele trouthe who so wil luke,
In CronekiH for to rede.

6

You may find it
in the Chronicles.

9

Alle lumbardy þay made þaire mone
And saide þaire gaumes weren alle gone
Owttrayed with hethen thede.

12

(2)

The sowdane Arabas the stronge
Werreyde appon Crystyndome with wronge
And Ceties brake he down;

Arabas, the
Sultan, had

15

Robbyde þ^e Romaynes of theire rent,
þ^e popys pousty hase he schente,

harried Rome

And many a kynges with Crownn.

18

In Tuskayne townnes gon he wyn
And stuffede þam wele with hethyn kyn,
This lorde of grete renown;

21

And sythen to lumbardy he wafe,
Mighte to lett hym hade no man,

and Lombardy,

Thus wynnes he many a townn.

24

CHARL. ROM. II.

B

(3)

and had burnt
the churches and
roods,

The Emagery þat the[r] solde bee,
Bothe the Rode & þe marie free,

Brynnede þam in a fire :

27

And þan his Mawmettes he sett vp there
In kirkes and abbayes þat there were,

Helde þam for Lordes and Syre.

30

and sacked
Milan.

To Melayne sythen he tuke þe waye

And wanne þe Cyte apón a daye,

Gaffe his men golde & ih hyre.

33

Many a Martyre made he there

Off men and childre þat there were

And ladyes swete of Swyre.

36

(4)

Alantyne, lord of
Milan, flees to
a neighbouring
city.

þe lorde of Melayne, *sir* Alantyne,

Sawe þe Crystynde putt to pyne,

Oute of þe townn he fiede

39

To a Cyte þat was there by,

Alle nyghte he thoughte þer In to ly,

He was full straytly stede.

42

þay myghte it wynn with spere & schelde

Appon þe morne hym buse it zelde

Or laye his lyfe in wede.

45

Was neuer no knyghte putt to mare care,

Full hertly to Criste þan prayes he thare

To knawe þe lyfe he ledde.

48

(5)

Arabas says he
shall have his
own again if he
will forsake
Christianity.

þe Sawdane sent hym messangers free

And bade hym torne and hethyn bee

And he solde haue his awenn :

51

Melayne, that was the Riche Cite,

And alle þe laundis of lumbardye,

And to his lawe be knawenn :

54

"And if he ne wilth noghte to oure lawe be sworne

He saht be hangede or oper morne

And with wyldre horse be drawen): 57

His wyffe & his childre three

By-fore his eghne pat he myghte see

Be in sondre sawenn)." 60

(6)

He prayede þ^e sowdane þan of grace

pat he wolde byde a littil space

Whils one þ^e morne at daye, 63

And he saht do hym for to witt

If pat he wolde assent to itt

To leue apon his laye. 66

Bot þan heues he vp his handis to heuen),

To Iesu Criste with mylde steuen)

Fuht hertly gane he praye. 69

"Lorde," he saide, "als þou swelte appon þ^e tree,

Of thy man þou hafe Pete,

And Mary mylde pat maye! 72

(7)

If I solde Crystyndome for-sake

And to hethyn lawe me take

þ^e perill mon be myn). 75

Bot, lorde, als þou lete me be borne

Late neuer my sawle be forlorne

Ne dampnede to helle pyne. 78

Bot, lorde, als þou swelte on þ^e rode

And for mankynde schede thi blode

Some concelle sende þou me: 81

Whethire pat me es better to doo,

The hethyn lawe to torne too,

Or my lyfe in lande to tyne." 84

(8)

Than wente pat knyghte vn to bedde

For sorowe hym thoughte his hert bledde,

And appon Iesu þan gan he calle. 87

Alantyne begs for
a day's respite
before giving an
answer.

[leaf 65]

He prays to God
for help in his
trouble.

In his sleep he
sees a vision.

	And sone aftire þat gane he falle one slepe Als man þat was wery for-wepe.	
	þan herde by hym on a walle	90
An angel bids him go to Charles,	Ane Angelle þat vn-to hym gane saye : “ Ryse vp, sir kyng, & wende thy waye, For faire þe sall by falle, To Charles þat beris the flour delyce, Of oþer kynges he berys þe pryce, & he saß wreke thy wrethis alle.”	93 96
	(9)	
	The Angelle bade hym ryse agayne, “ And hy þ ^e faste to charlemayne, þ ^e Crownede kyng of Fraunce,	99
and call on him in God's name to help him.	And say hym god byddis þat he saß go To helpe to venge the of thy foo Bothe with spere & launce.”	102
	The kyng was full fayne of that, His swerde in his hande he gatt And þerto graythely he grauntis.	105
Alantyne starts for France.	He garte swythe sadyth hym a palfraye And Euen to Fraunce he tuke þ ^e waye, Now herkenys of þis chaunce.	108
	(10)	
	The same nyghte by fore þ ^e daye Als kyng Charls in his bedde laye A Sweun þan gan he mete.	111
	Hym thoghte ane angele lyghte als leuen Spake to hym with mylde steuen, þat gudly hym gane grete.	114
who gives him a sword,	þat angele by-taughte hym a brande, Gaffe hym þ ^e hiltis in his hande, þat euen was handefull mete :	117
and bids him go to the help of Alantyne.	And saide : “ Criste sende the this swerde, Mase the his werryoure here in erthe, He dose þe wele to weite.	120

(11)

He biddes þou saß resteyne it tyte	[leaf 65, back]
And þat þou venge aße his dyspyte,	
For thyng þat euer may bee.	123
And sla alle there thou sees me stryke,	
And sythen þou birñe vp house & dyke,	
For beste he traystis in thee."	126
The walles abowte Melayne townne	
Hym thoghte þ ^e angele dange þam downn),	
þat closede In þat Cite.	129
Sythen aße þ ^e landis of lumbardy,	
Townnes, borows, and bayli :	
this was selcouthe to see.	132

(12)

When Charls wakenede of his dreame	Charles, on waking,
He sawe a bryghtenes of a beme	
Vp vn-to heuenwarde glyde.	135
Bot when he rose þ ^e swerde he fande	finds the sword by his side
þat þe Angelle gaffe hym in his hande	
Appon his bedde syde.	138
He schewede it thanne to his Baronns aße,	and shows it to his barons.
And than saide his lordes bothe grete & smalle :	
" þ ^e sothe is noghte to hyde :	141
We wote wele þat goddis wiß it es	
þat þou saß conquere of hethennesse	
Countres lange and wyde."	144

(13)

To mete þam wente þat Riche kynge	
Bot sone come there newe tydynge,	While the king is at table
Als he in sete was sette.	147
The lorde of Melayne he sawe come In),	
þat was his Cosyn nere of kyn),	Alantyne arrives and claims his assistance.
And hym fuß gudely grette.	150
The grete lordis alle hailsede hee	
And prayede þam aß sesse of their glee,	
And sayse to Charls wiß owttun lette :	153

" Iesu Criste hase comaunde thee
 To fare, to þ^e felde to feghte for mee,
 My landis agayne to gette." 156

(14)

Charles and
 Alantyne
 relate their
 dreams.

He tolde þam alle at þ^e Borde and by
 That the Sarazenes had wonn^e lumbardy—
 þay mornede & made grete mone— 159

And how the angelle bade hym goo :
 The kynge tolde his sweuen alsoo,
 þay accordede bothe in one. 162

Turpin supports
 Alantyne's
 petition.

Thane sayde þ^e Beshope Turpyne :
 " Hafe done ! late semble þ^e folke of thynde !
 Myn hede I vndir nome ¹ 165

þat gode es greuede at þ^e sarazenes boste :
 We saße stroye vp alle theire hoste,
 þose worthely men in wone." ² 168

(15)

Ganelon, the
 traitor,
 proposes that
 Roland alone be
 sent to the relief
 of Milan.

Bot alle þat herde hym Genyenn,
 þat was a lorde of grete renownn
 And Rowlande Modir hade wedda. 171

þare very hym bothe god & sayne Iohn,
 The falseste traytoure was he one,
 þat euer with fode was fedde ! 174

For landis þat Rowlande solde haue thare
 Dede fayne he wolde þat he ware,
 þ^e Resone ryghte who redde. 177

His firste tresone now by gynnes here,
 þat þe lordis boghte sythen full dere,
 And to ladyse grete Barette bredde. 180

(16)

[leaf 66]

" Sir," he sayde, " þat ware a Synfull chaunce,
 Whatt solde worthe of vs in Fraunce,
 And þou in þ^e felde were slayne ! 183

¹ MS. take.

² MS. worde.

Thy selfe and we at home wiþ byde And latte Rowlande thedire Ryde,	He says he would gladly hear of Roland's success,	
þat euer to Bekyre es bayne,		186
With Batelle & with brode banere ; Of his wyrchippe wolde I here,		
Witt 3e wele, fuþ fayne."		189
For Rowlande this resone he wroghte Euere more in his herte he thoghte	but he hopes he may never return.	
He solde neuer come agayne.		192
(17)		
The kyng þan sent a Messangere To grette lordes bothe ferre & nere	The king orders an expedition to be made ready,	
And bade þam make þam 3are.		195
Bot þ ^e peris take a concelle newe þat made aþe fraunce ful sore to rewe	but the barons object,	
And byrdis of blyse fuþ bare.		198
þay prayede þ ^e kyng on þat tyde þat he hym selfe at home walde byde,		
To kepe þat lande ri3t thare :		201
" And Sendis Rowlande to lumbardy, With fourty thowsande cheualry		
Of worthy men of were."		204
(18)		
Then Rowlande thus his were þan made Fares forthe with Baners brade,	and Roland is despatched with an army to the relief of Milan.	
þ ^e kynge byleues þare stiþ		207
With-In þ ^e Cite of Paressche For to kepe þat town of pryce,		
Als þay accordede tiþ.		210
And if þ ^e Sowdane wane þ ^e felde Lyghtly walde þey it noghte 3elde		
To þay had foughtten paire fiþ.		213
Bot be comen was þ ^e feftenede daye þer fore myghte mornne bothe man & maye,		
And ladyse lyke fuþ iþ.		216

(19)

<p>Roland and his men arrive at Milan, and</p>	<p>To Melayne euen þay made þam bownu, And Batelde þam þare by-fore þ^e townu, þose knyghttis þat were kene.</p>	<p>219</p>
<p>challenge Arabes to battle.</p>	<p>And In to þ^e Sowdane þay sent a knyghte And bade hym come owte with þam to fyghte, To witt with owtten wene.</p>	<p>222</p>
	<p>The Sowdane grauntis wele þer-tiȝ, þat tornede oure gudmen aȝ to gryȝ, And many one mo to mene.</p>	<p>225</p>
<p>He accepts the challenge.</p>	<p>Than þ^e Sarazene come owte of þat Cite, Forty thowsandes of cheualrye, þ^e beste in erthe myghte be[ne].</p>	<p>228</p>

(20)

	b ^e forthirmaste come a sarazene wyghte,	
Arabant, a Saracen king,	Sir Arabaunt of Perse he highte,	
	Of Gyon was he kyng :	231
	He saide þer was na cristyn knyghte,	
	Ware he neuer so stronge ne wyghte,	
	To dede he [ne] solde hym dyng.	234
slays Artaimere, Oliver's uncle,	And one sir Artaymnere of Beme,	
	þat was sir Olyueres Eme,	
	Byfore þ ^e stowre þay thrynge ;	237
	And euen at þ ^e firste countire righte	
	þe Sarazen slewe oure cristyn knyghte,	
	It was dyscomforthynge.	240

(21)

[leaf 66, back]
and afterwards
Alantyne

The lordes of Melayne to hym Rade,
Sir Alantyne with owtten bade,
þ̃ Crystyn knyghte to wreke, 243
Bot he stroke oure Cristyn knyghte þat stownde
þat dede he daschede to þ̃ grounde,
Mighte no worde after speke. 246
Sythen afterwarde he bare down
Worthy lordes of grete renownn),
Ay to his launce gane broke : 249

and many others
till his lance
breaks.

And sythen areste þaire nobil stedis
 And to þ^e hethyn hoste þam ledis :
 Loo þus-gates fares þ^e freke ! 252

(22)

Bot by þat was done þ^e grete gon mete
 Barouns ondir blonkes fete
 Braythely ware borne donn. 255
 Thay stekede many a staleworthe knyghte,
 þ^e hethen folke in þat fyghte
 þ^e moste were of renownn. 258
 Oure knyghtis one þ^e gronde lyse
 With wondes wyde one wafull wyse
 Crakkede was many a Crownn : 261
 Riche hawberkes were all to-rent,
 And beryns thorowe þaire scheldis schent,
 þat many to bery was bownn. 264

(23)

þ^e Sarazene semblede so Sarely
 þat þay felde faste of oure cheualrye,
 Oure vawarde down þay dyng. 267
 Righte at þ^e firste frusche þay felde
 Fyve thowsande knyghtis trewly telde,
 this is no lesyng ! 270
 Oure knyghtis lyghtede one þ^e bent,
 Thorowe þaire scheldis are þey schent,
 Of sorowe þan myghte þay syng ! 273
 Than oure Mediſt-ward gane þam mete,
 þare myghte no beryns oure bales bete,
 Bot þ^e halpe of heuens kyng. 276

(24)

þ^e Mediſtward sir Rowlande ledde,
 þat doghty in felde was neuer drede
 To do what solde a knyghte. 279

The Saracens
 commit great
 slaughter
 amongst the
 French.

The French
 Vanguard is
 destroyed.

Roland brings
 up the middle
 part of his army,

Fyfty Lordis of gret Empryce,
 Of Fraunce, þat bare þ floure delyce,
 Hase loste bothe Mayne & myghte. 282

but he and seven
 other knights are
 taken prisoners. Our Meditwarde sonc hade þaye slayne,
 And Rowlande was in handis tane,
 And oper seuen þat were knyghtes. 285

But als god gaffe hym þat chaunce,
 þay wende he hade bene kyng of fraunce
 þat lyfede in þase fyghtis. 288

(25)

Richard of
 Normandy is
 mortally
 wounded Bot of a knyghte me rewes sore,
 þat in þ^e felde laye wondede thore,
 þ^e Duke of Normandy. 291

He lukes vp in the felde,
 His vmbre with his hande vp helde,
 On Rowlande gane he cry : 294

"Rowlande, if þ^e tyde þat chaunce
 þat þou come euer more in to fraunce,
 For þe lufe of mylde Marie, 297

[leaf 67] Comande me tilth oure gentilh kyng,
 And to þ^e Qwene my lady 3ynge,
 And to all Cheualrye. 300

(26)

He commends
 his son to
 Roland's care, And if þou come in to Normandy,
 Grete wele my [faire] lady,
 And sir Richerd my soñe ; 303

And dubbe hym Duke in my stede,
 And bydde hym venge his Fadir dede,
 Of myrthe if he witt mone. 306

charging him to
 avenge his death. Bid hym hawkes & houndes forgoo,
 And to dedis of armes hym doo,
 thase craftes for to konne ; 309

Appon þ^e cursede Sarazens for to werre,
 Venge me with dynt of spere,
 For my lyfe es nere done. 312

(27)

¹ A, Rowlande ! by-haulde nowe wnatt I see,		Richard in a
More Ioye ne myghte neuer bee,		vision
In þouthe ne þitt in elde. ²	315	sees the slain
Loo ! I see oure vawarde ledde to heuene		French knights
With Angells songe & merye steuene,		led to heuen.
Reghte as þay faughte in þ ^e felde !	318	
I see moo Angells, loo ! with myn eghe,		
Then there are men with-In Cristyante,		
þat any wapyn may welda.	321	
To heuen þay lede oure nobiþ knyghtis,		
And comforthes þam with mayne & myghtis, ¹		
With mekiþ blysse & belde."	324	

(28)

Bot by Rowland gan a sarazene stande		A Saracen cuts off
þat braydede owte with a bryghte brande		Richard's head.
When he harde hym say soo ;	327	
And to þ ^e Duke a dynt he dryvede,		
At þ ^e erthe he smate righte of his hede ;		
þer-fore was Rowlande woo ;	330	
And Rowland styrte þan to a brande		
And hastily hent it owte of a sarazene hande,		
And sone he gane hym sloo.	333	
With þat swerde he slewe sixty,		Roland with a
þ ^e beste of þ ^e sarazene cheualrye,		sword slays 60
Off hardy men and moo.	336	Saracens.

(29)

þan Rowlande in handis is taken agayne,		He is soon
And putt vn to fuþ harde payne,		overpowered
þat Sorowe it was to see.	339	and bound,
And foure nobiþ knyghtis þan haue þay slayne,		
By-fore þat were in handis tane		
With sir Rowlande þ ^e free.	342	

¹ From "A Rowlande" to "with mayne & myghtis" is written *smaller*, but in the same hand.

² MS. age.

(32)

Thus fourty thowsande hafe pay slayne		Forty thousand
Safe foure þat were in handis tane,		French are slain :
Rowlande ande oþer three :	375	
One was þ ^e gentiH Erle sir Olyuere,		Roland, Oliver,
Anoþer was sir Gawtere,		Gawter, and Guy
þe kyngis Cosyns nere ;	378	are prisoners.
The thirde was sir Gy of Burgoyne,		
His Fadir in þ ^e felde laye þere slone,		
þe soryare myghte he bea.	381	
They ledde thies lordes in to Melayne,		
With þat þ ^e Sowdane turnes agayne		
Righte gladde of his menȝee.	384	

Præmus passus : the first þytt.

(33)

T O the Sowdane chambir many a man)		The four French
Oure foure lordis ledd thay than)		knights are led
To rekken) of theirre Arraye.	387	before Arabas,
Thay Ette and dranke and made þam) glade,		
Bot littiH myrthe oure lordis hadde :		
þ ^e Sowdane gane þam) saye,	390	
"Welcome be ¹ thow, kyng of Fraunce,		who salutes Ro-
The by-tide a cely chaunce,		land as Emperor
thi lyfe was sauede this daye.	393	of France.
The false lawes of Fraunce saH downn),		
The Rewme saH leue one Seynt Mahownn)		
þat alle þ ^e myghtyeste maye !"	396	

(34)

And Rowlande answerde full gentilly :	
"I ne rekke whethir I lyfe or dye,	
By god þat awe this daye.	399

¹ MS. the.

Roland declares
who he is,

Kynge of Fraunce ame I none,

Bot a Cosyne ame I one

To charles by my faye. 402

He wiȝt gyffe me golde and Fee,

Castelles ryche with towris heghe,

ȝat lorde fuȝt wele he maye. 405

Bot goddis forbode & ȝ^e holy Trynytee

ȝat euer fraunce hethen were for mee

And lese oure crysten lawe ! 408

(35)

and calls on
Arabas to become
a Christian.

For sothe, ȝou Sowdane, trowe ȝou moste

One ȝe Fader and ȝ^e Sone and ȝ^e holy goste,

thire thre are alle in one : 411

ȝat Borne was of Marye free,

Sythen for vs dyede one a tree,

In other trowe we none." 414

[leaf 68]
The Sultan
laughe at him,

Thane loughe ȝ^e sowdane withe eghne fuȝt smale,

And saide ; "ane hundrethe of ȝoure goddis alle hale

Haue I garte byrne in a Firre with bale 417

Sen Firste I wanne this wone. 417*

I sawe at none no more powstee

Than att anoper rotyn tree

One erthe, so mote I gone ! 420

(36)

and orders a rood
to be burnt
before them.

Goo, feche one of theire goddis In

And if he in this fire wiȝt byrne

Alle oper sett att noghte." 423

ȝan furthe ȝer rane a sarazene in ȝat tyde

To a kyrke was there by-side,

A faire rode In he broghte 426

Fourmede ewenn als he gane blede.

Oure Cristen knyghtis by-gane ȝaire crede

And Rowland god by-soughte, 429

And saide : "ȝou ȝat was borne of a May,

Schewe ȝou, lorde, thi meracle this day,

ȝat with thi blode vs boghte !" 432

(37)

They keste þ^e Rode in to þ^e fire
 And layde Brandis with mekið Ire,
 Fayne wolde þay garre hym birno. 435

The Sowdane saide : " now sað ȝe see
 What myghte es in a rotyñ tree
 þat ȝoure byleue es In. 438

I darre laye my lyfe fuð ryghte
 þat of hym selfe he hase no myghte
 Owte of this fire to wyn. 441

How solde he þan helpe a-noþer man
 That for hym selfe no gyn ne kan,
 Noþer crafte ne gyn ? " 444

A rood is brought
 and cast into the
 fire,

(38)

Thay caste one it fuð many a folde,
 þ^e rode laye stið ay as it were colde,
 No fire wolde in hym too. 447

AH if þ^e crosse were makede of tree
 The fire ȝode owtt þat come þer nee,
 þan wexe þe sowdan woo : 450

" And ȝif þ^e deueñ," he sayde, " be hym with In
 He sað be brynt or euer I blyne ; "
 Of hert he was fuð throo. 453

" Thies cursede wrechis þat are here In
 Hase wethede þaire goddis þat þai may not byrn,
 I wote wele it es soo." 456

but the fire has
 no power over it.

(39)

þan bromstone þat wele walde birn,
 And pykke & terre mengede þer In,
 þay slange in þ^e fire fuð bolde. 459

Torches þat were gude and grete
 For to helpe þat mekið hete
 þay caste In many a folde. 462

The fire wexe owte at þ^e laste,
 Oure knyghtis made þaire prayere faste
 To Criste þat Iudas solde. 465

The Saracens
 heap brimstone
 and pitch on it.

The rode braste & gaffe a crake,
 þat þam) thoghte þat alle þ^e byggyngre brake,
 þat was with In) þat holde. 468

(40)

Fire bursts out
 from the Rood

A fire þan) fro þ^e crosse gane frusche,
 And In þ^e Sarazene eghne it gaffe a dosche,
 Ane Element als it were, 471

[leaf 68, back]
 and blinds the
 Saracens.

That þay stode stiþ als any stone,
 Haundis nore fete myghte þay stirre none
 Bot drery wexe in chere, 474

Thay wyste noþer of gude ne iþ.
 þan) Rowlande sais his felawes vn-tiþ :
 "Sirs, hy vs alle hethyn) in fere. 477

This Meracle es schewede thorowe goddis grace
 For alle þe sarazenes in this place
 May noþer see nore here." 480

(41)

Guy slays
 Arabas, and the
 French knights
 escape,

Sayde sir Gy of Burgoyne : " ȝitt or I goo
 The sowdane saþt haue a stroke or twoo
 þat glade saþt hym no glee." 483

He ferkes owte with a fawchon)
 And hittis þ^e Sawdane one þ^e crownn)
 Vn to þ^e girlyþ welle nea. 486

after throwing the
 Saracen lords into
 the fire.

Thay tuke þ^e grete lordes with Ire
 And brynte þam) in þat bale fire,
 Those doughty garte they dye. 489

Bot sythen) þ^e Sarazenes Crouned sir Garsy,
 þay ofte sythes chaste oure cheualry,
 A bolde Sarazene was he. 492

(42)

Alle þat was þan) in þat place
 Thay slewe clenly thorow goddis grace,
 Oure worthy men) & wyghte. 495

And Sythen owte at þ ^e ȝates they ȝede		They and horses ready saddled,
Ilkone of þam fande a whitte stede		
Sadilt & redy dighte.	498	
Thay stirtt vp on those stedis full steryn,		which they mount and start for Paris.
þay fande no man þat þam wolde warne,		
Oure ferse men felle in fighte.	501	
And als þ ^e Cronekiñ ȝitt wiȝt saye		
Eeuen to Fraunce þay tuke þ ^e weye,		
To Paresche þay ryde full righte.	504	

(43)

Bot ȝitt þay wolde noghte come att Paresche		On their way they go to St. Denys to return thanks.
To þay had offerde to Seyne Denys,		
And wendis to þat abbaye ;	507	
And leues þaire stedis righte at þ ^e ȝate		
And wightly In þay tuke þ ^e gate,		
þaire prayers for to say.	510	
And by þay hade þayre prayers made		
Agayne þay come with owten bade,		
Thaire horse þan were away.	513	Their horses vanish, and the bells ring of their own accord.
And alle þe bellis þat in þat abbaye was		
Range allonde thorowe goddis grace,		
Whils it was pryme of þ ^e day.	516	

(44)

And there-by wiste those lordis of pryce		
That þ myghte of god and Seynt denys		
Had broghte þam thethyn a way :	519	
Thaire horse þat so there come to handes		
Was thorowe þ ^e prayere of seynt Denys,		
Thus wiȝt þ ^e Cronecle say.	522	
Bischope Turpyne þan come fro paresche townn		Bisshop Turpin comes from Paris to pray for Roland and his companions.
To seynt Denys with grete Processiownn		
For these lordes for to pray	525	
That was in lumbardy at þe were :		
And when he sawe Rowlande there		
He saide : " lordis, morne we may."	528	

(45)

	Thay meruelde why þ ^e bellis so range,	
	And þ ^e clergy leste theire sange,	
	Thoghte ferly of þat fare ;	531
[leaf 69]	Thay hade meruelle whate it myghte mene.	
	Als sone als þ ^e byschoppe hade Rowlande sene	
	To hym he went full þare.	534
Turpin inquires of Roland where his men are.	Sayd : " a, Rowlande, how fares lumbardye And all oure nobil cheuallry,	
	þat þou hade with the thare ? "	537
Roland says they are slain.	" Certis, sir Bischoppe, it is noghte to layne, The sarazenes hase oure gude men slayne,	
	þou seese of þam na mare."	540

(46)

The Bishop grieues over the defeat of the French.	The Bisshop keste his staffe hym fro þe mytre of his hede also :	
	" I saß neuer were the more,	513
	Ne oper habite for to bere,	
	Bot buske me bremly to þ ^e were,	
	And lerene one slyke a lore.	546
	A ! Mary mylde, whare was thi myght,	
	þat þou lete thi men thus to dede be dighte,	
	þat wighte & worthy were ?	549
	Art þou noghte halden of myghtis moste,	
	Full Conceyuede of þ ^e holy goste ?	
	Me ferlys of thy fare.	552

(47)

He reproaches the Virgin for deserting them.	Had þou noghte, Marye, ȝitt bene borne Ne had noghte oure gud men thus bene lorne ?	
	þ ^e wyte is all in tha.	555
	Thay faughte holly in thy ryghte,	
	þat þus with dole to dede es dyghte,	
	A ! Marie, how may this bee ? "	558
	The Bischoppe was so woo þat stowndd,	
	He wolde noghte byde appon þ ^e growndd	
	A Sakerynge for to see,	561

Bot forthe he wente, his handis he wrange,
And flote with Marye euer amange
For þ^e losse of oure menȝee.

564

(48)

Then Come kyng Charls appon Pilgremage
Fro Paresche town with his Baronage

Charles arrives
from Paris on
pilgrimage.

To seynt Denys he went.

567

Bot when the Bischoppe mett with þ^e kyng
He wolde noghte say "gud mornynge,"

Ne ones his browes blenke.

570

þ^e kyng hade meruelle what þat myght be,
Bot als sone als he Rowlande see

Wyghtly to hym he went.

573

Be Rowlande had his tale tolde

Roland tells him
what has
happened

þ^e kyng myghte noghte a tere holde,

For bale hym thought he brynt.

576

(49)

"Allas," he saide, "Cosyn syne,
Whare are alle þ^e nobil knyghtis of myne
þat euer to fighte were fayne?"

579

"Sir, bi god & by sayne Iohn,
þe Sarazenes alle bot vs hase slone,

how only four of
the whole army
had escaped,

It is no bote to layne.

582

Bot we were taken in to holde,

Bot als þat criste hym selfe wolde

þat we wan owte agayne,

585

Thorowe þ^e grace of god om[n]ipotent,

and how they
had slain the
Sultan.

In his chambir or we went

þ^e Sowdane haue we slayne."

588

(50)

Genyoun saide: "lorde, by my Rede,

[leaf 60, back]

All if þ^e Sowdane thus be dede

Thay wiȝt haue anoper newe,

591

Ganelon advises
Charles to submit
to the Sultan.

A more schrewe þan was the toþer,
Garcy þat is his awenn brothir,
þat more Barett wiþ brewer. 594
These landes of hym I rede 3e halde
Or he wiþ kindiþ cares fuþ calde,
3he trowe þis tale for trewe. 597
Or eþs with In thies monethes three
Als qwhitte of Fraunce saþ 3he bee
Als 3he it neuer ne knewe." 600

(51)

Turpin curses
him,

"Now cristis Malyson," quod þe Bischoppe," myghte he
haue
þat Charle firste this conceþ gaffe
& noghte bot it be righte ! 603
To make homage to Sarazene,
Iesu kepe vs fro þat pyne
And Marie his modir bryghte ! 606
Bot at home, sir kynge, þou saþ kepe naþe
Bot alle thy gud men with the tane,
þat worthy are & wighte, 609
Appon 3one cursede sarazenes to were,
And venge the one þam with dynt of spere,
þat þus thi peris hase dyghte. 612

(52)

and calls on
Charles to avenge
the death of his
men.

And alle þe Clergy vndir-take I
Off alle Fraunce fuþ sekerly
þay saþ wende to þat were. 615
Of þe pope I haue pouste,
Att my byddyng saþ þay bee
Bothe with schelde and spere." 618

He sends
messengers to
all the clergy

The Bischoppe sendis ferre & nere
To monke, Chanoun, Preste and frere,
And badd þam graythe þaire gere, 621

and proclaims a
crusade.

And keste þaire [care] clene þam froo,
Come helpe to feghte one goddis foo,
Alle þat a swerde may bere. 624

(53)

The Clergy grauntes alle <i>þer</i> to, Als doghety men) of dede solde do, þat worthy were & wyghte.	The Clergy assemble to this	627
Be comen) was wekes three Thare semblede a ful faire menzhe, In baneres burneschid bryghte.		630
A hundrethe thowsande were redy bownn) Of Prestis þat werede schauen) crownn), And fresche men for to fighte.	number of 100,000	633
Thay lightede appon) a lawnde so clere Vndir þe Mownte Mowmartere, It was a ful faire syghte.	at Mount Mowmartere.	636

(54)

With þat þe Bischoppe Turpyn) come, And also a Cardynaþ of Rome, With a full grete powere,	Turpin arrives, accompanied by a Cardinal,	639
Thay semblede appon) a noþer syde Baners bett with mekiþ pryde, þ ^e clergy þat was so clere.		642
And appon) þaire knees þay knelide down), The Bischoppe gaf þam) his Benyson), Alle hollyly in fere.		645
And thane sent he In to the kyng And badde hym forth his Baronns brynge, And saide, "my Prestis are here."	[l. of 70] and sends to inform the king he is ready.	648

(55)

Bot 3itt this false Genyoun) Conselde þe kyng ay with tresoun) þat hym selfe solde duelle <i>þer</i> stih :	Ganelon advises Charles to stay at home, and let Turpin go by himself.	651
"And lette þe Bischoppe wende his waye, Doo at 3one Sarazenes that he maye, There saþ he feghte his fiþ :		654
And byde thi selfe in this Citee. Slayne in þ ^e felde gife þat þou bee Alle Fraunce may like it full ih."		657

And with his concelle and his fare
 Slyke conceit he gaffe þam þare
 The kyngre grauntis þer tilh. 660

(56)

Charles tells
 Turpin that he
 will not go.

And forthe to þ^e Bischoppe þan sendis he,
 And for thyngre þat euer myghte bee
 He solde hym neuer be-swyke. 663

Bot take his nobil Cheualrye
 And wende forthe in to lumbardy,
 "For I wil kepe my Ryke." 666

The Bischoppe saide: "by goddes tree,
 Or þat Charls doo so with mee

Turpin swears
 he will curse
 Charles.

Ful ih it sah hym lyke!
 I sah hym curse in myddis his face.
 What! sah he nowre with sory grace
 Be-come ane Eretyke!" 669

(57)

Turpin goes to
 Charles and

The Bischoppe leues his powere thare
 And In to þ^e Cite gane he fare
 And þ^e Cardenaht with hym. 675

And when he come by fore þ^e kyngre
 There was none oþer haylsynge
 Bot stowte wordes and grym. 678

He saide: "allas, sir Charlyone,
 That þou thus sone be comes a crayon,
 Me thyнке thi body fulh dym. 681

curse his false
 advisers,

Alle the false counceit þat touches þ^e crown
 Here gyffe I þam goddis malyson,
 Bothe in lyfe and lyme. 684

(58)

And Cristis Malyson myghte he haue
 That fyrste to þ^e þat Conceit gaffe,
 And here I curse the, þou kyngre! 687

Be cause þou lyffes in Eresye,
 Thou ne dare noghte fyghte one goddes Enemy :"
 & a buke forthe gane he brynge : 690
 And þ^e Sertayne sothe als I þow telle
 He dyde all þat to cursynge felle,
 this was no manere of lesynge. 693
 "Nowe arte þou werre þan any Sarazene,
 Goddes awenn wedirwyne,
 Of sorowe now may þou synge ! 696

(59)

If Cristyndome loste bee
 þ^e wyte bese casten one the,
 Allas, þat þou was borne ! 699
 Criste for the sufferde mare dere,
 Sore wondede with a spere,
 And werede a Crown of thorne. 702
 And now þou dare noghte in the felde
 For hym luke vndir thy schelde,
 I tell þ^e saule for lorne. 705
 Men wiþ deme aftir thi daye
 how falsely þou forsuke thi laye,
 And calle the kynge of skorfe." 708

(60)

Bot then kyng Charls wiþ owttē wene
 At the byschoppe was so tene
 A fawchone hase he drawen, 711
 And þ^e Bischoppe styrtē þan to a brande,
 Hent it owt of a sqwyers hande,
 Both wiþ myghte & mayne, 714
 And braydes owte þ^e blade bare :
 Be myghtfull god þan he sware :
 " If I wiste to be slayne, 717
 Charls, and þou touche mee
 Thou fares noghte forthir fete thre
 Or it be qwitt agayne." 720

and excommuni-
 cates Charles
 himself.

Turpin taunts
 Charles with
 cowardice.

[leaf 70, back]

Charles tries to
 kill Turpin,

but Turpin
 defies him.

(61)

The barons go
between and
separate them.

Than grete lordes ȝede þam by-twene,
The kyngs comande his knyghtis kene

The Bischoppe for to taa. 723

And þ^e Bischoppe said : "sirres, I wiȝ ȝow no scathe

And bi my faythe it es grete wathe

Bot if ȝe late me gaa. 726

Turpin declares
he will kill the
first that touches
him.

For certis I wiȝ noghte taken) bee

With nane þat I now here see,

Bot if ȝee firste me slaa. 729

And whilk of ȝow þat touches me

With owttē) harme passes noghte hee."

Than) with his horse come þay. 733

(62)

"Here," he said, "I a-vowe to mylde marie,

And to hir sone god almyghttye,

I saȝ noghte leue the soo. 735

For we are halden) with þ^e righte

Clerkes appon) cursede men) to fighte,

I calle the goddes foo. 738

Turpin declares
he will shut
Charles up
in Paris,

I saȝ gerre buske my batelle bown)

And halde the, Charls, with In) þis townn),

With-owt þou saȝ noghte goo. 741

Was neuer kyng þat werede a crown)

So foule rebuytē) with Relygyon),

þou saȝ sone witt of woo. 744

(63)

Goddes byddyngē) hast þou broken),

Thurghe þ^e traytour speche spoken)

Alle Cristendom) walde þou schende. 747

When) Criste sent the a suerde vn) titt

Thou myghte wele wiete it was his wiȝ

that thi selfe solde thedir wende, 750

and destroy and
burn the city.

There-fore I saȝ stroye the,

Bryne and breke downn) thi Cite,

If þou be neuer so ten[d]e. 753

Then to 3one sarazenes wende saht I,
 Fighte with þam whils I may dry,
 In goddes seruyce to ende." 756

(64)

The Bischoppe & þ^e Cardynere
 Appon þaire horses gatt bothe in fere,
 Owte of þ^e townn þay rade 759

Turpin and his
 army advance to
 besiege Paris.

Also faste als þay myghte dryve [leaf 71]

To the grete Batelle be-lyfe,
 And Buskede baners full brade. 762

They Romede to-warde Paresche town,
 And thoghte to bete the Cyte downe
 With þe powere þat he hade. 765

"Slyke clerkes beris my Benysone,
 For trewere men of Relygyoun
 In erthe were neuer none made." 768

(65)

Charls ouer þe walles bi-helde,¹
 And sawe the hoste come in the felde
 And drawe to-wardes þ^e town. 771

Bot þan said Duke Naymes vn to þ^e kyng:
 "Sir, 3onder comes vs new tythynges
 With Baners buskede alle bown. 774

Naymes advises
 Charles to yield,

I rede 3e praye 3one clergy sesse
 And aske þ^e Bischoppe forgyfnesse
 And Absolucioun. 777

and ask Turpin's
 forgiveness.

And graunt hym graythely for to goo
 For to feghte appon goddis foo,
 Or loste es thi renownn." 780

(66)

"In faithe," saide þ^e kyng, "I graunt."
 The Bischoppe es gude & on evynhaunt
 With Baners bryghte of hewe 783

Charles assents.

¹ MS. & bihelde.

Be-fore þam a furlange & mare.
 The kynge vndid his hede alle bare,
 The Bischoppe wele hym knewe, 786
 Turpin grants Charles absolution. And appon his knees he knelid down
 And take his absolucyoun,
 theire Ioye by-gane to newe. 789
 [No sign of any omission in the MS. .

 ] 792

(67)

The kynge says : " haly fader free,
 This gilte I praye the forgyffe me
 And I wiþ wirke þour wiþ. 795
 Turpin encampe outside Paris, And with þour clergie tournes agayne,
 Riste and Ryott þow by þ^e water of sayne,
 Ay whiþs I come þow tiþ. 798
 The Bischoppe grauntis hym in þat tyde,
 And pyghte Paulyons wiþ mekiþ pryde,
 With wyne & welthes at wiþ. 801
 while the King collects his forces. The kynge in to þ^e Citee went
 And aftir his Baronage he sent,
 Alle forwardes to fulfiþ. 804

(68)

And by the thre wekes comen were
 Charls had semblede a faire powere,
 Hym selfe come aþ at hande. 807
 Erles, Dukes, & þ^e xij ducheþers,
 Bothe barons and Bachelers,
 knyghtis full heuenhande. 810
 Thay offerde alle at seynt denys,
 And grete lordes to armes chesse,
 And Charls take his hande. 813
 And thus remewes that grete powere,
 The leuenynge of [þair] baners clere
 Lyghtenes aþ þat lande. 816
 In three weeks a large army assembles.

[*Certius*] *Passus* : a *Witt*

(69)

Thus Charls with his cheualrye
 Vn to he come at lumbardy
 In no place wolde he hone. 819

And to the Sarazenes was it tolde
 That Charls make werre appon þam wolde,
 To venge þat are was done. 822

[leaf 71, back]
 The Saracens hear
 of the approach
 of Charles.

The grete lordes þan to gedir spake :
 " It is better þat we *sir* Garcy take,
 And Crownn hym þ^e Sowdane Sone." 825

Than sent þay to many an hethyn knyghte,
 þay badde þat alle solde come þat myghte,
 By þ^e heghten day at none. 828

(70)

When þay were semblede sekerly,
 Thay Crownnede þ^e Sowdane *sir* Garcy,
 þat Solance was to see[ne]. 831

Garcy is crowned
 Sultan.

Sexty knyghtis of dyuerse lande
 Ilkon sent hym sere presande
 To witt with owtten wene. 834

Thay dressede on hym a dyademe,
 And made hym Emperour so hym seme,
 These knyghtis þat were kene. 837

Syne present hym with golde,
 And Stones of vertu þat was holde,
 þ^e beste in erthe myghte bene. 840

(71)

The kyng of Massedoyne lande
 Sent þ^e Sowdane a presande,
 þ^e Meryeste one molde : 843

The King of
 Macedon sends
 him sixty
 maidens,

Sexty Maydyns faire of face,
 That cheffeste of his kyngdome was,
 And faireste appon folde : 846

sixty falcons,	Sexty Fawconns faire of flyghte, And Sexti stedis noble and wyghte, In euer-ilke Iournay bolde.	849
sixty knights mounted,	And appon Ilke a stede a knyghte sittande With a fawcon appon his hande, And a cowpe full of golde.	852

(72)

sixty greyhounds and sixty hounds,	Sexty grewhondes vn to þ ^e gamen, And Sexti Raches rynnande in samen, þ ^e beste in erthe myghte bee.	855
	He come hym selfe with this presande And broghte in his awenn hande, þat was worthe thiese three :	858
	In visebiß a full riche stone, A Safre þ ^e beste þat myghte be one To seke alle Crystiauntee.	861
and a splendid sapphire.	The Sowdane was full fayne of this, And kyndely gan his cosyn kysse With mekiß solempnytee.	864

(73)

The Sultan gives a feast.	When he his powere semblede hade, A ryalle feste þ ^e Sowdan made Of worthy men in wede.	867
	Of alle þ ^e damesels bryghte & schene þ ^e Sowdane hade hym selfe I wene paire althere Maydynhede ;	870
	By þam ilkone he laye a nyghte, And sythen Mariede hir vn-to a knyghte, þay leffed one haythen lede.	873
	So mekiß luste of lechery Was a-mange þat cheualry þat þay [myg]hte noghte wele spede.	876

(74)

To Charls now wiþ I torne agayne		Charles presses on to Milan.
þat passes ouer Mountayne & playne,		
At [Me]layne wolde he bee ;	879	
And when he come in to þat stede		[leaf 72]
Where als þ ^e cristyn men by fore weren dede,		
Off Fraunce so grete plentee,	882	
There heghe appon an hiþ appon highte		Turpin offers a Mass for the French who had been slain.
Turpyñ garte an awtre dyghte,		
þat alle þ ^e folke myghte See ;	885	
And off the Trynytee a messe he says,		
And hertly for þ ^e saules he prayes,		
And the bodyes þat þare gan dye.	888	

(75)

The Bisshoppe sone gane hym reuesche,		
In gude entent he says a messe,		
In þe name of god almyghte :	891	
He blyssede þ ^e awtere wiþ his hande,		The bread and wine are sent down from heaven.
And a fayre oste of brede þer appon he fande,		
þat euer he sawe wiþ syghte.	894	
His chalesse was so full of wyne		
There myghte no more hafe gone þer in,		
It come fro heuen on highte.	897	
He dide his messe forthe to þ ^e ende		
And thankede gode þat it hym sende,		
And Marie his modir bryghte.	900	

(76)

The Bisshoppe in his hert was fayne		
And thankede god with all his mayne,		
And Marie his modir free.	903	Turpin thanks God for the miracle.
He tolde þ ^e hoste wiþ lowde steuen,		
How brede & wyne was sent fro heuen,		
Fro god of moste poustee :	906	
“ And all þat euer hase sene this syghte		
þee are als clene of syn, I plyghte,		
Als þat day borne were þee.	909	

And who so endys in this felde
 In his byggynghe saff he belde
 Euer more in blysse to bee." 912

(77)

Turpin arms
 himself,
 The Bischoppe þan) keste of his abytte
 And aftir armour he askede tytte,
 For egernesse he loughē. 915
 A kirtill and a corsett fyne,
 þer ouer he keste an acton) syne,
 And it to hym he droughe : 918
 An hawbarke with a gesserante,
 His gloues weren) gude & auenaunte ;
 And als blythe als birde one boughe 921
 and mounts his
 steed.
 He tuke his helme & sythen) his brande,
 Appon) a stede a spere in hande,
 Was grete and gud ynoghe. 924

(78)

Sayse " I praye ȝow, all my cleregy here,
 Assembles vndire my Banere,
 The vawarde wiþ I haue. 927
 He says he
 will lead the van,
 Charls & his knyghtis kene
 Lete Erles & Baronis with hym bene,
 Bothe Sqwyers & knaue, 930
 I beseke freschely for to fyghte,
 That þ^e [le]wede men) may se with syghte,
 And gud Ensamplē haue. 933
 and encourages
 his men.
 Standis [now baldly f]or ȝoure trouthe ;
 Appon) ȝo[ne Sarazen]es haues no rewthe ;
 For golde in erthe, none saue." 936

(79)

Thus Ch[arls led]eth a faire menȝhe
 For[th to Mela]yne, þat riche Cite,
 Braydes vp Baners ȝare. 939

And when þ^e Sowdane hase þam sene, [leaf 72, back]
 He comandes his knyghtis kene,
 þat þay solde make þam ȝare : 942
 And Or he wolde passe owte of þ^e townn,
 He made his Offerande to Mahownn,
 þ^e wars leue gode þay fare. 945
 And sythen owt of that Citee,
 Off heythen men an hugge menȝhee
 þat Semyde als breme als bara. 948

(80)

Sir Arabaunt, with Ire and hete,
 A Furlange bi-fore þ^e BateHe grete,
 Come and askede fighte. 951
 And by-fore of oure folke had he slayne
 Bothe þ^e lorde of Melayne
 And many an oþer knyght. 954
 Than sayde þ^e Bischoppe : "so mot I spede,
 He saß noghte ruysses hym of this dede,
 If I cane rede a ryghte !" 957
 And or any knyght myght gete his gere
 The Bischoppe gart hym with a spere
 Appon his tepet lighte. 960

(81)

Turpyn strake hym so sekerly
 Thurgh þe breste bone aß plenerly,
 A lange ȝerde and more, 963
 That dede he daschede to þ^e grounde,
 Grysely gronaunde in that stownde,
 Woundede wonderly sore. 966
 The Bischoppe þam lighte full apertly
 And off he hewes his hede in hy,
 þat are was breme als bare. 969
 His horse vn to þ^e Cristen Oste gan spede,
 A Sqvyere broghte agayne his stede,
 And one he leppe righte thare. 972

Sir Arabant
slays many
French knights,

but is himself
slain by Turpin.

(82)

Turpin's esquire
wishes to spoil
the body of Sir
Arabant.

The Bischoppe sqwyere in the place
Saw þat þ^e kynge dede was
þat had bene of grete powere ; 975
His helme & his hawberke holde,
Frette ouere with rede golde,
With stones of vertue dere ; 978
His gowere pendande on þ^e grounde,
It was worthe a thowsande pownde,
Off rubys and Safere : 981
He lowtede down, vp wolde itt ta,
The Bischoppe bad hym fro it ga :
"Go fonnge the anoper fere. 984

(83)

Turpin bids him
go and fight.

To wyn the golde þou arte a fole,
þou bygynnes sone for to spoyle,
Loo ! 3onder comes moo. 987
Thou settis more by a littiþ golde,
þat þou seese lye appon þ^e molde,
þan to fighte one goddes foo. 990
Loo ! 3onder comes Sarazenes in þ^e felde,
Go kiþ þam down vndir thi schelde,
Slyk [w]orchippes were gude to do." 993
He tuke þ^e pendande in his hande,
The Bishoppe bett hym with his brande
[þat] he keste it hym fro. 996

(84)

[leaf 73]
Darnadowse
challenges Charles
to single combat.

With þat come girdande sir Darnadowse,
A nobiþ knyghte and a cheuallrouse,
Prekande one a stede. 999
He was þ^e chefe of Famagose,
A Sarazene þat fayne wolde wyn lose,
And to þ^e Cristen oste gan sped. 1002
He bad sende owte Charlyon
If he dare come to wynn pardoun
A bofett for to bede. 1005

He wolde noghte fighte bot with a kynge,
He calde hym selfe with owte lesynge

The chefe of hethyn thede. 1008

(85)

Then kyng Charls take his spere hym to,
The Bischoppe Turpyn and oþer mo

Prayed god solde hym sped. 1011

"A, dere lorde," said Rowlande in heghe,

"Late me fare to fighte for thee,

For hym þat one rode gan blede." 1014

Than Charls sweris by saynt paule :

"Sen ilke a man fehtis for his saule

I saH for myn do mede. 1017

Slayne in the felde gif þat I bee

Kynge off Fraunce here make I the,

With reghte þ° Reme to lede." 1020

(86)

þan with owtten any more habade

Theis two kynges to-gedir rade,

With Ire and grete envy. 1023

And at þ° firste course þat þay ranne

Thies kynges two with horse & manne

At þ° grounde bothe gun ly. 1026

Deliuerly vp sone bothe þay stirtt,

And drewe þaire swerdis with noble hertt,

With owtten noyse or cry. 1029

Thay dalt so derfely with þaire brandes,

Thay hewe theire scheldis to þaire handis

In cantells hyngand by. 1032

(87)

So darfely bothe þaire dynttis þay driste

A littiH while þay wolde þam riste,

þ° Sarazene prayede hym styntt : 1035

CHARL. ROM. II.

D

Roland begs to
be allowed to
take his place,

but Charles
refuses.

Charles and
Darnadowse
engage.

Darnadowse tries
to convert
Charles.

"Nowe, certis, sir," he saide, "me rewes of thee
A Cristynn man þat þou solde bee,
thou arte so stronge of dyntt. 1038
Bot torne vn to oure lawes & take þam to,
And I sañ gyffe the rewmes two,
And elles wiñ þou harmes hentt." 1041
Bot þ^e Bischoppe Turpyñ þan cryes on heghte :
"A ! Charles, thynk appon Marie brighte,
To whayme oure lufe es lentt. 1044

(88)

Turpin calls on
Charles to show
his prowess.

And if euer þat þou hade any myghte,
Latt it nowe be sene in syghte,
What pouste þat þou hase. 1047
Latte neuer oure kynge with dynt of brande
B[e] slayne with 3one Sarazene hande,
Ne ende, lady, in this Place. 1050
A [God] wote we sañ be safe,
[Neuer] the lyk wolde we hafe
Of oure comly kynge of faca. 1053
[þou ma]kere bathe of son and see,
[Pity t]he dole w[e d]ree for thee,
And graunte vs of thi grace ! " 1056

(89)

[leaf 73, back]
Charles breaks
his sword.

[Charles] saide : "sir Bischoppe, nay,
[Neuer sall I] forsake my lay : "
And to-gedir gan þay goo. 1059
So stiffely aythere at othere strake,
Appon his helme sir Charles brake
His nobiñ swerde in two. 1062
Bot þan the franche folke with nobiñ steuenn),
Thay cry vp vn to þ^e kynge of heuenn),
And for þaire lorde were wo. 1065
The Sarazene was curtays in þat fighte
And lawses owt a knyfe full righte,
His swerde he keste hym fro. 1068

Darnadowse
exchanges his
sword for a
dagger.

(90)

And Charles voydede his broken brande, Owte he hent a knyfe in hande, And Samen pay wente fuht tytte.	1071	Charles takes out his dagger,
Thay daschede fuht darfely with paire dynt, Mighte no steryn stele þam stynt, So styffely bothe pay smyte.	1074	
In sondre braste pay many a mayle, Thaire hawberghes thurgh force gan fayle : To see had lordis delitte.	1077	
Bot a fette stroke sir Charls gafe hym one Evyn at þ ^e breste bone, þat strake his hert gan blende.	1080	and stabs the Saracen.

(91)

The Sarazene was dede of þat strake, And Charls gan this fende vp take, And with his awenn brande	1083	Charles slays Darnadowse with his own sword.
He broches hym so boldely That his hert blode sekerly rane to oure kynges hande.	1086	
And thare he wane þ ^e sarazene swerde, And certis þat with one the erthe He conquered many a lande.	1089	
The Cristen folke were neuer so fayne ; Bot by the kynge was horsede agayne þ ^e Batehs were doande.	1092	

(92)

And hawberkes sone in schredis were schorne, And beryns thorowe the bodys borne, And many a sarazene slayne.	1095	A general fight ensues.
Knyghtis one þ ^e bent bledis, Many lay stekede vndir stedis, In gilden gere fuht gay[n]e :	1098	
Other with glafes were girde thurgh evyn : We may thanke gode þat is in heuen þat lent vs myghte & mayne.	1101	

Thay sloughe þam downn with swerdis bright,
 þ° Cristynnnes faughte in goddis righte,
 þ° Bischoppe loughe for fayne. 1104

(93)

A Saracen wounds Turpin.	Bot, als þ° Cronakið gitt wið telle, þer come a sarazene fers and felle And to þ° Bischoppe glade. 1107 And stroke hym righte thorowe þ° thee, And agayne to þ° hethen oste gane flee, And Turpyñ after hym rade. 1110
The biashop pursues and slays him.	The Bischoppe folouede hym so ferre þat þ° sarazene hade þ° werre For þ° maystrie þat he [made]. 1113 He stroke hym so in þ° sowdane syghte, He fande neuer man þat after myghte Hele þ° hurt [he had]e. 1116

(94)

Turpin is sur- rounded.	Bot they helde In þ° Bischoppe in þat rowtte þat he ne myghte noghte wyn owte, And þer he [was doande]. 1119 The kyng of Massedoyne land with a spere, þ° Bischope fro his horse gane bere, And sette [on hym his hande] 1122
[leaf 74]	The sarazenes sware he solde be dede, And þ° kyng sayde, "naye," in that stede For no Sarazene liffande. 1125 And righte als þay solde oure Bischoppe slo, Thay smote þ° kyng of Massaydoyne fro Glenly of his reghte hande. 1128

(95)

Bot þan kynges men of Massaydoyne weren wo,
 When þay saughe þaire lorde was wondede soo,
 And trowde he walde be dede. 1131

- Thay Braydede owte swerdes full bryghte
 Agaynes þ^e Sowdane folke to fighte,
 Full styffely in þat stede : 1134
 For that gane fyfetene thowsande; dy
 Of þ^e Sowdans cheualry,
 Laye bledande þam full rede. 1137
 And with þat Turpyn gatt a-waye
 To Charls Oste, full fayne were þay,
 A horse þay to hym lede. 1140
- (96)
- Bot when þ^e Bischoppe was horsede agayne,
 Alle þ^e cleregy weren full fayne,
 And presede in to þ^e place. 1143
 So depe wondes þat day þay dalt,
 þat many on wyde opyn walt,
 þat wikkidly wondede was. 1146
 Thay sloughe so many an heythen kynge
 þat at þ^e laste þay tuke to flyinge,
 Als god vs gaffe þ^e grace. 1149
 Many a Sarazene garte þay falle,
 And Turpyn with his Clergy alle
 Folowede faste one þ^e chase. 1152
- (97)
- And Charls on þ^e toper syde
 Sloughe þam downn with wondis wyde,
 the doughty garte þay dy. 1155
 The Sowdane hym selfe so harde was stedde
 þat with Ten thowsande a-way he fledde,
 And faste to Melayne gatt he. 1158
 The Cristen men chasede þam to þ^e barres,
 And sloughe righte there fele folke & fresche,
 Aȝ þat þere walde byde & bea. 1161
 Bot þam kynge Charls tuke þ^e playne
 And Semblede aȝ his folke a-gayne,
 To luke how beste myghte [þe]. 1164
- The French
make a charge
- Turpin's clergy
attack the
Saracens,
- and put them to
flight.
- The Sultan flies
to Milan.

(98)

Thay myghte noghte þ^e Cite wynn,
 The strenghe of þ^e Sarazenes þat were with-In.
 Turpin advices
 Charles to defer þe Bischoppe said : " I rede 1167
 Of oure knyghtes in þ^e felde
 es many wondede vndir schelde,
 And also some are dede ; 1170
 the assault till
 the next day. And 3one Sarazenes full of tresone es,
 There I concelle bothe more & lesse
 We stirre noghte of this stede, 1173
 Ne or to-morne serche neuer a wounde,
 Bot luke þan who may be sownde ;
 Lete Criste wirke : " & forthe he zede.

(99)

Here to a[c]ordes euerilkon,
 Lordes [haf] paire horses tone,
 Charles agrees
 and the French
 fix their camp. And Comen es the nyghte. 1179
 Fo[r alle] þ^e Sarazenes there
 Th[ay ne mygh]te no forthir fare,
 Bot bydis in brenys bryghte. 1182
 Ch[arles acordede] als þay rade,
 All [nyghte on]e þe bent þay bade
 With standardes euen vp streghte. 1185
 [leaf 74, back]
 The King asks
 Turpin to show
 his wound. The kynge prayede the Bischoppe fre
 His wonde þat he wolde late hym see,
 þat he hade tane in þat fighte. 1188

(100)

Bot þ^e Bischoppe saide : " a vowe to god make I here,
 There saß no salue my wonde come nere,
 Ne no hose of my thee : 1191
 neither to eat
 nor drink till
 Milan is taken. Ne mete ne drynke my hede come In,
 The Cite of Melayne or we it wynn,
 Or ellis þer fore to dye." 1194
 He garte dele his vetetß then
 Firste amanges oure wonded men,
 Bot no mete neghe wolde hee. 1197

Bot als so sore wondede als he was,
 Knelande he his prayers mase
 To gode of moste Pouste. 1200

(101)

Oure folke hade done so doughtily	The French
That many of þam weren ful wery,	remain all night
So hade þay foghten þan.	1203
Bot one þ ^e morne þ ^e Cristen stode	
A thowsande ouer theire fete in theire blode	
Of theire awenn wondes wafie.	1206
Othere refreschynghe noghte many hade	without any
Bot bloody water of a slade,	refreshment.
þat thurghe þ ^e Oste ran.	1209
The Sowdane sent a Messangere	
To kyng Charles als 3e may here,	
And that sawe many a man.	1212

(102)

þ ^e Messangere bare a wande	Garcy sends a
Of ane Olefe in his hande,	message to
In takynnynghe he come of pece.	Charles that he
And lowde he cryede appon Charls þ ^e kyng,	1215
And saide he myghte his handis wryng,	
"Appon lyfe if þat he es :	1218
For oure Sowdane hase by Mahowunn sworne	will fight the
þat he saße mete hym here to-morne,	next day.
With full prowde men in prese :	1221
With fowrty thowsande of helmes bryghte,	
Was neuer 3itt frekkere men to fighte	
Sene in hethynnesse."	1224

(103)

And Charles ansuerde at þat tide :	Charles says he
"In faythe I saß þam here habyde	will be ready.
Wode giffe þat þay were.	1227

If þat he brynge alle þ^e Sarazenes
 þat es alle heythynnesse with-In,
 Hyne wiþ I noghte fare." 1230
 The Messangere agayne þan) rade,
 And they sett wache and still habade
 Whiþs Pryme was passede & mare. 1233
 Before noon
 the Saracens
 appear. Bot or þ^e noþee neghede nee,
 To þam) þan) sougte a felle semble
 With Baners breme als bare. 1236

(104)

Charles himself
 takes the van. Bot than sir Charles spekes full gudely
 To Rowlande his nevewe þat stode hym by,
 And seid; "sir, so god the spede, 1239
 This day wirke þou Manfully
 With thi nobiþ Cheualry,
 And of þ^e Sarazens hafe [no dre]de. 1242
 Thou saþ see þat I saþ noghte be sparede,
 My selfe saþ haue the vawarde,
 There Iesu [Crist þe sp]ede." 1245
 [leaf 75] The trumpetes trynes one righte þan),
 To Ioyne so Iolyly thay by-gane,
 Oure worthy men) in wede. 1248

(105)

The French
 charge the
 Saracens and Thay ruysschede Samen) with swilke a rake
 That many a Sarazene laye on his bake,
 & one þ^e lawnde righte þer þay lay, 1251
 Full Grisely gronande one the grete,
 Stekyde vndir stedis fete,
 And liste no thyng of playe. 1254
 So darfely þan) þay dyngþe þam) downn),
 Thay saide þ^e myghte of saynt Mahownn)
 Was clenely aþ a-waye. 1257
 "A! mount Ioye!" oure lordes gane crye,
 And Charles with his cheualrye
 Full freschely faughte þat day. 1260
 make great
 slaughter.

(106)

They hewe of hethen) hedis in hye,		The French drive the Saracens back
Oure Cristen) men) so sekirly		
Of þam) hade littiſt drede,	1263	
Bot brittenesse þam) with brandis bare		
And Sarazenes thurghe þ° schuldire schare,		
þat to þ° girdiſt it zede.	1266	
Thay tuke none hede of gudes nore golde,		
Lay neuer so mekiſt appon) the molde,		
Oure worthy men) in wede ;	1269	
Bot beris abake the Bateſis brade,		
Fowrty thowsande in a slade,		
Laye ſtekede vnder ſtede.	1272	

(107)

And so harde by-stade was þ° Sowdane		
Hym ſelfe with ten thowsande þam)		
To Melayne tuke þ° gate.	1275	to the city of Milan.
Oure Cristen) knyghtis with þaire ſperes		
The hyndirmaste fro þaire blonkes beres,		
And chacede þam) to þ° zate.	1278	
The owte barres hew þay downn),		
And ſlewe hethynn) kynges with crownn),		
And þaire powers þer-ate.	1281	
To ſawtte þ° Cite ſadly þay by-gann),		They prepare to aſſault it.
Off Criſtyn) men) many a cruelle man),		
þ° hethyn) wex aſt mate.	1284	

(108)

With ſperis & with ſpryngaldes faſte,		
With dartis kenely owte þay caſte,		
Bothe with myghte & mayne.	1287	
With gownnes & with grete ſtones		Guns and engines are got ready.
Graythe gownnes ſtoppede thoſe gones		
With peletes vs to payne.	1290	
Oure Criſtyn) men) that were of price		
Bendis vp bowes of devyce,		
And Bekirs þam) agayne.	1293	

Apponⁿ bothe the sydis so freschely þay fighte
 That by it drewe vn to the nyghte
 Fele folke of fraunce were slayne. 1296

(109)

There were of oure clergy dede
 And oper lordes in þat stede,
 Or thay of sawte walde sesse. 1299
 By þanⁿ þay sawe it was no bote to byde
 And fro þ^e Cite warde þay ryde,
 Oure prynces prouede in presse. 1302
 The Bischoppe es so woundede that tyde
 With a spere thorowe owte the syde,
 þat one his ribbis ganⁿ rese. 1305
 Thurgh þ^e schelde & the browe bare
 A schafte monde of his flesche he schare :
 lordynges, þis es no lese. 1308

(110)

He pullede it owte, keste it hym fro,
 And weryde þ^e handis þat it come fro,
 And þat it lete forthe glyde. 1311
 The Sowdane ouer þe wallis by-helde
 And sawe þ^e Cristenⁿ in the felde
 Frowarde þ^e Cite ride. 1314
 And apponⁿ kynge Charls þanⁿ cryes he :
 "What! Charls, thynkes now to flee?
 I trowe the moste habyde. 1317
 I saff the mete to-morne in felde,
 With fourty thowsand vnder schelde,
 Saff fonde to felle thi pryde." 1320

(111)

Says Charls : "þou false hethynⁿ hownde,
 Thou ne dare noghte byde appon þ^e grounde,
 þer euer more worthe the woo 1323

[leaf 75, back]
 Turpin is
 wounded in the
 side with a spear.

The Sultan mocks
 at Charles over
 the walls.

Bot aythire of thies dayes Ilyke
Hase þou stollen a waye lyke a tyke,

Charles threatens
Garcy.

The deueHe myghte with þ goo! 1326

That Cite bot þou ȝelde to me,
And fully trowe and Cristyn be

Appon one god and no moo, 1329

In felde ȝif euer I see the mare

I saß by myghtfulH god" he sware,

"Hewe thi bakke in twoo." 1332

(112)

Then of oure Cristen men in þ^e felde

Many semblede vnder schelde,

And some ware wondede sare. 1335

Thay þat were bothe hale & sownde

Comforthed þam þat were euyH woude,

So als Criste wolde it were. 1338

The kyng þan of his helme tase,

And to the Bischoppe swythe he gase

And sayde: "Fadir, for goddes are, 1341

Charles asks
Turpin to have
his wound
attended to,

Thy woundes that thou walde late me see,

If any Surgeoun myghte helpe thee,

My comforth were þ^e mare." 1344

(113)

"What! wenys þou, Charls," he said, "þat I faynte bee

For a spere was in my thee,

A glace thorowte my syde. 1347

Criste for me sufferde mare;

He askede no salue to his sare,

Ne no more saß I this tyde. 1350

but Turpin
refuses, and
repeats his vow.

I saß neuer ette ne drynke,

Ne with myn eghe slepe a wynke,

Whate bale als euer I byde, 1353

To ȝone Cite ȝolden bee,

Or eßs þerfore in Batette dye,

The sothe is noghte to hyde." 1356

(114)

A messenger
reports that

Als þat stode spekande of þis thyng,
 To Charls come a newe tydyng
 þat Blenkede aȝ his blee : 1359

Thay saide þat one sir Tretigon,
 þat was þ^e Sowdane syster son,
 And þ^e beste of Barbarye,— 1362

assistance is
coming to the
Saracens.

“ Certys, Charls, he comes at hande
 With men of armes a sixty thowsande,
 To strenghe with ȝone Cite.” 1365

.

(115)

[*A leaf seems to be lost here. The French being hard
 pressed, Charles wishes one of his knights to ride off
 to France for help.*]

.

[leaf 76] “ Now sone, when I hafe foughten my fiȝt, 1366
 I saȝ aȝise me gif þat I wilȝ

One thi message to wende.” 1368

(116)

Baldwin refuses
to go.

“ Now sir Bawdewyne, buske, & make þ^e bownn.”
 He saide : “ alas, þou charelyonn,
 þat euer I tuke thi fee ! 1371

For ȝitt my selfe es saffe & sownnde,
 My body hole with owttyn wounde,
 Als þou thi selfe may see ; 1374

I walde noghte, for aȝ thi kyngdome,
 þat euer þat worde vn-to france come
 I solde so feyntly flee. 1377

Gett the a curroure whare þou may,
 For, by god þat awe this day,
 þou saht haue none of mee." 1380

(117)

"A, sir Ingelere, for a knyghte þou art kyde,"
 "Whi, sir Charls, what walde þou þat I dide?
 "I pray the wende thi waye." 1383
 "Bi Iesu Criste þat sittis aboffe,
 Me thynke þou kydde me littill luffe,
 When þou þat worde wolde saye. 1386
 Bot me saht neuer be-tyde þat taynte :
 I hope þou wenys myn herte be feynte,
 I say þ^e schortly, naye : 1389
 þat I saht neuer so fremdly flee,
 God lett me ȝif it his wilhs bee
 Neuer habyste þat daye." 1392

(118)

The Duke Berarde was wondede sare,
 Thurgh þ^e schelde into þ^e Body bare
 He was borne with a brande. 1395
 Of this message þay gun hym frayne,
 bot he hade no worde to speke agayne,
 Bot grymly stude lukande. 1398
 Than Turpyn gan to Charls say :
 "Here arte þou seruede, bi my fay,
 þou fayles of þat þou fande. 1401
 The Duke es wondede so wonder sare
 It ware grete syn to grene hym mare ;
 Gude sir, þou late hym stande." 1404

(119)

Thay prayede a Banarett þan of pryce,
 One sir Barnarde of Parische,
 For grete gyftis he wolde wende. 1407

Sir Ingelere
 refuses to go on
 the message.

Berard is asked
 to go,

but Turpin
 says he is
 wounded.

Barnard agrees
to go, if he is
knighted.

And he saide : "lordynges, by my faye,
I ame ouer symple to 3ow to saye,
Where euer 3e wiþ me sende. 1410
I aske ordir of knyghte þer tiff ;
Bot giffe 3our giftis where 3e wiþ,
Elles 3e be my frende." 1413
Thay made hym knyghte wiþ full gud chere,
He tuke leue at þ^e twelue duȝepere¹
this curtayse knyghte & he[nde]. 1416

(120)

He saide þan : "haue guddaye, Charls, in this stede,
For þou saþ neuer gyffe me brede,
Ne in thy burdynges say, 1419
If I be pore of golde and fee,
þat I fro this grete Iournee
Fayntly fledde a way." 1422

He rides to
the gates of
Milan,
and is there slain.

He rydis euen to þ^e 3atis of Melayne
And there wiþ sarazenes was he slayne,
He dide full wele þat day. 1425

[leaf 76, back]

And Charls for hym in hert was woo,
Bischoppe Turpyñ and othere moo
For his dede sore mournede thay. 1428

(121)

Thus haue þay prayede euerylkone,
Bot there wolde goo neuer one,
The symple thay bade none sende. 1431

Turpin cheers
the army,

The Bischoppe Turpyñ cryede appon highte :
"Sen 3e are so frekke for to fighte
God of his myghte 3ow mende ! 1434

reminding them
that they are
still 10,000.

3itt are we ten thowsande here
That are 3itt bothe hole and fere,
þat wele for kene are kende. 1437
And of gude men þat none wiþ flee,
To fourty thowsande or we dye
In þ^e felde to make paire ende." 1440

¹ MS. duȝepere.

(122)

Bot als Turpyn lengs hym on his brande		Turpin sees an
Ouer an hiß he saw comande		army coming.
ful many a brade Banere,	1443	
The Duke of Bretayne, sir lyonelle,		
That Charls was thare he herde telle		
And hade mystere of powere.	1446	
He broghte hym thirty thowsande fyne,		
Vetaytis gude and nobiß engyne,		
This bolde with full blythe chere,	1449	
Than Turpyn gan to Charls say :		
"I see a felle hoste, bi my fay,		
þat sone wiß neghe vs nere.	1452	

(123)

þone are the sarazenes mekiß of mayne,		He mistakes
The full powere owt of spayne,		them for
þat sone saß full iß spede.	1455	Saracens,
For by hym þat swelt on tree		
This day no sarazene saß I see		
Saß gerre me torne my steda."	1458	
And In his hande he caughte a launce :—		
"Haue gud day, Charls, and grete wele fraunce."—		
& agayne þat hoste he ȝede.	1461	and charges at
In fewter sone he keste his spere		them.
And thoughte the Boldeste down to bere		
þat Batelle walde hym bede.	1464	

(124)

So blody was that Bischoppis wede		
His conysaunce ne ȝit his stede		
þe Bretons ne couthe, noghte knawe.	1467	
Bot als an harawde hym by-helde		A herald recog-
He lukede vp in to his schelde,		nises him by his
And sayde to alle one rawe :	1470	cognisance.
"If Bischoppe Turpyn appon lyve be,		
In faythe, lordynges, þone es he		
þat ȝe se hedirwarde drawe."	1473	

Thay ferlyde why he fewterde his spere,
 "A Mounte Ioye," cryes one þat he myghte here,
 He was glade of þat sawe. 1476

(125)

The Wardayne rydis hym agayne
 And said : "sir Bisshoppe, for goddis payne,
 Who hase greued the ?" 1479
 He take his spere owt of reste adownn
 And gaffe þam) alle his Benysonn),
 the Bretons when) he þam) see. 1482

Turpin telle Sir
 Lionel what has
 happened.

The Bisshoppe tolde þam) of his care
 Bot þan the Bretons hertis were sare,
 For þe dole oure Oste gun) dryee. 1485

[leaf 77]

A Messangere went to telle the kyng,
 So fayne was Charles neuer of thyng
 With eghe þat he gan) see. 1488

(126)

And or Turpyn) myghte his tale halfe telle
 He sawe come houande ouer a felle
 Many a brade Banere ; 1491
 Standardis grete with stalworthe men),
 Sexti thowsande wele myghte þay ben),
 In brenyes burnescht clere. 1494
 Vnder þe cante of a hille
 Oure Bretons beldis & bydis stille,
 When) þay wiste whate þay were. 1497

Turpin sees
 another army
 of Saracens
 coming,

The Bisshoppe saide : "bi goddis myghte,
 Thaym) saff rewe or it be nyghte,
 the tyme þat þay come here ! 1500

and urges the
 king to attack
 them.

(127)

Go we to 3one company
 With ' Mountioye ' baldly & þam) ascrye,
 Late þer be no Lettynge." 1503

- An hawrawde said : " to fewe are we
 To fighte with slyke a grete menze,
 It is better wende to þ^e kynge." 1506
 " A, *sir*, whare þay are sexti thowsande men !
 And if þay were mo bi thowsandis ten,
 [Bi] God þat made aȝ thyngē, 1509
 The more powere that thay be,
 The more honour wyn saȝ we,
 We dowte noghte þam to dyngē." 1512

A messenger says
 they are too
 many.

"The more the
 greater honour,"
 says Turpin.

(128)

- The Bischoppe to þ^e kyng sent
 And prayes hym to byde appon þ^e bent,
 þ^e Cite for to kepe ; 1515
 That there no sarazene solde come owte,
 To þay had rekkenede with þat rowte,
 þay sawe come ouere þ^e depe. 1518
 Oure Bretons kyndely comforthes he,
 Sayse : " alle þ Sarazenes ȝe ȝonder see
 þaire frendis sore may wepe : 1521
 We saȝ wirke þam wondis fuȝ wyde,
 I hete þam be þaire lemans syde
 Sowndely neuer saȝ þay slepe." 1524

Turpin bids
 Charles keep Sir
 Garry and his
 men from coming
 out of Milan.

(129)

- For Isschuyngē owte of þ^e Cite
 kyngē Charles with his menze
 Helde his Batelle stiȝ. 1527
 Oure Bretons bolde þat fresche come In
 Thoghte þat þay wolde wirchippe wyn
 And gatt þ^e cante of þ^e hiȝ. 1530
 The Sarazenes were so strange & stowte
 Thay late no lede þat þay wolde lowte,
 þay were so wykkede of w[ill]. 1533
 Oure Bretons dide so doughtyly
 That lange or none sekerly
 þ^e sarazenes lykede fuȝ ih. 1536
 CHARL. ROM. II. E

and press them
 hard.

(130)

They slay forty
thousand
Saracens.

Samen þam strake þat grete stowre
 Als it were aftire þ^e none ane houre,
 It was noghte mekihs mare : 1539
 Bot Many a sarazene in þat stownde
 Lay grysely gronande on the grownde,
 Woundede wonderly sore. 1542
 Bot there god wiþ helpe þer es no lett ;
 So stronge strokes þay one þam sett
 With burneschede bladis bare, 1545
 [leaf 77, back] That fourty thowsande sarazenes kene
 With Brandis lay brettenyde on the grene,
 So bolde oure Bretoñs were. 1548

(131)

The Saracens
fly, and the

And to þ^e Cite þe toþer wolde haue fiede,
 And Rowlande thoghte he wolde þam stedde,
 Ten thowsande was with hym. 1551
 And when he with the sarazenes mett,
 Full grym strokes he ouer þam sett,
 With growndyn speris and grym. 1554
 Charles appon þ^e tothere syde
 Sloughe þam downn with woñdis wyde,
 And made þaire dedis full dyme. 1557
 And thus thay chase þam here and thare,
 Als þ^e howndes dose the hare,
 And refte þam lyfe and lyme. 1560

French chase
them here and
there as hounds
do a hare.

(132)

Roland slays
Letygon.

Rowlande rydis to Letygon,
 þat was þ^e sowdane Sister sone,
 And stroke hym with a spere, 1563
 That dede he daschede in þ^e felde :
 Helme ne hawberke he myghte none welde,
 Ne neuer after none bere. 1566

Of sexti thowsande, sothely to say,	
Passede neuer one qwyke a way,	Sixty thousand Saracens are killed.
Bot euyh þay endide there.	1569
The Cristenyde knelide down in þat place	
And thankede god þat gaffe þam grace,	
So worthily þam to were.	1572

(133)

The false in þ ^e felde thus gun þay felle,	
The kyngde callede sir lyonelle,	
And a-vauntede hym full heghe.	1575
The Duke of Burgoyne bi-fore was dede,	
He Sessede hym in his stede,	Charles makes Lionel Duke of Burgundy,
And gafe hym his doughter free.	1578 and gives him his daughter.
And to þ ^e Bischoppe þan swythe he gase,	
That wery and sore wofdede was,	
And fastande dayes three :	1581
Be þat tyme he myghte note wele a worde owt-wyn,	
The teris rane ouer Charles chynn,	
þat Sorowe it was to See :	1584

(134)

“ And þou dy, þan dare I saye	
The floure of presthode es a-waye,	Turpin is sorely wounded,
þat euer hade schauen crownn.	1587
For there ne is kyngde ne Cardynere	
In Cristyndome may be thi pere,	
Ne man of Religiownn.”	1590
He wiht no man his wondes late See,	
Ne mete ne drynke none neghe hym ne.	but will not allow himself to be attended to.
For prayer ne for pardownn.	1593
Oure Oste for þ ^e Bischoppe mournes alle,	
And graythes þam to Melayne walle,	
With Baners buskede bownn.	1596

(135)

The French pre-
pare for an
assault on Milan.

New vetailles þ^e bretons broghte þan

þat refresschede many of oure men,

Of brede, brawne & wyne.

1599

A nobiH hurdas ther was graythede

And Baners to þ^e walles displayede,

And Bendis vp þaire engyne.

1602

[no more in the MS.]

**P^r Romance Of Duke Rowlande and
of Sir Ottuell of Spayne.**

[Additional MS. Brit. Mus. 31,042, leaf 80.]

**P^r Romance Of Duke Rowlande and of sir
Ottuell of Spayne**

Off Cherills of Fraunce.

(1)

L ordynges, þat bene hende and Free,	Listen, Sirs,
Herkyns atte hedir-wardes to mee,	
Gif þat it be your will.	3
Now lates atte your noyse be,	
And herkyns nowe of gamen & glee,	and I will tell
þat I schall tell þow till.	6 you a gamesome
Of doghety men I schall þow telle,	tale
þat were full fayre of flesche & fell,	
And Semely appon Sille.	9
And with þaire wapyns wele couthe mette,	
And boldly durste in bateill duelle,	
And doghety proued one hill.	12

(2)

The sone of le Roy Pepyn,	
þat was sir Cherilles gud & fyne,	
Als þ ^r cronykilis vs gan say,	15 of Charles and on
With his dusperes doghety and dym	his douȝeperes.
þat wele couthe feghte with a Sarazene,	
For to sette þam fey.	18
Till Genyone with his traytorye	
Solde þam ille and wikkedly	
Vn-to þ ^r false ley :	21
Fourty thowsande and fyfty	
Of þ ^r flour of cheualrye	
there dyede apon a daye.	24

(3)

The old Minstrels
could not tell
half the feats
of these noble
knights.

Mynstrehs in þat lande gan dueHe,
Bot aHe þ° sothe þay couthe noghte tell
Of this noble cheualrye. 27
How þat Cherles with his swerde gan melle,
Bot suche a Menske hym be-feH
þat come hym Sodeynly. 30
They tentede to þaire daunsynge
And also to þaire othir thynges,
to make gamen & glee. 33
Burdours in to þ° haulte þay brynge,
þat gayly with þaire gle gan synge,
With wowynges of lady. 36

(4)

Charles and his
knights were at
Paris

And forthir in Romance als 3e mon here ;
This noble kyng of grete powere
Duellede in pariche, 39
With his lordes and his Duspers,
þat were holden felle & fers
And in BateHe full wyse. 42
with his knights
and douzpers, AHe þay buskede þam for to bere
Helme & hawberke, schelde & spere,
And rapede þam for to ryse, 45
Agaynes kyng MerthiH for to were,
And for to kepe þ° heythyn here,
& struye there goddes Enmys. 48

(5)

when news came

Bot now come þam newe note one hande
And wondirfull hasty tythande,
þat greuede þam righte Sore. 51

of the loss of
50,000.

For of þ° cheualrye of the lande
þer hade dyede thritty thousande,
Gif goddes helpe ne wore. 54

[leaf 80, back]

And owte of Spayne there come in hy
A Sarazene þat was full doghety,
With grymly grownden gars, 57

Fro þ^e Emperour sir Garcy
To kyng Charles fuþ hastilye,
þat kindilde aHe paire care. 60

(6)

The Messangere was mekiþ of pride,
Thorowte Pareche gan he ryde
Otuel arrives on
a message to
Charles.

& at þ^e kynges sale he lighttis. 63

And there he metys in that tyde
þat were faire of hewe and hide,
thre fuþ noble knyghtis : 66

Sir Otes and sir Raynere,
Duke Naymes was theire fere,
þat ofte paire resouns rightes. 69

He haylsede þam with steryn chere,
Sayd : "fro þ^e kynge am I sent a Messangere
þat moeste es prouede of myghtis." 72

(7)

Duke Naymes sayde fuþ curtaysly :
"Sir, whate may thi name bee ?"
He sayde : "I highte Otueþ. 75

kyng Cherlles where es he ?
Righte to hym by-houede mee
Mi message for to telle." 78

Duke Naymes saide : "he sittes his duspers Imange,
With white berde large and lange,
Faire of flesche & feþ. 81

With a floreschede thonwange,
Oure noble kynge þat es so strange,
His doghety men I-melle. 84

(8)

He sittes in riche meneuere,
þ^e Duke Rowlande sittys hym nero
In rede Siclaton. 87

He meets Naymes
and inquires his
way.

Naymes tells
him he will find
Charles amongst
the douȝters.

And þ^e gentille Erle *sir* Olyuere,
 þat es full noble & felle & fere,
 & in Batelle ay full bowun." 90
 Forthe passede than the Messangere
 Bi-fore þ^e kynge with steryn chere,
 Otuel passes on and comes to the king. It was hym grete renoun. 93
 He saide : " Ane euyt flawmandre fyre
 Bryne þⁱ berde, þⁱ breste, & þⁱ swyre,
 Euen to þⁱ fote alle down ! 96

(9)

Otuel says he has come with a message from the Sultan. A Messangere Ame I sent hy
 Fro my lorde þ^e Emperour *sir* Garcey,
 þat Settis 3ow alle at noghte. 99
 In Paynym ne es none so doghety,
 He hathe the flour of cheuallrye
 Al redy with hym broghte. 102
 Charles I ne maye noghte honour the,
 For þou hase greuede Mahoun & me,
 þat alle þis worlde hase wroghte. 105
 And, Rowlande, if euer I may the see
 At Batayle or at any Semble,
 thi dedis schall dere be boghte. 108

(10)

He threatens Roland. And, Rowlande, gif euer I maye þ^e mete,
 With my swerde I schall the hete,
 to-hewe thi body in two ; 111
 And fulle the vnder my horse fete,
 Sara3enes myrthe with the to bete,
 For þou hase wroghte þam woo." 114
 who laughs at him. And Rowlande at those wordes loughe,
 & said : " *sir*, þou arte doghety ynoghe
 Siche dedis to vndir-too. 117
 þou may langit & make it toughe,
 For here schall no man do the woghe,
 till aughte dayes ben a-goo." 120

(11)

þ' kyng spekis þan the Sarazene tilh :

"Say one, felawe, whatte thou wilt,

Distroube the schaff rihte none.

123

Ne none of my men lowde nor stift

touche the with nonekyns ille,

tilh heghte dayes ben gone."

126

þ' Sarazene at those wordes hadde skorne :

"I dowte no man," he says, "þat euer was borne,

& I my stede hafe tone :

129

Corsu my swerde me bi-forne,

þat myche cristen blode hathe schorne,

& many a body slone."

132

(12)

"Where?" sayde þ' kyng in hy.

"Sir, in þ' playnes of lumbardy,

þou claymes it for þ' lande.

135

þ' powere there of sir Garcy

Appon a daye we garte þam dy

Fully Fifty thousande.

138

Nyne monethes es gone arighte

Sen I with Cursu was dobbide knyghte,

My golde brayden brande.

141

A thosande there to þ' dede I dighte :

Of Cristen men mekih of myghte,

Righte with myn awenn hande.

144

(13)

And thus hathe lumbardes harmes laughte,

Bothe by dayes and by naghte,

Ne gladdes þam no glee.

147

My selfe was þer in Batelle & faughte,

Myn neffes were bolnede dayes aughte,

þat Selly was to see."

150

Vp þan stirte ane hardy knyghte,

sir Estut of logres for sothè he highte,

A lorde of grete bountee :

153

[leaf 81]
Charles bids him
deliver his
message without
fear,

for none shall
touch him.

Otnel tells
Charles of his
prowess,

and that he has
been a knight
nine months,

and how they had
devastated
Lombardy.

Sir Estut in a
rage wants to
fight him.

With the Sarazene wolde he fighte,
 A staffe in hande he takes hym righte,
 Was of Squaredede tree. 156

(14)

Roland tries to
 stop him,

THan Rowlande sayde fuht sobirly;
 "Now gud sir Estut, let it be,
 He es a Messangere: 159
 He es Ensuredede to myn Eme & mee.

For-thi, gud sir, par charyte,
 thyñ hert þat þou wolde stere." 162

but he seizes
 Otuel by the hair,

Bot 3it þ^e knyghte ne wolde noghte spare,
 Bot hent þ^e Sarazene by þ^e hare,
 & backwarde doun hym bere. 165

and Otuel kills
 him.

þ^e Sarazene stirte vp breme as bare,
 Cursu his swerde he drewe reghte thare,
 þ^e knyghte hede of he schere. 168

(15)

The French
 barons wish to
 slay him,

Than saide þ^e Baronage with hole soun:
 "Lay hande on the traytoure feloun,
 He hase done velanye!" 171

Bot he rollede his eghne both vp & doun,
 And ferde als a wilde lyoun,
 Brayde vp his browes one hye. 174

He braundesch[e]t his¹ swerde bare,
 þat trenchande was & wele schare,
 And sayde fuht sobirly, 177

[leaf 81, back]
 but he threatens
 to kill the first
 that touches him.

And by his grete Mahoun he sware:
 "And any of 3ow duspers stirre pare
 þ^e beste party schall dy!" 180

(16)

Charles protects
 him.

þ^e kyng his men sone Sessed he,
 Sayd: "Sarazene, 3elde thi suerde to mee,
 & late be afte this bere." 183

¹ MS. hir.

& he sayde : " naye, als mot I the."

Vp þan rose sir Rowlande full Sobirly,

& with a lagheande chere

Said : " ȝelde to me thi brande brighte,

I schall the saue, als I ame knyghte,

Whihs þat þou arte here ;

And when thi Message es doun & dighte,

I schall delyuer the thi brande so brighte,

Als I am trewe duspere."

Rolan l promises
to keþ his
sword for him,

186

189

till he has
delivered his
message.

192

(17)

" In þat conande I ȝelde it the ;

I nolde gif it for twelue Cite,

So bittirly wiht it bite.

And, Rowlande, ȝif euer I may the see

At batayle or at any Semble,

þ' hede of þer-with to smyte."

Rowlande sayde : " sir, þou art to outrage :

Fayrere myghte þou batayh wage

þan all daye thus to chide."

þ^e Sarazene spake with stowte vesage :

" Herkenys now to my message,

& I schall tell ȝow tyte :—

Otuel agrees, and
gives it to him.

195

198

201

204

(18)

kyng Cherhs, als þou may here,

I am sent a Messangere

fro hym þat es doghty.

He weldes Paynym ferre & nere,

Alysaundere of grete powere,

& þ' londis of Boty :

Toures, Sedoyne ferre & fre,

Perse, semely one to see,

& þerto fermorye.

This noble kyng of grete pouste

He distruyes bothe londe & see,

reghte in to fermorye.

Otuel declares he
has come from
the Sultan,

207

210

the lord of
Alexandria,

Tyre, Sidon,
and Persia,

213

216

(19)

to summon Charles	For-thi hathe he sent the worde by mee, þat þou schaff vn-cristen) bee & leue appon) oure ley.	219
to forsake Christianity,	For we wiþl proue in) oure degre þat þ ^e lawes of Cristyante ne are noghte worthe ane aye.	222
	Giffe thi hert vn-to Mahoun), þat weldis bothe toure & towun), And alle myghtis maye ;	225
	Hafe done be-lyfe þat þou be bownde For to come to oure somoun) : thus am I sent to saye.	228

(20)

	Hafe done, <i>sir</i> , buske þ ^e to oure kynge, For he hath ordeynede thi wonnyng), For alle thi cheualrye,	231
and he will give him Normandy and England,	House & londe, wodde & thyng), he grauntes the ouer all othir thyng) þ ^e londes of Normandy ;	234
	Inglonde also hathe giffen) to the, to Roland Russia, And to Rowlande, thi Nevieu fre, to be sesede in Russy.	237
[leaf 82] and to Oliver	Olyuer þat es faire and free, the knyghte es prouede of grete bounte, þ ^e landes of Scamonye ;	240

(21)

to Sir Florence of Syria he will give France.	To <i>sir</i> Florance of Surry He hathe giffen) Fraunce in hye, þat wele cane prike a stede,	243
	þ ^e kyng[es] sone of Barbarye, To hafe it to his Bayly, þer-one his life to lede."	246
	Than) the kynge sayde : " nay, Dus[e]pers, whate wiþl 3e say Of this wonder dede ?	249

Schaft neuer Sarazene of heythyn ley
 Welde France by nyghte ne daye ;
 Now Iesu it for-bede !"

Charles says, God
 forbid a Saracen
 should have
 France.

252

(22)

þen þay ansuerde sone in hye :

" Nay, sir, we will oure batells guy,
 And rape vs for to ryde

The douzeperes
 agree.

255

Agayne þ^e Emperour sir Garcy.

thurgh þ^e myghte of mylde marye

Hym schaft schome be-tyde."

258

the Sarazyn laughs full smothirly :

Otnel laughs at
 their threats,

" What ! threte 3e now sir Garcy

With 3our boste & 3our pryde ;

261

ther es none of 3ow so hardy,

And 3e hade sene his cheualry,

3our hedis þat ye nolde hyde."

264

(23)

þ^e Duke Naymes talkes wordes one highte,
 says : " sir, if þat þ^e Emperour with fighte,

We schaft to hym full euen."

267

þ^e Sarazene ansuerde with mekiþ myghte ;

" He hath a hondreth thousande helmys brighte,

& þer-to hundrethes Seuē.

270

and says his
 master has more
 than 100,000
 knights,

þer es no kyng in Cristyante

Dare warne hym huntynge & fischynge fre,

Ne discrye hym þer with steuen.

273

Bi-twix two watirs fayre & fre

He hath bigged a Cite hight attayle,

es none siche vnder þ^e heuen.

276

and a City
 strong above all
 others.

(24)

Cherlles, with thi longe berde,

þat Emperoure schaft make þ^e full ferde

With his stronge powere :

279

For he hathe men in Bateff lerede,
 þat wele kon feghte with floresched swerde,
 & hafe lemans fuþ clere. 282

Otuel mocks at
 Naymes,
 Lete Duke Naymes lenge at hame
 To kepe pareche walles fro schame,
 þat no gledes neghe þam nere ; 285
 Coo ne pye that there come none,
 For cheualrye es fro hym gone,
 and calls him an
 old napper. A nolde nappere als he were." 288

(25)

þ^e Duke Naymes asschamede was,
 þ^e blode stert vp in his face,
 A-greued he was fuþ sore. 291

Roland threatens
 him. þan sir Rowlande fuþ rathely vp he rase :
 " Vnconnande Sarazene," he said, " in þis place
 þⁱ wykkednes es þare. 294
 By hym þat dyede appon a tree,
 þou scholde haue a velany of me,
 Ensuredede nyfe þat I ware ! 297
 Bot in Bateff if euer I may þ^e see,
 Schaß neuer no kyng of Cristyante
 Be encombirde with the mare." 300

(26)

[leaf 82, back] the Sarazene ansueres fuþ stoutly :
 " Be Mahownn, Rowlande, I ame redy
 Otuel challenges
 Roland to single
 combat then and
 there. For to fighte with the. 303
 In to þone Medowe I rede we hye,
 And luke þat no man bee vs by,
 Grete gamen þan schaß men see. 306
 Whethir oo werse es of vs twoo
 lett hewe bothe his spourres hym froo,
 He neuer more honourede bee." 309
 Rowlande was of hert fuþ throo
 Sicke dedys to vnder-too,
 His hande vp holdes hee. 312

(27)

“*Sir Vernague of Barabas,*
Sertys myn [eme] *I wote he was,*
pat Rowlande here hath slayne : 315
I chalange his dethe now in pis place,
I schahe þ^e lede a wikkede pase,
Bothe with myghte & mayne.” 318
þ^e kynge at those wordes lough
& said : “sir, þou arte doghty ynoghe :”
Garte calle a chambirlyne, 321
Garte delyuere hym Innes withowtten) woghe :
“To serue hym lokes þat 3e bene toughe,
Of alle þat scholde hym gayne.” 324

to avenge his
uncle's death.

Charles orders
Otuel to be well
attended to

(28)

The kynge garte calle sir Grauntere,
Sir Raynere and sir Oggere,
bade take kepe of the knyghte. 327
One þ^e Morne þay rose alle in fers,
The abbott of Saynte Thomers
Songe þam) a messe full righte. 330
Elleuen) coupes fayre to fonde
Was Offrede at þ^e Abbottes honde,
Full of golde so brighte. 333
Rowlande Offrede Droundale his brande,
Boghte it agayne with golde at hande ;
Alle Honoured þay god alle myghte. 336

by three French
knights.

The next morning
Mase is sung,

A Fitt.

(29)

And vnnethes was þ^e Messe alle done,
 When þat þ^e Sarazene come full sone,
 And cryed appon) highte 339
 to kyng Cherlles with steryn tone,
 Sayd : “send owte Rowlande withowtten) hone
 I calle hym recreyande knyghte.” 342

and directly after
Otuel calls on
Roland to meet
him.

late hym noghte skape for nonkynsthynge."

he gaffe hym goddes blyssynge

& bade hym wende his waye.

378

þay broghte þam by-twene two watirs brighte—

Sayne, and Meryn le graunte, þay highte,

Als þ^e bukes gan vs saye—

381

The duel is to be
in a meadow
between the
Seine and the
Merin.

In to a Medowe Semely to sighte,

there als these doghety men solde fighte

With-owtten more delaye.

384

(33)

þis while hounded the Sarazene stih

And called to þ^e kyng with voyce full schrylle :

"Ane hawberke aske I the ;

387

Otuel asks
Charles to lend
him arms.

Spere and schelde garre brynge me tiht,

For I hafe horssynge at my wiht,

None siche in Cristyante."

390

þ^e kyng þan lokes hym be-syde

And saughe his dogheter mekiht of pryde,

Belesent, brighte of blee ;

393

Charles bids his
daughter go arm
him.

þan he comandide hir that tyde :

"Goo take hym fayre be thi syde

Wele armede þat he bee."

396

(34)

And scho calles Flores of Maundelle,

Mayden Rosalet of Barelle,

& bade þam wende to þ^e knyghte,

399

Belesant tells two
maidens to help
Otuel.

And haste þam þat with-in a while.

And til a chambire gan þay syle,

And gayly gan hym dighte.

402

to arme hym wele þay were full snelle,

Ouer his aktone ane hawberke felle

Of colours þat were brighte,

405

þat aughte gud kyng Ragneth,

þat was bothe ferse and felle

& in felde full faire couthe fighte.

408

(35)

They arm him.	þay armede hym wele with-owtten) fayle, With golde þay lacede his auentaile For þat it solde be trewe ;	411
	Broghte hym ane helme of riche entayle, Of precyouse stanes þ' appayrayle, þat brighteste was of hewe,	414
	His helme was bothe harde and holde, ther-one was sett a Sercle of golde þat bett was wonder newe.	417
	then) sayde thies Damesels fre one folde, A Meryere armede knyghte one molde Neuer 3itt þay ne knewe.	420

(36)

	þay broghte hym a Schelde when) he was bownn), thies Maydens two þay broghte hym downn), He cried aftir his stede.	423
He calls for his horse, Mekredose.	He rollede his eghne vp and downn), And sware by his grete Mahoun his Enemy sore myghte drede.	426
	þan) spake those two Maydens smale : "sir, kepe the wele fro Drondale, For it wiþ garre the blede.	429
They advise Otuel to beware of Durindale.	Entyre þou ones in to 3one vale, Comes þou neuer aftyr in to this sale, And sir Rowlande righte may rede."	432

[leaf 82, back]

(37)

	He toke his leue & forthe he gose, lepe one a stede highte Mekredose, in his hande a spere.	435
Otuel rides to the lists,	A faire course he rydes close Full egerly amonges his fose, & dressede hym in his gere.	438
	When þ' Sarazene commen) was, the kyng garte sone a-voyde þ' place, Of Cristen) þat there were.	441

which Charles
orders to be
cleared.

to þ^e castelle he wendes a pase
And appone þ^e kirneþs gase,
to wayte appon þat were.

Charles goes to
the top of the
Castle to see the
fight.

444

(38)

the kynge to Rowlande lowde gan crye :
"Feghte one, dere Sone, hardely,
In þ^e name of Marie of Heuen."

447

the Sarazene saide : "I ame redy."
Appon sir Rowlande he gan defy

Otuel says he is
ready, and
defies Roland.

With a full hawtayne steuen.

450

thies kene knyghtis to-gedir gan glide,
the Medowe tremlyde one aythir syde,

In scheldes þay cowped full euen.

453 The fight begins.

theyre loynynge was so harde that tyde
that theyre tymbir in sondire gan ryde,

In mo þan sex or seuen.

456

(39)

thurgh-owte þaire scheldis þan þay schare
And all þ^e lethirs þat þare ware

þay assembled soryly.

459

the poyntes appon þ^e hawberke bare
Bot þ^e mayles so sekir ware,

þ^e spere hedis bi-gan to plye.

462

¹Rowlande owte his swerde wanne

Roland cuts

And hittes hym on þ^e helme thanne,

þat þ^e Naseh floghe full hye.

465

thurgh þ^e horse schu[lders] þ^e swerde rane,
þat was a styffe stroke of a man,

through Otuel's
horse's shoulders
and kills him.

His noble stede gan dy.

468

(40)

the Sarazene of his horse tumblys doun
And stert vp fers als any lyoun,

Otuel falls, but is
up again directly.

And Cursu his swerde he drew.

471

¹ Rawlande MS.

Otnel does the
same to Roland's
horse.

he brasede his Schelde & made hym bowun),
he hitt *sir* Rowlande one þ° crowun
þat fore Egirnes he loughe. 474
the Nasett of his helme of-glade
Dowun bi-fore hym in the strade,
hade almoste wroghte hym woghe. 477
thurgh þ° horse schuldurs þ° swerde gan) wade,
his stede euen) in Sondere he hade,
þ° stroke was stythe ynoghe. 480

(41)

Rowland falls.

Rowlande one þ° grownde es lighte,
Vppon) his fete he sterte vp righte,
His swerde in his hande he helde. 483
þ° Sarazene cryed with mekiþ myghte :
" þis was a stythe stroke of a knyghte,
& no thyng of a childe ! " 486

Charles in alarm
begins to pray for
Roland's success.

Charles herde those wordes wele,
Appon) his knees downn) gan) he knele
& bothe his handes vp helde : 489
" God," he said, " þat alle schaft dighte & dele,
his Modir mylde, and Saynt Michael,
Fro schame 3e Rowlande schelde ! " 492

(42)

Rowlande raysede vp Drondale,
Abowun) his hede he gane it hale
His Enemy for to dera. 495

[leaf 84]
Roland cuts away
part of Otnel's
helmet,
and half of one
ear.

He hade almoste wroghte hym bale,
✓ A quartere of his helme a-waye gane vale,
And halfen-dele his one Ere ; 498
✓ þat þ° Sarazene by-gane to helde,
✓ & vp he caste his noble schelde,
✓ In þ° bokeþs gane he schere. 501
✓ So thikke paire dynttis to-gedir pelyde,
Their armour is
in pieces. ✓ thaire armours hewenn) laye in þ° felde,
✓ Als floures þat strewede were. 504

(43)

Belesent sayde full curtaysly :

“ Mi lorde, þay feghten full gentilly,
 & grete trauayle þay haue.”

507

Charles prays
for Roland,

Vp to god he caste a crye,

And to his Moder Saynt Marie :

“ Fro schame 3e Rowlande Saue ;

510

And conuerte vs 3one gentill knyghte
 þat es so hardy and so wighte,

and for Otuel's
conversion.

For elles it were grete watha.

513

He es so ferse in armes to fyghte

And a man of mekill myghte ;

Full doghety are þay bathe.”

516

(44)

Than Rowlande sayde full curtaysly :

“ Sarazene, wilt þou cristenye be

& leue appon oure laye ?

519

Roland offers
Belesent to Otuel
if he will be
converted.

A noble gifte I schall giffe the,

Belesent þat es brighte of ble,

In þe worlde ne es siche a maye.

522

And thou and I and Olyuer,

We schall be felawes all in fere,

& trauest nyghte & daye :

525

We schall ryde bothe ferre & nere,

Wyn Citees & townnes dere,

& gode horses at assaye.”

528

(45)

the Sarazene ansuers full stoutly :

“ thou kan to littill of clergy

to leryn me siche a lare.

531

Otuel refuses and
mocks at him

the wordes þat þou hase spoken in hy

thou schall þam full dere a-by,

With sadde dynttes & sare.

534

I swere the by my grete Mahoun,

I schall the lere a newe lessoun,

Or I fro the fare,

537

With a bofete appon thi croun
 þat þou schaH laye þ' wapen doun,
 rekreyande als þou were." 540

(46)

Roland's blows make fire fly from Otuel's helmet,	þan) was sir Rowlande gretly greuede And in his hert fuH sore ameuede, At þ° Sarazene lete he flye. 543 He hitt hym a-bown appon þ° heuede, þat to þ° scholdire þ° swerde wefede, þ° fyre floghe owte fuH hye : 546
and cuts through his hauberk to his waist,	thurgh duble hawberke it hym schare, to þ° girdilstede it made hym bare, þen) bi-gane he for to plye. 549 Drondale felle so sadde and sare þat þ° Sarazene bi-gane to stare, & fallen) he was fuH nye. 552

(47)

Otuel nearly knocks Roland over.	þ° Sarazene þan) a lepe he made, A stroke to Rowlande for sothe he glade & hit hym on þ° hede, 555 þat almoste top ouer tayle he rade, And nere þ° swerde twynede hade, His life þer hade he lefede. 558
[Leaf 84, back]	And other stroke he to hym bere, And Doun) by-fore hym it strypes there, his schelde a waye it reuede 561 And aHe þ° skirtys of Rowlandes gere. OtueH says "my suerde kan) schere." & in to þ° erthe it weuede. 564

(48)

Rowlande claghte vp his noble schelde,
 His wapyns wightly for to welde
 & helde it one his nefe. 567

þaire dynttis so thikke gan samen helde

þaire harnays hewen was in þ^e felde,

FuH littiH was þam leuede,

570

þaire dynttis fette so sadde & sare,

The fight
continues,

þat bothe þaire bodies wexen bare,

þaire armours all to-dreues.

573

þare-fore sir Charles hade mekiH care,

and Charles again
prays for Roland.

appon his knees he knelys thare,

& bothe his handes vp-heues,

576

(49)

And als þ^e kynge thus prayed faste,

A dofe come fro the holy gaste,

& one þ^e Sarazene lightes :

579

While he is
praying, a dove
settles on Otuel's
helmet.

And þan was he full sore agaste,

And vn-to sir Rowlande saide he in haste :

"Sesse, sir, of thi fighttes,

582

For I ame broghte in sicke a wiH,

þat I þoure lawes wiH fulfiH,

And be-come a Cristyn knyghte."

585

He consents to
become Christian.

þan doun þay layde þaire wapyns stiH,

And aythere wente othire vntiH,

A Saughtillynge was þer dighte.

588

(50)

þan wolde þ^e kynge no lengere dueHe

Bot hyed hym doun of the casteHe,

& grete lordes hym by ;

591

He askede sir Rowlande how it bi-felle,

and he ansuerde wiH wordes sneHe :

"Mi lorde, full gentilly

594

Charles comes
and asks why
they have left off
fighting.

I hafe foghten with þ^e beste knyghte,

In alle this werlde es none so wighte,

þat euer ȝitt prouede I.

597

Roland tells him.

And he hase zolden hym to the righte,

Belesent I hafe hym highte,

Gare cristen hym in hy."

600

(51)

	Vn-to þ ^e grounde þan knelide þ ^e kyng,	
	He loued god of alle this thyng,	
	And his Modir fre.	603
They all return to Paris,	two gude stedis þay garte forthe brynge,	
	& one þay lepe with-owte lettyng	
	& went home to þ ^e Cite.	606
and Otuel is baptized by Turpin.	Bischope Turpyn was Redy	
	With bukes & with Stoles in hy,	
	A fownte sone halowes he	609
	To cristen hym þat was doghety ;	
	Many grete lorde stode thaym by	
	With myche Solempnyte.	612

(52)

	And when þ ^e Sarazene cristennd was,	
Charles gives Belesant to Otuel to wife,	þ ^e kyng take his doghetir faire of face	
	& gyffes hir to þat noble knyghte ;	615
	þ ^e louelyeste in with lace,	
	And swettteste in armes for to enbrace,	
[¹ MS. was]	In þ ^e worlde nas ¹ siche a wighte.	618
	Als lely like was hir coloure,	
	Hir rode rede als rose floure,	
	In lere þat rynnes righte.	621
	þ ^e kyng toke þat brighte in boure	
	With menake & with myche honoure,	
	& gaffe hym þat birde so brighte.	624

(53)

	He said : " hafe here my doghetir fre,	
	And Rowlande felawe schaff þou bee,	
	And gentill sir Olyuer :	627
[leaf 85]	Powunce and plesaunce I schaff gife the,	
	With two full noble Cites,	
	With towres heghe & dera.	630
and makes him lord of Lombardy.	I make the lorde of lombardy,	
	To hafe it alle to thi Bayllyee,	
[² MS. contreth]	þat contrey ² ferre & nere.	633

For thi noble cheuallrye

Welcome to this companye,

DueHe & be a pere."

636

(54)

the Sarazene knelyde appon his knee,

And thankkes the kyng full gentilly

Of thies giftes so gude.

639

Otuel thanks
Charles,

He sayde : " Dameseh, arte þou payed of me ! "

And sche sayde : " ȝee, als mot I thee ! "

and declares he
will destroy all
Saracens,

Full frely was þat fude.

642

than he said : " I make a-vowe to mylde Marie,

that I hafe now chosen to my lady,

þat es so mylde of mode,

645

that I schall wende to attale,

And for thi lufe do cheualrye

And distruye þe heythyn blode.

648

(55)

Sir kyng, I giff a-gayne to the

this mayden þat es faire & fre,

& in clethyng comly clede.

651

and that when
he has taken the
Sultan and his
city he will marry
Belesant.

And lokes aHe þat we redy be

In to the landes of lumbardye,

Righte als we firste redde,

654

For to distruye there goddes Enemy

þat hathe to ȝowe ther grete envy,

With folkes on fote wele fedde.

657

When I hafe tane Myn Eme garcy

And the Cite of Attaly

þis Mayden schall I wedde."

660

(56)

The [kyng] said þan to his duspers :

" Now hafe [ȝe] herde þe Messangeres,

ȝour conseil what es beste ?

663

Charles asks his
barons if they are
willing to fight
the Saracens.

Sir Garcy with his stronge powere

Distruyes my landes both ferre & nere,

Mi Cites brekes & bristes :

666

- He confoundes so myche of Cristen blode
 þat I for Sorowe goo nere wode,
 And I may hafe no riste." 669
- They all agree. And þay þan ansuerde with steryn mode :
 " to fende of, lorde, vs thynke it gude,
 to batayle are we priste." 672
- (57)
- Charles deter- þe kyng saide : " we wiþ habyde
 mines to wait till tiþ it be nerre þe Somer tyde,
 spring, þe colde of Marche be gone. 675
- and meanwhile We schaffe sende lettres on ilke a syde,
 collect an army. In dyuerse countres brode & wyde,
 to grete lordes ichone. 678
- Sqwyers doghety vndir schelde,
 that wele kan þaire wapyns welde,
 by-hynde vs leue we none : 681
- And alle þat are with-in elde
 loke þat þay to batayle helde,
 Goddes Enemys for to alone." 684
- (58)
- þus þe kyng duellys there
 tiþ þe tyme comen were,
 þe days neghede neghe. 687
- With him are With hym Rowlande & Olyuere,
 Roland and And þe gentiþ Grauntere,
 Oliver, Grauntir, In Batayle þat was so sleghe ; 690
- Ogier, Reyner, sir Oggere and sir Raynere,
 Naymes, Duke Naymes was þaire fere,
 & Gayryn of kynredyn heghe : 693
- [leaf 85, back] sir Estut and sir Inglere,
 Otuel, and others. sir Otueþ the werryoure,
 his dynttys were full draghe. 696
- (59)
- In the spring the Appon a Mornyng þay lokede owte,
 French army And saughe there powere stythe & stowtte
 begins to comynge ferre & nere. 699

þay rode in many a ryaſſe rowte, By thowsande tale with-owtten dowtte Vnder þe Mount Marteres.	702	
þ ^e Almaynes & þ ^e Tuskaynes, þ ^e Flemynges full fele for þ ^e nanes, With þ ^e Banereres ;	705	from Germany and Tuscany,
þ ^e Normandes gude of blode & bone þ ^e prouynce worthily in with wone there semlyde faire powers.	708	from Normandy,
(60)		
þere semled owte of lumbardy a full noble cheualrye And Sekir at ilke a nede ;	711	Lombardy,
þ ^e Gayscoynes comen sone in hy, And þ ^e Burgoynes faste þam by, þat worthily were in wede ;	714	Gascony, Burgundy,
þ ^e Bretons come with-owtten faile, there Semblede a full faire Batayle, One many a stalworthe stede ;	717	and Brittany.
With helmys one hedis þat walde a-vayle, Full riche was þaire appayraile, & worthily was þaire wede.	720	
(61)		
One þ ^e forthirmaste daye of auerille þ ^e kyng assemblede appon ane hille Alle his mery menze.	723	On the first day of April the French set out.
Full faire he Offres Saynt Denys tilh, & appon his knees he knelys still to god & oure lady.	726	
Sayde to Olyuere gud at ilke a nede : "My sone, þou schalt þ ^e vawarde lede For þou arte swythe doghety."	729	Olivier commands the van.
þ ^e Oste remowede & forthe þay zede, þay stirrede on many a stalworthe stede to þaire Iournaye þay hye.	732	

(62)

Belesant rides
beside Oliver.

Olyuere his stede hathe hent,
With hym ȝode Mayden Belesent,
ȝat lady of grete renoun; 735

One a Muyle þen rode ȝat gentill [mayd,]
And in hir company ther wer[e arayd]
[A] thousande bolde Barouna. 738

ȝay passed forthe þan Bretayne by
thurgh þ^e landes of the Mandely,
By many a ryalle toun: 741

They take ship at
Vertely,
and on their
arrival in
Lombardy

ȝay Schipped ouer at Vertely
In to þe landes of lumbardy,
ȝay passede bothe dales & down. 744

(63)

Vnder a Mountayne ȝey herberde þan
Besyde a reuer ȝat highte Soltane,
& in a Medowe ȝay lighte. 747

ȝer was many a worthy man,
Ryalle howssynges ȝay by-gan
Of paulyouns proudly pighte. 750

rest for eight
days on the banks
of the Roltan.

So for-trauelled were ȝay sare
ȝat aughte dayes ȝay duelled thare,
ȝaire harnays for to righte. 753

there-fore kyng cherles wolde noghte spare,
A noble brigge he garte make thare
Ouer þ^e watir of Roltane dighte. 756

(64)

¶ A wonder poynte now schaff ȝe here,
To þ^e mete ȝay wente alle in fere,
iche lorde in ȝaire lyuere. 759

[leaf 86]
Roland, Oliver,
and Ogier
go alone
in search of
adventures.

Bot Duke Rowlande & Olyuere
And þ^e Daynnes [Sir] Oggere
Stode armede vndir a tree; 762

And ouer þ^e brigge þan gan ȝay ryde
Ful preuaily that ilke a tyde,
ȝat no mo wiste bot they three. 765

Awnters thoughte pay for to byde,
 pay stale awaye by a wodde syde,
 Righte towards Attale, 768

(65)

And a Mile with-owtten) Attale	
there houede foure kynges fre	
With speris in thaire hande.	771
And ichone sware in theire degree	
pat pay wolde reghte gladly see	
Olyuer and Rowlande.	774
pay sware alle by paire grete Mahowun,	
“ We wolde pat pay were nowe here bowun,	
to loke how pay couthe stande.	777
And so we scholde for-Iuste jam) down)	
pat pay solde neuer see Charlloun,	
p ^e chefe of Cristen) lande.”	780

(66)

Now, lordynges, for to rede 3ow righte	
thies kynges names what pay highte,	
p ^e sothe I wiþ 3ow tell.	783
kyng Balsame, a mane of myghte,	
kyng Corsabeþ, a-noþer knyghte,	
pat bothe was ferse & felle;	786
kyng Askuardyne pat teraunt,	
Of wikkednes he myghte hym ausunte,	
Was lyke a fende of helle;	789
the ferthe was faire and auenante	
With a full Mani Semblande,	
Men) callede hym kyng Claryeþ.	792 and Claryell.

(67)

kynge Clarieþ sayde: “ als mot I the,	
Rowlande es holden) full doghety,	
Es none siche vndir Sonne.	795

A mile from
 Attale they hear
 four Saracen
 kings boasting.

Their names were

Balsam,
 Corsabell,

Askuardyne,

Claryell wishes
 he could meet
 Roland,

Be Mahonn I wolde he were here me by,
I scholde assaye his Body,

My dynttis scholde he con! " 798

when the French
knights come in
sight.

thies knyghttes herde how pay therett were,
With spores pay brochede paire stedis there,

oute of þ^e wodde pay rynn. 801

than sayd kyng Clariell breame als bare :

" We hafe þam þat we spake faire,

Be Mahoun aHe es wonn. 804

(68)

He bids the three
others each
engage one of the
douzeperes.

Bot wendes now forthe, 3e kynges three,

And slees 3one knyghtis of Cristyantee,

& I schall houe here styH. 807

AHe als 3e done I schall see,

there es no mache vn-to mee,

And þat me lykes iHe." 810

Askuardyne is
slain.

kyng askuardyn in his gere

Rydes owte a course of were,

FuH werly and with iH wiH. 813

And Rowlande thurgh his scholdir gan schere,

his armours ne vaylede noghte a pere,

his hert blode he gan þer spiH. 816

(69)

The French
knights each
kill one of the
Saracen kings.

kyng Corsabolyn in armes fuH clere

Rydis owte to sir Oggere

and hittes hym in þ^e schelde. 819

the Cristen knyghte neghede hym so nere

thurgh double hawberke he hym bere,

Of horse he garte hym helde. 822

kyng Balsamy rode tilH sir Olyuere,

thies thre kynges dyede in fere,

& lyen gronande in þ^e felde. 825

paire thretynge boghte pay there fuH dere,

thaire saules went aHe to lucyfere,

þat had þam atte to welda. 828

(70)

then) was kyng ClarieH fuH Sory

And flynges owte fuH fersely,

With hert Egire & throo.

[leaf 86, back]
Clariell
charges Roland
and kills his
steed,

831

He Smyttis Rowlande þat was doghety,

þat his noble stede gan) dy,

His bakke braste euen) in two.

834

And vp he keste ane heghe cry,

"this was a poynte of cheualry,"

And busked hym) for to goo.

837

Oggere danynes gan) aftir hym hye,

And stroke þ^e kynge his sadiH bye,

His stede he tuke hym fro.

840

but Ogier knocks
him off his,

(71)

Olyuere anone hath hent þ^e stede

And righte to Rowlande he gan) hym lede,

& sayde : "hafe this for thyne."

843

which Roland
takes.

And he stert vp bettir spede

And drissede hym in his worthy wede,

þat lofesome vnder lyne,

846

kyng ClarieH drawes Melle

And faghte agaynes þam) all thre,

His Swerde was gude & fyne.

849

he said : "gud lordes, ales noghte me,

A noble cheke here wonn) hafe 3ee,

My lyfe wolde I noghte tyne."

852

Clariell begs for
mercy.

(72)

And when) his vesage was alle bare

A fayrere knyghte sawe þay neuer are,

& Sett hym one a stede.

855

They bind him
and set him on a
horse,

þay wende awaye with hym to fare,

A thousande Sarazenes come one þam) thare,

there bale by-gan) to brede.

858

but a thousand
Saracens come
against them.

than saide Rolande to Olyuere :

"3ondere I see fuH brighte Banere

And worthily vndir wede,

861

CHARL. ROM. II.

G

þam semes bothe felle and ferse,
 I wolde no worde come to oure peres
 þat we fledde þam for drede." 864

(73)

By Ogier's
 advice they let
 Clariell go.

Ogger Daynes was moste wysse,
 Sayd : "Sen we hafe gettyn þis kyng of price,
 I rede we late þam¹ goo. 867

For bi god and Saynt Denys
 We may noghte skape in nonekyns wyse,
 ne hym wilt we noghte slo." 870

Clariell thanks
 Ogier.

þan said kyng Clariell there he stode :
 " this was a worde of gentill blode
 to speke thus for thi foo." 873

he tuke his leue and forthe he ȝode,
 thankede þam with mylde mode,
 And Agaynes A thousande was no moo. 876

(74)

They prepare to
 defend them-
 selves.

Rowlande and Olyuere
 Dressede þam in armes clere
 AHe redy to þ^e fyghte : 879

And þ^e Daynes Oggere
 Cryed "Mount Ioy," all in fere,
 Bothe with Mayne & myghte. 882

For þ^e Sarazenes þay haden dowte,
 To Iesus criste þay crye & lowte,
 þat moste es man of myghte. 885

thies Paynys put þam owte
 that were halden full steryn & stoute,
 & vnder paire horses þay lighte. 888

(75)

The Saracens
 are panic-stricken,

those thre to the thousande gan ryde
 And hewed one faste one iche a syde,
 & brittenede blode & bone. 891

¹ ? hym.

þay made þaire wayes wondere wyde,
 ther durste no Sarazene þair dynttis hyde,
 to gronde þay garte þam gone. 894
 then comes girdande sir carpe,
 the kynges sone of aubre,
 Was halden a noble man. 897
 Vp-one highte he castis a krye :
 "What schall [we] saye to sir Garcye?
 thre schendis vs euerichone." 900

(76)

sir Carpy come girdande suythe,
 To Oggere Daynes gan he dryfe,
 þat he swounede als he were wede. 903
 sir Rowlande gan doghety dedis kythe,
 With Drondale he gan hym ryfe
 Reghte to þ^e girdiH stede. 906
 Ogger daynes wakkened than,
 Pulled owte a swerde highte curtane,
 Was gude at ilke a nede. 909
 than to fighte Oggere by-gaŋe,
 to hewe doun many ane heythyn man,
 grete trauayle þer þay hade. 912

(77)

And þ^e gentiH Erle sir Olyuere
 hewes one with haunkclere,
 Mighte none his dynttis with-stande. 915
 he dannege þam doun bothe ferre & nere,
 It was a wonder thyng to here,
 thies thre men wroghte with hande. 918
 þam comes a Sarazene sone in hye,
 his name was kyng alphamanye,
 Was fayre & wele farande ; 921
 he smyttes Olyuere þat was doghety
 þat toppe ouer tayle he garte hym lye
 Appon a ley lande. 924

(78)

but he is soon
up again.

Bot þan was sir Rowlande neuer so woo,
Full swythe þat Sarazene gan he sloo,
 þat to þ^e grounde he zede. 927
Olyuere rose with herte full throo,
Be-lyfe his stede gan he too,
 And sterte vp in his nede. 930
he sayd : "Rowlande, drede þ^e noghte,
Now I am one horse broghte,
 I fayle the at no nede." 933
With hankclere many wondirs he wroghte,
Fele Sarazenes to þ^e grounde he broghte,
 & ferde als he wolde wede. 936

(79)

Ogier is over-
powered,

but is saved by
Clariell,

this while was Ogger daynes one fete,
the Sarazenes þat he myghte with mete,
 He wroghte paire bodyes wo : 939
he gaffe þam woundes wyde & wete,
Full Many one there lefte the swete,
 þ^e boke vs telles Soo. 942
tið almoste Scomfet was he,
þan comes kyng Clariell with hert fre,
 Als faste als he myghte go, 945
& bade þ^e Sarazenes þay scholde late be ;
"Oggere, zelde thi suerde to me,"
 be-lyue he sayde hym poo. 948

(80)

who gives him
in charge of
seven knights.

[MS. he.]

A Sarazene come with steryn ble,
Sayd : " þis Cristen doge sað not saued be,
 bot sle we hym reghte here." 951
" 3ee," sais kyng Clariell, " as auenche the,
he schað be sauede nowe, pardee."
 his¹ heued of sone he schere. 954
he called seuen paynmys of mekið myghte,
said : " gose, ledis hym to my lemman brighte,
 Of colours þat es clere ; 957

loke his wondes ben wele dighte,
 And kepe me wele this cristen knyghte,
 For this es gentill of chere." 960

(81)

the Sarazenes toke hym þat was hende,
 And to þat lady gan þay wende,
 Of coloures þat was brighte ; 963
 tolde hir the tale vn-to the ende,
 sayd : " Ma dame, this Duke ClaryeH 3ow sende,
 to hele hym at 3our myghte." 966
 " What ? " sayde þat lady white als fame,
 " Es this kynge Charles þat here es tane,
 His men to dethe afte dighte ? " 969
 " Nay, by grete Mahoun," þay sware, " ma dame,
 thre knyghtes of his hath a thousande slane,
 þat we helde hardy & wighte. 972

[leaf 87, back]
 Clariell sends
 Ogier to his lady
 to be cared for.

She thinks he is
 Charles.

(82)

And kyng ClarieH vnder schelde
 hym selfe was taken in þe felde,
 thre kynges by hym slayne. 975
 ther was noþer bute nere belde,
 Ne Mahoun þat afte schaff welde,
 For hym þay moghte nott gone ; 978
 And there was none bot glotouns thre,
 And one of þam here may thou see,
 þat kyng ClarieH hathe tane." 981
 " What, deuyH," scho sayd, " how may this be ?
 Who durste neghe my leman free,
 es beste of blode & bone ? " 984

They tell her who
 he is, and how the
 thre French
 knights had
 slaughtered the
 Saracens.

(83)

Scho said : " comforte the, sir, be noghte abayste,
 Schaff none of my men the brayste :
 What es þe name of the ? " 987

She enquires
 Ogier's name,

	"Ma dame," he sayde, "Oggere Daunays."	
	than sayde þ ^e lady þat was curtayse ;	
	"I haue herde speke of thee."	990
and causes him to be unarmed,	Be-lyfe scho garte vn-Arme hym there, And to hym commes þat lady clere	
	& greses broghte þat fre,	993
and attends to his wounds.	þat godd sett in his awenn herbere ; Als sone als euer þay dronken were	
	He was lyghte als lefe one tree.	996

(84)

	thus Oggere Daynas duelled there & heled es of his hurtes Sare,	
	In þ ^e ladise presoun.	999
	And of his felawes speke we mare, how þat þay full harde handilde ware,	
	thies two knyghtes of renoun.	1002
Meanwhile 10,000 Saracens	Ten thousande Sarazenes come girdande, þat hardy were of hert & hande,	
	With Helme & Haberioun.	1005
	Bot þan myghte þay no lengere stande, Olyuer and gud Rowlande,	
attack Roland and Oliver.	to flye nowe are þay boun.	1008

(85)

Otuel discovers the absence of the three knights.	Otuel þat was so wighte Duelles with Belesent þ ^e brighte,	
	Was comely one to calle ;	1011
	Oute of hir chambire he wendis righte Als faste als euer þat he myghte	
	In to þ ^e kynges haulte,	1014
He enquires for them, but in vain.	to seche Olyuer and Rowlande ; Bot neuer noþer he ther fande	
	Amonge þ ^e lordes aHe.	1017
	there-fore kyng Charles his handes wrange And euer, "allas !" was his sange,	
	"What may of this by-falle ?"	1020

(86)

- Ottueh sayde : " where it be Soo,
Oggere Daynes and tho twoo
Are went to Attalee ? 1023
Now buske we aftir thaym to goo,
Or ehs þ^e Sarazenes with þam sloo,
For sothe þay mon alle dy." 1026
þay busked þam in armes full clere,
Seuen hundrethe bolde Bacheleres
With hym to wende in hy. 1029
Belesent sayde to sir Graunters :
" Gude sir, ryde my lemmane nere,
the knyghte es full thethey." 1032

Ottuel suggests
that they have
gone to Attale.

He takes 700
knights with him
to go in search of
them.

[leaf 88]

(87)

- thies seuen hundrethe knyghtis
Duelled with Belesante þ^e brightes,
At hir awenn Fyndyng. 1035
sir Ottueh þat was so wighte
Strykes Florence his stede brighte,
By-fore þam forthe gan he flynge. 1038
he metys Rowlande and Olyuere
Faste rydande by a reuere,
And fresche folke aftir þam dyng. 1041
he hailsede þam with steryn chere,
And sayde : " Sirres, whate make 3e here,
come 3e fro Fischeynge ?" 1044

Ottuel meets
Roland and
Oliver flying
from the Saracens.

and reproves
them for their
rashness.

(88)

- he reprodud þam there full velanslye,
And 3it theire bodies were alle blodye
With woundes Many one. 1047
" Wene 3e for 3oure cheualrye,
For 3oure boste and 3oure folye,
þat þ^e Sarazenes with late 3ow one ? 1050
Charles with his stronge powere
Schaft thynke this a grete gramaungere,
this dede to vnder-tono. 1053

Bot this chase schaff þay by fuþ dere :

He slays Clantere, he smote to a knyghte highte *sir* Glantere,
a Saracen,
& be-lyfe he hathe hym slone.

1056

(89)

*Sir Inglere kills
several Saracens.*

Syr Otueþ there righte in þat gere
Fuþ faste he dange þam down there,
& garte þam go to grounde.

1059

And his felawe *sir* ynglere
In a Sarazene breke a spere,
Within a littiþ stounde :

1062

And in his hande lefte a littiþ troncheoun
þer-with fuþ faste he dange þam down,
Fuþ Many Ane heythyn hounde.

1065

he crakkede fuþ many a carefuþ croun,
& criede, "Mount Ioye," with heghe Sowun,
Fele folke þay there confounde.

1068

(90)

*Sir Galias,
a Saracen,*

then come a kynghte þat highte *sir* Galias,
A noble Sarazene, men saide he was,
& in his hande a spere ;

1071

For þe lufe of his leman fayre of face
A glofe to his pensaþe he hase,
In Sygnance of his were.

1074

unhorses Inglere.

He rydes to *sir* Inglere,
And thurghe þe schelde he gan hym schere,
And vnhorssede hym there :

1077

thurghe double hawberke he hym bere,
Bot, als goddes wiþ it were,
his Flesche hade nonekyns dere.

1080

(91)

*The Saracens
press on him,*

Appon hym also releuede a sarazene wighte,
þat hardy was and ancole highte,
sir Inglere for to sloo,

1083

Bot *sir ysope* come with mekiȝ myghte,
 And *sir Estut* a noble knyghte,
 And *sir Dauide* also. 1086
Sir Estut de ronoun,
Sir Grauntere de lyoun,
 One bakke þay garte þam̄ goo, 1089
 And broghte hym vpe þat are was doun,
 & horsede hym on a stede browun,
 With hert Egere & throo. 1092

but the French
rescue him.

(92)

þan̄ come rydande *sir Galyadose*,
 Off *Sarajenes* aȝe he bare þ^e lose,
 Was halden̄ a noble knyghte : 1095
 Faste he felled doun̄ of his fose,
Sir Inglere righte to hym gose, [leaf 88, back]
 And cl[e]ues his hede fuȝ righte. 1098
 Forthe rydes than̄ *sir Grauntere*,
 A *Sarajene* thurgh þ^e body he bere,
 Sir Megradyn he highte ; 1101
 he dange þam̄ doun̄ bothe ferre & nere,
 Bot appon̄ hym come a stronge powere
 With Baners brode & brighte. 1104

Inglere kills
Galyadose,

and Graunter
slays Megradyn.

(93)

then̄ was there no noȝer crye
 When̄ grete bateȝs to-gedir gan̄ hye,
 With mouthe als I ȝow mene. 1107
 Fuȝ thikke folde gan̄ *Sarajenes* dy,
 And thaire horses thaym by,
 to wete with-owtten wene, 1110
 Be thousandes þay tumblede doun̄ dede,
 þaire saules wente vn to þ^e quede,
 þat myghte not nombrede be[ne]. 1113
 For braynes & blode¹ in þat stede
 þe brode Medowe was waxen̄ rede,
 þat ere was growen grenc. 1116

The Saracens are
knocked over in
thousands ;

[¹ MS. bolde] the ground is red
with brains and
blood.

(94)

þan) come a turke appon) a stede
 They send to
 Clariel for help. to kyng Clariel better spede,
 & sayde: "allas, how do wee? 1119
 For Cristen) men) we hafe grete drede,
 & bot þou helpe vs in this nede
 Grete Sorowe here may þou see." 1123
 kyng Claryel come with his powere,
 Oure batel) ferre one bakke he bere,
 He comes and
 drives the French
 back. Ane Almayne sone sloghe he ; 1125
 Also he dide the gude G[r]auntere,
 sir Otes and sir Raynere,
 & oper grete plentee. 1128

(95)

By þat it was so nere nyghte
 þay moghte no lengere See to fighte,
 Bot stynt one ayther syde. 1131
 Sir Otuel þat was so wighte
 Stroke Florence his stede full righte,
 & by-fore þam) forthe gan) ryde. 1134
 þen) commes girdande kyng Clariel,
 And cried to hym with wordes fel),
 "to speke þou schalt a-byde, 1137
 thi righte name þat þou me tel)."
 and demands his
 name. he sayde: "I highte Otuel,
 For no man) wiþ I hyde: 1140

(96)

And fro 3oure Mahoun) ame I went,
 And Cristyndome hafe I hent,
 & Baptiste ame I full righte. 1143
 My lemman) es bothe faire & gent,
 Hir reghte name es Belesent,
 Charles dogheter þ) brighte." 1146
 Bot þan) þ) Sarazene said: "allas,
 Now is this a wikkede case,
 & þou so noble a knyghte. 1149

Whi duelles þou there amonges thi fase?
 Foullly there thou wichede was,
 & whi es this dede thus dighte? 1152

(97)

I rede þat þou conuerte the in hye,
 & then) saß saughtyH with thyn) Eme sir Garcy,
 & forsake not thy lawe." 1155
 Vn-to þ^e Sarazene gon) he defye :
 "þour lawes are noghte worthe a pye,
 þat dare I Saueley saye. 1158
 And if þou wilt for Mahoun) fighte,
 loo, me here a Cristyn) knyghte,
 With hym þat myghtes maye, 1161
 Stalworthely to stande for oure righte."
 kyng Clariel) his trouthe hase plighte
 At Morne to holde his daye. 1164

Clariel advises
him to recant,but Otuel defies
him,[leaf 96]
and they agree to
fight next day.

(98)

kyng Clariel) wendes to the Cite
 þat men) callede Attale,
 ther-In to dueHe al nyghte. 1167
 Sir Otuel) to his¹ companye,
 to kyng Charles þat was fre,
 & Belesent so brighte. 1170
 þat faire mayden) of hewe & hide
 hir selfe vn-armed hym þat tide,
 & thris scho kissede þat knyghte : 1173
 And groped hym wele body & syde
 þat he ne hade no woundes wyde,
 & Esede hym at hir myghte. 1176

They separate,

and each returns
to his own
friends.

(99)

knyghtis wache was there sett,
 Faire Fyres was there bett,
 to Ese þam) þat þere were. 1179

The French set
watches,¹MS. *repeats* to his.

and attend to
the dead and
wounded.

Of dede folkes þay hepes fett,
To berye þam wíthowíten lett,
 those þat crísten were. 1182
leches come þat couthe one booke,
Woundede men for to loke,
 to salue þam of þaire sara. 1185
And grete lordes ríste toke,
& nyghte wache full worthily wooke,
 blewe & made grete fare. 1188

(100)

Next morning

kyng Clariel rose at Morne,
Wíste whate othes þat he hade sworne,
And to his chambir went : 1191

Clariel arms him-
self for the duel.

Garte kaste armours hym by-forne
þat ríche was & comly korne.
 Ane Actone one he hent, 1194
One he dide ane hawberke schene,
Of þ^e Mayster handwerke of Galyene,
 þat neuer no wapyn rent. 1197
When þat [he] was armed clene
A fayrere knyghte was neuer sene,
 For Ioly ne for gent. 1200

(101)

The crest on his
helmet is an
adder's head.

his creste was of a neddire hede,
With golde abowte it was by-wevede :
 And sett one hym Mahoun, 1203
And appolyne þat he one leuede ;
AHe his armours was ouer dreuede
 With stones of grete renoun. 1206
he girde hym wíth a suerde þat hate Modlee ;
Broghte hym a schelde of faire blee,
 He buskede & made hym boun : 1209
lepe on a stede semely to see,
With mekiþ myrthe & Solempnytee
 He rydes thurgh-owte þ^e toun. 1212

(102)

An hundrethe knyghtes of Turkeye		He is attended by
Bare his Mawmettis hym by		100 knights,
And paste ouer that strande.	1215	
And doun þay lighten aȝ in hye,		
þay were halden full doghetye,		
Aȝ in paire awenn lande.	1218	
þay sett paire goddes appon a stone,		who carry his
And doun þay knelyde euerichone, ¹		gods.
& made þam thare Offerande.	1221	[¹ MS. euerich-
kyng Clariel his leue hase tone,		ones.]
lepe one a stede þat highte Browan,		
þat horse was noble at hande.	1224	

(103)

Charles come rydande by a reuere,		Charles with
With hym Rowlande and Olyuere,		Roland and others
Appon þ ^e ferrere syde.	1227	appear,
Duke Naymes was paire fere,		[leaf 89, back]
And sir Otuel the gude werryere,		
Full fayre of hewe & hyde.	1230	
þan comes girdande kyng Clariel		and are reviled by
And Cried to þam with wordis felle :		Clariel.
"to speke ȝe schall a-byde.	1233	
I be-teche ȝow to þ ^e deuell of helle,		
how longe schall I astir batelle dueȝe ?"		
thus by-gynnes he for to chide.	1236	

(104)

And ȝit he cried breme als bore :		
"Wiche of ȝow foure es Mayster thore ?"		
"kyng Charles, calles men mee."	1239	The Saracen
"Now cursede worthe thou euer mare !		demands which
For þou hase wroghte vs myche care		is Charles,
In Many dyuerse contree."	1242	and curses him.
þ ^e kyng sayde : "be saynt Marie,		
And hir dere soȝe almyghtye,		Charles threatens
þat derely dyede one tree,	1245	him.

With dyntt of swerde þou schalte aby ;
 And take þour Emperoure sir Garcy,
 And distruye alle þoure Citee." 1248

(105)

þ^e Sarazene ansuerde with wordes full bolde :
 Othell mocks him, " Charles, me thynke þat þou scholdeste folde
 And thou were streken Sore. 1251
 and says he is too old and wrinkled to fight. thi vesage es crounkilde & waxen olde,
 A nobil suerde the burde not wolde,
 Now for thi Mellyde hare. 1254
 Bot by righte me thynke þou scholde be founde
 Als þofe it were an olde grewhounde,
 þat myghte rynn no mare." 1257
 Charles in a rage wants to fight him, þ^e kynge wex greuede in that stounde,
 And keste his clothes appon þ^e grounde,
 " As armes," he cried thare. 1260

(106)

but Otuel claims that right as his, Bot sir Otuel saide full curtasely :
 "Gude lorde, graunte this Bateh to me,
 For trowthes hafe we plighte. 1263
 he sett þ^e lawes of Cristyantee
 Nott at a pillynge of a tree
 3istereuen with/in the nyghte." 1266
 and Charles gives way. Charles thankkes hym þer he stode,
 Taughte hym to godde þat diede on rode
 þat alle schaft demie & dighte. 1269
 Elleuen duspers with hym 3ode
 To dresse hym in his armours gude,
 Alle redy for to fighte. 1272

(107)

The other douzepers help to arm him. When he was armede in his gere,
 þat was bothe faire, white, & clere,
 þay girde hym with a brande, 1275

Broghte hym ane helme was riche & dere
pat aughte gud kyng Galliere,

Was none siche in þat lande. 1278

the lady lufsome vnder lyne

Garte þ^e Bischope sir Turpyne

Assoyle hym with his hande. 1281

He is assailed by
Turpin,

Scho kiste hym thryse with herte full fyne,

Bytaughte hym vn to dere dryghtyne,

þat Mayden faire to fande. 1284

and his lady-love
kisses him and
bids him 'god-
speed.'

(108)

lordes þat weren of mekitt pride

Ouere þ^e brigge þan gan þay ryde,

With Mounthe als I ȝow mene. 1287

Bot then the Sarazene be-gynnes to chide :

"Now schalte þou fole lose thi pryde,

Bothe with traye & tene. 1290

Clariel vows he
will make Otuel
recent.

To oure goddes I rede thou goȝe,

And knele bi-fore þam euer-ichone,

Of colours þat are clene." 1293

"Nay," he sayde "there es no god bot one

þat euer made ne blode ne bone,

Nowe sone it schalt be sene." 1296

(109)

þan bothé thies kene knyghtes there¹ [MS. repeats this line] to-gedir þay reden a course of werre

[leaf 90]
They charge, and

With stronge speres in theire hande, 1299

pat aHe in sondre floughe paire gere,

both are unhorsed,

Tayle ouer tope bothe doun gon bere,

the stroke was wele sittande. 1302

Belysent keste vp a crye

Vn-to god and Milde Marie,

Scho wepede & handes wrange. 1305

Bot vp þay stert full hastily

And ayther gan to oper defye

but soon recover
themselves,
and fight on foot.

With swerdis large & lange. 1308

(110)

Clariel gives Otuel a blow,	This noble kyng this Clariell Smyttes to sir Otuell A dynt þat he myghte fele :	1311
	Bot one his helme it myghte nott dueþle,	
which brings him on his knees,	So sadly one his scholdire it felle, The knyghte by-gane to knele.	1314
but he is soon up again.	Bot vp he stirte full hastilye : "I vowe to god þou schalt a-bye, þat alle schalte deme & dele." Cursu thurghe his helme gan hye þat alle his one cheke hyngede bye, His tethe were Schauen wele.	1317 1320

(111)

Otuel cuts off one of Clariel's cheeks.	he said þan : "Clariell, als mote þou thee, Whi grynnes þou nowe so one mee, As þofe þou wolde me byte ? Alphayne thi lemman white & fre thare neuer 3erne to kysse the, ' þer-fore I maye nott hir wyte." the kyng ferde than als he wolde wede, to þ ^e knyghte he hyed hym bettir spede, Full Egerly to smyte : And thurgh his schelde he gan hym schrede, þat schulde hafe sauede hym at his nede, Almoste he was Scomfite.	1323 1326 1329 1332
---	--	------------------------------

(112)

but Otuel wards off the blow,	þ kyng woundede Otuell so sore, hade he nott schounte his stroke thore, For sothe he hade bene slayne.	1335
[¹ MS. has Cursus.]	Bot than Cursu ¹ that the knyghte bare thorowowte þ ^e kynges herte it schare, bothe with myghte & Mayne ; And to þ ^e grounde he tumbilts down, His saule went vn-to Mahoun, than by those gates gayne.	1338 1341

and slays him.

And a full blythe man was Charlyoun,
 And louede god with full heghe sowun,
 & Belesent was full fayne. 1344

(113)

For sorowe sir Garcy went nere wode, Garcy is furious,
 For ClarieH dede was stronge of mode,
 And sware by appolyne, 1347
 pat mete ne drynke scholde done hym gude
 are he struyed hade Cristen blode, and vows vengeance on all Christians.
 & broghte þam alle to pyne. 1350
 his grete batayls he garte arayee,
 And his Baners brode displye
 With coloures noble & fyne. 1353
 And Charles wele thynkes pat he maye
 For to kepe the heythyn laye,
 With þ^e helpe of dere drightyn. 1356

(114)

Sir Barlott of perse come girdande swythe, Sir Barlott, a
 Also faste als he myghte dryfe,
 Was holden a noble knyghte; 1359 Saracen knight,
 And doghety dedis gun he kythe,
 þer myghte no wapen his wedys ryfe,
 So Sauely was He dighte. 1362
 he rydes owte a course of were
 & In his hande a noble spere,
 His armours glyssenede full brighte, 1365
 he askede leue at Sir Garcy there
 To Iuste with Rowlande and Olyuere, [leaf 90, back]
asks leave to
challenge Roland
and Oliver.
 their bothere dede to dyghte. 1368

(115)

And one his horse he come rynnande
 With his spere faste in his hande
 his armours glessened clere. 1371
 CHARL. BOM. II. H

He challenges
Roland and
Otuel and Oliver.

he called firste one Rowlande,

One Otuel stalworthe for to stande,

And sythen One Olyuere : 1374

"hafe done," he saide, "brynge mee forthe þow kyngc,
Or els to dethe I schalt þow dyngc,

For sothe alle foure in fere." 1377

Rowlande askede þe kynges blyssynge,
he stroke his stede & forthe gan flynge,

His thretynge boghte he dere. 1380

(116)

Roland accepts
the challenge,

When þat þay to-gedir mett

A sekere stroke was there sett,

and they fight.

þat bothe þay tynte þaire stedys ; 1383

& vp þay rose with-owtten lett,

And ayther harde on othir bett,

& persed some of þaire wedys. 1386

Rowlande doghty dedis gan kythe,

With Drondale he gan hym ryne,

þat reghte to þe girdill it þede. 1389

Roland slays him,

And sir Barlot loste his lyfe,

he faughte nothir with foure ne fyve,

His lyfe was hym full gnede. 1392

(117)

but is himself
wounded by
Lamagere,

then commes a Sarazene girdande there,

his name was called sir lamagere,

Was holden a noble knyghte : 1395

he come als breme als any bore

And woundede sir Rowlande wonder sore,

thurgh his brenyes brighte : 1398

whom Oliver kills.

And Olyuere saughe his felawe blede,

With sporres he touches his noble stede,

þe Sarazene garte he lighte. 1401

þe grete Batells by þan to-gedir þede,

þey hewede one faste & full gude spede,

And now lygynnes þaire fyghte. 1404

(118)

Bot oþer noyse was þer none		A general battle ensues.
When þ grete to-gedir gun gone,		
Bot stronge strokes & steryn.	1407	
þay hewede one faste & fuht gud wone,		
Brusten bothe bak, blode, & bone,		
Of wandrethe myghte men leryn.	1410	
Be thousandes þay doun gan dryfe,		The French attack is irresistible.
For bothe helme & haberieone þay ryfe,		
þer myghte no man þam weryn.	1413	
kyng & Duke there loste þaire lyfe ;		
with dynt of swerde, spere, & knyfe,		
þay Brittenede many a beryn.	1416	

(119)

Doun þay dange þaire Baners brade		There is great slaughter of the Saracens.
Bothe in slakkes & in slade,		
One bukes as we rede.	1419	
Fuht fele Sarazenes felle þay fade		
And many one to þ ^e grounde þay hade,		
þaire lyfe was þam fuht gnedo.	1423	
Fuht Grisely þay grone & grenne,		
Maisterles þaire horse þay rymne,		
Of þam toke no man hede.	1425	
þ ^e oristen men gan þ ^e maystry wynn,		
Bot ȝitt þaire barett ne wolde not blyn,		
On Newe by-gynnes þaire dede.	1428	

(120)

Sir Elye ¹ come with mekyl myghte,		Sir Ely comes up with 700 knights.
With Seuen hundrethe newe made knyghtes		
Oute of Bretayne,	1431	
þise fresche men so freschely fyghte		
þat it was Ioye to See þat sighte,		
Bothe with myghte & mayne.	1434	

¹ MS. Elys Elye.

- [leaf 91]
Brian is slain.
- A Sarazene come with Felawes Fyve,
thorowte sir Briane gane he dryfe,
 þat nobiH knyghte was slayne. 1437
And ȝitt þat paynym loste his lyfe,
With a spere þay gan hym ryfe,
 his saule wente vn-to payne. 1440
(121)
- Otuel kille
Balam, his own
cousin.
- sir OtueH þat noble man
to his awenn Cosyn he ran,
 FulH Grymly in his gere. 1443
he strikes the Duke Balame,
the kynges Sone of alphane,
 Euen thurgh-owte with a spere. 1446
- Alphane of
Barbary comes up
with 20,000 men,
- þan kyng alphane come in hye
With twenty thowsande of Barbarye,
 þat wele couthe wapyns bere. 1449
- and Cursaboles,
king of Turkey,
with 30,000,
frightful to see.
- And the kyng Cursaboles
With thritty thousande of Turkee,
 And aHe one fote þay were. 1452
(122)
- thies fute men so staleworthe ware
þat oure Batellis fulH ferre one bakke þay bare,
 þer myghte none stirre þaire schelde. 1455
- They drive the
French more than
a bow-shot back.
- þaire dynttes felle so sadde & sare
þat wele ane alblastire schott & mare
 þay myghte no wapyns welda. 1458
þay were so mekiH & so vn-ryde,
And so fouHe of hewe and hyde,
 þat þay hade almoste wonn þ' felde. 1461
þay gafe þaym woundes wete & wyde,
And Brittenede þam bothe bake & syde,
 Oure BateH garte þay helde. 1464
(123)
- than come girdande a gude sqwyere,
Sir Grym sone þ' gude duchere,
 þat was borne in Pareyche ; 1467

- With hym an hundrethe þat hardy ware,
his name was hatten Naymere,
A man of mekiþ pryce. 1470
to arme thaym grete hye þay hade,
Dispoyle þ^e bodyes þat laye one brade,
ichone one paire beste wyse. 1473
Of paire clothes pensalles þay made,
To kyng Cherlles be-lyfe þay rade,
"Mount Ioye" was paire discrye. 1476
come to Charles' assistance.
- (124)
- þ^e grete Bateþ than relyed agayne,
Both with myghte and with mayne,
& brittenede blode & bone. 1479
kyng Charles than was full fayne
And louede god, es noghte to layne,
& his modir allone. 1482
kyng Cresable howed by apparoun
And seese hys men aþe donngen down,
& Sone gane he to þam goo[n]. 1485
Bot Aymere hitt hym one þ^e crowun,
þat that lorde hathe loste aþe his renoun,
In þ^e felde he hathe hym tone. 1488
Aymere takes king Cresable prisoner,
- (125)
- Aymere hathe the kyng hent,
And to kyng Charles he hathe hym sent.
By foure of his Sqwyere.¹ 1491
Bot when þat he made hym þat present,
he loues gode þat luffe hade lent,
And his mylde Modere dere. 1494
Thies fresche men so fersely fighte,
It was grete Ioye to See þat syghte,
& a wondere thyng to here. 1497
This noble man sir Ottueþ
thilke folde he gane þam felle,
With strengthe & Noblitee. 1500
The French recover their lost ground.

(126)

[leaf 91, back]
The French make
great slaughter of
the Saracens.

And Certis, als the bookes gane telle,
paire Saules wente vn-to helle,
those fele þat there gun) blede. 1503
thus kynges & Dukes to þ^e dede þay dighte,
A hundrethe Dubbide þam) selfe to knyghte,
þat worthy were & welde : 1506
And to þe Banere be-lyfe þay wanne,
And foure gude kynges þay sloughe þer þane,
paire lyfes was þam) full gnede. 1509
thurghe-owte þ^e Oste are þat he blane
Vn-to kyng Charles als a mañe,
he thankede hym of þat dede. 1512

(127)

Garcy recognizes
Otuel.

than) for sorowe sir Garcy said, "allas,"
to a kyng þat highte sir Abars,
þat was armede full clere : 1515
"þone Renayede thefe my Cosyn) was,
he ledis vs here a wikkide pase,
bothe with traye and tene." 1518
The kyng ansuerde to sir Garcy :
"loo, where sir Cherilles comes the by,
And dynges aHe dounne by-dene. 1521
Now for Mahoñns lufe þat þou þ^e hye
With twenty thousande of Turkye
till þat we redy bene." 1524

(128)

He charges with
20,000 men.

the kyng dide als þ^e Emperour bad,
With those Turkes þat he hade
he stroke in to the stourre. 1527
there were oure folkes full styffely stadde,
þay hewede one faste als þay were madde,
& brittenede brighte armour. 1530

Naymes is
unhorsed and
taken prisoner,

the Duke Naymes stede was alayne
& hym selfe in þ^e felde tane,
þat boughte þay sythen) full Sourre. 1533

Rowlande gude of blode & bone
And sir OtueH hase thre kynges slone,
& rescuwsede hym with honour. 1536

but is rescued by
Roland and
Otuel.

(129)

þan) was there no noþer crye
Bot thik folde gane þ^e Sarazenes dy,
& Grysely gane þey grone. 1539

A Sory man) was sir Garcy,
And alle þ^e Sarazenes þat houed hym by,
þaire herttis was fro þam) tone. 1542

Oggere Dannays laye in presoun
And of þat noyse he herde the soun),
& heghte men) kepede hym) one. 1545

Ogier hears the
noise of the battle,

Bot preualy he made hym boun),
With a nastel schide he slewe þam) doun),
hys wardens thus hath he slayne. 1548

kills his guards,

(130)

He armede hym selfe iche a thyng^e,¹
And to stabiH gan) he gange
& hent a noble stede. 1551

(¹ MS. thwngc.

þ^e horse was styffe þuoghe & strange,
he caughte a spere was large & lange,
& leppe vp better spede. 1554

he kayres forthe owte of the Cite :
“ Nowe hafes alle gude daye,” says he,
& to his felawes þus he zede. 1557

and escapes to the
French.

And gladdere men) there myghte none bee
Ne þay were when) þay sir Oggere Daynnas See,
þat doghety was of dede. 1560

(131)

Now Oggere Daynas by-gynnes to fighte,
& to hew doun) many ane heythen) knyghte,
& Brittyne blode & bone. 1563

kyng^e & Duke to þ^e dede he dighte,
The Emperour tooke hym to þ^e flighte,
to þ^e toun) he wolde hafe gone. 1566

Garcy takes to
flight,

[leaf 98]
pursued by Otuel.

sir OtueH stroke his stede Floryne
With two sporres of golde full fyne,
 & belyfe he to hym come : 1569
"Nay sir," he sayde, "be sayne drightyne,
thou schalt noghte to þ^e toun to dyne,
 Bot here the moste be tone." 1572

(132)

Otuel captures
the Saitan.

sir OtueH hase there tane þ^e Emperour,
þat lorde hath loste pere his honour,
 to charles he hathe hym sent. 1575
knyghtis streghte in ilke a stourre
token vp Cite, toun and toure,
 the Sarazenes are alle schent. 1578
When þay had wroghte one swilkon wyse
Home þay wente þan to Pariche,
 Full wightly one paire waye : 1581
And Charles louede god of this Enpryce ;
And sir OtueH þat worthy es,
 Now weddede he Belesent. 1584

(133)

Otuel marries
Belesant,

and is made lord
of Lombardy.

And than þay helde a Mangery
With alle þ^e noble cheualry,
 þat semely was to see. 1587
þay made hym lorde of lombardy
to hafe it alle in his Bayly,
 þat contre faire & free. 1590
And thus he duellys & es a pere,
Rowlande felawe, and Olyuere,
 A gud Cristyn man was hee. 1593
And Iesus Criste þat boghte vs dere,
Brynge vs to thi Blissess sere !
Amen, par charite ! 1596

God bless all !

Amen !

Charles { Here Endes þ^e Romance
 { of Duk Rowland & sir OtueH of Spayne }
 Explicyt sir OtueH.

Fragment of the Song of Roland

FROM

LANSDOWNE MS. 388, leaf 381.

Fragment of the Song of Roland

FROM

LANSDOWNE MS. 388, LEAF 381.

He beheld ladys with laughinge cher.
 then lightid gwynylon and com In in fer,
 And brought in the madins bright in wedis;
 he told many tailis, and all was lies:
 For he that is fals no wordis ned seche,
 so fairithe he withe flatring' speche.
 And the lord that king' charls plaid with.
 and on the toper sid he kest his sight.
 who so beleuythe hym shall hym fals find,
 right as A broken sper at the litill end.
 then knelid the knyght vnto his lord,
 And said to the kinge, & shewid this word:
 "criste kep the from care and all þ' knightis!
 I haue gone for þ' sak' wonderfull waia,
 I haue bene In Saragos þer sairsins won,
 And spoken with the soudan þat myghty gom.
 I haue taught hym hou he lyf shall,
 And he hathe tak' good hed to my wordis all.
 ye ned no Further fightinge to seche,
 hast you hom agayn to your lond riche.
 with-in xvj days thedur he wille hym hye,
 and all the hethyn statis in his company,
 a thoussond of his lond of the best;
 all will be cristenyd & leue on Ihesu crist.

Gwynylon
 alighted
 and brought in
 the maidens.

4

8

Then the knight
 knelt,
 and said to the
 King:
 "Christ keep the!"

12

I have been in
 Saragossa
 amongst the
 Saracens,
 and spoken with
 their mighty
 Sultan.

16

Haste home
 again,
 for within 16 days
 he and all the
 noblest of his
 knights will be
 baptised.

20

24

	ther law will they lef sone anon, And at thy comandment þey will done.	
He has sent thee the key of Saragosa, and all these fair ladies,	of Saragos the cete he sent the þ ^e key And all thes faire lady[s] with the to play :	28
and this good wine.	echon of them is a lordis doughtur. And her ys good wyn ; drink ^r þer-of after. and thou wisly wirche, thou failid nought,	
There is no profit in fighting when pence is sought."	ther is no prow to pryke ^r þer men pece sought ! If that mercy and myght mellithe to-gedur he shall haue the mor grace euer aftur."	32
[leaf 381, back] Then said the king :	Then said the kinge to his knyght sone, and said to gwynylon the good gome :	36
"Thou art welcome ;	" thou art welcom, so þat thou bryngyst. thou hast wisly done & þat me glad thinkis."	
[MS. far]	And then sothly he said full right :	
since he will forsake Mahomet, and be baptised,	"mahoun And margot he will for-sake ^r twight for ¹ to be cristyned and for-sake ^r þer syne.	40
I will return to France, and prepare before his coming."	no[w] will I go in-to Fraunce & his frend bene, and mad redy yeftis againste his comyng ^r to Fest hym and his men xv dais suyng ^r ,	44
	and whils he wille with me dwelle. who gothe in woo wintirs full fell, yet is frendchipe and faithe fairiste at end.	
[MS. hem]	tak vp tentis and truse hem hom ² hend. knyghtis ther hernes homward they kest. the tentis And pauellions let hem rest, For now I dred no day in All my lyf."	48
Then all were glad, and amidst flourishes of trumpets the	When he had said they herd hym blif ^r ; blowinge off bugles and bemes aloft, trymlinge of tabers And tymbring ^r soft, bridlinge of stedes and baners vp to fold ^r .	52
king mounted,	the kinge lep to horse, stint he ne wold ^r ,	56
and started towards Gascony.	And all his knyghtis followid sone, And gone toward gascon with þat gom. they be not gone ferr on ther way, but x myle, in A medew, as I you say,	60

- when they se vnder the son aloft
 It was tym to pight tentis ofte.
 then mad them redy the knyghtis right,
 to feche food for foilis with all per myght. 64
 the king set hym to his soper pat tid,
 seruyd hym semly and his men by his sid
 with euery thinge pat myght glad his hert :
 wyn went be-twen þem, non did astert, 68
 pat gwynylon to toun brought, euyll hym be-tid !
 It swymyd in ther hedis and mað hem to nap ;
 they wist not what þey did, so þer wit failid.
 when they wer in bed and thought to a restid, 72
 they went to the women pat wer so hend,
 that wer sent fro saragos of sairsins kind :
 they synnyd so sore in pat ylk while
 that many men wept and cursid pat vile. 76
 Charls our kinge in his bed slepithe,
 gladly brought to bed, and no harm thinkithe ;
 litill rest had the king in his riche clothes,
 For drechinge and dremyng & trobling his wittis, 80
 A sweuyn he met that derid hym sor ;
 that he was hie on his [hors] in wed hore,
 And saragos the cete seigid about,
 with all his meyne that he led out. 84
 then com gwynylon & gript hym herd,
 went to his wepon and a sond braid,
 that the splintis of the sper sprong into heuyn.
 he went his way with weping steuyn, 88
 he left vntak the toun, and to his tent ridis ;
 thoughe he wer wrothe, no man hym wytis.
 but sone aftur he fell in a noþer :
 hym thought ferre in fraunce with-outon Frend ther,
 In A wildd Forest Among wildd bestis 93
 A Bore com from A bank wondirly boistous,
 And Fought sore with hym, and fendithe hym swithe.
 he tok hym by the right arm and hent it of 96
- When they had
 gone about 10
 miles, the tents
 were pitched,
 and Charles sat
 down to supper
 with his knights.
 [leaf 382]
 The wine
 made them dizzy
 and sleepy,
 and then they
 went to the
 ladies whom
 Gwynylon had
 brought.
 Charles the same
 night
 has a dream
 which alarms
 him.
 He dreamt that
 he was besieging
 Saragossa,
 when Gwenlyn
 treacherously
 tries to kill him.
 Then he dreams
 again
 that a boar
 seized him by the
 right hand,
 and bit it off;

- then a leopard
came,
and seized the
bear,
and tore off its
right ear.
[leaf 389, back]
Then the king
awoke,
 and summoned
his wisest
knights,
 who said the
dreame portended
treachery and
trouble,
 but that Charles
should overcome
it all.
 Then said the
king:
"We are at the
gates of Spain,
 through which
only 3 men may
pass at once;
let us settle who
is to command
the Van and rear,
for I do not trust
the Saracens;
they are full of
the devil."
- clene from the braun, the flesche, & the lier ;
 the fell and the Flesche at his fete fallithe.
 he lokid ouer a lawnd, the sothe for to sayn,
 he se a libard lep from low spayn ;
 ther he tok' the bore And laid hym to erthe,
 redely the right ere he pullid from the hed,
 he lep lightly away, he wold no lenger dwell.
 then awok' the king, & his dreame did tell.
 when It was day, and the dew fell,
 then rose the kinge ; he wold no mor dwell :
 he callid the wisest men þen aright,
 and askid of his dreame hou it be myght.
 all they said, þat þer did stond,
 that tray and tene is toward at hond,
 battell on the feld, byd who þat myght :
 but none of hem knew þe trouthe aright,
 whan It will fall the feld for to wyn,
 and the lebard had tak' the bore & slayn hym.
 and for fair the flesche & þe fight endid,
 then shuld kinge charls the better aspendid.
 sithe the bore was beten & bashed no mer,
 but the hurt that he had, hele shuld thor,
 throughe right resson, they said hym till :
 "now let god alone, and do all his will."
 "lordis," said the king, "listyn a stound.
 now we must to Fraunce, god send vs sound !
 her be wais wild that we wend most,
 full hore hillis and also he on boest ;
 Full of cragy roches they bene sertayn,
 And they be callid the gatis of spayn :
 ther may not iij men go in at onys,
 luk' whiche baron can led vs eft sonmys,
 whiche knyght our rerward shall gid.
 for I am not secur of the sairsins þis tid,
 they be so full of the fend, I drede þer werkis ;
 they must be Frowardis þat delithe with euyll frekis,

100

104

108

112

116

120

124

128

- or he shall haue enyll sped at the last end." 133
 then gwynylon spek—the deuyll hym shend !—
 “ lordis, listyn to me A litill stound.
 do, lord, as I red, if þou wilt pase sound. 136
 I will go be-for, and þi folk led,
 thou shalt folow me fair & þi men in ded :
 And Rouland the rerward with man enow,
 Olyuer and Roger, and oþer for þi prow, 140
 that be proud in pres, & well preuyd knyghtis,
 with xxx M^e men of þi lond rightis,
 that be stif in stour, And stiffest in hert :
 then ned ye to dred noþer harm ne smert : 144
 the sairsins be set the poyntment to hold,
 And to god they be geuyn þe bodys bold.”
 “ A ! fals man,” quod the kinge, “ Fekill is thy thought, 148
 Full of the foule gost thou fenyst þe nought.
 Euer is thy counsell, Roulond to quell ;
 but thou shalt not hurt hym, I the telle :
 the man is litill to loue that hym sleys.
 who so takithe from the tre the rind and the levis, 152
 It wer better that he in his bed lay long.
 this I mene by the & þi werkis stronge,
 For thou louys to slee þat I loue best ;
 And hym thou hatist, and me next.” 156
 Roulond com to the kinge & knelid full euyn,
 And said to the kinge with myld steuyn :
 “ now, good lord, let vs be in rest,
 when euery man hathe said, do ye the best. 160
 I will hold me by-hind, and þi men led ;
 rid with the rerward, and be ther gid.
 but be that lord god þat me hathe bought,
 ther is noþer kinge ne knyght in my thought, 164
 that me desithe, I shall his dethe wirehe,
 And clef hym with my brond doun to his tethe.
 ther-for It is best I busk me blif,
 when your luen is furthe, I will beleue.” 168

Then Gwynylon
said :
[leaf 283]

“ I will take
the vanguard,

and Roland the
rearguard,

and then you
need fear nought.”

“ Ah ! traitor,”
said the king,

“ ever thou art
anxious to slay
Roland,
but thou shalt not
hurt him.”

Then Roland
said :

“ I will lead the
rearguard,

and woe to him
who opposes me.”

[leaf 283, back]

- Charles asks if
any other of his
knights will take
the rear,
the kinge praid his princis euerychon,
If eny man a litill behind gone
with a bold battell, the best pat he had,
till the folk wer gone pat wer sad. 172
- but they are all
afraid and refuse;
for they dread the
treachery of
Gwynylon.
and they said "nay, none oper wold."
then wer they a-dred lest pey dye shold :
Gwynylon was fals long or pat tym,
for men dred tresson wher they it finden, 176
and thought on tresson per trist was neuer.
the kinge then was wrothe with pat answer ;
he lokid about on his bold barons :
"Sostir son," he said, "forsak thou pis sondis : 180.
I must bid on my horse, behouythe me non oper.
mak me a batelle for barons & oper
that wille abid in the feld for wers or better.
let your harnes go be-for, & hie you aftur, 184
and we will cum aftir when we list.
- Charles is vexed,
and says to
Roland :
sistir son," said the king, "sore I mystrist ;
let we now leue till we eft met ;
ther is no game ne gle in my hert yet. 188
- "Half of my men
I give you."
halfondell of my men I the be-teche,
For to help the, pat no harm the reche."
- "Nay," said
Roland,
"I do not want so
many,
but let half of the
peers remain with
me."
"nay," said Roulond, "so will I nought ;
why shuld so many be with me sought ? 192
but of my peres, both princis & dukis,
let them bid with me in euery shouris.
whilles me lastithe lyf, ne shall ye lese man,
knyzt in my keping, ne knawe pat we han ; 196
horse ne harnes, the hethyn shall not wyn
- [leaf 384]
whillis I may endur, by eny maner gyn,
and dintis to dele with good durmidalle."
- Then the
Douzeperes went
to Roland,
And, whils this tale was told in the sale, 200
vnto Roulond then went the princis xij ;
Olyuer, and Roger, And Aubry hym-selue,
Richard, and Rayner, that redy was euer,
tirry, And turpyn, all redy wer, 204

And the good giliuer, that good was at ned,
Nemes and oper iiij, þat god be þer sped !
all they said atonys they will to-gedur holdð,
with Sir Roulond to rid they wer bold :

208 and said they
would remain
with him.

" For he in word and werk' greuyd vs neuer,
nor sparid schewing' of sheldis for non þat lyuyd euer :
For dred of dethe, he hid neuer his hed,
with hym is worship euer-mor in ded, 212
ther men may wyn worship for euer."

Ingeler And Oger stod vp ther,
Archbold and arnold þat gret wer holdene,
Gauter and Gaissèr & godfray the bolleyn, 216
barenger, and berard, & bedwar the strang',
the riche man Richard þat russelen fonge,
sampson of seymer said to charls,

[? A line out.]

For to weld all the welth þat men myght,
they wold no furþer go then full right,
and leue lordis behind þat they louyd euer :

220 Other knights
declared they
would not leave
them behind.

[? A line out.]

they will hold with them " till our hertis bledð,
ther hedis throughe helmes hewen in-ded, 224
Our well and worship to win sound.
yet will tutlers in toun talk boundð,
that we wer the men þat Roulond wold quell.

[? A line out.]

good Sir, haue good day, to god we þe be-teche ! 228
For we will rid in the rout, Roulond to seche."

" I be-tak' you to crist," said the kinge then,
" þat died on the rood, he sped you euyn !"

[leaf 284, back]
" Christ keep
you," said the
king,

now is roulond redy with his rout faire, 232
For to abid at a bank' with barons thar.

the kinge ridithe on,—crist be his sped !—
and all his lordis riding' by his sid,
and warnyd them hou they do sholdð ;
he bad no bern be so bold vpon moldð,

and then he rode
to Roland.

236

The Emperor
forbids any

CHARL. ROM. II.

I

blowing of
trumpets,
or any noise.

bugle to blow, ne beme to soun,
but he the sairsins se all redy boune,
“ And he the hethlyn se, and help wold haue, 210
lowd cast vp a cry, and hie vs hym to saue :”
and they grauntid so for to do.

[? A line out.]

The French army
starts for France

the kinge lep on his sted, stint wold he nought,
And euery man on horsbak homward sought ; 244

Gwynylon in the
van.

Gwynylon rod be-for, and tho men bad
redely to rid, and all the rout sad
with soft songis and nothing glad.

our men þat behind wer, oder play had : 248

he must tak hed þat with euyll delithe,
they wer dampnyd to dethe, as the bok seithe.

A mor sorowfull day had they neuer :
Itt is wretyn in storis to remembre euer. 252

Now let us leave
the Christians,
and tell of the
Saracens.

Here ridithe Rouland, god be his gið !
of our cristyn let vs ouer slid,
And spek of the hethyn, as the story sais,
that hathe spied the werkis of king charls, 256
hou he ridithe furthe, & his men leuys,
that he wold fanest haue þer he leseis.

The Sultan
ordered his men
to prepare
themselves at
once.

then spek the soudan & bad his men hye,
“ busk you to horse right hastely ; 260
tak ye no trewes, thoughe ye myght,
for gift ne garison as gwynylon hight.

[leaf 265]

blissid be mahoun ! myche he vs helpithe,
to-day we shall haue our will right as vs likithe.” 264
then com þer a kinge with knyghtis many,—
he was of the soudan kyn with-outon nay ;

Then came
Amaris, Prince of
Portugal,

Amaris he hight, þat many a toun ought ;
prince was of portingall, proud eft in thought ;— 268
Vnto the soudan he said his wille :

and asked to be
allowed to leave
the vanguard,

“ lord,” he said, “ to you will I tell,
that I may go be-for with my noun men,
I will say one thinge þat ye shall kene. 272

may I met with Roulond in eny stond,
I shall bet hys men and hew hym to ground."

then said the soudon, "mahoun the blis,
And help the ther-to, þat thou not myse!"

he lep vpon his sted & furthe did he ryd,
with xl. thoussond sairsins by his sid;
ouer hillis and holtis he hastid full sone,
vnto the tym to the cristyn þey com.

still then he stod, and set his knyghtis,
and thought he had had to few to hold fightis.

Roulond was war of þer euyll dedis;
he comandid barons by his sidis;
he armyd hym surly in Irne wed,
And thought hym sure for eny ned.

his baners beten with gold for the nonys,
set with diamondis & oper stonys;
his kneys coueryd with platis many,
his thies thryngid with silk, as I say
his Acton And oper ger þat he werid,

[A line out.]

the swerd was full good þat he þer had,
the hilt then he takithe surly And sad,
when that his helme on his hed wer,
And his glovis gletering with gold wir;
durimdall his swerd gird hym about,
with a schynynge sheld on his shulder stout:
he tok with hym his sper, and went to his horse,
but lep on lightly with-out any fors.

then euery cristyn knyght vnto oper said:

"It is fair, Roulond to folow in a braid;
he may boldly abid, þat hathe siche a lord."

"now wise vs crist!" quod Roulond, "one word;
we be fellos and frendis, god be our gid;

we be stad in a place a sound to abid,
Amonge medos, and moris, & euyll bankis,
And roches roughe, and wodis full of bestis,

that he might
scounter Roland.

The Sultan gives
him leave,

and he mounts,
and hastened off
with 40,000
Saracens,

till they came up
with the
Christians.

Roland perceives
them,
and prepares his
knights to meet
them.

[leaf 385, back]

He arms himself,

and leape on his
horse.

Well might men
be bold,
who followed such
a leader!

Roland tells them
that they are in
great danger,

- beter for birdis to bred, þen men in to won, 308
 or wild wollves for to walk in sone.
- and must be cautious,
 because of
 Gwynylon's
 treason. It is good to be wise in ded and in thought.
 If Gwynylon tressour haue tak', & treson wrought,
 And to the soudan sold vs, as It semyd best, 312
 he may the haue vs euyn as they lest,
 And we vn-warnyd þer-of in this tid.
- He then sends Sir
 Gauter,
 with 10,000 men,
 to look out ahead. but go furthe, sir gauter, god be your gid,
 and x Mⁱ tak' of our men; 316
 go down by yonder clif and luk' þen,
 If eny hethyn be þer to wirche vs wo;
 and we will cum to you asson as we may,
 for to go þat way: and euery man kep oper, 320
 And we may son help yf we pink' myster."
- Sir Gauter goes, now is gauter dight as Roulond hym bad;
 And his sheld and his brond he had:
 he shakis down by a schaw and his men right, 324
 And lukid on euery sid and se no wight:
 he rod furthe in an holt, by an hore bank,
 he se in the vale wher an ost stant, 328
 [leaf 386] With bright sheldis and schaftis in hond.
 then wer they wild in þer werkis to found,
 to Fight or to fall they wist non oper.
- Amaris with his
 men charges the
 French. Amaris bad hys men sped hem thedir:
 "go ye forthe proudly, & ber you bold." 332
- A fearful struggle
 ensues. A wondur sore mettinge men myght be-hold,
 what man It had sene mervell to tell;
 hou wondirly on they set with dintis felle;
 speris to-brast and in pecis flowen, 336
 swerdis swedyrd out & laid hem down;
 the blod out at brestis, the brayn at the bedys,
 lymmys went A-sundir and lost ther stedis.
- The Christians
 are surrounded,
 but do not give
 way. the cristyn wer be-set and coueryd nought. 340
 many sairsins that tid to the erthe sought
 or our folk' wer feld, and the feld endid.
 that day sir gauter many on woundid,

- till his hed was hurt, & hir brest brok'
 that he se on no sid socour ne help :
 but the hethyn euer hew hym vpon.
 then he smot his sted on the hill son,
 many on folowed, yet it vailid nought ;
 he ridithe weping' away And his feles sought.
 but cristis willis ne wer in þat ilkey stond,
 that euer he shuld suffur so many a wound.
 And It wer not to warn his felos all,
 he had leuer to dy then so shuld be-fall ;
 he rod vp by a bank' bleding' full sore,
 And se Roulond rid, a Rout hym be-for,
 and old Roger behynd þat yet fled neuer :
 then he kest vp a cry, and callithe hem euer :
 " crist the red, roulond, & þ' rout son,
 for I haue lost þat I had, but my-selue a-lonc.
 as I went *with-out* folkis valis to seche,
 we wer be-set about : þe deuyll hem feche !
 they haue slayn my fellos full bold ;
 that I wer on them vengid, god it wold !
 but now I know hou þat It wendis,
 I wold foulis had ete me, so I wer at my end.
 gwynylon hathe vs gilid, I may say now ;
 that euer he was born, a tratur to prove !"
 ther was weping' and wailing' of knyghtis,
 mornynge and menyng' of all oþer wightis.
 thoughe Roulond rew þat rese, he red rem all :
 " lordis, leue this sorow ; help it ne shall.
 thoughe we dye for sorow, It valithe nought ;
 And in heuyn be þer soulis *with-outon* thought !
 let vs spek', and sped our tyme,
 let our hertis be hie, and to-gedir rynn,
 that no hethyn hound of our men wyn,
 but he by it *with* blod, his brest *with-in*.
 For men will tell charls this full sone,
 when we haue slayn the fals, & the feld won."
- 344 Sir Gauter is wounded,
 and flies back to Roland,
 348
 352
 356
 and warns him how he has been attacked,
 360 [leaf 286, back]
 364
 and betrayed by Gwynylon.
 368 The French weep and lament.
 372 Roland tries to encourage them.
 376

- now of thes lordis rest we a whill, 380
 And spek' we of king' charlis pens many A mylle.
 "hou may this chaunce be," said charls the strong;
 "that my good knyghtis abiden so long!"
 now may I dred þat I dremyd this nyght, 384
 hou A bore bet me and my brond bright,
 And my spere spild, and my sped failid.
 I tok' it to Roulund & he hem sailid,
 then is my lyf lorn for euer, 388
 & or it dawen the day, his shuld for euer,
 I wold þat I wer doluyn in clay."
 and all the barons to hym gan say :
 "lord, we will wit what shall be-tid. 392
 If gwynylon haue done tresson wild
 he hathe vs all sold, who so tell durst ;
 but ye ar betraid, we nedis say must,
 ye trist no trew men þat tellis you right ; 396
 whoo tellis you sothe, gothe out of sight.
 he hathe found way to fell vs to ground,
 and hathe brewid bale in this ilkay stound ;
 and that may sore rew many of your knyghtis." 400
 then was gwynylon wrothe anon rightis,
 he kest vp his browes & blenchid his eye ;
 he com be-for the kyng' & his kyn many,
 markis and melon and milo þe proud, 404
 herdref the hardy in his wed' good,
 And xv mo of that fals kind.
- [A line out.]
- gwynylon kest his gloue be-for hem all :
 "saueng' you, my lord, non spar I shall ; 408
 he that saithe I am tretour, And tok' of þe hethyn
 horse, or harnes, or eny other thing,
 broche, or bessant, eny harm to done ;
 I will fight with hym, & proue hym fals sone. 412
 shall neuer hors bere me of þis place,
 till I be on hym vengid þat þus said has."

Meanwhile
 Charles, alarmed
 at the long
 absence of his
 knights,
 remembers his
 dream.

[leaf 88v]
 His lords
 accuse Gwynylon
 of having
 betrayed him.

Gwynylon is
 indignant,

and challenges
 any of the
 knights,

thus said he to the king standing hym be sid :

" he that wold work well, wrothe hym be-tid.

vpon almyghty god I put this full right,

that I to the soudan nothing be-hight,

but for to say the sothe in this ilk stound,

your knyghtis be-hind haue som bores fond,

or Among the holtis I-herd ryll som hertis ;

then will Roulond rid among the cleves ;

he will fell of the Fattest, & you flesche bring ;

ye know þat he louythe well hunting.

he will do his will thoughe it to harm turn.

For this thinge ye ned no thing to morn,

For harme of hethen ne dred you neuer."

the kinge did stint his strif þen for euer,

and gothe with his men throughe the touñ,

and made accordment between hem boun.

many a sore sighe went to his hert.

the kinge is to Cardoile with care & smert ;

of hym no mor I tell, but turn to his knyghtis,

hou they rod to-gedur in counsall righte.

som bad Roulond to blow aftur socour,

And som bad hym bid of his blast lengour,

and be redy to fight, for fle they nylle.

off the hethen houndis herkyn me till,

hou they wickidly wrought then be-dene ;

many a wilfull word went hem betwene.

the soudan hathe sembrid his men all,

And they be redy, what so euer be-fall,

men myght se ther ostis in the feldis þer :

xx batelles araid all in bright gere,

with sheld and sper schynng bright ;

and xx crounyd kingis among hem right,

eueryche of them rechar then other,

the soudan folowed one after anoper.

the sory mad mahoun that they most louyd,

to hym all lowtyd, and he on hight hoid,

416 declares he had
received nothing
from the
Saracens.

420 "Roland," he
says,
"has gone after
some wild boar,
or deer ;

424 he is so fond of
hunting,
[leaf 357, back]
and the king need
not be alarmed."

428 Charles reconciles
them,

432 and in anxiety
goes to Cardoile.

436 Roland and his
companions are
divided in
counsel.

440
The Saracens are
all assembled ;

444 twenty battalions
of them,

and twenty kings

448 followed the
Sultan

	and praid hym that he hem wische wold.	
with unfuried banners.	they splayd baners, for men se it shold.	452
	the feld shone bright, that men myght behold,	
	It was wonder of the soudan so bold.	
	It was in euery manys ere, & not to seche.	
	thus rid they furthe : to the deuyll I hem teeche !	456
	myche harm was done by the dais end.	
Amaris meets the Sultan,	with that, Amarys met with the soudan hend,	
	with his gret rout riding out of toun ;	
	then he stintid his sted & stod still sone,	460
and salutes him merrily :	and gret hym merely with good will.	
	“ lord mahoun saue the, and kep the from euyll,	
	that thou lese no man ne lond per thou wendis !	
[leaf 388]	Mahoun the saue and the deffendis,	464
	but I haue feller then I be-for had.	
	som I met of ther men, they be not mad,	
tells him how he has slain all the French save one,	x Mf by taile ther lyues did sell :	
	of them escapid but on, as I you tell,	468
	and wondid he was, I tell you sothe.	
	per-for he ys bold, and to batele gothe.	
	I tell the flour of fraunce feld to ground,	
	ye ned nothings dred in this stound	472
	that euer cristyn kinge thy croun shall were,	
	but I am thy sistir son, and next the ther.	
and asks for eleven kings and their men help to attack the rest of the Christians.	For all my labur, yef me no mor	
	but xj gret kingis to go be-for,	476
	with the best men they brought of toun :	
	that we may go be-for, sauf & soune,	
	or they with ther host cum vs about.	
	And yf eny man lese, let me lout	480
	but I haue a C of them for one of myn.”	
The Sultan assents,	the soudan tok hym his glove, & rod by hym,	
	biddithe chese of his men the best pat he wold.	
and he picks out the best he can find.	And he tok of the best that bene bold :	484
	Causaryne, that was fals, formest of all,	
	Corsabran, the curssid, kenyst in halle,	

the bold barbaryn is set on his sted,	
lionys and lauris, gret kingis inded,	488
keston of calern, and cokard his broder,	
Tauberd and tampryn, sonyst off oper :	The twelve kings
they say to the sovdan in the sam stevyn :	arm,
"now we be redy to rid furthe euyng,	492
to go in-to the forward to rest vs awhile :	and vow venge-
For duk' Roulond he is fell,	ance on Roland.
but euery pece of his harnes be Asonder rent,	
And he feld on the feld, and also schent ;	496
as longe as thou leuyst, trist vs neuer	
If we in this mater do not our deuour."	
It botes not to abid : full sone	
the soudan tok' his leue anon.	500
An C thoussand of good men	[leaf 388, back]
wer dressid in ther harnes then,	Amaris leads
with proud synes of silk' lifte on loft.	100,000 Saracens.
Amaris be-for hem myghtily sought,	504
cryethe vpon mauhoun with mody steuyn :—	
curse hym, crist, that sittis in heuyn !—	
bemes and bugles blew full many,	
that all the daile and doun dynnyd truly.	508
And help Roulondes ost, he pat heuyn weldis !	Now God help
a dredfull tym haue they vnder ther sheldis.	Roland and his
Olyuer of that host out from his frendis	men !
Is redyn to a roche A litill ther hendis :	Oliver rides
he saw to Saragos the sairsins all,—	forward and sees
A curssed forward, and fight they shall :—	the Saracens.
he turnyd his sted, and taried no lenger,	
for to tell his felos to be the strenger ;	516
to Roulond and Richard, & Rayner his broder,	He returns and
Inglar and Aubry, and ek' all þe oper :	tells his com-
"lordingis, mak' you redy, And well on set ;	pansons.
the hole hethyn host hastithe you to met ;	520
not fully iij furlong' is you betwen ;	
per-for luk' lightly what is best to done,	

to Abid boldly, or els for to turn ;
 the gile of gwynylon will mak' vs to morn 524
 but crist vs send socour betym.
 but wer It thy will, Roulond, then,
 thy bugle to blow on this bent sid
 that king' charls myght her it this tid ; 528
 that we be sore be-set, son will he know ;
 we may fight with yonder host, as I trow,
 till he be couerd and com to this bank' ;
 And our men wer here, god wold I thank' 532
 thoughe ther wer siche ten, I tell you by-dene."
 "abid," quod Roulond, "and siche wordis blyn !
 Olyuer art thou aferd of this sight ?"
 [Apparently a line out.] 536
 "I se my scheld shyn hole, no pecis out :
 [leaf 339] Thy helme and thy hauberk' with-outon dout.
 but our aray be brok, tym it wer
 aftur help to blow, now I the swer. 540
 many A hundred shall fall þat now hie bene,
 or we flee from this feld, I wene.
 but now rid we furthe, and no rest mak',
 And let the king' of heuyn hed to vs tak'." 544
 then all princis praid þat ther houyd,
 his bugle to blow, they hym wowid :
 "for know ye right well it is vs on hond,
 the hole hethyn ost is ny, I vndirstond. 548
 when we be laid low, to lat It wer
 eny help to haue but of heuyn feyr.
 but for dred of detha, do thou it neuer,
 but for our lordis loue, þat is god euer. 552
 If we dye here, his baile is the mor :
 I tell my lyf-tym then is for-lore.
 he may walk' homward with hert rew,
 loue his bed well ouer course, 556
 shall he neuer frenchmen out of frauns led."
 then was this man wrothe in-ded,

He suggests that
Roland should
blow his horn for
help.

Roland encour-
ages them.

All the French
barons beg Roland
to blow his horn
for help

before it is too
late.

And to them said he ther :

“ye knyghtis, for shame shon ye neuer.

560 Roland rebukes
them and refuses
to call for help.

haue ye broken eny bone, or eny harm tid ?

may ye schew in your sheld eny strokis wid ?

Is not your compony hole as they come ?

Flee fast þat is afferd, þat he wer at home ;

564

I will fight with them that vs hathe sought.

And or I se my brest blod throughe my harnes ryn

blow neuer horn for no help then.”

when they vndirstod hou he ne wold

568

for to blow his horn for no socour bold,

they tok hem comfort, And said full hye :

“now curssaid be he that hens will flye,

572 The knights
swear to stand by
him.

or eny fot this day fley of the feld :

but der sell our dethe, as I dem sheld.

let it be sene hou the king vs louyd,

fast hew on them þat vs hathe harmyd ;

the dais dawithe on hie ; we bid to long.

576

In cristis name let vs furthe fonge.”

[leaf 380, back]

while the knyghtis Roun, risithe the soun ;

the day was faire, the clowdis be roun,

dew diskid adoun and dymmyd the floures,

580

And foulis rose and song full Amorous.

ther did no wind blow, but wedir full still.

turpyn armyd hym-selue at his own wille,

dothe wisly mese be-for them on mold :

offred them euerychon a quantite of gold.

584 Turpin celebrates
mass,

when messe was done, he blissid hem sound :

criste them kep in thys ilk a stound !

and ther was a sore metyng hem betwene.

and blesses them.

“lordingis,” said Roulond, “rusche you be-dene,

588

till I haue ben at the soudan and cum agayn.

I will the se my-selue and that anon.”

he se the soudans men with myrthes enow,

Four myle on mold markid, I trowe,

592 The Saracens
cover 20 square
miles.

And v. myle also they wer in lenght.

Roland recognises the Sultan. the soudan se them in his own strenght ;
 he knew by his geton and his sheld also, 596
 a riche dragon of gold do ther into.
 that rewes the erle and grevis his hert,
 1 P MS. we. sore wepith for wo¹ and ek¹ for smert :
 not for his own sak he soghed often, 600
 but for his fellichip þat he most louyden.
 but yet wist he well eche wried oper.
 then sprong¹ the day eche myght se other ;
 then the knyght on his kneys fallis, 604
 he kest a carfull cry, and this sais :

He offers up a prayer for their success. “now, almyghty lord, wise vs the best,
 that mad heuyn and erthe & man for to rest,
 our soulis to-day to send to thy blise riche. 608
 we will not escap, and som will we seche
 or I of this ground go, & the gost yeld.
 ther shall no hethyn hound þat I met with sheld
 Aftur this at hom on hie on his benche 612
 but he fight right fell, but som I will teche.
 thoughe euery fre wer aferid, fle will we neuer.”

[leaf 390] with that he tok¹ his sted¹ and tarried no lenger,
 And rod toward the rout, and ruthe in his hert. 616
 with that anon he furthe stert,
 then se the host that he comon wer,
 all the barons be bownd to met hem þer :

He cheers his companions. “here the kinge left vs, þat brought vs fro home, 620
 for gilis of gwynylon þat giftis hathe fong¹,
 and to the soudan vs sold—the deuyll hym hong¹!—
 but euery knyght be kene, & comfort other,
 ffor this day shall we dy, and go no further, 624
 but we shall supe ther seintis be many,
 And crist soulis fedithe, this is no nay.

Think¹ he suffrid for vs paynes sore,
 we shall wreke hem with wepins þer for, 628
 or that I dye, he that durmidall wynnythe,
 or he ber it from me his eyne² not seithe

2 MS. ayne.

he shall tell in the town, who the tale heris,
 that it is correct, for tean of his eyres." 632
 olyuer, and Roger, and other fulle many,
 Ingler, and arnold, of the peres, I say,
 pressen to the prince in þer palle wedis.
 when they hem sene, said thes wordis : 636
 " why rewes thou, roulond, is this rew tid ?
 wit it thy nown werk, þ' dedis did gid !
 thou myght help vs with an horn blast.
 let on, prik' out, and not to rid fast, 640
 so shall they be fellid, yf they fendis wer."
 ther was no mo wordis with hem ther,
 they tok' ther speres—sped them our lord !
 when the hethyn se the cristyn at a word, 644
 with an euyll skill shon they nought,
 curssid catifis com them about.
 " let vs now our men melle to-gedur,
 so help me, heuyn kinge, þat I com hedur 648
 to do you as myche anger as ye may suffre.
 shall none of you mak' your rose or ye go furþre,
 that euyr ye a cristyn knyght knew in his lyf."
 amaris be-for hem comythe blif, 652
 smertly with a sper comythe out sone,
 towardis the cristyn, cryinge Anon :
 " wher art thou, Roulond, leder of charles ?
 thy lay is fals, and also thy lordes. 656
 but I shall lern the a play shall lik' þe full il[l]e."
 Roulond tok' a sper, and wrought his will,
 ran to that fals kinge with a Fell dynt,
 throughre sheld and body the sper went, 660
 at the bone of the bak, the baner schewid.
 the kinge fell down that he neuer sterid.
 " thy soule," said Roulond, " to satanas I be-teche !
 thou shalt neuer greve man þat to god will seche." 664
 Roulond turnythe agayn to his peris,
 and ledithe the king' horse to his feris,

Oliver and others
 say Roland is to

blame for not
 blowing for help.

Amaris rides out
 in front and
 challenges
 Roland,
 [leaf 390, back]

who runs him
 through with his
 spear.

	be that is many one his dethe to quyt.	
Fauceron, the Sultan's brother,	Fauceron be-for he rod full tit, was the soudans broder, but [stynt] he ne wold but hent a good sper, & furthe he wold. A brod sheld and a bright bound well set. And olyuer right sone with hym met ;	668 672
is slain by Oliver,	spronge toward hym and smot hym sore, [? A line missing.]	
	throughe the body ran the launce. the kinge bod no lenger, but fell with distans ; all his ded wer done ; did he no mor. our knyght caught hys sper vp thor, with-out hurt or harm hathe his sted won.	676
Sorsabran by Richard,	sorsabran then comythe on sone, he purposithe ther to abid Richard red hym full euyn that tid, And v ribbis he rof on his right sid : son went the knyght to the ground.	680
	he braid to the bridill & tok' þe horse round,	684
and Barbarins by Naymes.	with-outon wem or wound went to his sted. with that com barbarins furthe-with in-ded, galy dressid in gold and in stonys. Nemys neghed hym ner for þe nonys, he brek' his sheld, and bar hym to the hert, that the leuer out lep, he myght not astert, bothe streght ded the horse and his selue [Apparently a line missing.]	688
[leaf 391]	It likid hym not ther dyed so many, that none of them had grace agayn hem to wyn. herd bukiles his helme, and gothe out sone, spedis hym fast on his horse anon.	692
Another Saracen charges Berard,	be that is berard redy in his bright wed, spedithe hym smertly And sparithe no led :	696
but is himself slain.	throughe helme and hed smytithe hem bothe that his brayn out brast ther in sothe. the kinge was in swon þen full sone,	700

fell doun to the erthe at the last.
 our knyght tok' his sper, and on his shulder cast,
 the horse and the baner he brought blyf,
 And stondithe ther he stod with-out wem alif, 704
 Kastor of callern for to preue his strenght,
 on his sted is still with a sper in lenght;
 on a comly coat¹ coueryd full sought, [1 MS. cato]
 of blak' dragons blod was the ble wrought : 708
 thre garlondis of gold that gome beris,
 bothe croun and crest on his hed ys,
 As all the feld wer fyer, yt semyd by the son.
 he wenythe that eche man wer ferd of hym, 712
 bothe man and horse that he on bent found.
 but Roger, the old Erle, sone out throng,
 And met hym myghtely amydis the place,
 that alto-scheuered the scheld that he hase, 716 is slain by Roger.
 throughe the hawberk' and the hert bothe.
 the horse bak' brak', & fell doun in sothe,
 then neuer stirrid horse ne man.
 but ther was gret cry among' hem than : 720
 As they wold out of wit, they wept þat tid.
 our knyght com agayn with Ioy & prid,
 heuyn king' they thankid and hovon to-geder.
 siche care had colkard for castor his broder, 724 Colkard comes
 he will out of his wit but he awrek' hym myght. forward to avenge
 he went to the feld þen full right, his brother,
 bad a knyght cum and kithe his strenght.
 then glidis furthe geliuer with sper in lenght. 728 but is himself
 then euery of them brest vpon other, killed by Gelliver.
 that þer stedes stakered right euyn þer. [leaf 391, back]
 when they had so don, swordis out they hent,
 gaue many a wound and many a sore dent. 732
 so greuyd is giliuer then in his hert,
 his hand he heuyd on hight, and smot smert,
 his shulder smot he quyt asundur,
 rent out the rigbon, it was no wondur. 736

so stronge was that stour they fought euer.

It lastid so longe that lothed þem sertayn,

men wer wery, wepons to-breston :

bonys y-brok' and bernys I-sweld ;

the hethin in that host happid euylle.

be that it was prym, the prese vex ille ;

ther was of xij kingis, but ij alyf,

yet woundid they wer, vnnythe they lif :

they wer sory that euer cristyn shuld abid.

Roulond put vp his helm that tid,

he se wher a rout of knyghtis cum full bold,

x hundrethe hethen men hid hem wold.

then he tok' his sted, and met them sone.

Aftur followid olyuer and other many one,

bað hem smertly turne, and tak' sicke dole,

what-euer by-tid, to lern play of scole.

they drewe out swardis, and bete the hethyn,

riche helmes to-Rof, and basenetis brestyn.

the men that Roulond slowghe, who so right tellis,

It is wondir ther-of, sothe to mellis ;

or els of sir olyuer, in eny manys tym

was neuer so many slayne by o manys syne.

when he had spend his spere, & sparythe nought,

but laid on whils the lyf last mought ;

and aftur tok' An hauchler, and hewid fast,

whom he raught in the rout, his lif last.

be that neghed ner none in the dais space,

ther was no man left in þat place ;

sairsyn vnder the son, þat no man se myght

eny wepyn weld to strik' aright,

nor stir of the place þer þat they layn.

Roulond criethe, "Mont' Ioy," sothe to sayn.

they sek' hym on euery sid, & com hym agayn.

by all men wer sought, I tell you sertayn ;

ther wantid no man nought that they wit myght.

"lordingis," said Roulond, "listynnythe aright :

CHARL. ROM. II.

Both sides are
weary of fighting.

772

Only two Saracen
kings out of
twelve survive.

776

780

784

788

Never before were
so many slain by
one man,

792

796

as were that day
by Roland and
Oliver.

800

By sunset there
is not a single
Saracen left.

[leaf 392, back]

804

Roland calls on

K

the French to give
thanks to God.

we haue the formest feld to the ground,
And yet is our host bothe hole & sound, 808
and no man lost that we brought to place :
we ought to worshippe god myche of his grace."

Turpin offers up
thanks for the
army.

Then callithe Furthe turpyn, & tellithe son : 812
"this lord that we serue, louythe his own),
that so few of his fellid so many."
euery man tok' of his helme & lukyd on hie,
lift vp ther hondis and thankid crist,
that he sauf and sound defend hem hase. 816
still they stond in that sted, and hove :
Roulond laid hym down ther to prove.

Roland sees an
immense host of
Saracens coming.

he se an A bank' sprad and baners many, 820
thoughe Almayn, fraunce, and englond to say,
burgayn, bretaine, wer *per* atony,
ther had bene folk' to few to fight hem agaynes,
but crist had it said that they sped shuld.
thus them newid on eche sid bold. 824

All the cursed men to mahoun criene,
ledes them on the lond, hold to-gedur seyne,
set them in scheltron, chid they nold.
oure cristyn men the hethyne behold, 828
to the lord in trone they tok' *per* soulis,
and sithe they begyn with manly dyntis.

As element and erthe to-gedur shuld flintis
bothe wind, water, fyere, and wod [. . .] 832

so doilfulle dyn drof in the valis
myght no man *per* her that grisly voce.
kene knyghtis cry and crossen helmes,
stif stedes in stour, out flow the stemes 836

[leaf 306]

They cover all the
country about.

that all the medow and more myrkid about
they preissid, and throng, And thrusten out,
that many A grymly died on the playn.
sithe god spek with mouthe on the montaigne, 840
And taught moyses his men to preche,

Not at the siege of

In so litill while was neuer mo marrid, I you teche,

calls on the
Sultan for help,

ther the soudan and his men did be-hold :
And cried to hym, that he cum shold 880
with all his men, and help hem þer :

as the Saracens
are giving way.

“ And yf ye bid long, ye lese the mor,
for they be so fell, they sley our men ;
the fals cristyn folk haue the beter then, 884
ther may no man stond hem agayn :

helme ne hawberk, sothe to sayn ;
they smyt throughe our harnes & men,
they brese hem sore, and brest hem with-In : 888

I may shew you my sheld with-outon nay,
And I haue sore woundis, sothe for to say.
but thou help son, I the will tell,
shall thou neuer led sairsyn to saragos þe suele.” 892

The Sultan
divides his men
into four parties.

“ we haue hold here to long our lordis ;
And they of Fraunce thus our men quell,
then shall we dye, and our lond sell. 896

we must set our men in iiij partis,
set them on the frenche with casting of dartis.
when one hathe schot in that stound,
then shall anoper cum euyn at his hond. 900

ther kingis this day shall wary the tyme
At euer his knyghtis agaynst vs bene.
but or Roulond be tak, euyll shall vs tid,

He promises
rewards to all who
fight bravely.

And many A man slayn with woundis wid, 904
but we manly set them vpon,

hew them manly, & brek euery bone :
and he þat berithe hym best, hathe my loue won. 907

[leaf 304]

And I haue my lif, and cum agayn to toun,
here is no knave but I will mak hym knyght,
And he geue good strokis And preue hym wight.
let every man be manly at this tyme :

If we haue the mastry, myche shall ye wyn, 912

MS. they.

All the welthe of this world lithe on our hond.”

The Sultan orders

the soudan on mahoun then¹ cried that stound,

bad blowe bemes, & go furthe rightis.
 when bemes wer blowen, þen rod furthe knyghtis, 916 his men to
advance.
 they bere furthe baners wondirly many,
 And trumpetis and taberers, sothe to say.
 he that had neuer siche thing' seyne,
 myght a had meruelle in sertayn. 920
 then sadly and sore fought they all,
 many was the man did to ground fall.
 a thousсанд for xxx sone ded wer,
 And many a good swerd broken ther : 924
 And many a bow that wold not brek'
 was shot that day, sothe as I spek' ;
 till the thikkeſt thronge thyn wexen,
 was ther neuer man so manly foughton ! 928
 euery man fought enought that stound.
 A proud sairssyn son was found,
 that had geue gwynylon giftis full riche,
 hes helme sett with gold & stonys fische, 932
 And when he thought our men to quell—
 bradmond he hight, a man right fell—
 As egre as A lion, with Ingler he met,
 with a scherp sper rann throughe his hert, 936 Ingler is slain by
Bradmond,
 that the horse ne the man help myght nought.
 Roulond be-held, and ruthe hym thought :
 lowd then he cried, the knyghtis myght here :
 "luk ! yonder dyethe a duk þat doughty was euer, 940
 and the best in fraunce in euery ned ;
 I shall hym sone awrek', yf god me sped,
 Or els yn my hert be I neuer light !" [leaf 304, back]
 then said olyuer, the most hend knyght : 944
 "broder, leue thy wille and bid awhile,
 he shall be brought down, sothly I the tell."
 hastily he lift his hand and gaue hym a dynt :
 throughe helme and hede the strok' went, 948
 his sted þat tym went to Anoþer.
 bothe croun and cors he smot asonder.

who is himself
 killed by Oliver.

	then met he mo, and "mon Ioy!" he cries; thoughe he had no help, about he leys.	952
Dalabern of Valern	dalabern of valern then cum wold, he was crounyd with riche gold: Ierusalem he had won with a gyn, he put the patriark to dethe then.	956
slays Sampson,	he gaue vnto sampson a sor dent, that douñ dredfully ded he went.	
and is himself cut down by Roland.	roulond rod to that king & smot hym sor, with his good brond smot hym asonder, And his horse hew then in pecis. "criste kep vs cristyn that bene here, to serue your soper with saintis dere!" then com A sayrson to hym sone, that Auffrik' aftur his fadir nom. that man and horse was so riche that all shone hym vpon truliche.	960
The king of Africa	Amys of almayn then he met, And strok' hym to dethe with-out eny let.	964
is slain by Turpin.	turpyn turnyd hym, and met hym agayn, sat sadly in his sadill, sothe for to sayn: man and horse doun he laid, from the croun to the brest: "ly per!" he said. hym he curssed, and rod furthe still, And bad the fleyng' fend feche hym to halle. then went cadwen, & greuyd full sor, the king's son of capron, & met hym thor.	968
[leaf 306]	was neuer faucon fayn ¹ then this prince was fo he threst doun cristyn with And many men ² berenger and g ² And the erle amyse with ¹ and mo of our cristyn as [I tell] can.	972
		976
		980
		984
Roland cuts down Cadwen,	but Roulond is manly & rod furthe þan,	

¹ The MS. is torn off in this place.² MS. faded here.

was neuer lioner nor light of hert.

his bright brood he hent, & furthe stert

till he com hym to, and then he strikis : 988

throughe the peyssant the prince prekis,

he rent hym vnredly eyn to the sadill :

on ether sid of his horse doun did he wadill. and many others.

then he prekis in the pres all þat þer wer, 992

he bet and slew that about hym did ster.

he smet to A sairssine then eft sonys,

throughe rigge and ribe, & rent þer bonys :

ther they wer thikist, asunder they threst. 996

then was the soudan woo in his hert

that so many of his men wer slayn hym about. The Sultan is almost in despair,

the cristyn men wer strong & stout ;

whos the feld was, none myght know ; 1000

was ther neuer beter men slayn, I trow.

horse ran in blod a-boue the hovf herd.

then the soudan cried schill for ferd,—

Four battelles bold about hym were— 1004 and orders four battalions to attack Roland.

bad hem sett on to aveng hym ther.

“the frenche,” *quod* the soudan, “dare vs quelle.

I shall abid here, the sothe for to tell ;

If eny ned be, I will cum you to. 1008

And ye haue the wers, on will I go.

luk well to my baner that ye it ken,

and then I shall my-selue [come] yf ned bene.

And or I fle a foot for ther dintis 1012

¹. with sword eggis.

. [t]hey gone

. they tok vpon

. ell² 1016

. let² . . . gedur wyn

. [m]any bryght

. died þer right

¹. y swordis smot hedis atwyn 1020

¹ MS. torn off.

² MS. faded.

[many] lost ther hed^{is} about þer chyn,
 many ribbes rent, and many rigbone,
 And many fadirles child ther was at hom.
 but or this dredfull day was drif to nyght, 1024
 ther was slayn many a doughty knyght.
 crist help the cristyn then in all the hast !

[? line wanting.]

Roland drives the
 Saracens into a
 dale,

Roulond ridithe his men all about ,
 he bettes and sleeis sairsyns full stout, 1028
 drof hem into A daile—tarryed they not long,—

whence a fresh
 host comes.

ther he houyd a whill with his host strongt,

[Apparently there is a gap here.]

vnfought and freche, hym ther about,
 As freche to fight as foulis stout. 1032

when Roulond se hem, he greuyd sor,
 he had but few men, allas þer-for !
 the lest part of men þer had he,

He bids his men
 rest,

And þey wer woundid, it is mor pete. 1036
 he praid hem rest, and houe þer stille :

“herkenyt now, rist here vnto they cum vs till.
 yonder is a gret host and a compony

As euer cristyne man se with his eye ; 1040

and we ar but few, and hathe fought long,
 our horse wery, And we not strongt.

and proposes to
 send to Charles
 for help.

I red we send a man to feche our lord ;
 say we be sore hurt, and socour we wold. 1044

but if he cum and help vs Anon,
 our lyues be lost, and the lond gone.”

then answerd olyuer with a ruffull steuyn,

Angry in hert thus gan he nevy n :

“broder, let be all siche sawes ! 1049

[Remainder of the MS. wanting.]

NOTES TO "THE SEGE OFF MELAYNE."

Page 1, line 7. Compare again lines 502, 522, &c.

p. 1, l. 18. "kynges;" probably we should read "kynge."

p. 2, l. 27. The omission of the subject pronoun constantly occurs in these two poems, and is not uncommon elsewhere. Compare *Guy of Warwick*, l. 67:

"Sche had maysturs at hur honde,
The wysest men of that londe,
And [they] taght hur astronomye."

and *King Horn*, 1268. "þu me to kniȝt houe, and [I] kniȝthod hauo proued."

p. 2, l. 28. On the use of the word "Mawmet" = Mahomet, for any false god or idol, and "Mawmetry," for idolatry, see my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2534, and in the *Catholicon Anglicum*, s. v. Maumet.

p. 3, l. 57. So in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5827: "wyþ wilde hors mot y beo drawe," on which see my note. Compare *Guy of Warwick*, ll. 2545, 8212, &c.

p. 3, l. 81. "þou me." The rime shows that there is some corruption here. I would suggest that the original reading was "þ' hyne" or "þ' hine" = thy servant. If these words happened to be indistinctly written they might easily have been misread by the copier, especially since, as we know from other cases, he probably did not understand the word hine.

p. 4, l. 89. Compare *William of Palerne*, l. 2868: "þe quen was *very for-wept*." In the present instance the verb is a strong one.

p. 4, l. 90. "herde by hym," i. e. herde by hymn. See note to l. 27, above.

p. 4, l. 96. He shall avenge all thy causes of anger.

p. 4, l. 116. So in Shakspeare we have the plural used where we should use the singular. Thus in *Julius Cæsar*, V. v. 28. "Hold thou my Sword Hilt, whilst I runne on it." See also *ibid.* V. iii. 43; and *Richard III.* I. iv. 160.

p. 4, l. 117. "handefuþ mete;" exactly fitted and suited to his hand.

p. 4, l. 119. "Mase;" a contraction for *makes*, which frequently occurs in Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience*. Compare *tase* = *takes*; *bus*, *buse* = *behove*; *tane* = *taken*, which also occur in the present poem, and frequently in the Thornton Romances.

- p. 4, l. 120. "weite" = wite, know. In l. 749 we have *wiete*.
- p. 5, l. 125. "dyke;" perhaps the true reading is "byke," properly a hive, but sometimes used in the sense of building, house. Compare *Gavin and Golagras*, ii. 8: "Mony burgh, mony bour, mony big *bike*."
- p. 5, l. 141. Generally the phrase is "þe sothe is noghte to *layne*." Compare ll. 538, 582; *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1481, &c. The present form occurs again at l. 1356. Compare *Sir Degrevant*, l. 180; *Horn. Childe*, p. 295; *Octavian*, l. 1306, &c.
- p. 6, l. 164. "hase done!" enough, let be! Compare the similar expression "do way." "*Do way*, leue sir, seyð Gij." *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Turnbull, l. 9844.
- p. 6, l. 165. "vndir-nome;" here the transcriber, apparently not understanding the word as originally written, has altered it to "vndir-take." The rime, however, shows clearly that he has done so. For a similar instance see l. 315.
- p. 6, l. 168. "wone;" worde appears to be simply an unintentional error of the scribe, and not altered for the same reason as "vndir-nome," since it occurs frequently in this and the next poem. "Be ffryth or be *wones*." — *Richard the Redeles*, ii. 180. "Worthely" cannot be worthy, from the context: probably it = worldly.
- p. 6, l. 171. So in the *Chanson de Roland*, st. xx, Roland calls Ganelon "mis parastre." In the Latin version printed by M. Michel, p. 228, another reason is assigned, viz. that it was at Roland's instigation that Ganelon was sent on the dangerous duty of summoning Marsile to submit to Charles. See *Chanson de Roland*, st. xxii. and xxiv. Roland is generally stated to have been the son of Charlemagne's sister, Gisle or Berte, the legend of whose amours with Milo, the father of Roland, first appears in Italy in the xvth century. See M. Gaston Paris, *Histoire Poétique*, pp. 170, 409. At pp. 378, 433 of the same volume will be found mention of another legend, according to which Roland was the son of Charlemagne himself, who had committed incest with his sister.
- p. 6, l. 173. "The falseste traytoure was he one;" a not uncommon expression. Compare *Guy of Warwick*, 7447: "A grete batayle was there oon;" l. 9039: "A trewar felowe, þen *he was oon*." *Stations of Rome*, ed. Furnivall, 480: "An holy doctor *he was on*." Compare l. 1078, below.
- p. 8, l. 224. That for our men turned to grief, and to lamentation to many another. Cf. *Roland and Otuel*, l. 941. "Gryll" is here a substantive. The adjective means cruel, horrible, stern, or severe, and therefore the word in the present instance must mean suffering, grief, or pain. Halliwell gives but a single instance of the word used as substantive—*Guy of Warwick*, l. 11488: "Thorow qweyntys nor þorow *grylle*," where the editor renders it cruelty, fierceness.
- p. 8, l. 229. "forthermaste;" first, foremost. Cf. *Roland and Otuel*, l. 721.

- p. 8, l. 234. I see now that the *ne* which I have inserted in brackets is unnecessary. Instances of the omission of the negative are not uncommon. Thus, for instance, in *Gawayne and the Grene Knight*, l. 726: "For werre wrathed hym not so much, þat wynter was wors;" and Chaucer, *Troilus*, i. 456-7:

"Ek of the day ther passed nought an houre,
That to himself a thowsand tyme he seyde."

See also *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Zupitza, 1301, and the editor's note.

- p. 8, l. 249. "ay to;" until. So we have in the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 64: "to we be gon," until we are gone.
- p. 9, l. 253. "by þat was done;" so in *Sir Eglamour*, 201: "Be that it neghede to nyghte."
- p. 9, l. 255. "braythely;" violently. The word occurs in the *Cursor Mundi*, l. 63: "Ar he sua brathly don he broght;" and in the Poem on the Holy Rood, in *An Old Eng. Miscell.*, ed. Morris, p. 109: "*Brapeli* on his faas he brast."
- p. 9, l. 258. "þe moste were of renownn;" won the greatest praise. So in the *Ormulum*, 8471: "tær was þeyre king a3 mast."
- p. 9, l. 264. "þat many to bery was bowndn;" so that many were killed, ready for burial.
- p. 10, l. 282. "Mayne & myghte:" the riming words in ll. 285 and 288 show that here we should read *myghtes* (compare l. 323), but then the form *knyghte* in l. 279 will spoil the rime.
- p. 10, l. 283. On the rimes *slayne: tane*, see Prof. Zupitza's note to *Guy of Warwick*, l. 1126.
- p. 11, l. 315. The scribe, apparently not understanding the word "elde," has altered it to "age." See note to l. 165.
- p. 11, l. 323. Cf. l. 282 above.
- p. 11, l. 324. "belde;" honour. Compare *Metrical Homilies*, p. 162:
"This tronchoun for relic scho held
Al hir lif, with worschip and *belde*."
- p. 11, l. 327. The scribe has southernised all the riming words in this stanza; originally they were, no doubt, *sa, wa, sla, ma*. Compare l. 447.
- p. 11, l. 329. "hede;" the rime shows the correct reading to be "heuede." It is noteworthy that the same spelling of *hedde* for *heuede* or *heuydde* where the rime calls for the latter form occurs in other poems, some of which were also copied by R. Thornton. Thus in *Sir Eglamour*:
"With the storupe, that hym was levyd,
He stroke the knyght in the *hedde*,"
where the Lincoln MS. by a different scribe reads *heuede*. See also *ibid.* l. 985, and other instances in Prof. Zupitza's edition of *Guy of Warwick*, note to l. 1021. Another instance occurs in *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1201. See remarks in Introduction, § 8.
- p. 11, l. 333. "gane;" this verb was used simply with an auxiliary force, as our *do, did*.

- p. 11, ll. 340-1. See note to l. 282.
- p. 12, l. 350. "nevylande;" I can make nothing out of this name.
- p. 12, l. 355. "þofe." Compare *Sir Isumbras*, l. 71: "Whate wondir was þofe hym ware wo?"
- p. 12, l. 356. "hope;" believe, expect: the original meaning of the word. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 326: "y hope þe scholde spede wel; nere þy greuous wounde;" and see l. 1388, below.
- p. 12, l. 364. "þay;" probably a slip for þare.
- p. 12, l. 371. "sewede;" the meaning evidently is, that resulted to the Saracens afterwards full bitterly, on account of the knights who lost their lives. Perhaps we should read *sowede*.
- p. 12, l. 372. "leuede þ^e swete:" see note to *Roland and Otuel*, l. 941.
- p. 13, l. 378. "nere;" the rime shows *nee*; cf. l. 449.
- p. 13, l. 380. "His Fadir;" Sir Belland. See l. 349, above.
- p. 13, l. 387. "To rekken of their Arraye;" to decide on their treatment.
- p. 13, l. 392. "cely;" written over *sory*, erased.
- p. 13, l. 396. Compare *Handlyng Synne*, 952: "And pray we God þat alle þyng may." Probably for *myghtyeste* we should read *myghtes*. Compare *Lay - Folks Mass - Book*, p. 132, l. 136: "þerwh him þat mihtes may;" and p. 143, l. 553: "To him þat al mihtes may." Cf. *Roland and Otuel*, l. 885.
- p. 14, l. 406: "goddis forbode;" may there be the prohibition of God. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 4753: "*Godes for-bode*, Gweynes seade, þat ich assentede to such a dede;" and *Rauf Coilzear*, l. 746:
"God forbot, he said, my thank war sic thing.
To him that succourit my lyfe in sa euill ane nicht."
- p. 14, l. 411. "thire;" a true northern form. Icelandic, *þær*. Compare Hampole, *Pricks of Conscience*, 4151:
"I hald þir gret mysdoers
Als anticrist lym and his forgangers."
- p. 14, l. 418. "at;" in, *apud*. Compare Wyclif, John i. 1: "þe word was at [*apud* Vulg.] God . . . þis was in the begynnynge at God;" and *Sir Degrevant*, 1809: "Was never sych a purvyauunce
 In Englund ne in Fraunce,
 As was at sir Degriuaunce."
- Compare l. 653, below.
- p. 14, l. 422. "byrne;" the rime shows *bryn*: see Introd. § 9.
- p. 14, l. 427. This line appears to mean that the image was so natural as almost to appear really to bleed.
- p. 15, ll. 436—440. "hym;" notice the gender, which is masculine, as referring to the figure personified. In l. 445 the neuter is used.
- p. 15, ll. 445, 462. "many a folde;" manifold, many.
- p. 16, l. 470. "dosche;" dart, dash. I know of no other instance of the noun, though the verb, under the form *dusche*, is not uncommon.
- p. 16, l. 471. The line seems to mean, although it was a lifeless mass.

- p. 16, l. 476. "vn-till;" a northern form, which the scribe could not alter on account of the rime.
- p. 16, l. 488. "bale fire." Compare *Pierce the Ploughman's Crede*, l. 667: "to brenne þe bodye in a *bale of fyr*." *Bale*, properly a noun, A.S. *bætl*, a funeral pile, appears to be here used adjectively. It may, however, mean destructive from A.S. *bealu*.
- p. 16, l. 489. Notice the rime. *Dye* was evidently pronounced *dee*.
- p. 17, l. 506. "to;" until. See note to l. 249.
- p. 17, l. 519. "thethyn;" thence. A northern form of Scandinavian origin, the A.S. form being *þonan*.
 "Swa pured and fyned never gold was,
 Als þai sal be, ar þai þepens paa."
 Hampole, *Pricke of Cons.*, 2721.
- p. 18, l. 543. "more;" originally, no doubt, "mare," and in l. 546, "lare."
- p. 18, l. 546. "slyke;" a northern form.
- p. 18, l. 555. Compare l. 698, below.
- p. 18, l. 559. See note to *Roland and Otuel*, l. 925.
- p. 19, l. 563. "fote with Marye ever amange;" chided or blamed Mary all the while, continually. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 209: "ofte sekede *amonge*;" and *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Zupitza, l. 8738: "and slewe hys men *euyr amonge*." So too in Shakspeare, *2 Henry IV.*, V. iii. 23:
 "Lusty lads roam here and there,
 So merrily,
 And *erer amonge* so merrily."
- Mapes treats *fite* as a strong verb in his Poems, p. 344.
- p. 19, l. 577. "syne;" apparently there is some corruption here, but the true reading is not clear.
- p. 20, l. 595. It is one of the most curious points in these romances that Ganelon is allowed not only to live, but even retained as an adviser of the Emperor.
- p. 20, l. 601. "quod þ^e Bischoppe;" these words, as is frequently the case with such short explanatory phrases, are not included in the metre of the line. See another instance in *Roland and Otuel*, 490.
- p. 20, l. 611. "one þam;" written in the margin.
- p. 21, l. 641. "bett;" so in the *Anturs of Arther*, st. 29:
 "Her belte was of blenket with briddus ful bold,
Beten with besandus;"
- and *Morte Arthure*, 3647: "Buskes baners one brode, *betyne* of gowles." See also *ibid.* l. 3946, and *Gawaine*, l. 78.
- p. 21, l. 643. "knees;" written in the margin.
- p. 21, l. 653. Compare note to l. 418, above.
- p. 23, l. 698. "þ^e wyte bese casten) one the;" the blame is laid on thee. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5127, and l. 555, above. A similar expression occurs in the *Song of Roland*, l. 638.
- p. 23, l. 705. I count thy soul as lost.

- p. 23, l. 708. "of skorne;" in scorn, mockery.
 p. 23, l. 711. "drawen:" undoubtedly a slip of the copier, the rimes showing that originally the word was *drayne*. See Intro. § 9.
 p. 24, l. 723. It is curious that the scribe has not altered the four riming words in this stanza to their southern forms, as he has done in the following stanza.
 p. 24, l. 743. "rebutede;" the meaning seems to be, rebuked, rejected by the church. Fr. *rebuter, rebouter*. Compare Wallace, x. 595:

"Wallace, said Bruce, *rabut* me now no mar,
 Myn awin dedis has bet me wondyr sar."

- p. 24, l. 749. Compare l. 120, above.
 p. 25, l. 777. The metre requires another foot in the line; perhaps we should read "goddess absolucioun)."
 p. 25, l. 782. "on evynhant;" I can only suppose this to be a corruption of *avenaunt*. We find it again in slightly different forms at ll. 810 and 920.

Avenant, which occurs in *Roland and Otuel*, l. 790, is a word frequently applied to knights; thus in *Langtoft*, p. 51, Harold is described as "curteys and strong, of body *avenant*;" and in the *Anturs of Arthur*, st. 24, Arthur is similarly spoken of as "*auenant*, onest and abulle." In two of the other instances in which it occurs in the present poem, l. 920, the word is clear enough, and in l. 810 there is perhaps little doubt as to the true form; but in the present instance the corruption, if it be one, is almost past explanation.

- p. 26, l. 798. "ay whills;" until. Compare l. 1233.
 p. 26, l. 808. "duchepera." See on this word, and the various forms under which it appears, my note to *Sir Ferumbas*, l. 197. In *Layamon*, i. 69, we have "*duzepers*" and "*dosseperea*."
 p. 26, l. 810. See note to l. 782.
 p. 27, l. 819. "hone;" written over *houe*, erased. Compare *Alliterative Poems*, i. 920: "by pyse holtez hit con not *hone*;" and the *Cursor Mundi*, 5873: "ne lat yee noght þam *hon*." The noun occurs rather more frequently, as in *Cursor Mundi*, 14316: "wit-vten *hon*, he bad þe graue suld be vndon." See also *Roland and Otuel*, l. 341.
 p. 27, l. 828. "hegliten;" eighth. Compare Hampole, *Pricke of Conscience*, 3986:

"þe aghtynd, of þe acunt and þe rekennyng,
 þat þai sal yheld of alle þair lyfyng."

The word is from the O.Frisian, *achtenda*, *achtanda*.

- p. 27, l. 831. "see[ne]:" better "se[n]e."
 p. 27, l. 846. "folde;" this word with the meaning of earth is not very common. It occurs a few times in *Layamon*, as in l. 23946: "þe *volde* dunede aȝen;" and in the account of the flood in the *Allit. Poems*, ii. 403, it is said, "By forty dayez weren faren, on *folde* no flesch styryed."
 p. 28, l. 850. "sittande;" the northern form of the present participle, as "*rynnande*" in l. 854.

- p. 28, l. 859. I do not exactly understand this line.
- p. 28, l. 871. In Scotland and the north of England in the feudal times the lord claimed the right of the first night's lodging with his vassal's bride. This usage was abolished by Malcolm III. about 1080, and, instead, a mark was ordered to be paid by the bridegroom to his lord. This was termed *marheta mulieris*: *marheta* having previously been the term for the fine in money paid by a vassal to his lord on the marriage of one of the former's daughters. According to Spelman the custom was instituted by a mythical King Evenus, about the time of Augustus. He quotes several instances of the custom, from which it appears to have obtained even in a great part of England and Guernsey. The fine was known as *Bed-geld* or *Maid-rent*.
- p. 30, l. 911. "In his byggyng saß he helde;" literally, "in his building shall he build that he shall be evermore in bliss," i. e. "by his deeds he shall gain for himself to be evermore in bliss."
- p. 31, l. 945. I do not understand this line.
- p. 31, l. 956. "ruysse;" boast. The general form of the word is *rose*, as in *Ormulum*, 4906: "To *rosenn* off pin duhtizle33e;" and *Cursor Mundi*, 2417: "swa þai *rosed* hir to þe king." The noun *rosing*, boast, occurs in *Ormulum*, 4902: "all *rosinng* & all idell zellp;" and *ros* in l. 4910: "All idell zallp & idell *ros*." Compare the *Song of Roland*, l. 650: "shall none of you mak your *rose* or ye go furpre."
- p. 32, l. 977. "frette;" inlaid, ornamented. In *Allit. Poems*, ii. 1476, we read of "fyoles *fretted* with flores & fleez of golde."
- p. 32, l. 1005. So in *Ywaine and Gawin*, 645: "Aither of tham gude *buffetes bede*." Compare also *Destruction of Troy*, 9674: "no buerne vpon bent his *buffettes* might *thowle*."
- p. 33, l. 1027. "Deliuerly." Hence most probably our word *cleverly*. See *Leaves from a Word-Hunter's Note-book*, by Rev. A. S. Palmer, p. 243.
- p. 33, l. 1033. "driste;" probably we should read "þriste."
- p. 34, l. 1051. I do not at all understand this line.
- p. 34, l. 1067. "lawses;" probably looses, or perhaps "lacchea." We should have expected to find "lauzte."
- p. 35, l. 1069. "voydede;" emptied his hand of, i. e. threw away.
- p. 35, l. 1078. See note to l. 173.
- p. 35, l. 1080. "blende;" evidently a mistake of the scribe, though the true word is not clear.
- p. 36, l. 1104. "fayne." Compare Copland's *Guy of Warwick*, sign. R. iii. "And for *fayne* played before guyon," and *ibid.* Cc. i. "He went and met guy for *fayne*."
- p. 36, l. 1129. "þan kynges men" of Massaydoyne;" then the men of the king of Macedon. On the construction see note to *Sir Ferumbas*, l. 753. Compare *Song of Roland*, l. 977, and *Roland and Otuel*, 1445.
- p. 37, l. 1148. "þay tuke to flynge;" a very early instance of this now very common use of *take*. Compare *Allit. Poems*, B. 377: "*Feng to þe flyzt alle þat fle myzt*."

- p. 37, l. 1156. "stedde," for bestedde. The form occurs chiefly in northern writers. Compare *Guy of Warwick*, l. 8028. See also *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1528.
- p. 38, l. 1171. "es;" the northern form, which the scribe could not alter on account of the rime.
- p. 38, l. 1174. "serche;" examine, probe. The more usual term is to "taste" or "grope" a wound. See, for instance, *Sir Ferumbras*, 1094, and note, and *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1174.
- "brenys;" cuirasses. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 2614.
- p. 38, l. 1180. A closer examination of the line shows that we should read, "For drede of þe Sarazenes there."
- p. 39, l. 1208. "slade;" a common word in northern writers; rarer in the south. It occurs again in *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1418.
- p. 39, l. 1221. "fulh prowde men in prese;" cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 5520: "þat arst wer prout on pres." See l. 1302, below.
- p. 40, l. 1246. "tryne;" literally, proceed; hence, strike up, begin. Compare *Morte Arthure*, ed. Hall, p. 147:
- "With trompes thay *trine*, and trappede stedes,
with cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes;"
- and again, *ibid.* p. 267:
- "When they had tretide thiere trewe, with trompynge thereafter,
They *tryne* unto a tente where tables whare raysede."
- The past tense occurs in *Allit. Poems*, B. 132; "*tron* fro table to table."
- p. 40, l. 1249. "rake," rush, furious onset. Compare *Morte Arthure*, 2985; "Rydes one a rawndoune and his *rayke* holdes."
- p. 40, l. 1252. "one the grete;" on the grit, dust, earth. Compare *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 262: "Iesus is dede and grafen under the *grete*;" and see also *Genesis and Exodus*, 3774.
- p. 41, l. 1284. "mate;" exhausted. So in *Sir Ferumbras*, 2506: "þey buþ so *mate* þay mowe noȝt go, so honger haþ hem teynte;" and see quotations from Cotgrave, &c., in the Glossary.
- p. 41, l. 1285. "spryngaldea." See *Sir Ferumbras*, 3310, and note.
- p. 41, l. 1288. "with gownnes," &c. This line must, I think, belong to the preceding sentence, and in that case a comma should be substituted for the full-stop at the end of l. 1287. Lines 1289-90 will then read, "quickly those men charged guns with balls us to harass." For illustrations of the sentence see Way's note and quotations in the *Promptorium*, p. 218.
- p. 41, l. 1292. "bowes of devyce;" cross-bows worked with a rack or winch. See a drawing of them in Fairholt, *Hist. of Costume*, p. 175, and Boutell, *Arms and Armour*, p. 139. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 3263, and note. "Of devyce" is of course a translation of the French *de vye*, where *vye* is rendered by Cotgrave "the vice or spindle of a Presse." For the redundant *of* compare "for paramour" in *Sir Thopas*, l. 2034. Compare *R. Coer de Lion*, 3970: "Richard bent au arweblast off *vys*."

- p. 42, l. 1302. Compare l. 1221, above.
- p. 42, l. 1307. "schafte monde;" this was a measure taken from the top of the extended thumb to the part of the palm, and was generally considered as six inches. "Chastinond" occurs in the Addit. MS. of the *Catholicon Anglicum*, but without any Latin equivalent. Florio defines it as "a certaine rate of clothe that is given above measure, which drapers call a handfull or *shaftman*." See *Morte Arthure*, l. 2456, where we read: "Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a *schafte monde* longe!" and *ibid.* ll. 3843 and 4232. Other instances will be found in my note to "Chastmond" in the *Catholicon*, p. 57, to which I may add Barnaby Googe, in his transl. of C. Heresbach's *Husbandrie*, 1572, p. 54: "the trenches where you meane to set them (sperge) must stand a foote a sunder, and a *shaftman* in depth."
- p. 43, l. 1325. "lyke a tyke;" like a cur or a coward.
 "Vnder tribut & taillage, as *tykes* & cherles."
P. Plowman, B. xix. 87.
- p. 43, l. 1341. "for goddes are." See *Sir Ferumbras*, 3345, and note.
- p. 43, l. 1347. "Aglace;" aglance, glancing. Compare *Allit. Poems*, A. 171: "Suche gladande glory con to me *glace*;" and *Guy of Warwick*, 5067. O.Fr. *glacier*, to be like ice, to slide, glide; Lat. *glaciem*. "Glacyng or wronge glydyng of boltys or arowys. *Devolutus*." *Prompt. Parv.*
- p. 43, l. 1353. "Whate bale als euer I byde;" the construction is curious and noticeable.
- p. 44, l. 1359. "Blenkede aft his blee;" caused his countenance to grow pale.
- p. 44, l. 1371. "þat euer I tuke thi fee!" that is, that ever I became a vassal of thine. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 1527.
- p. 45, l. 1388. "hope." See note to l. 356, above.
- p. 45, l. 1395. Compare *Alisaunder*, 4692:
 "Myghte y wite who hit ware,
 That Darie thorough *with spere bare*."
 and 2411: "Ther was . . . mony *bore* thorough the schold." See l. 1463, below.
- p. 46, l. 1413. Apparently we should read, "Elles 3e ne be my frende."
- p. 48, l. 1478. "ferlyde;" wondered. Not at all a common verb. All the instances I know of, with one exception, are Scotch: thus in Gawin Douglas, Virgil, *Aeneados*, Bk. x. p. 309 (ed. 1710), we have: "Freynd, *ferly* not, na cause is to compleyne," and Lyndsay, *The Tragedy*, l. 313: "Bot *farly* nocht thocht syllie freris fleche." It appears to survive still in Scotland.
- p. 48, l. 1495. "cante;" slope, properly an angle. I do not know of any other instance of the word in the present sense, except in l. 1530, below.
- p. 49, l. 1507. This line should, I think, have been printed as connected with the line before, and forming part of the herald's speech. The meaning appears to be clear, "A, Sir, why they are sixty thousand men."

- p. 49, l. 1508. There is a remarkable parallel to this and the four following lines in Shakspeare, *Henry V.*, IV. iii. 20—23:

“ If we are markt to dye, we are enow
To doe our Countrey losse : and if to liue,
The fewer men, the greater share of honour.
God's will, I pray thee wish not one man more.”

- p. 49, l. 1525. “ For ; ” to prevent, for fear of. A common use of the word. Thus Tusser, in his *Five Hundred Points*, &c., ch. ix. p. 17, gives, as one of the steps in the ‘ Ladder to Thrift,’ “ To hate reuengement hastilie for loosing loue and amitie.” Compare also *Sir Thopas*, l. 2052 : “ for percinge of his herte ; ” and *P. Plowman*, B. vi. 62, where Piers puts on cuffs “ for colde of his nailles.”

- p. 49, l. 1532. The meaning of the line I take to be, “ they made no count of any man that they should bow to him.”

- p. 49, l. 1539. “ It was noghte mekills mare.” Compare *Old Eng. Homilies*, ed. Morris, i. 45 : “ Nu bi-cumeð hit þefore to uwilche cristene monne *mucheles þe mare* to halizen and to wurðien þenne dei þe is i-cleped sunne-dei ; ” and *Ancren Riwe*, p. 368 : “ he wule hien toward hire *mucheles þe swuðere*.”

- p. 52, l. 1600. “ hurdas ; ” a palisade, fortification. The word occurs twice in *R. Coer de Lion*, as in l. 6127 :

“ Fro the tour to the outermeste wal,
Her houses brende and her hurdys.”

See also *ibid.* l. 3969, and *Alisaunder* (Weber), 2785.

NOTES TO "ROWLAND AND OTTUELL."

p. 55, l. 22. In the original French version the number is given as "xxx." et .vii. cent."

p. 56, l. 26. Fr.—

" Cil jugléour n'en dient tant ne quant ;
Car il ne sevent le grant encombrement
Qu'avint à Kalle."

p. 57, l. 59. "fuht hastilye ;" "chevache à esperon."

p. 57, l. 67. There is a confusion here which the French original enables us to clear up. According to it Otuel, on his arrival at the palace, is met by Ogier and Gautier, who demand his name ; he replies :

" Otes m'apele l'on
D'Espaigne sui, la noble region," &c.

Naymes is not mentioned on the occasion. On the name Otes, which occurs again only once, l. 1127, see remarks in the Introduction.

p. 57, l. 79. "Naymes ;" Fr. "Ogier."

p. 57, l. 82. Fr.—

" Vées le là, à ce flori grenon,
A la grant barbe, à l'ermin peliçon."

p. 57, l. 84. "I-melle ;" used as a preposition = amongst. Compare *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 55 :

" Ye have a manner of men,
That make great mastres us *emelle*."

See also Halliwell, s. v. v. *Emelle* and *Ymelle*.

p. 57, l. 87. "In rede Siclaton ;" Fr. "au verneis ciglaton." On the derivation and meaning of Siclaton see Prof. Skeat's edition of *Sir Thopas* (Clarendon Press Series), note to l. 1924.

p. 58, l. 90. Here in the original Otuel and Ogier indulge in some mutual abuse.

p. 58, l. 107. Fr.—

" Si uncore un jor le truis en ternel . .
De m'espée le quid faire un espel
Parmi le cors."

p. 58, l. 120. "aughte dayes ;" the period during which the person of an ambassador was sacred ; cf. ll. 126 and 160.

p. 59, l. 125. "nonekyns ille ;" compare note to l. 1080, below.

p. 59, l. 130. "Corsu." See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988. Fr. "Curcusa."

- p. 59, l. 137. "Appon) a daye ;" Fr.—

"Ore at wit meis, el nefme sui entrez,
Destruite iert Romme, ta vaillante citez."

See the remarks on the date of the action of the poem in the Introduction, § 6.

- p. 59, l. 141. Fr. "dunt le punz fu dorrez."

- p. 59, l. 146. "naghte;" night. The northern form. Cf. "bope day & nazte."—*Allit. Poems*, A. 1203. "šat ilke nagt."—*Genesis and Exodus*, 1678.

- p. 59, l. 149. Fr.—

"E jo i feri tant de m'espée de lez
Ke uit jurs pleners oi les poinz enfes."

- p. 59, l. 152. Fr.—

"Estult de Lengres s'en est en piez levez ;
Tint un bastun qui devant fu quarrez."

- p. 60, l. 160. "He es Ensuredé," &c. ; he is under the protection of, secured by our promise. Cf. ll. 120 and 160. See l. 297, below.

- p. 60, l. 163. In the original French it is not Estut who seizes Otuel and is slain by him, but

"Un chevaler . . . qui fu mal senex
Provençal iert, de Seint Gile fu nez."

- p. 60, l. 180. "þe beste party shaft dy ;" Fr. "ja murerunt set cenz, si vos croulez."

- p. 61, l. 194. "twelue;" Fr. "set."

- p. 61, l. 199. "þou art to outrage;" thou art too boastful. Fr. "trop vos avancez."

- p. 61, l. 210. "Boty," and, ll. 213 and 216, "fermorye" and "fermonye." It is impossible to identify these places.

- p. 61, ll. 213, 216. The words may be "Sermorye" and "Sermonye."

- p. 62, l. 222. "ane aye;" Fr. "Crestienté ne valt pas une alie." See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5442.

- p. 62, l. 240. "Scamonye;" Fr. "Escalvonie." Compare *Kyng Alisaunder* (Weber, i. 250), l. 6044: "Of Babiloyne and Esclanomye." In the Auchinleck MS. version it is "Esclanenyne."

- p. 62, l. 259. "Smothirly;" evidently the meaning is haughtily, contemptuously. The only other instance of the word, of which I am aware, is in Chaucer, *Reeve's Tale*, A. 3963, where, in speaking of the miller of Trumpington's wife, he says:

"And eke for she was somdelle *smoterlich*,
She was as digne as water in a dich,
As ful of hoker and of bismare."

The origin of the word does not appear to be known, but probably there is a connection between this word and "smere," which occurs in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 386: "þe Sarzyn gan to lawe *smere*;" and in *Layamon*, 14981: "He *smere* loh."

- p. 62, l. 269. Fr. ".x. foiz .xxx. mile."

- p. 62, l. 274. Fr. "Entre .ii. eves est fremée et batie,
L'une a nom Soigne et l'autre a nom Hastie."
- p. 64, l. 283. Fr. "Ains garderez ceste herbergirie
K'escuile i entre ne corneille ne pie."
- p. 64, l. 288. "A nolde nappere;" Fr. "veillart." The transference of the *n* of the indefinite article to the following word is very common; thus we find "a nother" = "an other," "a newt" = "an ewt," "a nickname" = "an ekename." Compare also "my noun" = "myn oun" = "mine own," p. 114, l. 271 below. The converse process has taken place in a few cases, as in "an apron," properly "a napron."
- p. 64, l. 297. "Ensuredé;" bound by a promise. Compare l. 160, above. "nyfe;" compare *Sir Gawayne*, 1769: "Gret peril bi-twene hem stod, Nif mare of hir knyzt mynne."
- p. 64, l. 308. When a knight was degraded his spurs were cut off, in the same way as the epaulets used to be and the stripes are now, cut off from officers and non-commissioned officers respectively. Compare the converse expression "to win one's shoes," "to win one's spurs" = to win distinction by some gallant action. See *Sir Perceval*, l. 1595; *Ipomydon*, l. 978; *Triamour*, l. 1239, and Prof. Zupitza's note to *Guy of Warwick*, l. 436.
- p. 65, l. 313. "Sir Vernague of Barabas." The account of the duel between this Saracen and Roland, in which the former was slain, is told in the romance of *Roland and Vernagu*, printed from the Auchinleck MS. in 1836 for the Abbotsford Club, and now in preparation for reprinting as the fourth of the present series of Charlemagne Romances. See *Sir Ferumbas*, Introd. p. xiii, note 1.
- In the original French version Otuel here, at the request of Charles, gives a full account of himself and his family. He says he is the son of King Galien, and lord of La Marche, Benoas, and Barbary, and cousin to the Sultan, Garsil. Charles asks him to become a Christian, but Otuel declines, and adds, "vostre Dieu ne valt .ii. parisses." The king then delivers him in charge to Renier, Naymes, and Ogier, with orders that he is to be entertained well "à la meison ganier" and a hundred *sols* are to be paid daily for his board.
- p. 65, l. 329. "Saynte Thomers;" St. Omer.
- p. 65, l. 342. Fr. "De foi mentie l'apel et recreant."
- p. 66, l. 343. "I appelle hym;" call him to judgment, charge with. Compare "Quod joupe to age, 'Y pee *apeale*,
And þat bifore oure god.'"—*Hymns to the Virgin*, p. 71.
- p. 66, l. 361. "spende;" lit. spanned, hence, fastened round. This use of the word is rare; I know of only two instances, both of which occur in *Sir Gawayne*. At l. 158 we read: "þat *spenet* on his sparlyr, & clene spures vndyr;" and at l. 587: "Wyth ryche cote armure, His gold sporez *spend* with pryde." For the use of *armours* in the plural, see *Isumbras*, 736.
- p. 66, l. 364. In the original French version the shield is described as

"paint à azur et à or gentement :
 Environ l'urle current li quatre vent,
 Li duze signe e li meis ensement,
 Et de l'abisme i est le fundement,
 Et ciel et terre fait par compasement :
 Dessus la bouele le soleil qui replent."

- p. 66, l. 368. "a stede;" in the French called "Blanchart le corant."
 p. 67, l. 376. "nonkynsthynges." See note to l. 1080, below.
 p. 67, l. 380. The names are not given in the French original.
 p. 67, l. 397. Fr. "Celle en apelle Flandrine de Monbel,
 Et avec li Rosete de Ruissel."
 p. 67, l. 401. "syle:" go, proceed. Compare *King Alexander*, p. 5 :
 "With that the segge all himselfe *silis* to his chambre." *Allit.*
Poems, B. 131 : "Solased hem with semblaunt and *syled* fyrrer," and
Avoucyng of Arthur, st. xvi.
 p. 68, l. 412. "ane helme;" Fr. "l'elme Galatiuel."
 p. 68, l. 421. Fr. "Au col li pendent .i. fort escu novel,
 Blanc comme noif, à .i. vert lioncel,
 Entre ses piez portoit .i. dragonnel."
 p. 68, l. 423. "his stede;" in the French called "Migrados l'inel,"
 but in l. 434, below, "Mekredose."
 p. 68, l. 455. "ryde;" probably a slip for *ryfe* or *ryue*. For the rime
 compare ll. 904-5.
 p. 68, l. 458. "lethirs;" the shield-belts; Fr. "les guiges," which
 Burguy explains as "lien, courroie, anse de l'écu, courroie par
 laquelle on suspendait l'écu autour du cou." "Assembled" in the
 next line is evidently a corruption, but what the true word is I
 cannot guess. The original has simply "rompent."
 p. 68, l. 465. "Nasch;" O.Fr. *nasel*; L.Lat. "*nasale, nasile, pars*
cassidis demissa, quæ nasum tegit." Ducange. The word occurs
 several times in *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Turnbull; as, for instance,
 l. 2062 :
 "His hauberk was al to-tore,
 And his *nasel* aualed bifore;"
 and l. 9385 : "*pe nasel* he carf atoo." See also ll. 4911, 4990, &c.
 Neither Stratmann nor Halliwell have the word.
 p. 70, l. 476. "strade;" evidently the meaning is, ground. Can the
 word be for strate = A.S. *street*?
 p. 70, l. 485. In the original French it is Charles who makes the
 exclamation : "Diex ! dit li rois, com cist cop est pesant !"
 p. 70, l. 490. "he said." See note to *Sege off Melayne*, l. 601.
 p. 70, l. 499. "to helde;" to give way. See note to l. 822, and
 compare l. 549, below.
 p. 71, l. 530. Fr. "Male honte ait qui de vos fist clerçon ;
 Ffaillé avez à ce premier sermon,
 Ne savez pas bien lire la leçon.
 Mès je sui metre, si le vos apenron.
 S'ore te puis encontrer à bandon,
 Tel te donrai sus ce hiaume réon,
 Ke ne poras dire ne ou ne non."

- p. 72, l. 549. "plye;" to bend, give way. Fr. "le cop fu grant, le païen fist ploier."
- p. 72, l. 556. See note to l. 923, below.
- p. 72, l. 563. "my swerde kan schere;" Fr. "bien est trenchant m'espée."
- p. 73, l. 570. "leuede." The riming words show clearly that there is some corruption here. In l. 568 the rime can, of course, be easily corrected by reading *nefes*, but the true reading of the present line is not so clear. However, here is a suggestion. In *Lazamon*, III. 143, we have, "þa nas þer na mare i þan fehte *to laue*," and p. 171: "þat noht no bið *to leue*," and in the A.S. version of St. John vi. 12: "gaderiaþ þa brytsma þe þar *to lafe* wæron." I would suggest then that the original word was *to-leues*, an adverbial form which, though I know no instance of it, may be conjectured on the analogy of *liues*."
- p. 73, l. 587. Fr. "Les bras tendus se vont entrecolant."
- p. 74, l. 612. Here in the French version follows the following passage:
- "Son parrin fu Karles de Saint Denise,
Son nom li lessent ne li changierent mie.
Bautisé fu, si a sa loi grepie,
Si crut en Dieu le fix Sainte Marie."

Compare the account of the baptism of *Ferumbras*, where we are told that

"ys name ther y-chaunged was ! & was ihote Florens,
so þoȝ me tornde þar ys name ! as þe manere was,
Euere ȝut after a baar þe same ! & men cliped him."

- p. 74, l. 618. "was;" probably we should read *nas*; cf. l. 522; *Ferumbras*, l. 1087.
- p. 74, l. 628. Fr. "Por li auez mult riche manantie." I do not understand the word "Powunce."
- p. 75, l. 666. "Mi Cites brekes & bristes;" Fr. "mes chastels art e brise mes citez."
- p. 76, l. 671. In the English version this passage is almost unintelligible, but the French assists us to clear up the difficulty. Charles, at the end of his address to his knights, asks their advice as to whether they should march against Garcy at once, or wait till the spring:

"Irrum nos i ainz que vienge estez,
U atendum treske yver seit passez?"

To this they reply:

"De merveille parlez.
Celui n'i a ne seit tut aprestez,
Mar i auera altre terme nomez."

Charles then agrees to postpone their departure till the following April. We thus see that "to fende of" probably means to postpone the expedition, although, if so, the next line appears inconsistent. I can, however, make nothing else of the passage. The Auchinleck MS. version reads:

"Whether wole we wenden oppon him anon,
Othir abide til winter be gon.
The duzzeperes acentenden þer to,
To bide til winter were l-do."

- p. 76, l. 686. From the French version of the present passage, it is clear that the events which are being described are supposed to take place in December. (See remarks in Introduction, § 6.) The French settle down for the winter, and

"or va decembre, si est passé jeneuers,
Feverier e marz, e vient li tens leger."

But curiously enough the poem opens by saying that it was

"à Pasques, si comme oï avon,
Tint sa cour Kalles à Paris, sa meson."

The Auchinleck MS. version, following the Middlehill MS., corrects the slip, and says, l. 55, "Hit was Childermasse day" when Otuel arrived at Paris on his message.

- p. 76, l. 688. In the French the names of the douzeperes are given as follows: Roland, Oliver, Anseis, Girard, Engelier, Estult, Turpin, Girard, Bertoloi, Otuel, Naymes, and Ogier. The English list, it will be noticed, only accounts for ten, nor do the names in the two lists correspond. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259.

- p. 77, l. 701. "By thowsande tale;" so that they might be counted by thousands. Compare Copland's *Guy of Warwick*, K ii:

"Y see comming in a dale,
Many a thousande Lumbarde bi tale."

- p. 77, l. 702. "Mount Marteres;" Fr. "Munmartre."

- p. 77, l. 709. "Semled." The same spelling occurs in *Sir Otuel*, p. 72: "Tho lette Garsie asemlen anon, alle hise sarazins echon," and in *Torrent of Portugal*, 1066.

- p. 77, l. 721. "forthirmaste;" the first; Fr. "Prim jor d'avril." Compare *Sege off Melayne*, l. 229.

- p. 78, l. 736. Perhaps this line is really complete as it stands, and no word is lost by the tearing of the MS. We might then complete the next line by reading "ther wer[e still,]" or we might read "gentill [fre,]" and in l. 737, "were [three,]" omitting the [A] in l. 738.

- p. 78, l. 738. "A thousande;" Fr. "set cent."

- p. 78, l. 740. "Mandely;" Fr. "Mungiu."

- p. 78, l. 742. "Vertely;" Fr. "Vergels."

- p. 78, l. 745. Fr. "Sur l'eve del Ton les a fait osteilior." The river is called "Roltane" in l. 756, below.

- p. 78, l. 755. "A max de fer a fet les puelx piler,
A fortes bandes l'a fet mult bien fremer.
Ffors est li pons, bien s'i puet on fier."

- p. 79, l. 784. In one MS. of the French version the names are given as, Barsamin, king of Nineveh, Corsabre, Escorfaut, and Clarel; in the other, that in the library of Sir T. Phillipps, the name Ascanars is substituted for that of Escorfaut. See l. 811, below.

- p. 79, l. 790. See note to *Sege off Melayne*, l. 350.

- p. 80, l. 798. The French version explains the cause of Clarel's desire to meet Roland, viz., that he might avenge the death of his brother

Samson of Monbrant, who had been slain by the French champion in a tournament at Pampeluna.

“Car si ocist Samsoine de Monbrant,
Sous Pampelune, à .i. tornolement ;
Il est mon fraïre, s'en ai le cuer dolent.
De duel morai si n'en preng vengeance.”

- p. 80, l. 803. “faire” makes no sense, and I have no doubt we should read “of are,” that is, “whom we spoke of just now.”
- p. 80, l. 806. “slees ;” an instance of the northern form of the imperative mood.
- p. 80, l. 811. Here in both French MSS. the Saracen king's name is given as Ascanars, the former name *Escorfaut* not occurring again.
- p. 80, l. 812. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 473 : “ryd þou to me wyþ a cors of werre.”
- p. 80, l. 815. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5722 : “Of þyne ne schalt þow lese noȝt, þe worthy of a pere ;” and see note, *ibid.* l. 5442.
- p. 80, l. 822. “Of horse he garte hym helde.” Compare ll. 499 and 549, above, and *Horn Child*, &c. (Ritson's *Metrical Romances*, vol. iii.), l. 674 : “Of his hors he made him held ;” and *Morte Arthure*, ed. Furnivall, l. 261 : “Galehodie party by-gan to helde.” “To Helde : vbi to bowe.”—*Cathol. Anglicum*. “Heldyñ or bowyñ. *Inclino, flecto, deflecto.*”—*Prompt. Parv.* For other instances see my note in the *Catholicon*, and *Sir Perceval*, l. 1671.
- p. 81, l. 846. “lofesome vnder lyne ;” literally, handsome, lovely in dress. The same expression occurs in *Sir Tristram*, iii. 47 : “*lufsum under line.*” Compare ll. 861 and 1279, below.
- p. 81, l. 847. “Melle ;” his sword. Fr. “*Treut at s'espée, Mellée la trenchant.*”
- p. 81, l. 851. “A noble cheke here wonn hafe yee ;” that is, you have won a noble victory. The French version reads : “*Perez mei vif, echec avez fait grañt.*” “*Eschec.* A Checke at Chesse-play. *Donner eschec et mat à.* To subdue, conquer, overcome, surmount, surpass, win, or get the better of.”—*Cotgrave*.
- p. 81, l. 861. “worthily vndir wede ;” a very common phrase, and equivalent to well-looking in their armour. Compare *Sir Thopas*, 2107 ; *Amis and Amiloun*, pp. 370, 375, &c. ; and see l. 846, above.
- p. 82, l. 876. I take this line to mean that against the 1000 Saracens there were no more than the three French knights.
- p. 82, l. 885. See note to *Sege off Melayne*, l. 396.
- p. 82, l. 886. A very early instance of a phrase now very common.
- p. 83, l. 895. “*Sir Carpe ;*” Fr.—

“Carmel de Tabarie,
Un Sarasin qui tus les altres guie :
Bien est armé, si set sur Pennepie.”

- p. 83, l. 899. Fr.—

“Que dirrum nos à l'emperur Garsie ?
Ke par .iiii. hummes est si grant gent hunle ?”

p. 83, l. 914. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988. The French version gives the name of Oliver's sword as "Halteclere."

p. 83, l. 919. The French version is rather different. It runs:

"Par le champ broche l'alface de Nubie,
Un Sarazin, que Dampnedeu maldie,
Cusins fu il à la bele Alfamie."

The translator has apparently taken Alfamie, which is really the name of Clariel's mistress for the name of a knight. See note to l. 956, below.

p. 83, l. 923. "toppe ouer tayle." Compare ll. 556 and 1301. "Toppe ouer tayle; *precipitanter*. To cast Tope ouer Tayle; *precipitari*."—*Cath. Anglicum*. Gawin Douglas, in his translation of Virgil, Book VII. p. 221, has "quyte peruert or turnit *top ouer tale* Latinus houshold."

p. 84, l. 925. Compare *Guy of Warwick*, l. 10367: "The Kyng Anlase was well woo:" *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 209, and *Genesis and Exodus*, 1033, "Jacob was wo." See *Sege of Melayne*, l. 559.

p. 84, l. 929. In the French Oliver seizes the horse of Sir Carpe:

"si salt sur Pennepie
Le bon destrier Carmel de Tabarie."

"too" has evidently been altered by the southern scribe from "ta."

p. 84, l. 941. "lefte the swete;" lost their lives. Compare Gawin Douglas, Virgil, *Aeneidos*, Bk. I. p. 29 (ed. 1710):

"Quhar that the valiant Hector losit the swete
On Achilles speir."

The same expression occurs in the *Sege of Melayne*, l. 372. See also *Morte Arthure*, 2145 & 3360; *Allit. Poems*, C. 364; and *K. Alexander*, p. 105.

p. 84, l. 951. Fr.— "Vos nel poez tensesr,
Ja li verrez tuz les membres colper."

p. 84, l. 952. "As anenthe the;" as against thee, so far as thou art concerned (*quod ad te attinet*). Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5877, and Wyclif, Mark x. 27: "*Anentis* men it is impossible, but not *anemptis* God; for all thingis ben possible *anemptis* God."

p. 84, l. 955. Fr. "Uit Sarazins a il fet demander."

p. 84, l. 956. "my leman;" Fr. "m'anie," named in the French "Alfamie," and in the present version, see l. 1324, below, "Alphayne." See also the quotation in note to l. 919, above.

p. 85, l. 967. "white as fame;" a very common simile. Compare, for instance, *Sir Degrevant*, l. 1385: "Towellus of Eyllsesham, *why3th* as the seey3 fame;" *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 3956:

"Par cam an herte forþ reke, *As wyt as melkys fame*."

Isumbras, 262; and the quotation in Halliwell, p. 346.

p. 85, l. 976. "bute ne belde;" help nor refuge.

p. 85, l. 979. "glotouns;" a common term of reproach or abuse. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 164, 1633, and 3841.

p. 86, l. 990. Fr. "ore vos conuis assez."

p. 86, l. 993. Fr.—

“D'une herbe duce li donent à mangier,
Ke Deu méisme planta en sun vergier;
Seine at à nun, tel pot hum préiser.
Cil dormi tost, qui en at grant mester,
Quant il s'esveille, si se sent tut legier,
E plus fu sein que prune de pruner.”

Compare the similar incident in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1386.

p. 86, l. 1001. “þay fuht harde handilde ware.” Compare Barbour's *Bruce*, ed. Skeat, x. 693: “The Erll wes *handlyt* thair so hat;” and Coverdale, *Proverbs*, xxiv. 28: “I wil *handle* him, euen as he hath dealte with me.”

p. 87, l. 1032. “thethey.” (?) the meaning is evidently rash, hasty, but I cannot account for the form.

p. 87, l. 1008. “boun;” prepared, ready. Icel. *buinn*, p.p. of *bua*, to prepare. “þai bad þat bald men suld be *þoune*,
To haue hir tite out of þe toune.”

Legends of the Holy Rood, p. 81.

“He wold be *boun* bleþeli þe bold batayle to hold.”

William of Palerne, 1144.

p. 87, 1035. “At hir awenn Fyndynge;” Fr. “Que Belesent a tuz à sun manjer.”

p. 87, l. 1037. “Florence;” Fr. “Flori.”

p. 87, l. 1052. “gramaungere.” I can only explain this word by supposing it to mean gluttony, greediness. In the French version the line runs: “Quidez vos sul les paienz tuz mangier.”

p. 87, l. 1053. “vnder-tone;” evidently the riming words originally were *ane*, *ane*, *vnder-tane*, *slayne*.

p. 88, l. 1060. “ynglere;” Fr. “Engillers.”

p. 88, l. 1065. “hounde;” a very common term of abuse, applied by the Christians to the Saracens, and *vice versa*.

p. 88, l. 1066. “carefull.” Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 1115 and 5221, and notes, and *Song of Roland*, l. 605.

p. 88, l. 1067. Fr. “Monjoie! escrie, ferez i, chevalier!”

p. 88, l. 1080. “nonekyns dere;” injury of no kind. Compare *P. Plowman*, B. xi. 185: “none kynnes riche;” and see Prof. Skeat's note to C. xi. 128. In l. 376 we have “nonkynsthyng” = no kind of thing. See also l. 125 above.

p. 89, l. 1084. Fr.—

“A la rescousse vint poignant Ysores,
Gautier de Termes et Girart l'alosez.”

p. 89, l. 1112. “Qede;” the devil. Compare *Guy of Warwick*, l. 8214.

p. 90, l. 1117. “a turke;” in the French “Arapater .i. Turc de Floriant,” who, we afterwards learn, was a kinsman of Otuel's.

p. 90, l. 1124. Fr. “François reculent plus de demi arpent.”

p. 90, l. 1125. “Ane Almayne;” Fr. “Droon l'Aleman.”

p. 90, l. 1126. “G[r]auntere;” Fr. “Girart d'Orleens.” In the next

line Otes and Rayner are additions of the translator. On the former name see note to l. 67, above.

- p. 90, l. 1129. Here the translator has passed over some 50 lines of the French original, in which are narrated the death of Arapater at the hands of Otuel, and the discomfiture and flight of the Saracens, who are met by a reinforcement of 20,000 men. Clariel then retires within Attalie, and, mounting on the battlements, demands Otuel's name. Otuel tells him, and they then agree to fight their duel the next morning, the day being too far advanced to do so at once.
- p. 90, l. 1140. In the French Otuel adds that he is "fix Galien : ma mere ot nom Ludie."
- p. 91, l. 1151. "wiche de;" Fr. "enchanté."
- p. 91, l. 1157. "pye;" a pea. Fr.—
 "tot tes Des ne valent une alie.
 mal dehez alit tote lor compaignie,
 car il ne valent une pome porrie." See l. 222, above.
- p. 91, l. 1163. Fr.—
 "Le Sarrasins li a levé le doi,
 Et Otinel li otria sa foi
 Que la bataille ne remandra en soi."
- p. 91, l. 1171. Compare *Sir Triamour*, l. 468: "hur sone was feir of *hide and heve*." The phrase occurs again in l. 1230, below.
- p. 91, l. 1174. See note to *Sege off Melayne*, l. 1171. The French reads:
 "La fille Karle li oerche les costez,
 Que il ne soit ne plaiez ne naffrez."
- p. 91, l. 1178. "lett;" lighted, Fr. "sont les feux alumez."
- p. 92, l. 1180. Fr. "les morz conroient."
- p. 92, l. 1187. "wooke." This form occurs in Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, l. 535.
- p. 92, l. 1199. Here in the original we have the following description of Clariel:
 "N'ot si bel home de ci en Orian,
 .XV. piez a, quant il est en estant."
 The account of his armour and of his procession through the town is an addition of the English translator.
- p. 92, ll. 1201-2. "hede: by-wevede." See note to *Sege off Melayne*, l. 329. "by-wevede;" entwined, worked round with. Compare *Alisaunder*, l. 1085:
 "The croune of gold *bywaved*, He set on his fadir heved;"
 and the *Old Eng. Misc.*, ed. Morris, p. 140:
 "Mid on red mantel þu were *bywened*,
 Crune of bornes þu heuedest on heued."
- p. 92, l. 1208. The subject pronoun, *they*, is omitted, as is so frequently the case in this poem. See note to *Sege of Melayne*, l. 27.
- p. 93, l. 1228. "Naynes;" the French adds, "li barbez." See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2204.
- p. 93, l. 1230. See note to l. 1171, above.

p. 93, l. 1238. "thore;" this form occurs in *Havelok*, l. 922; *Genesis and Exodus*, l. 211, &c.

p. 94, l. 1250. "folde;" I do not understand this word. The French reads:

"Tu diz que forsenex,
Ne faiz acroire, trop as tes jurs usez."

p. 94, l. 1252. "crounkilde;" wrinkled, withered.

p. 94, l. 1254. A nearly literal translation of the French, "si est le poil mellez;" that is, mixed with white.

p. 94, l. 1265. Fr.—

"Clarel me dit, comme fol assotes,
Que rien ne vaut sainte crestientez."

p. 94, l. 1266. The phrase has already occurred, l. 345, above.

p. 95, l. 1279. See note to l. 846, above.

p. 95, l. 1278. In the French is a much longer account of the process of arming Otuel:

"Ou dos li vest .i. bon haubere doublier,
On chlef li lace l'elme au roi Galier,
Qu'en Babiloine conquist au guerroier,
Et Corroouse li çaint li flex Renier;
Onques nul fevre ne pot meillor forgiar.
Au col li pent .i. escu de quartier;
Estout de Langres li va l'espié baillier,
Le fer fu bon, le fust fu d'un lorier.
Uns esperons li chaucha Olivier,
Et Belissent si li tint son destrier,
Et Otinel l'ala .iiii. foiz baister."

p. 95, l. 1287. "Monthe;" perhaps a mistake for *mirth*, or should we read *mouth* = songs, mirth?

p. 95, l. 1290. Compare the Poem on the times of Ed. II., pr. in Wright's *Polit. Songs*, p. 340:

"al þat whilom was murþe
is turned to *trois and tene*;"

and the *Old Eng. Homilies*, ed. Morris, i. 193:

"Mid ham is muruhte moniuold wið-ute *teone and trois*."

We have the phrase repeated in l. 1518, below.

p. 95, l. 1298. See note to l. 812, above.

p. 95, l. 1301. See note to l. 923, above.

p. 96, l. 1319. Fr.— "La lievre enporte et trestot le joier,
Si que les denz véissiez blanchoyer."

p. 96, l. 1341. In Lincolnshire and some other of the northern counties "gain" is still used in the sense of near, ready; as "the gain way," the nearest, shortest way.

p. 97, l. 1346. In the French Alphayne is represented as torturing Ogier in revenge for the death of Clariel.

p. 97, l. 1354. I do not understand this line, and the French original does not throw any light upon it.

p. 97, l. 1356. The French original has here a passage omitted by the

- translator. Charles is represented as entrusting to Naymes the chief command in the coming battle, and making him a present of his charger Volant, and, in addition, of five manors in France.
- p. 97, l. 1357. "Sir Barlott of perse;" Fr. "Florient de Sulie."
- p. 97, l. 1366. "he askede leue;" Fr. "a demandé le gant." Compare the *Song of Roland*, l. 482.
- p. 97, l. 1368. "theire bothere dede;" the death of both of them. Compare "to *zunnen bapre gode*," *Ormulum*, 6183; "to deme *hir botheres rizte*," *P. Plowman*, B. xviii. 37; and note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 677.
- p. 98, l. 1392. "his lyfe was hym full gnede;" was wanting to him. The expression occurs again, l. 1422, below. Compare *Sir Perceval*, 607: "He made thame gammene *fulle gnede*."
- p. 98, l. 1393. This episode does not occur in the French original. In fact, the remaining portion of the poem differs so considerably from the French that it is difficult at times to trace the connection between them. The translator appears as if he had become tired of his task and anxious to get to the end of it. Thus, although the remaining part of the French original extends to nearly 500 lines, the English version only covers about 200.
- p. 99, l. 1408. "full gud wone;" good plenty. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 3571, "delte strokes *ful god won*." See also another instance of the phrase in *Guy of Warwick*, l. 11098: "sende hym *strokys gode won*;" and the editor's note on the derivation of *wone* on p. 444.
- p. 99, l. 1410. "wandrethe;" sorrow, misery. O.Icel. *vandræði*. The word is not very common, but it occurs in *Layamon*, 12,511: "mid *wandrethe* and mid fare;" in *Ormulum*, 4846: "Onnæn all þatt *wamdrap* & wa;" and a few other passages. In Small's *Metrical Homilies*, p. 21, l. 8, we have: "Folc sal thol *wandreth* and ten."
- p. 99, l. 1418. "slakkes & in slade." Compare *Anturs of Arther*, st. xxiii.: "in a *slac* thou schalle be slayn;" and *Sir Degrevant*, l. 333: "He laf slawe in a *slak* forty score on a pak."
- p. 99, l. 1420. "fade;" heavily, strongly. Compare *Sir Perceval*, 616: "þofe þat he were *fadde*;" but ? read *sade*.
- p. 99, l. 1422. See note to l. 1392, above.
- p. 99, l. 1424. "horse;" this word is a true plural. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5827.
- p. 100, l. 1445. "the kynges Sone of Alphane;" that is, the son of the king of Alphane. See note to the *Sege off Melayne*, l. 1129.
- p. 100, l. 1450. "Cursabolee;" Fr. "Coursabrez." In the present version, l. 1483, he is called "Cresable."
- p. 100, l. 1457. "wele ane alblastire schott & mare;" Fr.—
 "Ariere sont noz François reculez
 .Xiii. arpenz et demi mesurez :
 Paiens les ont durement malmenez."
- p. 100, l. 1459. "vn-ryde." This word means severe, enormous, huge, or numerous. In *Guy of Warwick* we find it applied to strokes, spears, an army, a body, land, &c. See Prof. Zupitza's note to l. 1647.

- p. 100, l. 1466. "Sir Erym sone;" the son of Sir Erym. In the French he is called "Hardouin," and it is added that he "novelement ot esté adobez." In our version (see l. 1469) he is called "Naymere."
- p. 100, l. 1477. "relyed." Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 963:
"Wiþ þat þe Sarsyns *reliede* hem þer."
- p. 100, l. 1483. "Cresable;" Fr. "Corsable." Compare l. 1450, above.
- p. 100, l. 1486. "Aymere." In the French original, "Hardouin." See l. 1466, above.
- p. 100, l. 1499. "thilke folde;" so in the MS., but there is no doubt that we should read "*thikke* folde." Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 583, and l. 1108, above. It is, at times, almost impossible to distinguish between *lk* and *kk* in MSS. In l. 1538 we have "thik folde." Compare *Guy of Warwick*, l. 3329, "paynyns *thyckfolde*," and the editor's note.
- p. 102, l. 1505. "Dubbid þam selfe to knyghte;" that is, earned knighthood for themselves by their courage and feats.
- p. 102, l. 1510. See ll. 1392 and 1422, above.
- p. 102, l. 1518. See note to l. 1290, above.
- p. 102, ll. 1531-6. This episode is an addition of the English translator.
- p. 103, l. 1538. "thik folde;" cf. l. 1108, above.
- p. 103, l. 1545. "heghte;" Fr. "de .v. paiens est tozjors bien guetiez."
- p. 103, l. 1546. In the Auchinleck version Ogier is assisted secretly by "a noble skuier . . . swithe priueliche and stille." He provides him with arms and a horse, and they both escape from the city "abouten mid niȝt." In the French original Ogier begs of his guards to loosen his chains, as they hurt him. They refuse, threatening him with worse still, when Charles is defeated. The Danish hero, by a great exertion, bursts his chains, kills his five guards, and escapes.
- p. 103, l. 1547. "a nastell shide;" an astell shide, a beam or baulk of timber. "Astelle, a schyyd (astyl schyde). *Teda, astula, cadia*." Prompt. Parv. Cooper renders *assula* by "A chip or lathe, a slise *slise* of anything."
- p. 103, l. 1552. "þuoghe;" *sic* in MS. Probably we should read "ynoghe," or it may be a mistake for "toughe."
- p. 103, l. 1555. "Kayres;" hurried, hastened. Compare *William of Palerne*, l. 373: "þe kouherde *kaird* to his house;" and *P. Plowman*, Prol. 29: "in contre to *cairen* aboute." "*Troiell þar tofer titly beheld, Kayres* euyn to the kyng." *Destruction of Troy*, l. 9894.
- p. 104, l. 1573. In the original Garcy surrenders to Roland, who comes up at the moment when the Saracen is about to yield. He is thrown into prison, where he dies. In Mr. Fillingham's MS. he is converted to Christianity. See Ellis, *Metr. Rom.* II. 344.
- p. 104, l. 1584. In the original the wedding of Belesent and Otuel takes place immediately after the capture of Attale, and before the return of the French army to Paris.

NOTES TO SONG OF ROLAND.

- p. 107, l. 7. The passage appears to be hopelessly beyond explanation. There is nothing whatever in the original French to help us.
- p. 107, l. 22. "statis." Compare *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 3: "When þe Meyre and þe statys sawe þis doying," &c.
- p. 108, l. 33. "If." The word is indistinct in the MS., but probably we should read "He."
- p. 108, l. 43. "againste his comyng;" before, in preparation for. So in the *Seven Sages*, l. 1488, the Empress debates: "How scho myght agayens nyght, Fonden a tale al newe."
- Properly *tymbring* would be playing on a timbrel, but here it is probably used in a general way for playing of music. "I tymber, I playe on an instrument or a tymber. *Je timbre*. The maydens of London were wonte to tymber more than they do nowe."—Palsgrave. "*Trymlinge of tabers*" answers best perhaps to our "beating of tattoos."
- p. 109, l. 69. "to toun." See note to l. 908.
- p. 109, l. 70. See Introduction, § 14.
- p. 109, l. 81. In the original the dream is thus told:
"Sunjat qu'il eret al greignurs porz de Fizer
Entre ses poinz teneit sa hanste fraisaine;
Guenes li quens l'ad sur lui saisie,
Par tel air l'at estrussée et brandie
Qu'envers le cel en volent les escioles."
- p. 109, l. 92. "ferre in fraunce;" Fr. "à sa capele ad Ais."
- p. 110, l. 97. "lier;" the flesh. "*Pulpa*, *lira*," Wright's Vol. of Vocab. p. 71.
- p. 110, l. 99. Fr.— "Devers Ardene vit venir uns leuparx,
Sun cors démenie, mult fièrement asalt."
- p. 110, l. 104. "tell" would here seem to mean think over, reflect on. In the original Charles does not relate his dreams to any one at this time.
- p. 110, l. 114. The meaning of this and the three following lines is tolerably easy to guess at, but it is almost impossible to explain them clearly. "Aspendid" seems = a spedid = have fared.
- p. 110, l. 121. In the original French Charles' speech occupies but two lines:
"Veez les porze les destreiz passages,
Kar me jugez ki ert en l'arère-guarde."
- p. 110, l. 124. "on bost;" perhaps "he on loft" = high aloft.

- p. 111, l. 141. "proud in pres." Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5520 :
 "In þe feld leye þay with wondes wyde,
 þat arst wer *prout on pres.*"
- p. 111, l. 147. Fr. "Vos estes vifs diables."
- p. 111, l. 168. "luen." I can make nothing of this word, which is very indistinct in the MS., perhaps *men* was meant.
- p. 111, l. 196. "knaue;" knave, lad. A.S. *cnafa*. So in *Alisaunder*, l. 7968 : "knight, swain, and *knave*." Compare also l. 909 below : "here is no *knave* but I will mak hym knyght."
- p. 111, l. 202. Here are given ten names of knights, and in l. 206 are mentioned "oper iij" whose names are not stated, making a total of 14 knights. But beside this, in ll. 214—18 are named 11 others, some of whom will be recognised as sometimes included amongst the douzeperes. And last, but certainly not least, although the part which he takes in the present poem is very slight indeed, at l. 811 we have the name of Turpin, the chivalrous and undaunted archbishop of Rheims.¹ It is therefore clear that it is utterly impossible to make up a list of the douzeperes, properly so called, so far as the present poem is concerned.
- p. 113, l. 218. "Richard;" Fr. "Girarz de Roussillon."
- p. 111, l. 226. "tutlers." Compare *P. Plowman*, B. xx. 297 : "Alle taletellers and tyterers in ydel," where one MS. reads *tutlers*; and *Ancren Riwele*, p. 212 : "te deouel leieþ his lutel adun to his earen, & tuteleþ him al þet he euer wule." "Totelon talys (totelyn, totylyn tale in onys ere). *Susurro.*"—*Prompt. Parv.*
- p. 114, l. 254. "let vs ouer-slid;" let us pass over, pass on. I know of no other instance of the word in this sense, except perhaps *William of Palerne*, l. 3519 : "þe þroli þouzt þat him meued, þer-of þat ilk time sone he let *ouer-slide*." *ouer-skip* and *ouer-hop* are used in the same sense.
- p. 114, l. 271. "my noun;" myn own = my own. See note to *Otuel*, p. 64, l. 288. Compare *Guy of Warwick*, l. 1142. "my nowne," l. 1807, "þy nowne," l. 7805; "my neme" = "min eam."
- p. 115, l. 290. "thryngid." The meaning is evidently completely covered, loaded, but I know no other instance of the use of the word.
- p. 115, l. 303. "wise;" guide, lead. A.S. *wisian*. "I shal *wisse* 3ow witterly þe weye."—*P. Plowman*, B. v. 562. "Wyssyñ or ledyñ. *Dirigo.*"—*Prompt. Parv.*
- p. 116, l. 312. "as It semyd best." I understand this to mean "as seems most probable."
- p. 116, l. 313. "the;" *sic* in MS. read, "the[n]."
- p. 116, l. 324. "he shakis down by a schaw;" hurries, hastens. Compare *Morte Arthure*, 1213 :
 "He somond than the schippemene scharpely thereafyre.
 To *schake* forthe with the schyre mene to schifte the gudez."

¹ M. Gaston Paris is wrong in stating at p. 155 of his *Histoire Poétique* that Turpin's name does not occur in the poem.

- p. 117, l. 344. "hir;" evidently a mistake for "his."
- p. 117, l. 360. "with out;" so in MS., but evidently we should read "with our."
- p. 117, l. 376. "hethen hound;" a common expression of contempt used by the Christians to the Saracens. See note to *Destruction of Troy*, 2921; "to *shake* over lande," and *Guy of Warwick*, 5512.
- p. 118, l. 389. "his shuld for euer." I can make nothing of this line.
- p. 118, l. 390. "doluy n;" buried. Compare *Genesis and Exodus*, 2718: "He *dalf* him in *te* sond;" and 1893:
 "Ysaac quan he was hold
 .ix. score yer and fine told
 Was *doluen* on *æt* stede."
- p. 118, l. 399. "and hathe brewid bale in this ilkay stound." Compare *Minot*, p. 24: "A Braban *brewed that bale*;" and Wright's *Political Songs*, p. 69: "Let him habbe, ase he *brew*, bale to dryng."
- p. 118, l. 405. "hardref." In *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 4076, "Hardree."
- p. 119, l. 421. "ryll." I do not understand this word.
- p. 119, l. 422. "cleves." Compare *Layamon*, ii. 451: "In þan wilde *cleues* holes he secheþ;" and *Morte Arthure*, l. 2396: "Here es a knyghte in theis *kleyys*, enclesside with hilles."
- p. 119, l. 434. "righte;" read "rightes."
- p. 120, l. 452. "splayd;" displayed, unfolded. O.Fr. *esployer*. The omission of the preposition in words from the Romance is very common. Compare *saut* and *assault*, *pele* and *appeal*, *scape* and *escape*, *stroy* and *destroy*, *say* and *asay*, &c.
- p. 120, l. 455. "It was in euery mannes ere," &c. I take this to be equivalent to our expression, it was in every man's mouth, every one spoke of it. "And not to seche" = it was not hard to find, it had not to be sought for. Compare Tusser, *Husbandry*, ch. x. st. 24.
- p. 120, l. 464. There is evidently some corruption in this line. We should expect to read *deffende*.
- p. 120, l. 467. "x Ml. by taile." Compare note to p. 77, l. 701.
- p. 120, l. 470. "he ys;" read "be ye."
- p. 120, l. 482. Compare *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1366.
- p. 121, l. 487. Comparing this line with l. 686, below, it would seem as if the translator had mistaken the French adj. *Barbarins* for a proper name. The original has:
 "Uns reis i est, si ad num Corsablix,
 Barbarins est d'un estrange pais."
- p. 121, l. 490. "sonyst off oper;" before all the others.
- p. 121, l. 512. "ther-hendis;" thereabouts, close there. Fr. "Oliver est desur un pin muntel." See M. Gaston Paris, *Hist. Poet.* p. 273, note 2.
- p. 122, l. 531. "couerd;" lit. recoverd, so brought back.
- p. 122, l. 534. "Abid, quod Roland," &c. Fr.—
 "Taïs, Oliver, li quens Rollans respunt;
 Mis parrastre est, ne voeill que mot en suns."
- p. 122, l. 537. This and the three next lines appear almost hopelessly

corrupt. The first line probably belongs to Oliver's answer to Roland's question ; l. 539 I take to mean "when our array is broken, then it will be time," &c.

- p. 122, l. 547. "it is vs on hond ;" it is close at hand for us.
- p. 122, l. 556. "ouer course ;" beyond or out of measure, excessively.
- p. 123, l. 561. "Have you had any bone broken, or has any harm befallen you ?"
- p. 123, l. 571. Fr.— "Dient Franceis : Dehet ait ki s'en fuit !
Jà pur murir ne vus en faldrat uns."
- p. 123, l. 573. "as I dem sheld." I take this to mean, as I should advise or recommend.
- p. 123, l. 577. "let vs further fonge," let vs move, venture further. I know of no other instance of *fonge* in this sense, but *fonde*, AS., *fundian*, is not uncommon. Compare *Pierce the Ploughman's Crede*, l. 408 : "I mot hepen *fonden*," *Owl and Nightingale*, 719 : "þider *fundep* evrich man," &c.
- p. 123, l. 579. "roun." ?
- p. 123, l. 580. "diskid." ?
- p. 123, l. 585. Evidently the meaning is, that each of the French offered a quantity of gold : perhaps we should read *then* for *them*.
- p. 123, l. 589. "rusche." I don't understand this word. We should have expected *reste*.
- p. 124, l. 596. "geton ;" a banner, properly two yards in length.
- p. 124, l. 597. "do ;" done, fastened.
- p. 124, l. 605. "carfull ;" piteous. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1115.
- p. 124, l. 606. "wise ;" guida. See note to l. 303, above.
- p. 124, l. 612. There seems to be a word wanting at the end of the line.
- p. 124, l. 619. "bown ;" ready. See note to *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1008.
- p. 124, l. 637. "is ;" probably we should read "in."
- p. 125, l. 638. "Wit it thy nown werk ;" know, be assured that it is thy own doing. See note to *Sege off Melayne*, l. 698, and compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5127.
- p. 125, l. 650. "rose ;" boast. See note to *Sege off Melayne*, p. 31, l. 956.
- p. 125, l. 657. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2231, and l. 786, below.
- p. 126, l. 667. "be that ;" by that time. See *Sege off Melayne*, p. 9, l. 253.
- p. 126, l. 671. "bround ;" a brand, sword.
- p. 126, l. 686. "barbarins ;" see note to l. 487.
- p. 126, l. 688. "Nemys ;" in the original French, Turpin.
- p. 127, l. 707. "sought." I do not understand this word. The three lines appear to mean that Kastor's coat of arms was gules, three garlands or.
- p. 128, l. 756. "hete ;" time. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2762 :

"Capouns y-bake al-so tok he, foure in pilke *hete*," and *Destruction of Troy*, 10,288: "Miche harme in þat *hete* happit to falle." See also *ibid.* l. 9523; and *Sir Degrevant*, l. 1272.

p. 128, l. 770. Compare *Sir Generides* (Roxb. Club), l. 5904:

"the king
... made there many an *hurtlinge*
Forto lete him his sward to take;"

and *Ancren Riwele*, p. 166: "mid a lutel *hurtlinge* 3e muhten al nor leosen." See also Sir T. Maleor's *Prince Arthur*, ed. 1816, i. 18.

"Hurtelin to-gedur. *Collidere*."—*Prompt. Parv.*

p. 129, l. 774. "I-sweld;" see note to *Sege off Melayne*, ll. 70, 79.

p. 129, l. 775. The heathen in that army met with ill hap.

p. 129, l. 786. Compare l. 657, above.

p. 129, l. 792. "o manys syne." The passage is evidently corrupt. Probably we should read "by o man syne;" the misreading *manys* doubtless arose from the scribe's eye being caught by that word in the preceding line.

p. 129, l. 795. "An hauchler;" most probably a corruption of *hautecler*, the name of Oliver's sword. See note to *Sir Ferumbas*, l. 988.

p. 130, l. 837. Compare *Coventry Mysteries*, p. 207: "With sum myst his wittys to merke."

p. 131, l. 848. Here is the French description of the storm:

"En France en ad mult merveillus turment,
Orez i ad de tuneire e de vent,
Pluies e gresilz desmesurément.
Chiedent i fuldres e menut e suvent,
E tenemoete ço i ad veirement.
De Seint Michel de Paris josqu'as Seinz,
De Besentun tresqu'as porz de Guitsand,
N'en ad recet dunt del mur ne cravent.
Cuntre midi ténébres i ad granz;
N'i ad clartet se li cels ne n'i fent;
Hume ne l'veit ki mult ne s'esspaent.
Dient plusor: 'Ço est li definement,
La fin del siècle ki nus est en present.'
Il ne l'sevent ne dient veir nient:
Ço est li granz dulors por la mort de Rollant."

p. 132, l. 892. "suele." I do not understand this word: ? = proud.

p. 132, l. 902. "At;" that. Compare *Metrical Homilies*, p. 73: "Sainte Makary hard say, *At* thai wald come;" and *Legends of the Holy Rood*, p. 109: "þai come tille him þat ilk nȳt *atte* þai sulde on þe inorne fȳt." See also *Sir Degrevant*, l. 1200.

p. 132, l. 908. "Cum agayn to toun;" the expression simply means return home, come back. Compare *Sir Thopas*, l. 2028:

"How Sir Thopas with sydes smale,
Priking ouer hil and dale
Is come agayn to tounne."

and Wright's *Lyric Poetry*: "Lenten ys come wiþ lone to tounne."
 "Cyman to vel in tune, *venire ad vicem vel in vice sua*." Lye, A.S.
 Dict. Compare l. 69, above.

p. 132, l. 909. See note to l. 196, above.

p. 133, l. 920. "A had;" have had.

p. 133, l. 928. "Was there never man who fought so bravely."

p. 133, l. 931. Fr.—

"Un Sarrazin i out de Sarraguce
 De la citel l'une meitet est sue :
 Ço est Climborins, ki pas ne fut produme ;
 Fiance prist de Guenelun le cunte,
 Par amistiet l'en baisat en la buche,
 Si l'en dunat s'espée e s'escarbuncle."

p. 133, l. 940. "euer." The rime shows "ere."

p. 134, l. 953. "dalabern of valern;" Fr. "un païen Valdabrun."

p. 134, l. 955. "with a gyn;" Fr. "par traïsun."

p. 134, l. 964. Fr.—

"D'Affrike i ad un Affrican venit :
 Ço est Malquiant le filz al rei Malcud ;
 Si guarnement sunt tut à or batud.
 Cuntre le ciel sur tuz les autres luist,
 Siet el ceval qu'il cleimet Salt-Perdut."

p. 134, l. 968. "Amys of almayn;" Fr. "Anséis."

p. 134, l. 976. "Then went cadwen," &c. Fr.—

"Del altre part est un païen Grandonies
 Filz Capuel le rei de Capadoce neez . . ."

p. 134, l. 978. Fr. "Plus est isnels que n'est oïsel ki volet."

p. 134, l. 982. "berenger and g[uyon];" Fr. "E Berenger e Guiun de Saint-Antoine."

p. 135, l. 989. "peyssant;" a gorget of mail or plate attached to the helmet. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Pesane.

"He hitt hym evene on the nekk-bane,
 Thurgh ventale and pesane."—*Sir Perceval*, 1722.

In Tytler's *Hist. of Scotland*, ii. 369, is quoted an order from *Acts of Scottish Parl.*, ii. 362, under date 1540, that "All persons whose fortune was below a hundred pounds of yearly rent, were to have a jack, or a halkrick, or brigantine, and gloves of plate, with *pesane* and gorget." See also the *Anturs of Arthur*, ed. Robson, xlv. 11: "He girdus to Syr Gauane, Throȝhe ventaylle and *pusane*."

"vnredly;" violently, furiously. See Glossary to *Sir Ferumbras*, *s. v. v.* Ounride and Vnride, and note to *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1459.

p. 135, l. 1000. "whos the feld was, none myght know." We still use the phrases "to win or lose the field," that is, the battle. Compare *Torrent of Portugal*, 114 :

"Now God, that dyed appon a rode,
 Strengithe hym both bone and blod,
 The *fylð* for to haue;"

and *Arthur*, l. 480 :

“To God be euere alle honourez !
The *falde* was hys & Arthourez.”

So in the *Chronicle of Grey Friars of London* (Camd. Soc.), p. 21 :
“xxxviiij A°. Thys yere was another *felde* at sent Albons, and the
felde at Northamtone, and at Wakefelde, and at Mortymers crosse,
anno M^cccccxvj.”

p. 135, l. 1003. “schill ;” shrilly, loudly. A.S. *scyll*. Compare
William of Palerne, 3831 : “þe king of spayne gan crie keneli &
schille.” Compare also *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 3020.

p. 136, l. 1043. It is singular that Roland should here propose to send
a messenger after Charles, instead of blowing his horn, which would
be at once a speedier and a safer mode of recalling him.

For the completion of the romance see Introduction, Appendix,
p. xxxvi.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

The references are in every case to page and line, thus 45/1384 means p. 45, l. 1384.

pr. (or *pt.*) *s.* = present (or past) tense, 3rd person singular.

pr. (or *pt.*) *pl.* = present (or past) tense, 3rd person plural.

M = Sege of Melayne. O = Roland and Otuel.

R = The Song of Roland.

ABOFFE, *adv.* M. 45/1384, above.

ACCORDEMENT, *sb.* R. 119/430, agreement, reconciliation.

ACTON, *sb.* M. 30/917, a leathern jacket worn under a coat of mail.

AGAINSTE, *prep.* R. 108/43, in preparation for, before.

A-GLACE = A-GLANCE, *adv.* M. 43/1347, gliding, passing. See *Guy of Warwick*, l. 5067.

ALBLASTIRE, *sb.* O. 100/1457, a cross-bow; Lat. *arcubalistam*.

ALTHERE, *adj.* M. 28/870, of all; *paire althere* = of them all.

AMONGE, *adv.* R. 130/868; M. 19/563, here and there, in places, at times.

"Amonge, or sum tyme. *Interdum, quandoque*."—Prompt. Parv.

We find the expression so late even as Shakspeare:

"And lusty lads roam here and there

So merrily,

And ever among so merrily."

ANENTHE, *prep.* O. 84/952, lit. opposite to, hence, as regards. See note.

APPELLE, 1 *pr.* s. O. 66/343, charge.

ARE, *sb.* M. 43/1341, mercy, sake. A.S. *ār*.

ARE, *adv.* M. 31/969, before, at first. A.S. *ær*.

ARESTE, *pt.* s. M. 9/250, seized.

ASCRYE, *vb.* M. 48/1502, utter the war-cry at, challenge.

ASPENID, *pp.* R. 110/116. See note.

AT, *conj.* R. 132/902, that, when.

AT, *prep.* O. 97/1366, of, from.

AUGHTE, *pt.* s. O. 67/406, owned.

A-VAUNTEDE, *pt.* s. M. 51/1575, advanced, promoted.

AUENAUNTE, *adj.* M. 30/920, pleasant, beautiful.

AVENAUNTE, *sb.* O. 66/359, pleasure, pleasing.

AUENTALE, *sb.* O. 66/357, the moveable part in the front of the helmet.

A-VOYDE, *vb.* O. 68/440, clear.

AYE, *sb.* O. 62/222, egg. A.S. *æg*.

AYWHILLS, *conj.* M. 26/798, until.

BAILE, *sb.* R. 122/553, ruin, harm.

BALE, *sb.* M. 16/488, a funeral pile. A.S. *bæl*, but see note.

BALE, *sb.* O. 80/858, woe, ruin.

BAPTISTE, *pp.* O. 90/1143, baptised.

BARETT, *sb.* O. 99/1427, fighting, struggle.

BARRES, *sb.* M. 37/1159, 41/1278, barriers, rampart; *oute barres* = the outer rampart.

- BASCHED, *pt. s.* R. 110/117, frightened, alarmed.
- BATELLE, *sb.* M. 12/365, army.
- BATELLS, *pl.* O. 90/1124, battalions.
- BAYLI, *sb.* M. 5/131. BAYLLEE, O. 74/632, government.
- BAYNE, *adj.* M. 7/186, ready.
- BEDE, *vb.* M. 47/1464, offer.
- BEE, *vb.* M. 37/1161, be, remain.
- BE-HIGHT, 1 *pt. s.* R. 119/418, promised.
- BEKYRE, *vb.* M. 7/186, fight. BEKIRS, *pr. pl.* M. 41/1293.
- BELDE, *sb.* O. 85/976, help, protection.
- BELDIS, *pr. pl.* M. 48/1496, take courage, become bold. A.S. *bealdian*.
- BE-LYFE, *adv.* O. 84/929, quickly, at once.
- BEMES, *sp. pl.* R. 121/307, trumpets. A.S. *beme*.
- BENT, *sb.* M. 9/271, field, grass.
- BERE, *sb.* O. 60/183, noise, disturbance.
- BERN, *sb.* R. 113/237, man, knight.
- BERYNS, *sb. pl.* M. 9/275, men.
- BESE, *pr. s.* M. 23/698, ia.
- BESSANT, *sb.* R. 118/411, coin, money. Properly a coin of Byzantium.
- BE-SWYKE, *vb.* M. 22/663, deceive, betray.
- BE-TECHE, 1 *pr. s.* R. 125/663, commend, commit; R. 130/842, assure, promise.
- BETEN, *pp.* R. 115/287, inlaid. BETT, *pt.* O. 68/417; M. 21/641, inlaid, ornamented.
- BETTANT, O. 66/356, ? beaten gold.
- BIGGED, *pp.* O. 63/275, built.
- BLANE, *pt. s.* O. 102/1510, stopt, ceased. See BLYN.
- BLE, *sb.* R. 127/708. BLEE, M. 44/359, colour, look. A.S. *bleo*.
- BLENCID, *pt. s.* R. 118/402, blinked.
- BLENKEDE, *pt. s.* M. 44/1359, changed.
- BLIF, *adv.* R. 125/652. BLYF, 127/703, quickly, readily.
- BLONKES, *sb. pl.* M. 9/254, steeds; properly of a white colour.
- BLYN, *imp. s.* R. 122/534. BLYNE, 1 *pr. s.* M. 15/452, cease, leave off. A.S. *blinnan*.
- BODYS, *sb. pl.* R. 111/146, promises, engagements.
- BOISTOUS, *adj.* R. 109/94, fierce, rough.
- BOLNEDE, *pp.* O. 59/149, swollen.
- BORD, *sb.* R. 128/755, ?
- BOROWS, *sb. pl.* M. 5/131, boroughs, cities.
- BOTE, *sb.* M. 19/582, good, advantage.
- BOUN, *adj.* O. 86/1008. BOWN, R. 124/619, ready, prepared.
- BOUND, ? *adv.* R. 113/226, ? readily.
- BRAID, *sb.* R. 115/301, charge, struggle.
- BRAID, *pt. s.* R. 126/684, started, leaped. A.S. *brédan*.
- BRASTE, *pt. pl.* M. 35/1075, burst, broke.
- BRAUN, *sb.* R. 110/97, muscle. O.Fr. *braon*. The word was originally a disyllable.
- BRAWNE, *sb.* M. 52/1599, properly flesh of the boar, but also used for flesh of any kind.
- BRAYDEDE, *pt. pl.* M. 37/1132, drew, snatched.
- BRAYDES, *pr. s.* M. 30/939, spreads.
- BRAYSTE, *vb.* O. 85/986, lit. burst, hence, hurt, damage.
- BREME, *adj.* M. 31/969, fierce, furious.
- BRENYS, *sb. pl.* M. 38/1182, cuirasses.
- BRESE, *pr. pl.* R. 132/888, bruise. A.S. *brysan*.
- BRETENYDE, *pp.* M. 50/1547. See BRITTYNE.
- BRIGGE, *sb.* O. 78/755, bridge.
- BRISTES, *pr. s.* O. 75/666, bursts, breaks utterly.
- BRITTYNE, *vb.* O. 103/1563, break,

- cut in pieces. BRITTENEDE, *pt.* *pl.* O. 82/891. A.S. *brytnian*.
 BROCHEDE, *pt.* *pl.* O. 80/800, purged.
 BROCHES, *pr. s.* M. 35/1084, spits, transfixes.
 BROUND, *sb.* R. 126/671, sword. A.S. *brand*, *brond*.
 BUKILES, *pr. s.* R. 126/694, buckles, fastens.
 BURDE, *impers. pr.* O. 94/1253, behoves, is fitting.
 BURDOURS, *sb. pl.* O. 56/34, jesters.
 BURDYNGE, *sb.* M. 46/1419, joking, merriment.
 BUSE, *impers. pr.* M. 2/44, a contracted form of behoves.
 BUSKE, *vb.* M. 18/545, prepare, make ready. BUSKEDE, *pt. pl.* O. 56/43.
 BUT, *conj.* R. 121/495, unless, except.
 BUTE, *sb.* O. 85/976, remedy, help.
 BYGGYNGE, *sb.* M. 16/467, building.
 BYLEUES, *pr. s.* M. 7/207, remains.
 BY-TAUGHTE, *pt. s.* M. 4/115, handed, gave.
 BY-WEVEDE, *pp.* O. 92/1202, entwined, inlaid. A.S. [*bi*] *wewan*.
 CANTE, *sb.* M. 48/1495, slope, side.
 CANTILLS, *sb. pl.* M. 33/1032, pieces, fragments.
 CARDYNERE, *sb.* M. 51/1588, Cardinal.
 CAREFULL, *adj.* O. 88/1066. CAREFULL, R. 124/605, full of care, troubled. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, p. 42, l. 1115 :—
 "God kepe þe prisouns out of sorwe! for
carful þay were þat day."
 and p. 162, l. 5221 :—
 "þe Sarayns schulleþ . . haue A *carful*
iornes."
 CELY, *adj.* M. 13/393, lucky. A.S. *selig*.
 CHALANGE, 1 *pr. s.* O. 65/316, claim; bring as a charge.
 CHEKE, *sb.* O. 80/851, check. See *note*.
 CLAGHITE, *pt. s.* O. 72/565, caught.
 CLERGY, *sb.* O. 71/530, learning.
 CLEVES, *sb. pl.* R. 119/422, rocks, cliffs.
 CON, *vb.* O. 80/798, know, recognise.
 CONANDE, *sb.* O. 61/193, covenant, agreement, condition.
 CONYSAUNCE, *sb.* M. 47/1466, cognisance.
 COO, *sb.* O. 64/286, jackdaw.
 "Coo, hyrde or schowhe. *Monedula.*
Prompt. Parv.
 CRAYON, *sb.* M. 22/680, craven, coward.
 CROUNKILDE, *adj.* O. 94/1252, wrinkled.
 COUERD, *pp.* R. 122/531, ? returned, turned back.
 COWPED, *pt. pl.* O. 69/453, struck.
 CURROUR, *sb.* M. 45/1378, courier, messenger.
 DALT, *pt. pl.* M. 33/1030, dealt [blows].
 DANNGE, *pt. s.* O. 83/916, struck, dashed.
 DAREFELY, DERFELY, *adv.* M. 33/1030, 1033, bravely, valiantly.
 DAWEN, *pt. s.* R. 118/389. DAWID, dawned.
 "Als soyn als it *dawit* day."
 Barbour's *Bruce*, ed. Skeat, xvii. 102.
 "To Daw: *diere, diescere, diat, diebat.*"
Cathol. Anglicum.
 JEDE, *sb.* M. 18/548, death.
 DELE, *vb.* M. 38/1195, divide, share.
 DELIUERLY, *adv.* M. 33/1027, sharply, quickly.
 DERE, *vb.* O. 70/495, hurt.
 DERID, *pt. s.* R. 109/81, troubled.
 DERRAYE, *sb.* O. 66/375, disturbance.
 DISCRYE, *vb.* O. 63/273, cry at. Cf. ASCRYE.
 DISKED, *pt. s.* R. 123/580, ?
 DISTANS, *sb.* R. 126/675, ?
 DO, *pp.* R. 124/597, fastened, worked.

- DOANDE, *pres. part.* M. 35/1092, doing, in action.
- DOVE, *sb.* O. 73/578, dove.
- DOILFULLE, *adj.* R. 130/833, dreadful, sad, doleful. DOILLFULLY, *adv.* R. 131/850.
- DOLE, *sb.* M. 34/1055, sorrow, pain.
- DOLUYN, *pp.* R. 118/390, buried.
- DOSCHE, *sb.* M. 16/470, dart, dash.
- DRECHINGE, *sb.* R. 109/80, sorrowing.
- DREE, 1 *pr. pl.* M. 34/1055, suffer, endure. *See* DRY.
- DREGHE, *adj.* O. 76/696, vigorous, sharp, fierce. O. Icel. *driugr*.
"In dreȝ droupyng of dreme draueled þat noble."—*Sir Gawayne*, 1750.
- DREUEDE, *pp.* O. 92/1205, laid, placed.
- DRISTE, *pt. pl.* M. 33/1033. ?DRIFTE = drove, struck.
- DRY, *vb.* M. 25/755. DRYEE, 48/1485, endure. A.S. *dreogan*.
- DRYFE, *vb.* O. 83/902, strike, "let fly" a blow.
- DRYGHYNE, *sb.* O. 95/1283, lord.
- DUCHEPERS, *sb. pl.* M. 26/808, douzeperes.
- DYNGE, *vb.* M. 49/1512, dash, strike.
- EGHE, *sb.* M. 43/1352, eye. EGHNE, *pl.* O. 68/424.
- ELDE, *sb.* O. 76/682, age.
- EMAGERY, *sb.* M. 2/25, images.
- EME, *sb.* O. 60/160, uncle.
- ENSUREDE, *pp.* O. 60/160, assured, pledged.
- EVYNHAUNT, *adj.* M. 25/782. *See note*.
- FADE, *adv.* O. 99/1420. *See note*.
- FAYNE, *sb.* M. 36/1104, joy. A.S. *fægen*, used as a substantive.
- FEE, *sb.* M. 46/1420, chattels, property.
- FELE, *adj.* O. 102/1503, many. A.S. *feol*.
- FELES, *sb. pl.* FELOS, FELLOs, R. 117/349, 352, 362, fellows, companions.
- FELL, *sb.* O. 55/8, skin.
- FELLICHIP, *sb.* R. 124/601, companions.
"a Fellischippe; *consorcium, societas et cetera*; *vbi a company*."—*Cath. Aug.*
- FENDE, *pt. s.* O. 86/1016, found.
- FERD, *sb.* R. 135/1003, fear.
- FERE, *adv.* M. 21/645, in fere = together.
- FERE, *adj.* M. 46/1436, proud, fierce, bold.
"hal and fere."—*Sir Iambras*, 801.
"Komes euen to kourt as knyȝt *hot & fere*."—*William of Palerne*, 1583.
- FERE, *sb.* O. 57/68, companion. A.S. [*ge*] *fera*.
- FERKES, *pr. s.* M. 16/484, launches, reaches. A.S. *fercian*.
- FERLYDE, *pt. pl.* M. 48/1474, marvelled, wondered.
- FERLYS, *impers. pr.* M. 18/552, it surprises, makes to wonder.
- FERRERE, *adj.* O. 93/1227, further.
- FETT, *pt. pl.* O. 92/1180, fetched, brought together.
- FEWTER, *sb.* M. 47/1462, the rest for a lance.
"A faire floreschte spere in *fewtyre* be cates."—*Morte Arthure*, 1366.
- FEWTERDE, *pt. s.* M. 48/1474, placed in the rest.
- FEY, *adj.* O. 55/18, dead. A.S. *feege*.
- FICHE, *pp.* R. 133/932, fixed, set.
- FLOTE, *pt. s.* M. 19/563, complained, chided. A.S. *flitan*.
- FLYNGES, *pr. s.* O. 81/830, strikes, hurls blows.
- FOILIS, *sb. pl.* R. 109/64, ? foals, horses.
- FONG, *pp.* R. 124/621, taken, accepted.
- FONGE, *vb.* R. 123/577, proceed, try, venture.
- FORBODE, *sb.* M. 14/406, forbidding. *See note*.
- FOR-IUSTE, *vb.* O. 79/778, beat in jousting.
- FOR-THI, *conj.* O. 62/217, therefore.

- FORTHIRMASTE**, *adj.* M. 8/229; O. 77/721, first, foremost.
- FOR-TRAUELLEDE**, *adj.* O. 78/751, worn out with travelling.
- FORWARDES**, *pt. pl.* M. 26/804, agreements, covenants.
- FOR-WEPE**, *pp.* M. 4/89, worn out with weeping.
- FRE**, *sb.* R. 124/614, noble man, knight.
- FREKIS**, *sb. pl.* R. 110/132, men, people. A.S. *freca*.
- FREKKERE**, *adj.* M. 39/1223, bolder, braver. A.S. *frecc*; Icel. *frekr*.
- FROWARDIS**, *sb. pl.* R. 110/132.
- FRUSCHE**, *vb.* M. 16/469, dart, leap.
- FRUSCHEDE**, *pt. pl.* M. 12/361, dashed, charged. O.Fr. *fruisser*.
- FRUSCHE**, *sb.* M. 9/268, shock.
- FUDE**, *sb.* O. 75/642, creature, maid. "Mi child, mi oune fode." *Kyng Horn*. 1350. A.S. *foda*.
- FYNDYNGE**, *sb.* O. 87/1035, cost, expense. Compare the expressions, "to find" a person in anything: "all found."
- GAN**, **GANE**, *pt. s.* M. 11/325, 333, properly past tense of gin = begin, but commonly used as a simple auxiliary verb = did.
- GARISON**, *sb.* R. 114/262, reward.
- GARRE**, *vb.* M. 15/435, cause, make.
- GARTE**, *pt. s.* M. 4/106.
- GAYNE**, *adv.* O. 96/1341, readily, quickly.
- GERRE**, *vb.* M. 47/1458, cause, make. See **GARRE**.
- GESSERANTE**, *sb.* M. 30/919, a sort of jacket without sleeves, composed of small oblong plates of iron or steel, overlapping each other, and sometimes covered with velvet.—*Halliwell*.
- GETON**, *sb.* R. 124/596, a banner.
- GILID**, *pp.* R. 117/366, betrayed, deceived.
- GIRDANDE**, *pres. part.* M. 32/997, spurring.
- GIRDILSTEDE**, *sb.* O. 72/548, waist, belt.
- GLAFES**, *sb. pl.* M. 15/1099, glaives.
- GLEDDES**, *sb. pl.* O. 64/285, kites. "A glede. *Milvus*."—*Cathol. Anglicum*.
- GLESSENEDE**, **GLYSSENEDE**, *pt. pl.* O. 97/1365, 1371, glistened, shone.
- GLOTOUNS**, *sb. pl.* O. 85/979, villains. See note.
- GNEDE**, *adj.* O. 98/1392, lit. needing, hence wanting, lost.
- GOM**, *sb.* R. 107/16. **GOME**, *R.* 709, man.
- GONES** = **GOMES**, *sb. pl.* M. 41/1289, men.
- GOWERE**, *sb.* M. 32/979, ?
- GOWNNES**, *sb. pl.* M. 41/1288, guns.
- GRAMAUNGERE**, *sb. (?)* O. 87/1052. See note.
- GRAYTHE**, *adv.* M. 41/1289. **GRAYTHELY**, *M.* 4/105, quickly, readily.
- GRAYTHEDE**, *pp.* M. 52/1600, prepared, made ready.
- GRENN**, *pr. pl.* O. 99/1423, lit. grin, hence, make faces through pain, writhe.
- GRESES**, *sb. pl.* O. 86/993, herbs.
- GRETE**, *sb.* M. 40/1252, ground, earth: lit. grit. A.S. *grot*. "To quille his flees lay vnder grete, his gaste till hell es gane." *Cursor Mundi*, l. 16935.
- GROPED**, *pt. s.* O. 91/1174, felt, examined. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1388:— "Muche him wondred of þat cas: & þan gropede he euery wounde."
- GRYLL**, *sb.* M. 8/224, grief, sorrow.
- GYN**, *sb.* M. 15/443, 444, contrivance, plan.
- HABERNEONE**, *sb.* O. 99/1412, haberton, breastplate.
- HAILSEDE**, *pt. s.* O. 87/1042. **HAYLSEDE**, *O.* 58/70, saluted, greeted.
- HALE**, *vb.* O. 70/494, lift.
- HALFEN-DELE**, *sb.* O. 70/498. **HALFONDELE**, *R.* 112/189, a half. A.S. *healfne dæl* or *þone healfan dæl*.
- HARAWDE**, *sb.* M. 47/1468, herald.

- HATTEN, *pp.* O. 101/1469, named, called. A.S. *hatan*. For the history of the word see Prof. Zupitza's note to *Guy of Warwick*, l. 169.
- HAWTAYNE, *adj.* O. 69/450, haughty, proud.
- HAYLSYNGE, *sb.* M. 22/677, greeting.
- HEGHE, *adj.* O. 81/835, high, loud.
- HEGHTEN, *adj.* M. 27/828, eighth.
- HELDE, *v.* O. 80/822, bend, fall.
- HEND, *adv.* R. 108/48, quickly.
- HENT, *pt.* s. O. 92/1194, took, placed.
- HENTT, *v.* M. 34/1041, catch, receive.
- HERBERDE, *pt.* *pl.* O. 78/745, lodged, encamped.
- HERBERE, *sb.* O. 80/994, garden. *See note.*
- HERNES, *sb.* R. 108/49, arms, accoutrements.
- HETE, *sb.* R. 128/757, time. *See note.*
- HETE, 1 *pr.* s. M. 49/1523, promise, pledge.
- HETE, *vb.* O. 58/110, ? hit.
- HETHYNESSE, *sb.* M. 39/1224, heathendom.
- HEUENHANDE, *adj.* M. 26/810. *See note to l. 782.*
- HEWE, *sb.* O. 91/1171, colour, looks.
- HIDE, *sb.* O. 21/1171. HYDE, 93/1230, lit. skin, hence complexion, looks.
- HIGHTE, *pt.* s. O. 78/746, was named.
- HILTIS, *sb.* *pl.* M. 4/116, hilt, handle.
- HOLT, *sb.* R. 116/326, grove, forest. A.S. *holt*. HOLTIS, *pl.* R. 115/279.
- HONE, *sb.* M. 27/819; O. 65/341, delay.
- HOOF, *sb.* R. 136/1002, hoof.
- HOPE, *imp.* *pl.* M. 12/356, expect, believe.
- HOUANDE, *pres.* *p.* M. 48/1490, hovering, waiting.
- HOWSYNGES, *sb.* *pl.* O. 78/749, hangings, coverings.
- HURDAS, *sb.* M. 52/1600, a temporary rampart for assault. "And in to entre the; many wayes seke, Sette their bastyles and their hurdeyske." *Lydgate, Chron. of Troy*, Bk. II. ch. 18. *See also* Bokenham's *Lyvys of Seyntys* (Roxb. Cl.), p. 169.
- HURLINGE, *sb.* R. 128/770, contest, conflict. *See note.*
- HYE, *sb.* O. 91/1153, haste.
- HYNE, *adv.* M. 40/1230, hence.
- HYNGEDE, *pt.* s. O. 96/1319, hung.
- LANGILL, *vb.* O. 58/118, chatter.
- ILKON, *adj.* M. 27/833, each one, every one.
- I-MELLE, *prep.* O. 57/84, amongst. *See note.*
- IRNE, *adj.* R. 115/285, iron.
- I-SWELD, *pt.* *pl.* R. 129/774, perished, died. *See SWELTE.*
- KAN, 2 *pr.* s. O. 71/530, knowest.
- KAYRES, *pr.* s. O. 103/1555, go, proceed. A.S. *cerran*.
- KENDE, *pp.* M. 46/1437, known, renowned.
- KIRNELLS, *sb.* *pl.* O. 69/443, battlements. "Crenellé. Imbattled: made into, or fashioned like battlements. Creneler. To imbattile." Cotgrave.
- KITHE, *vb.* R. 127/727. KYTHE, O. 83/904, show, display. A.S. *cýðan, cūðian*.
- KORNE, *pp.* O. 92/1193, chosen, selected.
- KYDE, *pp.* M. 45/1381, known.
- KYNREDYN, *sb.* O. 76/693, kindred, family.
- LAGHEANDE, *adj.* O. 61/186, laughing.
- LARE, *sb.* O. 71/531, teaching, lesson.
- LATE, *pt.* *pl.* M. 49/1532, reckoned, thought. A.S. *lætan*. "He let it soþ."—*P. Plowman*, B. xv. 168.

- "Laatyñ, wenyñ, or demyñ.
Puto, reor, opinor. Latyñ, or demyn in word, or hert. *Arbitror, reor.*"—*Prompt. Parv.*
- LAUGHTE, *pt. pl.* O. 59/145, taken, received.
- LAWND, *sb.* R. 110/99, field, grass.
"A lawnde: *saltus.*"—*Cathol. Anglicum.*
"Launde a playne, launde."—*Palsgrave.*
- LAWSES, *pr. s.* M. 34/1067, snatches, draws.
- LAYE, *sb.* O. 97/1356, faith.
- LAYNE, *vb.* M. 18/538, 19/582, hide, conceal. O.Icel. *leyna.*
- LECHES, *sb. pl.* O. 92/1183, physicians.
- LED, *sb.* M. 49/1532; R. 126/697, person, man, people. A.S. *leod.*
- LENGOUR, *adv.* R. 119/436, longer, still.
- LENGS, *pr. s.* M. 47/1441, leans.
- LERE, *sb.* O. 74/621, ? colour, appearance. A.S. *hlor.*
- LERE, *vb.* O. 71/537. LEBYN, 531, teach.
- LESE, *pt. s.* M. 14/408, lost, gave up.
- LESE, *sb.* M. 42/1308, lie.
- LESEIS, *pr. s.* R. 114/258, loses.
- LETT, *pp.* O. 91/1178, lighted.
- LETT, *sb.* M. 50/1643, prevention, stopping.
- LEUE, *vb.* R. 112/187, ?part.
- LEUEN, *sb.* M. 4/112, lightning.
- LEUENYNGE, *sb.* M. 26/815, gleaming, flashes as of lightning.
- LIER, *sb.* R. 110/97, the soft part of the leg, the calf. A.S. *lira.*
- LIGHTLY, *adv.* R. 121/522, quickly.
- LOFESOME, *adj.* O. 81/846, lovely, handsome. See *Allit. Poems*, A. 398.
- LORN, *pp.* R. 118/388, lost.
- LOSE, *sb.* O. 89/1094, praise, renown.
- LOTHED, *impers. pt.* R. 129/772, it loathed them: they got tired of it.
"Us *loþeþ þe lif.*"—*P. Plowman*, B. Prol. 155.
- LOUED, *pt. s.* O. 74/602, praised.
- LOUGHIE, *pt. s.* O. 58/115, laughed.
- LOWTE, *pr. pl.* O. 82/884. LOWTEDE, *pt. s.* M. 32/982, bow, kneel, bend.
- LUEN, *sb.* R. 111/168, ?
- LUFESOME, *adj.* O. 95/1279. See LOFESOME.
- LYNE, *sb.* O. 81/846, clothes, dress.
- MACHE, *sb.* O. 80/809, match, opponent.
- MANGERY, *sb.* O. 104/1585, feast. Fr. *mangerie.*
- MARRID, *pp.* R. 130/842, killed, destroyed. A.S. *merran.*
- MASE, *pr. s.* M. 4/119, makes, appoints.
- MATE, *adj.* M. 41/1284, worn out; tired. "*Mater.* To mate, or give, a mate unto: to dead, amate, quell, subdue, overcome. *Amati.* Mated, amated, quailed, abated, allaid; decayed, mortified," &c. Cotgrave. See *Allit. Poems*, A. 612.
- MAWMATTES, *sb. pl.* M. 2/28, idols, false gods.
- MAYE, *sb.* O. 71/522, maiden.
- MELLE, *vb.* R. 125/647, mingle, join in conflict.
- MELLYDE, *adj.* O. 94/1254, mixed (with white). See note.
- MENE, 1 *pr. s.* O. 89/1107, tell, say.
- MENGEDE, *pp.* M. 15/458, mingled, mixed.
- MENSKE, *sb.* O. 74/623, honour, worship.
- MENYNG, *sb.* R. 117/369, ? moaning, groaning.
- MENȝE, MENȝEE, *sb.* M. 19/564, men, army.
- MESE, *sb.* R. 123/584, mass.
- METE, *vb.* M. 4/111, to dream. A.S. *mætan.*
- MODY, *adj.* R. 121/505, stern.
- MOLDE, *sb.* M. 27/843, earth.
- MON, *pr. s.* M. 3/75, must, shall.
- MONI, *vb.* M. 10/305, think.
- MOR, *sb.* R. 130/854. MORIS, *pl.* R. 115/306, moor, plain, open ground.

- MYRKID, *pt. s.* R. 130/837, became murky, dark. A.S. *mirce*, *myrce*, dark.
- MYSTER, *sb.* R. 116/321. MYSTERE, M. 47/1446, need.
- NAGHTE, *sb.* O. 59/146, night.
- NAP, *vb.* R. 109/70, sleep, be drowsy.
- NAPPERE, *sb.* O. 64/288, sleeper, dreamer.
- NASELL, *sb.* O. 69/465, nose-piece.
- NASTELL, *sb.* O. 103/1547, a piece of wood. *See note.*
- NEDDIRE, *sb.* O. 92/1201, an adder.
- NEE, *adv.* M. 16/486, nigh, nearly.
- NEFE, *sb.* O. 72/567. NEFFIS, *pl.* O. 59/149, fist. O.Icel. *hnefi*.
- NEMYTHE, *pr. s.* R. 128/746, cries out.
- NEVYN, *vb.* R. 136/1048, speak, say. A.S. *nemnan*.
- NEVYNLANDE, *prop. name*, M. 12/350. *See note.*
- NOLDE, *adj.* O. 64/288, a nolde = an olde. *See note.*
- NOM, *pt. s.* R. 134/965. NOME, 1 *pr. s.* M. 6/164, take; vndir nome = pledge.
- NONEKYN, *adj.* O. 59/125, of no kind.
- NONKYNSTHYNGE, *sb.* O. 67/376, a thing of no kind, or, as we now say, no kind of thing.
- NOUN, *adj.* R. 114/271, my noun = myn oun = my own.
- NYFE, *conj.* O. 64/297, if . . . not.
- OF, *prep.* M. 38/1191, off, from.
- OF-GLADE, *pt. s.* O. 70/475, glided from, fell off.
- OR, *prep.* M. 3/56, ere, before.
- OSTE, *sb.* M. 29/893, a host.
- OVER-SLID, *vb.* R. 114/254, pass over, skip.
- OWTTRAYDE, *pp.* M. 1/12, treated with outrage.
- PELETES, *sb. pl.* M. 41/1290, pellets, balls.
- PELYDE, *pt. pl.* O. 70/502, plied, fell.
- PENSALLE, *sb.* O. 88/1073, a little banner, streamer.
- PERSED, *pt. pl.* O. 98/1386, pierced.
- PEYSSANT, *sb.* R. 135/989, gorget. *See note.*
- FIGHT, *vb.* R. 109/62. FIGHTE, *pp.* O. 78/750, pitch.
- PILLYNGE, *sb.* O. 94/1265, the peeling, rind.
- PLENERLY, *adv.* M. 31/962, fully, completely.
- PLYGHTE, 1 *pr. s.* M. 29/908, promise, pledge.
- POUSTY, *sb.* M. 1/17, power.
- PROUEDE, *adj.* M. 42/1302, renowned, tried: cf. Lat. *probat*.
- PROVE, *vb.* R. 130/818, examine, look out.
- PROW, *sb.* R. 108/32, advantage, good. O.Fr. *prou*.
- PYE, *sb.* O. 64/286, magpie.
- PYE, *sb.* O. 91/1157, pea. *See note.*
- PYGHTE, *pt. s.* M. 26/800, pitched. *See FIGHT.*
- PYKKE, *sb.* M. 15/458, pitch.
- PYNE, *sb.* O. 97/1350, pain, suffering.
- QUELL, *vb.* R. 113/227, kill, slay.
- QWYKE, *adj.* M. 51/1568, alive.
- RACHES, *sb. pl.* M. 28/854, hounds.
- RAKE, *sb.* M. 40/1249, rush.
- "Dowelle; whyle new jeres daye, & rys, & rayke; benne."—*Sir Gawayne*, l. 1076.
- RAUGHT, *pt. s.* R. 129/796, reached to.
- RAWE, *sb.* M. 47/1470, row; one *raue* = in turn: "on Rawe. *Gradatim, ordinatim, seriatim.*" *Cathol. Anglicum.*
- REBUYTEDE, *pp.* M. 24/743, rebuked.
- RECHE, *pr. s. subj.* R. 112/198, may reach, come to.
- RECREYANDE, *adj.* O. 65/342, recreant, craven.
- RED, *pt. s.* R. 117/370, advised.

- RED**, *imp. s. R.* 117/358, advise, help.
- RELEUEDE**, *pt. s. O.* 88/1081, came against, pressed on.
- RELYED**, *pt. s. O.* 101/1477, rallied.
- RENT**, *sb. M.* 1/16, property, wealth.
- RESCHeweSEDE**, *pt. pl. O.* 103/1036, rescued.
- "Bot he be redly *reschewe*de with riotous knyghtes."—*Morte Arthure*, 362.
- RESE**, *vb. M.* 42/1305, rush, fall. A.S. *ræsan*.
- RESE**, *sb. R.* 117/370, rush, charge, attack. A.S. *ræsa*. Compare *Allit. Poems*, B. 1782:
 "þenne ran þay in on a *res*."
 "He was wroth and makæd a *res*."
Seven Sages, 2361.
- REUESCHE**, *vb. M.* 29/389, dress, put on his vestments.
- REW**, *adj. R.* 122/555, 125/637, sad, grieving. A.S. *hreoow*.
- REW**, *pt. s. R.* 117/370, repented, mourned.
- RIGBON**, *sb. R.* 127/736, back-bone. A.S. *hrycg*, the back.
- RIGGE**, *sb. R.* 135/995, back.
- RIND**, *sb. R.* 111/152, bark.
- "þe Rynde of a nege or of a nott. *Naucl.*"
Cathol. Anglicum.
- RISTE**, *imp. pl. M.* 26/797, rest.
- ROF**, *pt. s. R.* 126/682, cut through. A.S. *reofan*.
- ROSE**, *sb. R.* 125/650, boast. "to Ruse: ostentare." *Cath. Anglicum*.
- ROUN**, *adj. R.* 123/579, ?
- ROUT**, *sb. R.* 117/358, company, army.
- RUSCHE**, *imp. pl. R.* 123/589. **RUYSCHEDE**, *pt. pl. M.* 40/1249, rushed, charged.
- RUYSSE**, *vb. M.* 31/906, boast. See **ROSE**.
- RYDE**, *vb. O.* 69/455, fly, fall.
- RYKE**, *sb. M.* 22/666, kingdom.
- RYLL**, *vb. R.* 119/421, ?
- RYOTT**, *imp. pl. M.* 26/797, enjoy, amuse.
- "In ranez and in rosers to *ryotte* þame seluene."—*Morte Arthure*, l. 923. See also *Ibid.* 1969.
- "Riste vs and reuelle and *ryotte* oure seluene."
- SADLY**, *adv. O.* 96/1313, heavily, sternly, strongly.
- SALE**, *sb. O.* 57/63, hall, palace. A.S. *sæl*.
- SAMEN**, *adv. M.* 28/854, in *samen* = together.
- SAUGHTILLYNGE**, *sb. O.* 73/588, reconciliation.
- SAUGHTYLL**, *vb. O.* 91/1154, be reconciled. A.S. *sahlilian*.
- SAWE**, *sb. M.* 48/1476, saying, word.
- SAWTE**, *sb. M.* 42/1299, the assault, attack. See note to 120/452.
- SCHAFTEMONDE**, *sb. M.* 42/1308. See note. "Palme. A handbreadth, foure fingers, or three ynches in measure: also a shaftment." Cotgrave.
- SCHARE**, *pt. pl. M.* 41/1265, cut, cleave.
- SCHAW**, *sb. R.* 116/324, thicket.
 "A schawe of wod. *Virgultum.*"
Cathol. Anglicum.
- SCHIDE**, *sb. O.* 103/1547, billet, log. A.S. *scide*. See **NASTELL**. "Shide, vide Billet." Baret's *Alvearie*. "A schyde, billet, *calu.*" *Manip. Vocab.*
- SCHILL**, *adv. R.* 135/1003, shrilly, loudly. See note. "Schylle. *Sonorus.*" *Cathol. Anglicum*. "Shil or shirle, *argutus, canorus, acutus.*" *Manip. Vocab.*
- SCOMFET**, *pp. O.* 84/943, discomfited, overcome.
- SCHOUNTE**, *pp. O.* 96/1334, moved off, warded off.
- SCHREDE**, *vb. O.* 96/1330, cut in pieces.
- SCHU[L]DIRS**, *sb. pl. O.* 69/466, shoulders.
- SECHE**, *vb. R.* 107/5, 19, seek.
- SECUR**, *adj. R.* 110/130, certain, safe.
- SEMBLE**, *sb. O.* 58/107, assembly, meeting.
- SEMLED**, *pt. s. O.* 77/709. **SEMLYDE**, *O.* 77/708, assembled.
- SEROCH**, *vb. M.* 38/1173, examine, probe.

- Sessed, *pt. s.* O. 60/181, quieted, calmed.
 Sessede, *pt. s.* M. 51/1577, seized, put in possession.
 Sewede, *pt. pl.* M. 12/371. *See note.*
 Shakis, *pr. s.* R. 116/324, hurries, hastens. A.S. *sceacan, scacan.*
 Shouris, *sb. pl.* R. 112/194, struggle, fight. A.S. *scur*, a shower. Cf. *flana scuras* in Judith, l. 221.
 Siclaton, *sb.* O. 57/87, a kind of rich stuff.
 Sille, *sb.* O. 55/9, ?
 Slade, *sb.* O. 99/1418, valley, ravine. A.S. *slæd.*
 Slakkes, *sb. pl.* O. 99/1418, ravines. "In a *slac* þou schall be slayn." *Anture of Arthur. st. xxiii.*
 Sloghe, *pt. s.* O. 90/1125, slew.
 Slone, *vb.* O. 76/684, slay. A.S. *slæon.*
 Slyke, *adj.* M. 22/659, such.
 Smotherly, *adv.* O. 63/259, quietly, gently.
 Snelle, *adj.* O. 67/403, quick, ready.
 Soghed, *pt. s.* R. 124/600, groaned. "There gan he to sigh and *soughid* for wo." *Romance of Partenay, 1944.*
 "He sighed, *soghed*, wepte with teres many." *Ibid.* 2890.
 A.S. *swoeg*, a noise; *swogan*, to sound, howl.
 Solance, *sb.* M. 12/357, comfort.
 Sondas, *sb. pl.* R. 112/180, a sending, business, purpose.
 Sought, ? *adv.* R. 127/707, ?
 Spend, *pp.* R. 129/793, ? spanned, grasped.
 Spende, *pt. pl.* O. 66/361, put round, girded with.
 Splayd, *pt. pl.* R. 120/452, displayed, spread out.
 Spryngolles, *sb. pl.* M. 41/1285, an engine for casting stones, arrows, &c., a catapult.
 Stakered, *pt. pl.* R. 127/730, staggered, fell. O.Icel. *stakra.*
 Stalworthe, *adj.* O. 98/1373, doughty, stalworth.
 Statiss, *sb. pl.* R. 107/22, authorities. Compare *Gesta Roman.*, p. 3: "when þe Meyre and þe *statys sawe þis doying.*"
 Stekede, *pp.* M. 35/1097, pierced, transfixed.
 Steuen, *sb.* M. 4/113, voice.
 Stound, *sb.* R. 115/305, time.
 Stour, *sb.* R. 129/771. STOURRE, O. 102/1527, conflict, struggle. O.Fr. *estour.*
 Stoure, *sb.* M. 8/237, crowd of fighting men.
 Strade, *sb.* O. 70/476. *See note.*
 Strande, *sb.* O. 93/1215, country, land.
 Streghte, *pp.* M. 38/1185, stretched, displayed.
 Struye, *vb.* O. 56/48. STRUYED, *pp.* O. 97/1349, destroy.
 Styntt, *vb.* M. 33/1035, cease, leave off.
 Stythe, *adj.* O. 70/485, mighty, noble. A.S. *stīð.*
 Suele, *adj.* R. 132/892, ? proud.
 Suyng, *adj.* R. 108/44, following, in succession.
 Swappithe, *pr. s.* R. 128/746, sweeps, slashes.
 Swedyrd, *pt. pl.* R. 116/337, ? jerked.
 Swelte, *pt. 2 s.* M. 3/70, 79, didst die. A.S. *sweltan.*
 Swete, *sb.* O. 84/941, joy, pleasure, and hence, life.
 Sweuen, *sb.* M. 4/111, dream.
 Sygnance, *sb.* O. 88/1074, sign, token.
 Style, *vb.* O. 67/401, to move, go. O.Icel. *silu.*
 Symple, *adj.* M. 46/1409, of low degree.
 TA, *vb.* M. 32/982, take.
 Taille, *sb.* R. 120/467. TALE, O. 77/701, tally, number; *by thousande tale* = by thousands.
 Takynnyng, *sb.* M. 39/1215, token, sign.

- TAUGHTTE, *pt. s.* O. 94/1268, com-
mended.
- TAYNTE, *sb.* M. 45/1387, stain,
disgrace.
- TEAN, *sb.* R. 125/632, ? = tene,
sorrow.
- TELL, 1 *pr. s.* M. 23/705, count,
reckon.
- TENDE, *pp.* M. 24/753, grieved,
vexed.
- TENE, *sb.* O. 95/1290, annoyance,
grief. A.S. *teona*.
- TENTEDE, *pt. pl.* O. 56/31, attended.
- TEPET, *sb.* M. 31/960, ? crest.
- TERRE, *sb.* M. 15/438, tar.
- THE, *vb.* O. 79/793, thrive: *als mot
I the* = so may I thrive; but see
Prof. Zupitza's note to *Guy of
Warwick*, l. 615.
- THEDE, *sb.* M. 1/12, 33/1008, people.
- THEE, *sb.* M. 36/1108, thigh. THIES,
sb. pl. R. 115/290.
- THETHEY, *adj.* O. 87/1032, ? rash,
hasty.
- THIRE, *pron.* M. 14/411, those.
- THONWANGE, *sb.* O. 57/82, temple.
A.S. *þunwange*. "*Hoc tempus, a
tunwonge*." Wright's Vol. of
Vocab., p. 206.
- THORE, *adv.* O. 93/1238, there.
- THRETYNGE, *sb.* O. 80/826, threat-
ening.
- THROO, *adj.* M. 15/453, fierce,
furious.
- THRYNGE, *pr. pl.* M. 8/237, press.
- THRYNGID, *pp.* R. 115/290, com-
pletely covered. A.S. *þringan*,
to crowd, press on.
- TID, *pp.* R. 123/561, happened.
See note.
- TO, *conj.* M. 43/1354, till, until.
- TO-DREUES, *pr. pl.* O. 73/573, fly
in pieces.
- TOK, *pt. s.* R. 120/482, gave.
- TONE, *pp.* O. 59/129, taken.
- TOO, *vb.* M. 15/447; O. 84/929,
take, seize, hold.
- TOUGHE, *adj.* O. 65/323, ? bold,
daring.
- TRAYE, *sb.* O. 95/1290, sorrow,
grief.
- TREE, *sb.* M. 15/448, wood.
- TREWES, *sb.* R. 114/261, truce.
- TRIST, *sb.* R. 112/177, trust, confi-
dence, faith.
- TRUSE, *imp. pl.* R. 108/48, pack up.
"To trusse vp. *Subligare*.
To trusse. *Manticara*."
Cathol. Anglicum.
"He was halowid and y-huntid, and y-hote
trusse."—*Richard the Redeles*, III. 223.
- TRYMLINGE, *sb.* R. 108/54. *See
note.*
- TRYNES, *pr. pl.* M. 40/1246, strike
up, play.
- TUTLERS, *sb. pl.* R. 113/226, whis-
perers, tale-bearers.
"Totelon' talya (totelyn, totelyn tale in onys
ere). *Susurro*."—*Prompt. Para.*
- TWIGHT, *adv.* R. 108/40, quickly,
readily.
- TWYNED, *pp.* O. 72/557, lost.
- TYKE, *sb.* M. 43/1325, a cur,
coward. O. Icel. *tík*, a dog.
- TYMBRING, *sb.* R. 108/54, playing.
See note.
- TYNE, *vb.* M. 3/84, lose, forfeit.
- TYNTE, *pt. pl.* O. 98/1383.
- TYTE, *adv.* O. 61/204, quickly, soon.
- ÞE, *vb.* M. 37/1164, thrive, prosper.
See THE.
- ÞOFE, *conj.* M. 12/355, though, al-
though.
- ÞUS-GATES, *adv.* M. 9/252, thus,
in this way.
- VMERERE, *sb.* M. 10/293, the shade
for the eyes.
- VNDER-TONE, *vb.* O. 87/1053. VN-
DER-TOO, O. 64/311, undertake.
- VNNYTHE, *adv.* R. 129/778, scarcely.
- VNREDLY, *adv.* R. 135/990, furi-
ously, violently.
- VN-RYDE, *adj.* O. 100/1459, fierce,
violent.
- VNTAK, *pp.* R. 109/89, untaken.
- VALE, *vb.* O. 70/497, fall.
- VAYLEDE *pt. pl.* O. 80/815, availed.
- VELANYE, *sb.* O. 60/171, a disgrace-

- ful act, conduct unbecoming a knight.
- VELAYNSLYE, *adv.* O. 87/1045, shamefully.
- VETELLS, *sb. pl.* M. 38/1195, food, victuals.
- VOYDEDE, *pt. s.* M. 35/1069, threw away.
- WADILL, *vb.* R. 135/991, tumble, fall heavily.
- WAFULL, *adj.* M. 9/260, woeful, piteous.
- WALT, *pt. s.* M. 37/1145, ? gaped.
- WANDRETHE, *sb.* O. 99/1410, trouble, sorrow. *See note.*
- WANE, *pt. s.* M. 1/22, won his way, reached.
- WARY, *vb.* R. 132/901, curse. A.S. *wergian*.
- WATHE, *sb.* M. 24/725, harm, hurt.
- WAYTE, *vb.* O. 69/444, watch.
- WED, *sb.* M. 47/1465; R. 109/82, dress, arms, accoutrements.
- WEDE, *vb.* O. 84/936, go mad. A.S. *wedan*.
- WEDIRWYNE, *sb.* M. 23/695, enemy, foe. A.S. *wiðerwinnā*.
- WEFEDE, *pt. s.* O. 72/564. WEUEDE, 564, cut. *See note.*
- WEITE = WITE, *vb.* M. 4/120, know.
- WEKID, *adj.* R. 131/857, dreadful. Compare WIKKIDLY.
- WELDE, *sb.* O. 80/828, power: *alle to welde* = all under his power.
- WEM, *sb.* R. 126/685, 127/704, stain. A.S. *wamm*.
- WENE, *sb.* O. 89/1110, doubt, hesitation.
- WERRE, *adj.* M. 23/694, worse.
- WERY, *pr. subj. s.* M. 6/172, may curse. *See WARY.*
- WET, *vb.* R. 131/850, to hear; lit. to know.
- WETHED, *pp.* M. 15/455, wetted.
- WEKE, *pt. s.* M. 15/463, became.
- WHILLS, *conj.* M. 26/798, 40/1233, until.
- "Dowelles *whyte* new yeres days."
Sir Gawayne, l. 1076.
"Bot as þe *quils* he ne fan
To behald þe leve maidan."
MS. Cott. Vesp. A. iii. lf. 20 a.
- WICHEDE, *pp.* O. 91/1151, bewitched.
- WIETE = WITE, *vb.* M. 24/749, know.
- WIKKIDLY, *adv.* M. 37/1146, badly, cruelly.
- WISCHE, *vb.* R. 120/451, wish, desire.
- WISE, *pr. s. subj.* R. 115/303, guide, counsel.
- WOGHE, *sb.* O. 58/119, woe, harm.
- WON, *pr. pl.* R. 107/15, dwell.
- WONE, *sb.* M. 6/168, lit. dwelling, hence, life, existence.
- WONE, *sb.* O. 99/1408, plenty, number.
- WONNYNGE, *sb.* O. 62/230, place of abode, residence.
- WOOKE, *pt. pl.* O. 92/1187, watched, kept awake.
- WORTHE, *pres. subj.* M. 42/1323, may be.
- WOWID, *pt. pl.* R. 122/546, besought, begged: lit. wooed. A.S. *wogian*.
- WOWYNGES, *sb. pl.* O. 56/36, wooings.
- WRETHIS, *sb. pl.* M. 4/96, misfortunes.
- WRIED, *pt. s.* R. 124/602, ?
- WYN, *vb.* M. 15/441, win his way.
- WYTE, *sb.* M. 18/555, blame.
- WYTE, *vb.* O. 90/1326, blame, find fault with. WYTIS, *pr. s.* R. 109/90.
- 3ARE, *adj.* M. 7/195, ready.
- 3EDE, *pt. pl.* O. 98/1402. 3ODE, *pt. s.* O. 98/1389, went. A.S. *code*.
- 3ISTREUEN, *adv.* O. 66/343, yesterday, last evening.

三

